

INTERMEDIATE CHINESE

John DeFrancis

中級漢語課本



Yale Linguistic Series, 7



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2024

INTERMEDIATE CHINESE

by John DeFrancis

WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF

Teng Chia-ye

New Haven and London, Yale University Press

Copyright © 1964 by Yale University.

All rights reserved. This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publishers.

Set in IBM Documentary type, and printed
in the United States of America by
The Murray Printing Company,
Westford, Mass.

Library of Congress catalog card number: 64-12649

ISBN: 0-300-00412-5 (cloth), 0-300-00064-2 (paper)

This work was developed pursuant to a
contract between the United States Office of
Education and Seton Hall University
and is published with permission of the
United States Office of Education,
Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11

To the memory of
Harriet Nadelhoffer
“Hǎo rén bù cháng shòu”

PREFACE

This text is the second in a series of three closely integrated volumes of spoken Chinese for use at the high-school and college levels:

Beginning Chinese. Stresses mastery of the basic structural patterns of the language by means of dialogues and extensive exercises based on them.

Intermediate Chinese. Presents dialogues on everyday topics together with analysis of anticipated points of difficulty for the student and numerous sentences illustrating the usage of all new words and grammar.

Advanced Chinese (in preparation). An alternative sequel to Beginning Chinese with dialogues concentrating on cultural and academic topics.

Intermediate Chinese has a number of unique features, chief among them being the fact that the dialogues were first recorded and then transcribed and edited. This has resulted in livelier conversational material than is generally found in textbooks.

The book consists of four units, with six lessons each. The first five lessons of each unit contain new material; the sixth reviews the preceding five. The review lessons contain a variety of drills, with no two lessons having exactly the same types of exercise. All the main lessons, however, contain the following divisions:

Dialogue (in Chinese)

Sentences for New Words and Grammar (in Chinese)

Review Sentences (in Chinese)

Monologue (in Chinese)

Questions (in Chinese)

Dialogue (English translation)

Sentences for New Words and Grammar (English translation)

Review Sentences (English translation)

Notes (in English)

It is suggested that the Dialogue be taken up first. Study it bit by bit, together with the related Sentences for New Words and Grammar. (As an aid to such study, the sentences illustrating new items are arranged consecutively in the same order in which the items occur in the Dialogue.)

The twenty Dialogues—the heart of the material in the book—are imagined as taking place within a four-day period following the arrival of the American student in China. They represent only a small fraction of the speaking situations a not particularly loquacious person might be involved in during that length of time, and if spoken continuously would represent at most only a few hours of actual conversation. Their limited nature is further indicated by the fact that they contain only about 1,000 new vocabulary items. The size of the book is due not so much to the new material introduced as to the numerous exercises provided for the mastery of the material. Leaving aside the extensive practice exercises in the four review lessons, and excluding also the basic Dialogues themselves and the Monologues based on them, drill on the new material is provided by over 3,000 sentences—more than 2,000 Sentences for New Words and Grammar, 400 Review Sentences, and 600 Questions.

Students who have persevered in Chinese to this point can and should do a great deal of studying on their own. To this end, we have provided both Chinese and English versions of much of the material, so that the student can

check himself in working either from Chinese to English or from English to Chinese. For the teacher, the Monologues and Questions (for which no translations have been provided) can be used to test the student's understanding of the Chinese. A check on the student's ability to translate from English to Chinese can be readily devised by making selections from the huge number of sentences, modifying them slightly as desired.

The present work is closely integrated with Beginning Chinese. All the vocabulary and grammar of that book appear for review purposes in the first two lessons of this book; these two lessons should therefore be studied with particular care and should be taken more slowly than the others. On the assumption that the student now requires fewer aids to pronunciation and can rely more on the teacher and on tape recordings, we have omitted the hyphens used in the earlier work to show where not to pause; reduced the indication of stress; and indicated shifts from third tone to second tone only in lexical entries and other places where the student might not be able to deduce the shift from the context.

Illustrations supply visual support for topics mentioned in the Dialogues. The inventive teacher can use them as a basis for further conversation and exposition.

As with the earlier work, the present text is accompanied by tape recordings and by a character text. The recordings are an important supplement, in that they provide a great deal of information on such vital pronunciation features as stress, juncture, and intonation. Many of these features, particularly intonation, have been little studied in Chinese, and the written record of speech omits much that is important in acquiring an authentic Chinese pronunciation. Listening to and imitating recordings are the best means—apart from working directly with a native speaker—of achieving this end. As to the character text, this is designed for use by native teachers, who may prefer it to the transcription version, and also by students, who may use it as a reading text. There is also a brief teacher's manual, available, as are the tape recordings, from the Institute of Far Eastern Studies, Seton Hall University.

I wish to thank the following institutions and individuals for helping to make this book possible:

Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, for a grant to compile the book.

Seton Hall University, for providing institutional support for my work.

Dr. John B. Tsu, Director of the Institute of Far Eastern Studies, Seton Hall University, for his energetic concern to make available whatever assistance was needed at all stages of the work.

The Editorial Committee, consisting of Dr. John B. Tsu, Dr. Paul Tsai, Mr. Yung Chih-sheng, Mr. Francis Shieh, Mr. Simon T. H. Chang, Mrs. A. T. Morcom, Mrs. Aileen Wei, Mrs. Lucy Chao Ho, and Mrs. Jean Feng, for suggesting many improvements in the text.

Mrs. Teng Chia-yee, for her untiring collaboration in nearly every phase of the work.

Elinor Horne, for her expert editorial assistance.

Miss Diana Ma, for her illustrations.

My wife, for putting the handwritten materials into typewritten form, and Mrs. Margaret Chiang for additional typing.

CONTENTS

PREFACE	vii
SETTING THE STAGE	xi
UNIT I	1
Lesson 1. Arriving in China (Dào le Zhōngguó)	3
Lesson 2. Getting through Customs (Jiǎnchá Xíngli)	29
Lesson 3. Driving through the City (Zuò Chē Jìn Chéng Chū Chéng)	55
Lesson 4. At the Home of Friends (Zài Péngyou Jiā)	77
Lesson 5. Discussing Where to Live (Tán Zhǎo Fángzi)	101
Lesson 6. Review (Wēnxi)	123
UNIT II	133
Lesson 7. Recounting Past Activities (Tán Guòqu de Shìqing)	135
Lesson 8. Renting a Room (Zū Fángzi)	157
Lesson 9. Discussing Members of a Family (Tán Yì Jiā Rén)	179
Lesson 10. Eating in a Restaurant (Chī Fànguǎn)	203
Lesson 11. Speaking of Family Matters (Tán Jiā Shì)	225
Lesson 12. Review (Wēnxi)	246
UNIT III	257
Lesson 13. Moving to New Quarters (Bān Jiā)	259
Lesson 14. Talking with a Servant (Gēn Yòngren Tán Huà)	283
Lesson 15. Talking with an Engineer (Gēn Gōngchéngshī Tán Huà)	303
Lesson 16. Discussing Studies (Tán Xué)	325
Lesson 17. Attending a Soccer Game (Kàn Zúqiú Bǐsài)	349
Lesson 18. Review (Wēnxi)	372
UNIT IV	383
Lesson 19. Going to a Bank (Dào Yínháng)	385
Lesson 20. Buying Things (Mǎi Dōngxi)	407
Lesson 21. Discussing Illnesses (Tán Shēng Bìng)	431
Lesson 22. Visiting a University (Cānguān Dàxué)	451
Lesson 23. Attending a Welcome Party (Huānyíng Xīnshēng Wǎnhuì)	475
Lesson 24. Review (Wēnxi)	501
APPENDIX: Comparative Transcription Table	515
GLOSSARY AND INDEX	521

SETTING THE STAGE

Cast of Characters

(in order of appearance)

Gāo Xiānsheng	:	Mr. Gao, manager of the Three Friends Bookstore.
Gāo Měiyīng	:	Daughter of Mr. and Mrs. Gao.
Bái Wénshān	:	Vincent White, an American student.
Wàn Xuéwén	:	Customs inspector.
Gāo Tàitai	:	Mrs. Gao.
Wáng Mǎ	:	Maid servant in the Hua household.
Huá Tàitai	:	Mrs. Hua.
Huǒji	:	Waiter.
Huá Xiānsheng	:	Mr. Hua, a construction engineer.
Huá Xuéxīn	:	Son of Mr. and Mrs. Hua.
Hángyuán	:	Bank teller.
Màihuòyuán	:	Sales clerk.
Zhǔxí	:	Master of ceremonies at party welcoming new students.
Jīn Shūwén	:	Performer at party.
Máo Shānhé	:	Performer at party.
Wēn Qīnghuá	}	: Brother and sister, performers at party.
Wēn Qīngwén		
Mǎ Guóyīng	}	: Performers of comic dialogue.
Huáng Néng		
Wáng Dàwén	:	Performer at party.

Abbreviations for the Above Names

Bái	:	Bái Wénshān (Vincent White)
Gāo	:	Gāo Xiānsheng (Mr. Gao)
Huá	:	Huá Xiānsheng (Mr. Hua)
Huáng	:	Huáng Néng (performer at party)
Huǒ	:	Huǒji (waiter)
Jīn	:	Jīn Shūwén (performer at party)
Mǎ	:	Mǎ Guóyīng (performer at party)
Máo	:	Máo Shānhé (performer at party)
Měi	:	Gāo Měiyīng Xiǎojié (Miss Meiyīng Gao)
Tài	:	{ Lessons 4, 5, 7, 11: Gāo Tàitai (Mrs. Gao) Lessons 8, 13, 15: Huá Tàitai (Mrs. Hua)
Wàn	:	Wàn Xuéwén (customs inspector)
Wáng	:	{ Lessons 8, 13, 14: Wáng Mǎ (the Huas' maid) Lesson 23: Wáng Dàwén (performer at party)
Wēn	:	{ Wēn Qīnghuá } (performers at party) { Wēn Qīngwén }
Xué	:	Huá Xuéxīn (son of Mr. and Mrs. Hua)
Yuán	:	{ Lesson 19: Hángyuán (bank teller) Lesson 20: Màihuòyuán (sales clerk)
Zhǔ	:	Zhǔxí (master of ceremonies)

Place
A City in China

Time			
Lessons 1-4	September 8	Lessons 13-18	September 10
Lessons 5-12	September 9	Lessons 19-24	September 11

UNIT I



“WÉNSHĀN! . . . MĚIYĪNG!”

Dì Yíkè. Dàole Zhōngguo

Huìhuà: Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Měiyīng Xiáojie dào fēijīchǎng jiē Bái Wénshān.

Gāo: Měiyīng, sāndiǎn bàn le dou. Zěnmō fēijī hái méi lái ne?

Měi: Kě bu shì ma!

5 Gāo: Shì bu shì fēijī, qǐ fēi wǎn le?

Měi: Dàgài shì,

Gāo: Zàiburán ta xīnshang xiěcuò le. Ta bǎ sìdiǎn bàn xiěchéng sāndiǎn bàn le.

10 Měi: Bú huì xiěcuò le ba? Wǒ xiǎng yídìng shì qǐ fēi de shíhour nèibiarde tiānqì bù hǎo, qǐ fēide wǎn le.

Gāo: Yéxǔ a. . . . Kuài dào sìdiǎn le.

Měi: Bàba, nín kàn! Nèibiar fēiguolai yíge fēijī.

Gāo: Zài nèibiar?

Měi: Nín kàn nèibiar.

15 Gāo: Duìle. Dōngběibiar zhèige fāngxiàng duì. Shì cóng Rìběn lái de fēijī. Dàgài shì Wénshān zuò de fēijī. . . . Fēijī luòxiàlai le.

Měi: He! Zhèige fēijī zhēn dà. Bàba, 'zěnmō dāde fēijī néng zuò duōshao rén ne?

Gāo: Kéyì zuò yìbǎi duō rén ne.

20 Měi: Nín kàn. Xià kèren le.

Gāo: Xiàlai hěn duō rén le. Tā zěnmō 'hái mei xiàlai ne? Yéxǔ wǒmen lí fēijī tài yuǎn le. Ta xiàlai wǒmen kànbujiàn.

Měi: Bàba, nín kàn! Wénshān 'cái xiàlai!

Gāo: Nèige nèige?

25 Měi: Jiù shì nèige. Chuān lán yīfu dài bái màozi de nèige gāo gèzi.

Gāo: Nèige nèige ya?

Měi: Hài! 'Nínde yǎnjīng zěnmō kànbujiàn ne? Pàng tàitai 'hòutou de nèige.

Gāo: Oh! 'Nèige jiù shì tā.

30 Měi: Duìle. Wénshān! Wénshān!! WÉNSHĀN!!!

- Bái: MĚIYĪNG! . . . Gāo Xiānsheng, nín hǎo? Xièxie nín gēn Měiyīng lái jiē wo. Wǒmen zhēnshi 'hǎo jiù bú jiàn.
- Gāo: 'Sānnián bú jiàn le. Hǎo ma? Fǔshang dōu hǎo ma, Wénshān?
- Bái: Hǎo. Wǒ fùqin mǔqin ràng wǒ wèn nín gēn Gāo Tàitai hǎo.
- 35 Gāo: Xièxie.
- Bái: Gāo Tàitai hǎo ma?
- Gāo: Hěn hǎo. Tā zài jiā mángzhe zuò fàn ne, suóyī yě méi lái jiē ni lai.
- Bái: Wǒ yòu lái máfan Gāo Tàitai le.
- 40 Gāo: Nǎde huà ne.
- Bái: Měiyīng a, 'zhēn piàoliang. Bǐ yǐqián 'gèng piàoliang le.
- Měi: Xiā shuō.
- Gāo: Wénshān, nǐ hǎoxiang shòule yìdiǎr.
- Bái: Shì ma? Nín kàn wǒ shòule ma? Wǒ zìjǐ dào bù juéde.
- 45 Gāo: Nǐ kàn 'wǒ zěnmoyàng? 'Lǎo le méi you?
- Bái: Méi you. Gēn cóngqián yíyàng. Nín bǐ cóngqián hái niánqīng le ne, wǒ kàn.
- Gāo: Xiàohuar. Wénshān, zěnmó 'wǎn le yìdiǎr?
- Bái: Kě bu shì ma! Zài Rìběn de shíhou tiānqì 'tài bù hǎo le, érqǐě yǔ xiàde hěn dà, suóyī fēijīchāng bàogào shuō děng bàngē zhōngtóu zài qǐ fēi, bàngē zhōngtóu yǐhòu kěyǐ qíngtiān, suóyī dào zhèr yǐjīng 'sìdiǎn le. Ràng nín jiù děng le.
- 50 Gāo: Méi you méi you.
- Měi: Bàba shuō yéxǔ nǐ bǎ qǐ fēi de zhōngdiǎr xiěcuò le.
- 55 Bái: 'Méi xiěcuò.
- Gāo: Pēnshèjī fēide hěn wěn ba?
- Bái: Hěn wěn. Yìdiǎr yě bù juéde shì zuò fēijī ne. Hǎoxiàng zài wūzili zuòzhe shìde.
- Gāo: Wénshān ne, nǐ cāi zěnmó, nǐ zǒule yǐhòu wǒ zhēnshi jìmode bùdéliǎo. Nǐ yì lái xìn shuō nǐ yào lái le, nǐ shuō wǒ xīn lǐtou duómo tòngkuai duómo gāoxìng.
- 60 Bái: Wǒ yěshì chángcháng xiǎngniàn nín, hèn bude hěn kuài jiù huídao Zhōngguó lái. Gāo Xiānsheng, Wàn Jiàoshòu yòu huílai le méi you? Nín gēn Qián Xiānsheng cháng jiàn miàn ba?
- 65 Gāo: Qián Xiānsheng cháng jiàn. Wàn Jiàoshòu méi huílai, kěshì wǒmen liǎngge rén cháng tōngxīn.
- Bái: Méi rén gēn nín huà quán le?
- Gāo: Yǒude shíhou gēn biéde péngyou yě huà. Nǐ zhèihuì lái le, wǒ

děi jiāo ni huá quán.

70 Bái: Hǎo a.

Gāo: Jīntian wǎnshang zánmen jiù huá.

Měi: Bàba, rénjia cái xià fēijī bú ràng rén xiūxi nín jiù ràng rénjia huá quán.

Gāo: Huá quán yě bu lèi ya.

75 Měi: Rén dōu zǒuguāng le. Jiù shèng Wénshān le.

Gāo: Duìle. Wénshān děi jiǎnchá xínglǐ qu le. Wénshān, nǐ qu jiǎnchá xínglǐ qu, wǒmen zài kèren chūkǒuchù dēng nǐ.

Bái: Hǎo.

80 Gāo: Nǐ jiǎncháwánle xínglǐ wǒmen yíkuài huí jiā. Bié làxia dōngxì. Huítóu jiàn.

Bái: Huítóu jiàn.

Měi: Huítóu jiàn.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

1.0. (3)* dōu, dou all, already (AD)** (Note 1)

1.1 Nǐ zěnmó hái bù qǐlai ne? Dōu jiǔdiǎn duō le.

1.2 Zuótian wǒ huí jiā tài wǎn le. Jiā lǐtou yǐjīng chīle wǎnfàn le dou.

1.3 Ta zěnmó 'hái méi lái ne? Dōu qīdiǎn bàn le dou.

2.0. (4) kě indeed, certainly, however (AD)

2.1 Wǒ niàn shū kě méi nǐ nènmo hǎo.

2.2 Nǐ kě méi tā nènmo yònggōng.

2.3 Wǒ qǐng nǐ chī fàn. Rúguǒ nǐ bu lái wǒ kě bu gāoxìng le.

* Numbers in parentheses refer to the line in the Dialogue where the entry first occurs.

** For abbreviations of parts of speech, see the list at the beginning of the Glossary and Index.

- 3.0. (4) kě bu shì ma! Isn't that so! Isn't it the truth! It's so indeed.
- 3.1. Nǐ zěnmó chīde zěnmó duō? . . . Kě bu shì ma! Wǒ yì chī Zōngguo fàn jiù chīde tài duō.
- 3.2. Wǒmen yòu yào kǎoshì le. . . . Kě bu shì ma. Wǒmen děi hǎohāorde niàn shù le.
- 4.0. (5) fēi fly (IV)
fēidào fly to
fēiguòqu fly past
- 4.1. Zài zhèi jǐshinián lǐtōu rén cái néng fēi.
- 4.2. Wǒ zhù de dìfang tiāntiān yǒu fēijī fēiguòqu.
- 4.3. Zhèige fēijī shì cóng zhèr fēidào Rìběn de.
- 5.0. (5) qǐ fēi start flying, take off, leave (IV) [lit. start fly]
- 5.1. Qǐng wèn, dào Sānfánshì de fēijī shénmo shíhou qǐ fēi?
- 5.2. Fēijī yì qǐ fēi wǒmen jiù huí jiā le.
- 5.3. Nèige fēijī xiàwǔ sāndiǎn bàn zhōng cóng Dōngjīng fēijīchǎng qǐ fēi.
- 6.0. (4) qǐ fēi (de) wǎn take off late
- 6.1. Jīntiān tiānqì bù hǎo. Kǒngpà fēijī yào qǐ fēide wǎn le.
- 6.2. Dào Niǔyuē de fēijī shì bu shì qǐ fēi wǎn le?
- 7.0. (7) zàiburán otherwise (MA) [lit. again not so]
- 7.1. Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshàng bù chī táng cù yú jiù chī hóng shāo. jī. Zàiburán jiù chī shīzi tóu.
- 7.2. Wǒ dāsuan qù kàn péngyou. Zàiburán wǒ qu kàn diànyǐngr.
- 8.0. (7) chéng (postverb 'as') (Note 2)
- | | | | |
|----------|---------|-----------|----------|
| huàchéng | draw as | pīnchéng | spell as |
| kànchéng | view as | tīngchéng | hear as |
| niàncéng | read as | xiěchéng | write as |
- 8.1. Wǒ bǎ tāde huà tīngcuò le. Wǒ bǎ sānbǎi wúshihào tīngchéng sìbǎi wúshihào le.
- 8.2. Tā bǎ dì-èrshēngde zì niàncéng dì-sānshēng le.
- 8.3. Tā huà de zhèizhāng huàr bu hǎo. Bǎ shīzi huàchéng láohu le.
- 8.4. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèixie Hànzì xiěchéng pīnyīn.
- 8.5. Wǒ bǎ biǎo kàncuò le. Jiūdiǎn bàn wǒ kànchéng wúdiǎn sānkè le.
- 8.6. Wǒ kàncuò le rén. Bǎ nèiwèi xiānsheng kànchéng Wáng Xiānsheng le.
- 8.7. Wǒ bǎ èr zì niàncéng sān zì le.
- 8.8. Zhèige zì nǐ pīncuò le. Nǐ bǎ xué zì pīnchéng xiě zì le.

- 9.0. (9) shì is a matter of (Note 3)
- 9.1. Ta méi lái. Huòzhě shì ta máng le.
- 9.2. Ta bú shì méi qián. Tā shì bù xǐhuan mǎi dōngxī.
- 9.3. Wǒ shì zuò fēijī qù. Nǐ ne?
- 10.0. (11) yéxǔ perhaps, probably (MA) [lit. also permit]
- 10.1. Wǒmen míngtiān yéxǔ yánjiū zhèijiàn shìqíng.
- 10.2. Xīngqīliù yéxǔ wǒmen qù kàn diànyǐng.
- 11.0. (12) bàba papa, daddy (N)
- 11.1. Nǐ bàba gěi nǐ mǎi táng lai le.
- 11.2. Wǒ bàba shuō tā zuótiān zài lùshang yùjiàn nǐ le.
- 12.0. (15) fāngxiàng N: direction [lit. side toward]
- 12.1. Qǐng wèn, dào Sān Yǒu Shūdiàn wǎng nǎige fāngxiàng zǒu?
- 13.0. (16) luò land, drop, fall (V)
- luòxiàlai drop down, land
- luòzai land at
- 13.1. Zhèige fēijī luòzai nǎige fēijīchǎng?
- 13.2. Yíge dà fēijī zài wǒ jiā fùjìn nǎige xiǎo fēijīchǎng luòxiàlai le.
- 13.3. Wǒmen dào fēijīchǎng de shíhou fēijī yǐjīng luòxiàlai le.
- 14.0. (23) cái merely, just, just now (AD)
- 14.1. Wǒ cái yǒu liù máo sān.
- 14.2. Wáng Xiānsheng bú zài jiā, cái zǒu.
- 15.0. (25) chuān wear (clothes) (TV)
- 15.1. Xiànzài tiānqì nuǎnhuo le. Nǐ yīnggāi shǎo chuān yīdiǎr.
- 15.2. Wáng Xiǎojie xǐhuan chuān hóng de.
- 16.0. (25) yīfu clothes, clothing (N) [lit. clothes dress]
- 16.1. Tā chuān de yīfu dōu shì zài Yīngguó zuò de.
- 16.2. Yǒude nǚ hái zǐ xǐhuan chuān 'nán hái zide yīfu.
- 17.0. (25) màozi hat (N)
- 17.1. Tā nǎige hēi màozi shì zài Rìběn mǎi de.
- 17.2. Tiānqì nuǎnhuo bú yòng dài màozi.
- 18.0. (25) gèzi, gèr stature, size (of people), (sized) person (N)
- gāo gèzi, gāo gèr tall person
- dà gèzi, dà gèr tall person
- 18.1. Tāde gèr hěn gāo.

- 18.2. Wǒde gèzi bǐ nǐ gāode duō.
 18.3. Nèige jiàoyuán shì ge dà gèr.
 18.4. Nán hái zi bǐ nǚ hái zi gèr gāo.
- 19.0. (26) a, wa, ya (Note 4)
 19.1. Zhè jǐtiān zěnmoyàng a?
 19.2. Zěnmó láide zěnmó zǎo wa?
 19.3. Wáng Xiānsheng 'hái mei lái ya?.'
- 20.0. (27) yǎnjing eye(s) (N)
 20.1. Wǒde yǎnjing bù zěnmó hǎo. Kàn yuǎnde dìfang jiù kàn bu jiàn.
 20.2. Nèige nǚ hái zide yǎnjing hěn piàoliang.
- 21.0. (27) pàng fat (SV)
 21.1. Wǒ tài pàng le. Wǒ děi shǎo chī fàn le.
 21.2. Wǒ dìdi bǐ wǒ pàngde duō.
- 22.0. (37) N mángzhe V (ne) N is busy V-ing, N is in a hurry to V (Note 5)
 22.1. Tā mángzhe kǎoshì ne.
 22.2. Zhèzhāng huàr wǒ huàde bù hǎo, yīnwèi tā mángzhe yào.
 22.3. Tā mángzhe yào shàng fēijī ne.
 22.4. Wǒ xiànzài méi gōngfu. Wǒ mángzhe dào xuéxiào qu.
- 23.0. (37) lái V lai come to V (Note 6)
 qù V qu go to V
 23.1. Qián Xiǎojie lái jiè shū lai le.
 23.2. Wàn Jiàoshòu lái yánjiū yǔyánxué lai le.
 23.3. Wǒ dào Rìběn qu lǚxíng qu.
 23.4. Péngyou qǐng wǒ dào tā jiā qu chī fàn qu.
- 24.0. (42) xiā falsely, incorrectly, haphazardly (AD)
 24.1. Zhèige zì nǐ bú rènshi bié xiā niàn.
 24.2. Nǐ bù zhīdào de shìqing bié xiā shuō.
- 25.0. (43) hǎoxiang resemble, seem (to) (V) [lit. good resemble] (Note 7)
 25.1. Tā huà de nèizhāng shānshuǐ huàr hǎoxiang shì Sūzhou (shide).
 25.2. Zuòzhe de nèiwèi xiānsheng wǒ hǎoxiang rènshi tā (shide).
 25.3. Tā hǎoxiang bǐ yīqián yǒnggōng le (shide).
 25.4. Tā hǎoxiàng tā fùqin (shide).
 25.5. Wǒ zhèiběn shū hǎoxiang gēn nǐ nèiběn yíyàng (shide).
- 26.0. (43) shòu thin (SV)

- 26.1. Nǚrén háishi shòu yìdiǎr bǐjiǎo piàoliang.
- 26.2. Qián Xiānsheng bǐ yǐqián shòu duō le.
- 27.0. (44) dào(shì) on the contrary, contrary to expectations, yet (MA)
- 27.1. Wǒ suǐrán jīntian niàn le hěn duō shū, wǒ dào bù juéde lèi.
- 27.2. Ta chule bù chǐ xiā yǐwài biéde ta dàoshi shénmo dōu chǐ.
- 27.3. Ta dàoshi hěn yònggōng. Bú shì niàn shū jiùshì tīng lùyīn.
- 28.0. (46) niánqīng to be young (SV) [lit. year young]
- 28.1. Ta suǐrán niánqīng kěshì tāde xuéwen hěn hǎo.
- 28.2. Zhāng Xiānsheng bǐ Wáng Xiānsheng niánqīng.
- 29.0. (50) yǔ rain (N)
- xià yǔ be raining (VO)
- 29.1. Zāogāo. Jīntian xià yǔ. Wǒmen bù néng qu lǚxíng le.
- 29.2. Nǐ qù kànkàn wàitou xià yǔ bu xià.
- 29.3. Shàng xīngqīliù yǔ xiàde zhēn dà.
- 29.4. Xià yǔ le. Fēiji qǐ fēi yào wǎn yíge zhōngtóu.
- 30.0. (50) bàogào (shuō) report (that) (V) [lit. report inform]
- 30.1. Zhèijiàn shìqing wǒ bù zhīdào shì shénmo shíhou bàogào de.
- 30.2. Shàng xīngqīsì xuéxiào bàogào le shuō zhèige xīngqīwǔ fàngjià.
- 31.0. (50) děng A V to V after A (Note 9)
- 31.1. Ràng ta děng yìhuěr jìnlái.
- 31.2. Wǒ xiànzài hěn máng. Děng yìhuěr wǒ zài qù.
- 31.3. Fàn hái děi děng yíge zhōngtóu cái néng zuòhǎo ne.
- 31.4. Děng ta lái wǒmen yíkuài qù.
- 32.0. (51) qíngtiān be or become clear (SV), clear day (N) [lit. clear day]
- 32.1. Qíngtiān de shíhou kàndejiàn Xī Shān.
- 32.2. Rúguǒ míngtiān shì qíngtiān wǒmen jiù dào chéng wàitou qu lǚxíng.
- 32.3. Jīntian hái méi qíngtiān ne. Yéxǔ míngtiān jiù qíngtiān le.
- 33.0. (52) jiǔ long (time) (SV)
- hǎo jiǔ good while, quite a long time
- 33.1. Ta hěn jiǔ yǐqián jiù dào Zhōngguo lái le.
- 33.2. Hǎo jiǔ méi gěi wǒ nǚ péngyou xiě xìn le.
- 34.0. (54) zhōngdiǎr hour, time, timing (N) [lit. clock dot]
- 34.1. Wǒ lái wǎn le. Wǒ bǎ zhōngdiǎr jìcuò le.
- 34.2. Tāde zhōngdiǎr hěn zhǔn. Ta 'shuō shénmo shíhou ta jiù shénmo shíhou lái.

- 35.0. (56) pēnshèjī jet plane (N) [lit. spit spurt machine]
- 35.1. Pēnshèjī zuò de rén bíjiǎo duō ma?
- 35.2. Tā yí dào fēijīchǎng nèige pēnshèjī jiu qǐ fēi le.
- 35.3. Pēnshèjī shēngyīn zhēn dà.
- 36.0. (56) wěn smooth, steady, stable (SV)
- 36.1. Pēnshèjī fēide wěn.
- 36.2. Tīngshuō nèige dìfang bù wěn. Zuì hǎo bú qù lǚxíng.
- 37.0. (58) wūzi room (in a house) (N)
- 37.1. Wǒmen nàisuǒr fángzi yígòng yǒu wǔge wūzi.
- 38.0. (59) zěnmózhè what?, how (about it)?
- zěnmózhè this way
- nǐ cāi zěnmózhè you know,
- 38.1. Nǐ cāi zěnmózhè, wǒ zuì xǐhuan nǐ lái gēn wo tán-tán.
- 38.2. Zěnmózhè? Jīntiān wǒmen qù kàn diànyǐng hǎo bù hǎo?
- 38.3. Zěnmózhè ba. Míngtiān nǐmen dōu zuò wǒde chē qu ba.
- 39.0. (59) jìmo lonesome (SV)
- 39.1. Jīntiān zhǐ yǒu wǒ 'yíge rén zài jiā. Hěn jìmo.
- 39.2. Wǒde péngyou dōu dào biéde dìfang qù le. Wǒ jìmode bùdéliǎo.
- 40.0. (60) xīn heart, mind (N)
- 40.1. Wǒ xīn lǐtou zhèng zài xiǎng nàijiān shìqing ne.
- 40.2. Tāde xīn hěn hǎo. Ta hěn xǐhuan bāngzhu bié rén.
- 41.0. (61) tòngkuai happy, content, delighted (SV)
- 41.1. Rúguǒ nǐ gēn tāmen zài yíkuài tán-tán nǐ jiù juéde hěn tòngkuai.
- 41.2. Jīntiān wǒ bǎ kǎoshì de tímu kàn cuò le, suǒyǐ xīnli bù tòngkuai.
- 42.0. (62) chángcháng often, constantly (AD) [lit. often often]
- 42.1. Xué yǔyán yào chángcháng tīng lùyīn.
- 42.2. Wǒmende Yīngwén zìdiǎn chángcháng ràng xuésheng gěi nàzǒu le.
- 43.0. (62) xiǎngniàn think of (someone) (TV) [lit. think reflect]
- 43.1. Wǒ hěn jiǔ méi kànjian wǒde nǚ péngyou le. Wǒ hěn xiǎngniàn tā.
- 43.2. Nǐ líkai fùshang yǐjīng sānnián le. Nǐ yídìng hěn xiǎngniàn nǐ fùqīn mǔqīn ba.
- 44.0. (62) hèn bùde hope that; Would that . . . , Oh that (TV) [lit. hate not attain]
- 44.1. Wǒ hèn bùde zài zhè yìnián lǐtou jiu néng shuō hěn hǎode Zhōngguó huà.

- 44.2. Hènbude wǒ yǒngyuǎn bù líkai zhèr.
- 44.3. Nǐ mǔqīn hěn xiǎngniàn nǐ, hènbude mǎshàng jiù kànjian nǐ.
- 45.0. (64) jiàn miàn see (each other) (VO) [lit. see face]
- 45.1. Wǒ hǎo jiǔ méi gēn tā jiàn miàn le.
- 45.2. Wǒ zhīdao tāde míngzi, kěshi wǒ méi gēn tā jiànguo miàn.
- 46.0. (66) tōngxìn to correspond (IV) [lit. communicate letter]
- 46.1. Bái Xiānsheng zài Měiguó de shíhou cháng gēn Gāo Xiǎojie tōngxìn.
- 46.2. Wǒ gēn tā cháng tōngxìn. Érqiě wǒmen shì yòng Hànzì xiě xìn.
- 47.0. (68) huí time, occasion (M)
- 47.1. Jīntian wǒ dào tā jiā sānhuī le, tā dōu bú zài jiā.
- 47.2. Zhèihuī wǒ yào yíng le.
- 47.3. Wǒ zhèihuī kǎo shū kǎode bú tài hǎo.
- 48.0. (71) zánmen (inclusive) we, us (Note 10)
- 48.1. Ta lái xìn jiào zánmen xià yuè sānhào zǎochen shídiǎn bàn zhōng qu jiē tā.
- 48.2. Zánmen zuò chē qù ba, yàoburán jiù wǎn le.
- 49.0. (72) rénjia (other) people, others, (another) person [lit. people family]
- 49.1. Rénjia dōu bǐ wǒ niàn shū niànde hǎo.
- 49.2. Wǒ bǐ rénjia chī jiǎozi chīde duō.
- 49.3. Ta fāyīn liànxì shì liànxì, kěshi háishi méi rénjia shuōde hǎo.
- 50.0. (72) xiūxi to rest (IV) [lit. rest stop]
- 50.1. Bàba shuō děng tā xiūxi yìhuěr wǒmen zài dào gōngyuán qu.
- 50.2. Wǒ yǐjīng niànle liùge zhōngtóude shū le. Wǒ děi xiūxi yìhuěr le.
- 50.3. Jīntian fàngjià. Nǐ yě bù xiūxi ma?
- 51.0. (75) guāng finished, completed (postverb)
- 51.1. Yǐjīng wǔdiǎn le. Quán xuéxiàode xuésheng dōu zǒuguāng le.
- 51.2. Jīntiande cài zhēn hǎo chī. Wǒmen dōu bǎ tā chīguāng le.
- 51.3. Wǒde qián mǎi shū dōu yòngguāng le.
- 51.4. Chéng lǐtou dǎqilai le. Rén dōu pǎoguāng le.
- 51.5. Sān Yǒu Shūdiàn mài de nèiběn Zhōng-Yīng zìdiǎn zhēn hǎo. Yìhuěr jiù ràng rén mǎiguāng le.
- 52.0. (76) jiǎnchá examine, inspect (IV) [lit. examine check]
- 52.1. Jiǎnchá xíngli hěn máfan.
- 52.2. Wǒde xíngli hěn duō. Bàngē zhōngtóu yě jiǎnchábuwán.

- 52.3. Wǒmende xíngli hěn jiǎndān, suóyì tāmen jiǎnchá hěn róngyì.
- 53.0. (77) chūkǒu exit (N) [lit. exit mouth] (Note 11)
 chūkǒur exit (N)
 chūkǒuchù exit (N) [lit. exit mouth place]
- 53.1. Qǐng wèn, chūkǒur zài nǎr?
- 53.2. Kèren cóng chūkǒuchù yì chūlai jiù xiān dào cāntīng qu.
- 53.3. Wǒmen dào kèren chūkǒuchù dēngzhe ta ba.
- 54.0. (79) là- leave (behind) (V)
 làzai leave at
 làxia leave behind, leave out
- 54.1. Nǐ qǐng Zhāng Xiānsheng chī fàn, kě bié làxia Wáng Xiānsheng.
- 54.2. Wǒ bǎ shū làzai xuéxiào le.
- 54.3. Xià gōnggòng qìchē de shíhou bié làxia shū.
- 55.0. (80) huítóu in a little while, a little later, by and by, soon (MA) [lit. turn head]
 55.1. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ xiān zǒu. Huítóu jiàn.
 55.2. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎr shì. Huítóu wǒ jiù lái.
 55.3. Huítóu nǐ lái de shíhou bié wàngle dài qián.
- 56.0 shēng new, raw (SV)
 shēng rén stranger
 shēng cài raw vegetables
 shēng zì new words, vocabulary
- 56.1. Yǒude shēng cài kéyì chī, yǒude shēng cài bù kéyì chī.
- 56.2. Wǒ bú huì shuō huà, suóyì bù xǐhuan gēn shēng rén shuō huà.
- 57.0. xīn new (SV), newly, recently (AD)
 57.1. Zhèige chá hú shì bu shì xīnde?
 57.2. Nǐ nèiwèi xīn péngyou xìng shénmo?
 57.3. Wǒmen děi xiān xuéhuì shēng zì gēn xīn yǔfǎ.
 57.4. Wǒ xīn mǎi de qiānbǐ zhǎobuzháo le.
 57.5. Nǐde qìchē shì bu shì xīn mǎi de?
- 58.0. wēnxi to review (V) [lit. review practice]
 wēnxi jùzi review sentence(s)
- 58.1. Kuài yào kǎo shùxué le. Wǒmen bìděi xiān wēnxi shùxué.
- 58.2. Qǐng nǐmen dǎkai shū kàn dì yīge wēnxi jùzi.

- 59.0.

dāndú

alone, by oneself, by itself, by themselves
[lit. single alone]
- dāndú A yíge rén

A alone, only A
- dāndú tán huà

to speak alone
- dāndú tánhuà

monologue
- 59.1.

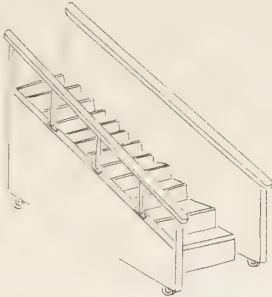
Tā dāndú yào mǎi zhèiběn shū, kěshi nǎr yě mǎibuzháo le.
- 59.2.

Yíge rén dāndú qu lǚxíng hěn méi yìsi.
- 59.3.

Wǒmen dōu chī xìngrér dòufu. Dāndú Wáng Xiānsheng yíge rén bù chī.
- 59.4.

Shíhou bú gòu. Xiānsheng shuō jiù qǐng nǐ dāndú tán huà.
- 59.5.

Zhèiběn shū měi yíkedè huìhuà wǒmen dōu yòng ta xiě yíge dāndú tánhuà.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Nín de qìchē néng zuò jǐge rén? . . . Qiántou néng zuò liǎngge rén, hòutou néng zuò sānge rén.
2. Chuán shénmo shíhou xià kèren?
3. Shì bu shì yǐjīng bādiǎn bàn le?
4. Zhèiběn shū wǒ jīntian yǐjīng niànle wǔge zhōngtóu le. Hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ yìdiǎr yě bù juéde lèi.
5. Wēnxi jùzi lǐtou 'yíge shēng zì dōu méi yǒu.
6. Nǐ fùqīn gěi nǐ lái xìn le ma? . . . 'Fùqīn méi lái xìn, mǔqīn lái xìn le.
7. Jīntian tài máfan nín le. Wǒ tài xièxie nín. . . . Nǎr de huà ne.
8. Wáng Jiàoshòu gàosu nǐ méi you wǒmen jīntian bú bì dào xuéxiào, tā bù lái? . . . Shì ma?
9. Fēijīchǎng bàogào shuō cóng Dōngjīng lái de fēijī xiànzài luòxiàlai.
10. Shànglai de kèren yígòng yǒu duōshao?
11. Wǒ xiǎng chī fàn. Nǐ xiǎng zěnmózhè?
12. Wǒ péngyou gěi wǒ lái xìn shuō tā xià xīngqī yào lái.

13. Wǒ hěn zǎo jiù xiǎng dào Zhōngguó qù.
14. Chuān hēi yīfu dài bái màozi de nèige lǎo xiānsheng shì shéi?
15. Wénshān! Guòlai! Wǒ yǒu huà gēn nǐ shuō.
16. Nèige hóng màozi mài duōshao qián?
17. Wáng Xiānsheng zuòzai pàng xiānsheng gēn shòu tài tai de zhōngjiār.
18. Tāde bīng hěn zhòng. Tā yídìng huóbuliǎo le.
19. Zài dōngběi nèige fāngxiang yǒu yíge xiǎo fēijīchǎng.
20. Zài kèren chūkǒuchù fùjìn tán huà de nèixie rén dōu shì jiē Wáng Jiàoshòu lái de.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ shì sānnián yǐqián huí Měiguó qù de. Huídao Měiguó yǐhòu, hái shì jìxù niàn dàxué. Zài èrnián yǐqián wǒ zài dàxué bìyè le. Kěshì wǒ hái jìxù yánjiū wénxué gēn yǔyán. Wǒ zhèicì huídao Zhōngguó lái 'hái shì niàn shū. Yīnwei wǒ xuéde shì Zhōngguó yǔyán gēn wénxué, suǒyǐ yòu dào

5 Zhōngguó lái yánjiū.

Wǒ zhèicì lái shì zuò fēijī lái de, yīnwei wǒ méi dài hěn duōde xíngli, érqǐ fēijī yě kuài. Wǒ zuò de shì pēnshèjī, yòu kuài yòu wěn.

Wǒ zǒu yǐqián mǔqīn yòu mángle hěn jiǔ gěi wǒ shòushì xíngli, tiāntiān zuò wǒ xīhuan chī de cài, hái qīng wǒ jǐge zuì hǎode péngyou dào wǒmen

10 jiālì lái hē chá.

Wǒ mǎile fēijī piào yǐhòu mǎshàng jiù gěi Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Měiyīng xiě xìn gào su tāmen wǒ nǚtiān zǒu, fēijī shénmo shíhòu dào. Gāo Xiānsheng tāmen shì hěn xīwang wǒ huí lai de, jiēdào wǒde xìn dāngrán tāmen hěn huānying wǒ lái le, suǒyǐ Gāo Xiānsheng xiě xìn shuō wǒ dào le

15 yǐhòu xiān zhùzai tāmen jiā lǐtòu, mǎnmǎrde zhǎo fángzi.

Shàngle fēijī yǐhòu, Měiguode tiānqì yìzhíde dōu hěn hǎo, kěshì dào le Rìběn ne, tiānqì jiù bù hǎo le. Bǐ yuánlái de zhōngdiǎnr, wǎnle bàngē zhōngtóu, cái qǐ fēi. Wǒ xīnlì xiǎng zhēn zāogāo. Gāo Xiānsheng Gāo Tàitai Měiyīng tāmen yídìng zài fēijīchǎng děi děng bàntiān. Zhēn duìbuqǐ tāmen,

20 ràng tāmen jiù děng.

Dàole Dōngjīng yǒu liǎngwèi Rìben péngyou dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē wo.
Tāmen xīwang wǒ gēn tāmen yíkuàr qu wárwar, kěshi méi yǒu hěn duōde
shíhou, fēijī jiù yào qǐ fēi le, suǒyǐ wǒ bù néng líkai fēijīchǎng. Wǒ jiù
qīng tāmen liǎngwèi zài fēijīchǎng cāntīng wǒmen yíkuàr hē diār chá tánle
25 yìhuěr. Zhèi liǎngwèi péngyou hěn hǎo. Gēn tāmen tántan, xīnli yě hěn
tòngkuai. Yéxǔ tāmen bù jiǔ ye dào Zhōngguó lái. Tāmen yě shì yánjiu
Zhōngguó yǔyán gēn wénxué de. Zhèi liǎngwèi péngyou hěn niánqīng, kěshi
tāmende xuéwen dōu hěn hǎo.

Dàole Zhōngguó fēijī luòxiālai yǐhòu, wǒ yí xià fēijī jiù tīngjian
30 Měiyīng yuǎnyuārde jiào wǒde míngzi. Wǒ zài yuǎnyuārde hěn duō rén
lǐtou, jiù kànjian Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Měiyīng le, kěshi méi kànjian Gāo
Tàitai. Wǒ mǎshàng pǎoguóqu. Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Měiyīng yí kànjian wǒ
dāngrán hěn gāoxìng le, kěshi wǒ juéde hěn duìbuqǐ tāmen, ràng tāmen děng
nènmo jiǔ. Wǒ xīn lǐtou xiǎng Gāo Tàitai yéxǔ xiān huíqu le. Gāo
35 Xiānsheng yì shuō wó cái míngbai, Gāo Tàitai, zài jiā lǐtou mángzhe zuò
fàn, bù néng lái.

Měiyīng shì yíge yòu cōngmíng yòu piàoliangde nǚ hái. Wǒ sānnián
méi kànjian ta le. Hǎoxiang bǐ yǐqián gèng piàoliang le. Nèitiān ta
chuānzhe hóng yīfu, piàoliangde bùdéliǎo.

40 Gāo Xiānsheng hái shì gēn cóngqián yíyàng. Ta zuì gāoxìng gēn wǒ
zài yíkuàr tántan. Ta shuō wǒ zǒule yǐhòu ta hěn jìmo. Wǒ yě shì hěn
xiǎngniàn Gāo Xiānsheng. Ta shuō wǒ bǐ yǐqián shòule yìdiǎr, yéxǔ yīnwei
zhè jǐnián zài Měiguó niàn shū bǐjiào máng yìdiǎr. Nèitiān zài fēijīchǎng
hěn yǒu yìsi. Gāo Xiānsheng kànjian wo hěn gāoxìng, shuō huà shuōde
45 shíhou bǐjiào cháng yìdiǎr. Biéde kèren dōu zǒuguāng le, jiù shèngxia wǒ
yíge rén le. Rúguǒ bú shì Měiyīng gàosu rén dōu zǒuguāng le, Gāo
Xiānsheng hái gēn wǒ shuō ne.

Wèntí

1. Shéi dào fēijīchǎng qù jiē Bái Wénshān?
2. Bái Wénshān gěi Gāo Xiānsheng de xìnshang xiězhe fēijī jǐdiǎn zhōng dào fēijīchǎng?
3. Ta shì cóng shénmo dìfang dào Zhōngguó qu de?
4. Gāo Xiānsheng xiǎng fēijī wèi shénmo lái wǎn le? Tā yòu xiǎng wèi shénmo lái wǎn le?
5. Fēijī shì cóng 'nēige fāngxiang lái de? Shì cóng 'nēiguó lái de?



6. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō pēnshèjī néng zuò duōshao rén?
7. Bái Wénshān chuān de shì shénmo yīfu? Dài màozi méi you?
8. Bái Wénshān xià fēijī de shíhòu shéi zài ta qiántou xiàlai de?
9. Gāo Tàitai wèi shénmo méi dào fēijīchǎng lái jiē Bái Wénshān?
10. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō Wénshān hǎoxiàng bǐ yǐqián zěnmoyàng le?
11. Gāo Xiānsheng wèn Wénshān fēijī zěnmò wǎn le yìdiǎr. Wénshān shuō wèi shénmo wǎn le?
12. Gāo Xiānsheng wèn Wénshān pēnshèjī hěn wěn ba. Wénshān zěnmò shuō?
13. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō Wénshān huí Měiguó yǐhòu ta juéde zěnmoyàng? Wénshān huílai le ta yòu juéde zěnmoyàng?
14. Tā zěnmò wèn Gāo Xiānsheng guānyú Wàn Jiàoshòu gēn Qián Xiānsheng de shìqíng?
15. Bái Xiānsheng gēn Gāo Xiānsheng shuō méi rén gēn ta huá quán le. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō tā hái huá quán ma?
16. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō jiāo Wénshān zuò shénmo?
17. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō wǎnshàng ràng Wénshān huá quán Měiyīng juéde hǎo bu hǎo?
18. Shéi gàosu Bái Xiānsheng rén dōu zǒu le?
19. Wénshān qu jiǎnchá xíngli Gāo Xiānsheng shuō zài nǎr dēngzhe ta?
20. Jiǎnchá xíngli yǐhòu tāmen shàng nǎr qu?
21. Yǒu péngyou lái jiē nǐ nǐ kànjian tāmen yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
22. Nǐ yào wèn péngyou jiālìde rén dōu hǎo ma, yīngdāng zěnmò wèn?
23. Rúguǒ yíge rén gēn nǐ shuō ta lǎole nǐ zěnmò shuō?
24. Yíge péngyou zuò de fēiji huòzhe chuán lái wǎn le nǐ yīngdāng zěnmò wèn?
25. Péngyou qu jiē nǐ, nǐ lái wǎn le, tāmen dēngde tài jiǔ le, nǐ gēn tāmen shuō shénmo?

26. Nǐ gàosu yíge péngyou shuō nǐ zuò de fēijī hěn wǎn, nǐ zěnmò gàosu tā?
27. Nǐ qù jiē péngyou, péngyou gēn nǐ shuō "Xièxie nǐ. Tài máfan nǐ le," nǐ zěnmò shuō?
28. Péngyou shuō nǐ zǒule tā hěn jìmo nǐ shuō shénmo?
29. Nǐde péngyou jǐnián bù jiànle xiànzai lái le, nǐ gēn tā shuō shénmo ne?
30. Nǐde péngyou qu jiǎnchá xíngli nǐ gàosu tā shénmo?

Dialogue: Mr. Gao and Miss Gao Meiying go to the airport to meet Vincent White.

Gao: Meiying, it's already 3:30. It's odd [lit. why is it] that the plane hasn't arrived yet.

Mei: That's so!

Gao: Could it be that the plane was late in taking off?

Mei: Perhaps.

Gao: Otherwise he made a mistake in his letter. He wrote 3:30 for 4:30.

Mei: He's not likely to have made a mistake. I suppose it must be that at take-off time the weather there was bad, so they left late.

Gao: Maybe. . . . It'll soon be 4:00.

Mei: Papa, look! There's a plane approaching there.

Gao: Where?

Mei: Look there.

Gao: That's right. It's coming from the right direction. [lit. The northeast direction is right.] It's the plane from Japan. Probably it's Vincent's plane. . . . The plane's landed.

Mei: Gee! This plane's really big. Papa, how many people can such a big plane seat?

Gao: [It can seat] over a hundred [people].

Mei: Look. It's discharging the passengers. . . .

Gao: A lot of people have gotten off. How come he hasn't yet? Perhaps we're too far from the plane. When he comes down we won't be able to see him.

Mei: Papa, look! Vincent has just gotten off!

Gao: Which one, which one?

Mei: That one. That tall one wearing a blue suit and a white hat.

Gao: Which one, which one?

Mei: Gosh! How come you can't see him! The one behind the fat lady.

Gao: Oh! That's him.

Mei : That's right. Vincent! Vincent!! VINCENT!!!

White: MEIYING! . . . Mr. Gao, how are you? Thank you and Meiying for coming to meet me. It's really been a long time since we've seen one another.

Gao : It's been three years [since we've seen each other]. How are you? Is everyone well at home, Vincent?

White: Fine. My father and mother asked me to give you and Mrs. Gao their best.

Gao : Thank you.

White: Is Mrs. Gao well?

Gao : Very well. She's busy cooking at home, so she didn't come to meet you.

White: Here I come troubling Mrs. Gao again.

Gao : Not at all.

White: Meiying, you're really pretty. You're even more beautiful than before.

Mei : Bosh!

Gao : Vincent, you seem a little thinner.

White: Really? Do you think I've gotten thinner? I'm not aware of it myself, though.

Gao : How do you find me? Have I gotten older?

White: No, you haven't. You're the same as before. You're even younger than before, I think.

Gao : You're joking. Vincent, how come (the plane) was a little late?

White: [It was indeed.] When we were in Japan the weather was very bad, and it was raining hard, so the announcement was made that we would leave after a half-hour wait, that it would clear up in half an hour, so by the time we arrived here it was already 4:00. I've made you wait quite a while.

Gao : No, no.

Mei : Papa said maybe you wrote the time of departure wrong.

White: No, I didn't.

Gao : The jet flight was smooth?

White: Very smooth. It didn't feel at all like being on a plane. It was like sitting in a room.

Gao : Vincent, you know, after you left I was really awfully lonesome. As soon as your letter arrived saying you were coming, you can imagine how pleased and happy I was.

White: I've thought of you often, too, and wished I could come back to China soon. Mr. Gao, did Professor Wanamaker come back again? I take it you see Mr. Qian often?

- Gao : I often do [see Mr. Qian]. Professor Wanamaker hasn't come back, but we frequently correspond.
- White: There isn't anyone to play "guess-fingers" with you?
- Gao : Sometimes I play with other friends too. Now that you've come, I must teach you how to play ["guess-fingers"].
- White: Fine.
- Gao : This evening we'll play.
- Mei : Papa, he has just gotten off a plane and without letting him rest you want him to play "guess-fingers."
- Gao : But playing "guess-fingers" doesn't make one tired.
- Mei : Everyone's gone. Only Vincent is left.
- Gao : Right. Vincent must go to have his baggage examined. Vincent, go have your baggage inspected and we'll wait for you at the exit.
- White: Fine.
- Gao : After you've had the baggage examined we'll return home together. Don't leave anything behind. See you soon.
- White: See you soon.
- Mei : See you soon.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

1. 1. How come you haven't gotten up yet? It's already past nine.
1. 2. Yesterday I returned home very [lit. too] late. [At home] they had already eaten dinner.
1. 3. How is it that he hasn't come yet? It's already 7:30.
2. 1. I certainly don't study as well as you do.
2. 2. You're not as studious as he is, though.
2. 3. I'm inviting you to dinner. If you don't come I'll [indeed] be unhappy.
3. 1. How come you eat so much? . . . That's right! As soon as I eat Chinese food I eat too much.
3. 2. We're about to have exams again. . . . Quite so. We must study hard.
4. 1. It's been only in the past few decades that man has been able to fly.
4. 2. [At the place] where I live there are planes flying past all the time [lit. every day].
4. 3. This plane goes [lit. flies] from here to Japan.
5. 1. Could you tell me, please, when the plane for San Francisco leaves?
5. 2. As soon as the plane took off we returned home

5. 3. That plane leaves from the Tokyo airport at 3:30 P.M.
6. 1. The weather's bad today. I'm afraid the plane will be late in leaving.
6. 2. Was the plane for New York late in leaving?
7. 1. This evening if I don't eat sweet-and-sour fish then I'll have red-cooked chicken. Otherwise I'll have lion's head.
7. 2. I plan to see some friends. If I don't do that I'll go see a movie.
8. 1. I misheard what he said. I heard No. 350 as No. 450.
8. 2. He misread the second-tone word as a third tone.
8. 3. This picture he's done is no good. He's drawn a lion as a tiger.
8. 4. Please write these Chinese characters in transcription.
8. 5. I looked at my watch wrong. I took 9:30 to be 5:45.
8. 6. I identified the man wrong. I mistook him for Mr. Wang.
8. 7. I read the character for two as the character for three.
8. 8. You've spelled this word wrong. You wrote [the word] xué as xiě.
9. 1. He hasn't come. Perhaps it's (because) he's busy.
9. 2. It isn't that he doesn't have any money. He doesn't like to buy things.
9. 3. I'm going by plane. How about you?
10. 1. Tomorrow perhaps we'll look into this matter.
10. 2. On Saturday perhaps we'll go see a movie.
11. 1. Your papa has bought you some candy.
11. 2. My daddy says he met you on the street yesterday.
12. 1. Could you tell me what direction to take to the Three Friends Bookstore?
13. 1. At what airport is this plane landing?
13. 2. A big plane came down at that little airport near my home.
13. 3. When we arrived at the airport the plane had already landed.
14. 1. Mr. Wang isn't at home. He just left.
14. 2. I have only sixty-three cents.
15. 1. Now the weather's turned warm. You should wear less (clothing).
15. 2. Miss Wang likes to wear red.
16. 1. The clothes he wears are all made in England.
16. 2. Some girls like to wear boys' clothes.
17. 1. That black hat of hers was bought in Japan.
17. 2. (When) the weather is warm there's no need to wear a hat.
18. 1. He's quite tall [in stature].

- 18.2. I'm [lit. my size is] a lot taller than you.
- 18.3. That teacher is a tall fellow.
- 18.4. Boys are taller than girls [in size].
- 19.1. How have you been these (past) few days?
- 19.2. How is it that you've come so early?
- 19.3. Mr. Wang hasn't come yet?
- 20.1. My eyes aren't so good. I can't see far.
- 20.2. That girl has beautiful eyes.
- 21.1. I've gotten too fat. I must eat less.
- 21.2. My younger brother is a lot fatter than I am.
- 22.1. He's busy taking exams.
- 22.2. I did this painting badly, as he was in a hurry for it.
- 22.3. He's in a hurry to board the plane.
- 22.4. I don't have time now. I'm in a hurry to go to school.
- 23.1. Miss Qian has come to borrow some books.
- 23.2. Professor Wanmaker has come to do research in linguistics.
- 23.3. I'm going to Japan on a trip.
- 23.4. A friend invited me to go to his home for dinner.
- 24.1. If you don't recognize this word don't read it any which way.
- 24.2. Don't talk nonsense about things you don't know about.
- 25.1. That landscape he's painted seems to be Soochow.
- 25.2. I seem to recognize that gentleman sitting (there).
- 25.3. He seems to study harder than he used to do [lit. than in the past].
- 25.4. He looks like his father.
- 25.5. This book of mine seems to be the same as yours.
- 26.1. Still it's more attractive for women to be thinner.
- 26.2. Mr. Qian is a lot thinner than before.
- 27.1. Although I've read a lot today, I don't feel tired.
- 27.2. Except for [not eating] shrimp, though, he eats everything.
- 27.3. He's quite studious, however. If he doesn't read [then] he listens to recordings.
- 28.1. Although he's young he's quite learned.
- 28.2. Mr. Zhang is younger than Mr. Wang.
- 29.1. Darn! It's raining today. We can't go on the trip after all.

- 29.2. Go see if it's raining [outside or not].
- 29.3. Last Saturday it rained really hard.
- 29.4. It's raining. The plane will be an hour late in leaving.
- 30.1. I don't know when this matter was announced.
- 30.2. Last Thursday the school announced that this Friday will be a holiday.
- 31.1. Have him come in after a while.
- 31.2. I'm quite busy now. I'll go in a little while.
- 31.3. It will be an hour yet before the food can be ready.
- 31.4. We'll go together after he arrives.
- 32.1. The Western Hills can be seen when it's clear.
- 32.2. If it's a clear day tomorrow we'll go on a trip outside the city.
- 32.3. It hasn't cleared up yet today. Perhaps it will [clear up] tomorrow.
- 33.1. He came to China long ago.
- 33.2. I haven't written a letter to my girl friend in quite a while.
- 34.1. I'm [lit. I've come] late. I had [lit. remembered] the time wrong.
- 34.2. He's very punctual. If he specifies a time then he comes at that time.
- 35.1. Does a jet plane seat a greater number of people?
- 35.2. As soon as he arrived at the airport the jet took off.
- 35.3. Jets make a tremendous noise.
- 36.1. Jets fly smoothly.
- 36.2. I hear that locality is unstable. It would be best not to go traveling (there).
- 37.1. That house of ours has five rooms in all.
- 38.1. You know, I like most your coming to talk with me.
- 38.2. How about it? Let's go see a movie today, O.K. ?
- 38.3. (Let's do it) this way. Tomorrow all of you go in my car.
- 39.1. Today I was alone at home. It was very lonesome.
- 39.2. My friends have all gone elsewhere. I'm terribly lonesome.
- 40.1. I was just going over that matter in my mind.
- 40.2. He's very kind-hearted. He likes to help others very much.
- 41.1. You'll be [lit. feel] quite happy talking [together] with them.
- 41.2. I misread an exam question today, so I'm pretty sad.
- 42.1. In studying a language one must constantly listen to recordings.
- 42.2. Our English dictionaries are often taken away by the students.

43. 1. I haven't seen my girl friend for quite a long time. I think of her a great deal.
43. 2. It's [already] been three years since you left home. You must think of your mother and father a lot.
44. 1. I hope within this year to be able to speak very good Chinese.
44. 2. I hope I'll never leave here.
44. 3. Your mother thinks of you a great deal, and wishes she could see you soon.
45. 1. I haven't seen him for a good while.
45. 2. I know his name, but I've never seen him.
46. 1. When Mr. White was in America he often corresponded with Miss Gao.
46. 2. I often correspond with him. Moreover we write [letters] in Chinese.
47. 1. Today I went to his home three times, (but) he was never at home.
47. 2. This time I'll win.
47. 3. I didn't do too well in this examination.
48. 1. He sent a letter telling us to go meet him at 10:30 in the morning on the third of next month.
48. 2. Let's go by car, otherwise we'll be late.
49. 1. Everyone else studies better than I do.
49. 2. I eat more dumplings than anyone else.
49. 3. He practices pronunciation, to be sure, but still he doesn't speak as well as others.
50. 1. Papa says we will go to the park after he has rested a while.
50. 2. I've already been studying for six hours. I must rest a while.
50. 3. Today's a holiday. Aren't you taking it easy too?
51. 1. It's already five o'clock. The whole student body has left.
51. 2. Today's food was really delicious. We ate it all up.
51. 3. I spent all my money on books. [lit. My money was all used up in buying books.]
51. 4. Fighting has broken out in the city. Everyone has fled.
51. 5. That Chinese-English dictionary that the Three Friends Bookstore was selling is really good. It was completely bought up [by people] in a very short while.
52. 1. Having the baggage inspected is a nuisance.
52. 2. I have a lot of baggage. (They) can't finish inspecting it even in half an hour.
52. 3. We don't have much baggage [lit. our baggage is simple], so it will be easy for them to inspect it.

53. 1. Could you tell me where the exit is?
53. 2. As soon as the passengers come out of the exit they go first to the cafeteria.
53. 3. Let's go to the passenger exit to wait for him.
54. 1. (When) you invite Mr. Zhang to dinner, be sure not to leave out Mr. Wang.
54. 2. I left my books at school.
54. 3. When you get off the bus don't leave your books.
55. 1. Excuse me, I'm going ahead. See you soon.
55. 2. I have a little matter (to attend to). I'll come in a moment.
55. 3. [Later on] when you come don't forget to bring money.
56. 1. Some raw vegetables can be eaten, some can't.
56. 2. I'm not good at carrying on a conversation so I don't like to talk to strangers.
57. 1. Is this teapot a new one?
57. 2. What's your new friend's name?
57. 3. We must first learn the new words and grammar.
57. 4. I can't find the pencils I bought recently.
57. 5. Was your car bought recently?
58. 1. We will soon be examined in mathematics. We must [first] review it.
58. 2. Please open your books and look at the first review sentence.
59. 1. This is the only book he wants to buy, but it can't be bought anywhere.
59. 2. For a person to go traveling by himself is no fun at all [lit. quite uninteresting].
59. 3. We're all having almond beancurd. Only Mr. Wang is not having any.
59. 4. There's not enough time (for anyone else to talk). The teacher says he's just asking you [alone] to talk.
59. 5. In this book we use the dialogue in each lesson to write a monologue.

Review Sentences

1. How many people can your car seat? . . . It can seat two in front and three in back.
2. At what time will the boat discharge passengers?
3. Is it already 8:30?
4. I've [already] been reading this book for five hours today. It's very interesting. I don't feel at all tired.

5. There's not a single new word in the review sentences.
6. Did your father send you a letter? . . . My father didn't, but my mother did.
7. I've caused you too much trouble today. I'm awfully grateful to you. . . . Not at all.
8. Did Professor Wang inform you that we don't need to go to school today (because) he isn't coming? . . . Is that so?
9. The airport reports that the plane from Tokyo is now landing.
10. How many passengers have embarked altogether?
11. I'd like to eat. What would you like to do?
12. My friend sent me a letter saying he will come next week.
13. I planned to go to China long ago.
14. Who is that old gentleman wearing black clothes and a white hat?
15. Vincent! Come here! I have something to say to you.
16. How much does that red hat sell for?
17. Mr. Wang is seated between the fat gentleman and the thin lady.
18. He's seriously ill and certainly can't survive.
19. In the northeast [direction] there's a small airfield.
20. Those people chatting near the passenger exit have all come to meet Professor Wang.

Notes

1. It is a peculiarity of the Peking dialect that adverbs are sometimes used at the end of a sentence, instead of in their normal position before a verb. They may occur twice—in the usual position and at the end. Dōu 'all' occurs especially often in final position, in which case it is neutral in tone. In the first line of the Dialogue dōu can be used either before or after sāndiǎn bàn le, or in both positions. Note that the position before sāndiǎn bàn, a nominal expression, is unusual for dōu, since adverbs normally precede verbs. Here, however, sāndiǎn bàn is functioning as a predicate—a nominal predicate rather than a verbal predicate, to be sure—and it is this which permits the use of dōu in front of it. Note also that dōu is here equivalent to 'already.'
2. The postverb chéng 'become' is suffixed to a verb, most often in the pattern bǎ A V-chéng B 'to V A as B.' Thus:
Tā bǎ 'dà' zì niànchéng 'tiān' zì le. 'He (mis)read the character dà [big] as the character tiān [day].'
3. The verb shì inserted in a sentence often has the force of 'it is a matter of, it is a fact that.' Compare

Wǒ xiǎng ta méi gōngfu qù. 'I think he doesn't have time to go.' and
 Wǒ xiǎng shì ta méi gōngfu qù. 'I think it is a matter of his not hav-
 ing time to go.'

This interpretation of shì as 'it is a matter of' can frequently be applied also to shì used after an adverb. (That is to say, shì slightly emphasizes the preceding adverb.) Compare

Wǒmen zhēn hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. 'We really haven't seen each other for
 a long time.'

and

Wǒmen zhēn shì hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. 'We really haven't seen each other
 for a long time.' or 'It's really a fact that we haven't seen each
 other for a long time.'

4. The sentence-final particle a, which variously represents a pause, a question, or a supposition, is sometimes written ya after i, ü, e, ua, uo, and as wa after u and ao.
5. The pattern N mángzhe V (ne) means 'N is busy doing V' or 'N is in a hurry to do V.' E.g.:

Tā mángzhe xiě xìn ne. 'He's busy writing letters.'

6. The verbs lái 'come' and qù 'go,' which are used either before or after a verbal expression to indicate purpose (Beginning Chinese, p. 117, Note 6), are also used simultaneously before and after the verbal expression, in the same meaning:

Ta lái jiè shū or Tā jiè shū lai or Ta lái jiè shū lai
 'He is coming to borrow some books.'

7. The verb hǎoxiang 'resemble, seem (to)' can replace the simple verb xiàng, which has the same meaning, in all the uses listed for xiàng in Beginning Chinese, Lesson 17 (see especially p. 293, Note 4), except that hǎoxiang cannot be preceded by the negative adverbs bù or méi. A very common use of this word is in the pattern A hǎoxiang B (shide), where B can be either a noun or a verb phrase:

Ta hǎoxiang wàiguó rén. or

Ta hǎoxiang wàiguó rén shide. 'He looks like a foreigner.'

Ta jīntian hǎoxiang bù gāoxìng. or

Ta jīntian hǎoxiang bù gāoxìng shide. 'He seems to be unhappy to-
 day.'

8. Some Chinese sentences, among them those describing weather, contain impersonal Verb-Object constructions: Xià yǔ. 'It's raining [lit. It is coming down rain].' If yǔ 'rain' precedes xià, as in Yǔ xiàde hěn dà, it acts as a topic being commented on: 'As for the rain, it is coming down heavily.'

9. The verb děng 'wait' occurs as a full verb in the following sentence:

Qīng nín děng yìhuǐr. Wǒ yǒu shì. 'Please wait a moment. I have something to do.'

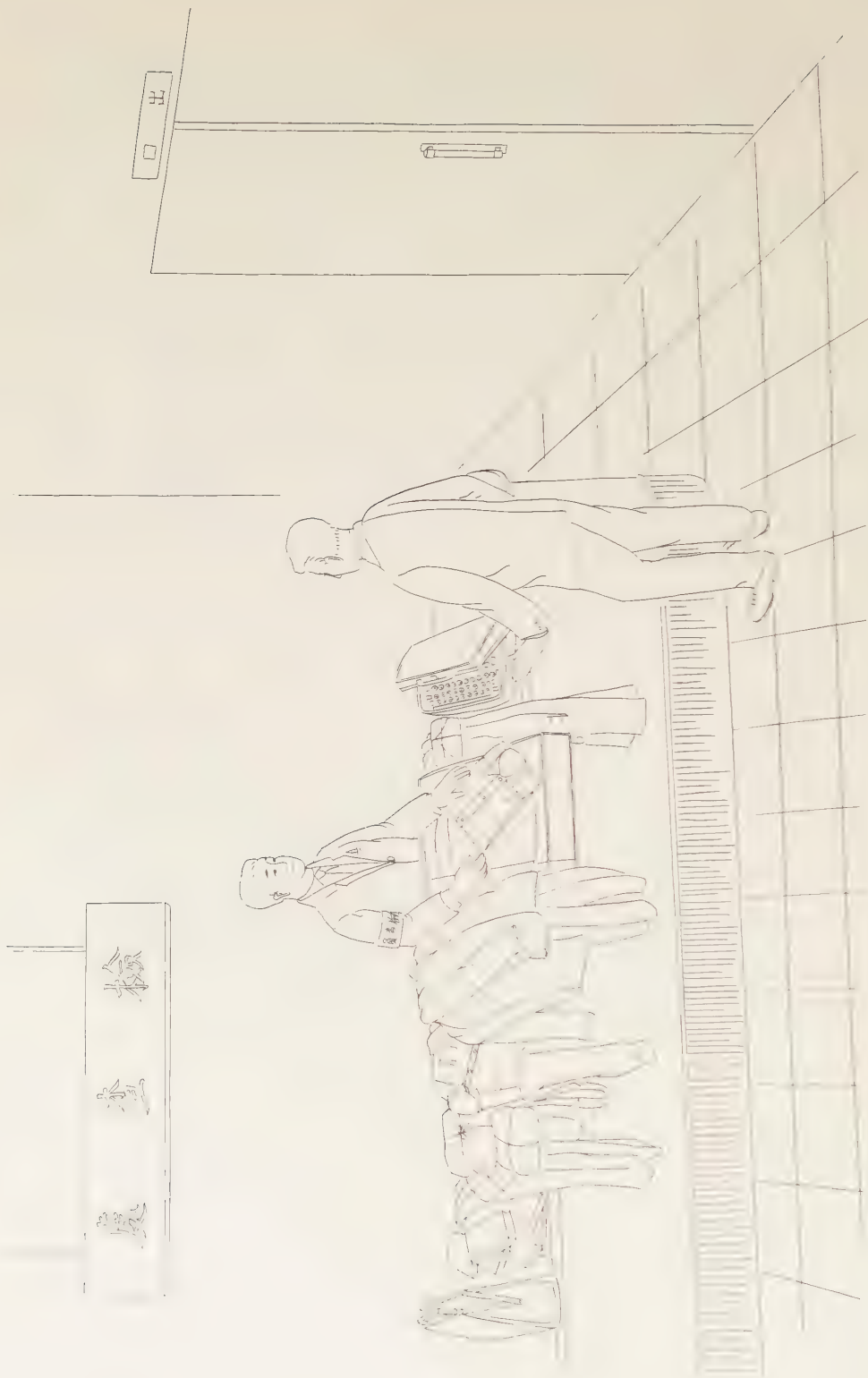
It also functions as a sort of coverb in the patterns N děng A V or Děng A N V '(N) performs the action of the verb V after A':

Wǒmen děng ta zǒule zài shuō. or

Děng ta zǒule wǒmen zài shuō 'We'll talk of it further after he's left.'

Usually an adverb (commonly zài 'again,' or cái 'then, then and only then') occurs before the main verb. Note that A can be either an expression of time (yìhuǐr 'a moment'), or an action (ta zǒule 'he's left').

10. Zánmen 'we[inclusive]' is used to indicate specifically that the person being addressed is included in the pronoun. Wǒmen 'we' can either include or exclude the person being addressed. Thus if Tom is speaking to Dick about Harry (who is not present), zámen refers only to Tom and Dick, but wǒmen can refer to either (a) Tom and Dick, (b) Tom and Harry or (c) Tom, Dick, and Harry.
11. The sign for EXIT in Chinese is written with two characters pronounced chūkǒu (chūkǒu in Pekingese). Chūkǒuchù, with suffixed chù 'place,' means 'the place where the exit is,' or simply 'exit.'
12. In the printed versions of Chinese plays the names of the characters are often shortened to one syllable. There are various ways of doing this. One of the most common is to use the surname only. Persons with the same surname can be distinguished by using the given name instead. If the latter consists of two syllables, most often only the second is used. The first syllable can also be used, however, especially if the second syllables of two two-syllable given names are the same and the first are distinctive. In our abbreviations in the Dialogues we use either the surname (Bái, Gāo), the first syllable of the given name (Měi for Měiyīng), or a syllable in a title (Tài for Tàitai). (For the abbreviations used, see above, p. xi.)



“Duìbùqǐ bǎ mǐn dōngxi nòngde luànqībāzāo.”

Dì Èrkè. Jiǎnchá Xíngli

Huìhuà: Bái Xiānsheng gēn jiǎncháyuán tán huà.

Xiànzài Bái Xiānsheng zài xíngli jiǎncháchù jiǎnchá xíngli. Yīnwei ta shì zuì hòu yíge kèrén le, jiǎncháyuán Wàn Xuéwén yě méi shì le, yìbiār jiǎnchá xíngli yìbiār jiù gēn Bái Xiānsheng tán huà.

5 Wàn: Nèiwèi shì Bái Wénshān Xiānsheng?

Bái: Wǒ shì.

Wàn: Míngdānshang shì 'Zhōngguó míngzi. Yuántái nín shì 'wàiguó rén ne. Wǒ yǐwei nín shì 'Zhōngguó rén ne.

10 Bái: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ lái wǎn le. Gēn péngyou shuō huà shuōde tài jiǔ le. Tāmen lái jiē wo. Hěn jiǔ bú jiàn le, shuōqilai jiù méi wán le.

Wàn: Méi guānxi. Nín jiù zhèi diǎr xíngli ma?

Bái: Duìle. Wǒ zìjǐ jiù dài zhèi yìdiǎr. Qíyúde wǒ dōu jiāogei lǚxíngshè le, ràng chuán yùn.

15 Wàn: Yígòng jǐjiàn xíngli nín yǒu?

Bái: Wǒ yígòng yǒu sānjiàn xíngli: yíge shǒutíbāo, yíge dà píbāo, hái yǒu yíge dǎzìjī.

Wàn: Qǐng nín ná yàoshi bǎ dà píbāo xiān dǎkai hǎo ba? . . . Zhèixie zhǐbāo dōu shì shénmo?

20 Bái: Dōu shì yìxiē lǐwu. Shì sònggei péngyou de.

Wàn: Dōu shì 'shénmo dōngxì ne?

Bái: Shì nǚrén píbāo, xiǎo wúxiàndiàn, shǒushi shénmode.

Wàn: Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen dōu dǎi dǎkai qiáoqiao. Zhèixie dōngxì dōu shì sòng péngyou de ma?

25 Bái: Shìde.

Wàn: Nèi jǐtào yīfu ne?

Bái: Shì wǒ zìjǐ chuānde.

Wàn: Nín suǒshang ba. Qǐng nín zài bǎ shǒutíbāo dǎkai.

30 Bái: Shǒutíbāoli méi shénmo. Jiu shì zázhi bàozhǐ gēn jǐběn shū hái yǒu rìjìběn shénmode.

Wàn: Dōu shì něizhǒng zázhi ne?

Bái: Wénxué zázhi.

Wàn: Shū shì shénmo shū ne?

Bái: Dōu shì 'Zhōngwén shū.

35 Wàn: Nín dōu shì Zhōngwén shū wa! Nín néng kàn Zhōngwén shū?

Bái: Wǒ kéyì kàn.

Wàn: Zhèige dà běnzi shì shénmo?

Bái: Shì wǒde rìjìběn.

Wàn: Dǎzìjī shì xīnde háishi jiùde ne?

40 Bái: Shì xīnde.

Wàn: Shì zìjǐ yòng de ma?

Bái: Shì wǒ zìjǐ yòng de.

Wàn: Shì něiguó huò ne?

Bái: Shì Měiguó huò.

45 Wàn: Oh, nín cóng Měiguó dàilái de. Nín shì Měiguó rén ma?

Bái: Shìde, wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

Wàn: Nín shì dì yí cì shàng zhèr lái ma?

Bái: Bú shì, wǒ shì dì èr cì le.

Wàn: Nín Zhōngguó huà shuōde zhēn liúli ya.

50 Bái: Guòjiāng, guòjiāng. Wǒ yǐqián bǐ xiànzài shuōde hǎo yìdiǎr. Huídào Měiguó yǐhòu wa, sānnián yě méi shuō le, dōu wàng le.

Wàn: Yǔyán shì yào cháng yòng cháng shuō.

Bái: Wǒ gāngcái tīng nín gēn nèiwèi xiānsheng shuō Yīngwén. Shuōde hěn hǎo me: fāyīn yǒu zhǔn, shuōde yǒu liúli.

55 Wàn: Nín kèqì ne.

Bái: Shízàide! Nín zài zhèr gōngzuò jǐnián le?

Wàn: Wǒ zuòle liǎngnián duō le. Wǒ bù xiǎng cháng zuò. Wǒ zuì jìn xiǎng chū guó qu niàn shū. Wǒ duì zhèizhǒng gōngzuò méi shénmo xìngqu. Měitiān dōu shì jiǎnchá rénjiā dōngxì. Fēijī méi lái jiu zài zhèr dēngzhe. Fēijī yì lái jiu mángde bùdéliǎo, bǎ rénjiā dōngxì nòngde luànqibāzāo. Zhèzhǒng gōngzuò méi shénmo yìsi. Nín dào zhèr lái zuò shì háishi niàn shū ne?

60

Bái: Wǒ shì lái niàn shū de.

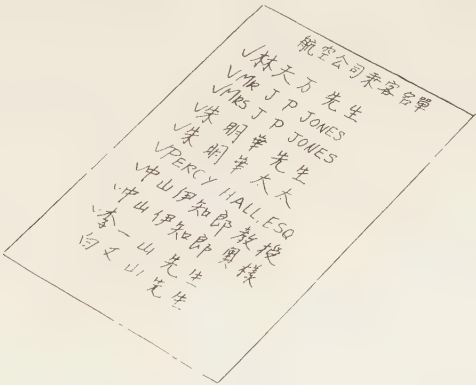
65

Wàn: Xiànzài hěn duō wàiguó rén dōu yánjiū Zhōngwén, érqǐ yánjiūde dōu hěn hǎo.

Bái: Yě bù yídìng dōu hěn hǎo. Wǒ wàngle wèn nín guàixìng le.

Wàn: Wǒ xìng Wàn, míngzi jiào Xuéwén. Wǒ gěi nín ge míngpiār.

- Bái : Duìbuqǐ Wàn Xiānsheng, wǒ méi dài míngpiàn. Tīng nín de kǒuyīn, nín shì běn dì rén ba?
- 70 Wàn: Shì, wǒ shì běn dì rén. Duìbuqǐ bǎ nín dōngxi nòngde luànqibāzāo.
- Bái : Zhè shì nín de zhíwu me. Xiànzài wǒ kéyì zǒu le ba?
- Wàn: Nín kéyì zǒu le. Xíngli nín bú yòng ná. Qǐng nín xiān dào chūkǒuchù dēngzhe. Mǎshàng lìfū jiù bǎ nín de xíngli sòngchugu.
- Bái : Xīwang wǒmen zài jiàn.
- 75 Wàn: Hái you. Nín de xíngli yàoshi yǒu péngyou yòng chē lái jiē nín, nín jiù yíkuài bǎ xíngli dài zǒu. Yàoshi méi rén lái jiē, hángkōng gōngsī yǒu chē kéyì sòng nín gēn xíngli jìn chéng suíbiàn dào hángkōng gōngsī mén kǒu, huòchē zhàn, huòzhe Shìjiè Lǚguǎn.
- 80 Bái : Wǒ yǒu péngyou lái jiē. Dàgài tāmen yǒu chē. Wǒ cóng zhèr yìzhí de jiù dào péngyou jiā le.
- Wàn: Nà hǎo jí le. Zài jiàn, Bái Xiānsheng.
- Bái : Zài jiàn, Wàn Xiānsheng.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (1) jiǎncháyuán customs officer (N) [lit. examine inspect officer]
- 1.1. Jiǎnchá xíngli de rén jiào jiǎncháyuán.
- 1.2. Wǒ de xíngli tài duō. Nèiwèi jiǎncháyuán jiǎnchale liǎngge zhōngtóu cái jiǎnchawán.
- 2.0. (2) jiǎncháchù inspection place, customs office (N) [lit. examine inspect place] *yna*
- 2.1. Wǒmen xiàle fēijī bìděi xiān dào jiǎncháchù qu.
- 2.2. Qǐng nín xiān dào jiǎncháchù mén kǒu dēngzhe wo.
- 3.0. (3) zuì hòu last (of all) (MA)
- zuì xiān first (of all) (MA)
- zuì jìn closest (of all), most recently, very soon (MA)

- zuì duō most (of all), at most (MA)
 zuì shǎo least (of all), at least (MA)
 zuì hǎo best (of all), would be best to (MA)
- 3.1. Wǒ zuì hòu xià de fēijī.
 3.2. Jīntiān Bái Xiānsheng qǐng de kèrén lǐtōu wǒ shì zuì xiān lái de.
 3.3. Tīngshuō zuì jìn Wáng Xiānsheng yào huí guó le.
 3.4. Zhèiběn shū zuì duō mài yíkuài wǔmáo qián.
 3.5. Nèige fángzi hěn dà. Pà zuì shǎo děi mǎi báwànkui qián.
 3.6. Zuò fēijī zuì hǎo zuò pēnshèjī. Yòu kuài yòu wěn.
 3.7. Wǒ zuì jìn dédào le tā yìfēng xìn.
- 4.0. (4) yìbiān, yímiàn on the one hand (MA) [lit. one side, one face]
 4.1. Xué yǔyán yīngdāng yìbiān kàn shū yìbiān tīng lùyīn.
 4.2. Tā xǐhuan yímiàn chī fàn, yímiàn tīng mǔqin shuō gùshi.
- 5.0. (7) míngdān, míngdār list of names, roster (N) [lit. name list]
 5.1. Xuéxiào míngdānshàng yǒu méi yǒu tāde míngzi?
 5.2. Zhēn qíguài. Zěnmó míngdārshàng méi yǒu wǒ nèirénde míngzi?
- 6.0. (7) yuánlái after all, as a matter of fact (N) [lit. origin come]
 6.1. Tā shuō xué Zhōngwén hěn róngyì. Yuánlái hěn nán.
 6.2. Shéi dōu shuō nèige xuésheng hěn cōngmíng. Yuánlái tā hěn bèi.
- 7.0. (8) yǐwei think (incorrectly), suppose (MA) [lit. take to be]
 7.1. Zhèizhī bǐ wǒ yǐwei shì nǐde. Yuánlái shì tāde.
 7.2. Wǒ yǐwei nǐ jīntiān bù lái le ne.
 7.3. Wǒ yǐwei tā huì hē jiǔ ne. Tā yuánlái bú huì.
- 8.0. (12) guānxi connection, relationship; relevance, importance (N) [lit. connection relation]
 méi guānxi (it) doesn't matter
 A duì/gēn B guānxi connection A to/with B
- 8.1. Zhèijiàn shìqing duì tā guānxi hěn dà.
 8.2. Duìbuqǐ, nín de shì wǒ wàng le gēn tā shuō le. . . . Méi guānxi.
 8.3. Nǐ bú qù yě méi guānxi.
 8.4. Zhèijiàn shì duì wǒ méi guānxi.
 8.5. Yīnwèi xià yǔ de guānxi fēijī yào wǎn yìdiǎr qǐ fēi le.
 8.6. Zhōngxuéde Wáng Tàitai gēn xiǎoxuéde Wáng Xiǎojie yǒu méi yǒu guānxi?

- 9.0. (12) jiù (yǒu) N have only N (Note 1)
- 9.1. Shū dōu màiwán le. Jiù zhèi yìběn le.
- 9.2. Nǐ jiù yíkuài qián. Zěnmō néng chī fànguǎr?
- 9.3. Wǒmen yígòng jiù jǐkuài qián. Zěnmō néng chī kǎo yāzi?
- 10.0. (13) qíyúde the rest, the other(s) [lit. its remaining + de]
- 10.1. Jiù yǒu liǎngge cài hǎo chī. Qíyúde dōu bù hǎo chī.
- 10.2. Zhèixiē shū qǐng nǐ dàiqù. Qíyúde wǒ zìjǐ ná.
- 11.0. (13) jiāo(gei) give, hand over (to), deliver (to) (TV)
- 11.1. Tā jiāo nǐ duōshao qián?
- 11.2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèiběn shū jiāogei Wáng Xiānsheng.
- 11.3. Wǒ jiāogei tā wǔkuài qián qǐng tā gěi wǒ mǎi ta lǎoshī huà de nèizhāng huà.
- 11.4. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nèiběn lìshǐ shū jiāogei Wáng Jiàoshòu.
- 11.5. Wǒmen xīngqīliù qu lǚxíng. Nǐ jiāo qián méi you?
- 11.6. Zuótian wǒ mǔqīn jiāogei wǒ jǐkuài qián, jiào wǒ mǎi ròu, mǎi cài gēn jiàngyóu.
- 12.0. (14) lǚxíngshè travel bureau (N) [lit. travel go company]
- 12.1. Lǚxíngshè lí wǒ jiā yǒu èrlǐ duō lù.
- 12.2. Wǒ bǎ suǒyǒude xíngli dōu jiāogei lǚxíngshè le.
- 12.3. Wǒ děi dào lǚxíngshè qu wènwen dào Rìběn qù de chuán piào duōshao qián.
- 13.0. (14) yùn transport (TV) *goods, luggage*
- 13.1. Yùn xíngli hěn máfan.
- 13.2. Wǒde xíngli dōu yùndào fēijīchǎng qu le.
- 13.3. Tài zhòngde xíngli wǒ dōu jiāo chuán yùn.
- 14.0. (15) jiàn (measure for baggage, single pieces of clothing)
- 14.1. Tā yígòng yǒu shíwǔjiàn xíngli.
- 14.2. Wǒ zhèi liǎngjiàn xíngli, zìjǐ dài hǎo háishi jiāo lǚxíngshè yùn hǎo?
- 14.3. Zhèijiàn yīfu shì péngyou sònggei wǒ de.
- 15.0. (15) permutation (Note 2)
- 15.1. Nín yígòng yǒu jǐjiàn xíngli?
- 15.2. Yígòng, jǐjiàn xíngli nín yǒu?
- 15.3. Xíngli, nín yígòng yǒu jǐjiàn?
- 15.4. Nín xíngli, yígòng yǒu jǐjiàn?

- 16.0. (16) shǒutíbāo briefcase (N) [lit. hand lift package]
 16.1. Wǒ shì zài Guǎngdōng mǎi de zhèige shǒutíbāo.
 16.2. Tā bǎ yīfù fàngzai shǒutíbāo lǐmian le.
 16.3. Wǒde shǒutíbāo lǐbiar dōu shì yìxiē guānyú Zhōngguo wénhuà de shū.
- 17.0. (16) píbāo suitcase, bag (N) [lit. leather package]
 17.1. Wǒ mǎi dà píbāo hái shì mǎi xiǎo píbāo?
 17.2. Gāo Xiáojiede píbāo hěn piàoliang.
 17.3. Wǒde píbāo bù qīng. Dàgài nǐ bù néng ná.
- 18.0. (17) hái yǒu and, and there's also (one thing more) (Note 3)
 18.1. Jiǎncháwánle wǒmen yíkuàr zǒu. Hái yǒu. Nǐ kě bié làxia dōngxì.
 18.2. Qǐng nǐ mǎi yìzhī máobǐ, yìbǎizhāng zhǐ, hái yǒu liǎngzhī yánse qiānbǐ, yìzhī hóngde yìzhī lánde.
 18.3. Wǒmen chī biànfàn—yíge tāng, liǎngge cài, hái yǒu yìdiǎr diǎnxīn.
- 19.0. (17) dǎ zì typewrite (VO) [lit. hit characters]
 dǎzì typewriting (N)
 19.1. Nǐ huì dǎ zì bú huì?
 19.2. Wáng Xiáojie dǎ zì dǎde hěn kuài.
 19.3. Dǎ de zì bǐ xiě de zì róngyì kàn.
 19.4. Wǒ xuéle wǔge yuède dǎzì.
- 20.0. (17) dǎzìjī typewriter (N) [lit. hit characters machine]
 20.1. Wǒ xiǎng míngnián mǎi yíge xīnde dǎzìjī.
 20.2. Wǒ shì yòng dǎzìjī dǎ, hái shì yòng gāngbǐ xiě?
 20.3. Wǒmende dǎzìjī bíqilai, hái shì wǒde hǎo.
- 21.0. (18) yàoshi key (N)
 21.1. Wǒde yàoshi yě ràng tāmen gěi nǎzǒu le.
 21.2. Zhèige shì kāi dà mén de yàoshi.
 21.3. Nǐ bǎ yàoshi guàqilai.
- 22.0. (18) A ná/yòng B ba C V A V C with B (Note 4)
 22.1. Mā, qǐng nín ná yàoshi bǎ zhèige mén kāikai.
 22.2. Qǐng nǐ yòng dǎzìjī bǎ zhèixiē jùzi dǎchulai.
 22.3. Nǐ ná běnzi bǎ xīn xué de zì dōu xiěxialai.
 22.4. Nǐ ná lùyīnjī bǎ jīntian xué de jùzi dōu lùxialai.

- 22.5. Nǐ yòng Zhōngguó huà bǎ zhèige xiàohuà shuōyishuō.
- 23.0. (19) zhǐbāo(r) package, parcel (N) [lit. paper package]
- 23.1. Nèige dà zhǐbāo lǐmian shì shénmo?
- 23.2. Nèige zhǐbāoli shì kuàizi.
- 24.0. (20) lǐwu present, gift (N) [lit. etiquette object]
- 24.1. Tā cóng Rìběn huí lái dài le hěn duō lǐwu.
- 24.2. Shì sòng lǐwu hǎo hái shì bú sòng lǐwu hǎo?
- 24.3. Zhèixie lǐwu yí bù fēn shì gěi nǐ de, yí bù fēn shì gěi tā de.
- 24.4. Wáng Xiānshēng yào jiē hūn le. Wǒ děi mǎi lǐwu sòng gěi tā.
- 25.0. (22) wúxiàndiàn radio (N) [lit. lack wires electricity]
- 25.1. Wúxiàndiàn yě shì zài Rìběn mǎi de ma?
- 25.2. Zhèige wúxiàndiàn nǐ zài nǎr mǎi de?
- 25.3. Jīntiān wǒ tài lèi le. Lián wúxiàndiàn dōu bù xiǎng tīng le.
- 26.0. (22) shǒushi jewelry, ornament (N) [lit. head ornament]
- 26.1. Wáng Xiǎojié méi yǒu tā mǔqīn nènmo xǐhuan dài shǒushi.
- 26.2. Nǚrén chàbùduō dōu xǐhuan dài shǒushi.
- 27.0. (22) shénmode and so forth, etc.
- 27.1. Wǒ de shū, běnzi, bǐ, shénmode dōu ràng rén gěi ná zǒu le.
- 27.2. Zhāng Tàitai zuótiān mǎi le hěn duō cài—jī, yāzi, zhū ròu, niú ròu, xiārér, miàn, báicài, shénmode.
- 28.0. (23) qiáo look (at) (TV)
- 28.1. Nǐ qiáo! Nǐ qiáo! Nèige hěn yǒu míng de yǎnyuán lái le.
- 28.2. Bǔdàn shān tài yuǎn érqiě yīntiān, suǒyǐ wǒmen qiáobujiàn shān.
- 28.3. Zuótiān wǎnshàng wǒ qiáole yìchāng Zhōngguó diànyǐng.
- 29.0. (25) shìde yes, that's so.
- 29.1. Zhèixie shū dōu shì nǐ de ma? . . . Shìde.
- 29.2. Nín yào chūqu ma? . . . Shìde. Wǒ xiànzài jiù zǒu.
- 30.0. (26) tàò (measure for suits, sets of books)
- 30.1. Wǒ shì sānyuè qīhào mǎi de nèitào yīfu.
- 30.2. Zuótiān tā mǎi le yítào Zhōngguó lìshǐ.
- 31.0. (28) suǒ(shàng) lock (TV)
- suǒzhe be locked (IV)
- 31.1. Nǐ suǒ mén méi you? . . . Zhèige mén bú yòng suǒ.
- 31.2. Mén suǒzhe ne. Lǎojià nǐ yòng yàoshi kāikāi.

- 32.0. (29) *zázhì* magazine, periodical (N) [lit. miscellaneous annals]
 32.1. *Zuótian wǒ mǎile liǎngběn Zhōngguó zázhì.*
 32.2. *Zhōngguó xuésheng wàiguó xuésheng dōu shì yíyàng xǐhuan kàn zázhì.*
 32.3. *Nǐ méi kànguó zhèizhǒng zázhì ma?*
- 33.0. (29) *bào(zhǐ)* newspaper (N) [lit. report paper]
 33.1. *Wǒ hái méi kàn bào ne. Wǒ děi mǎi bàozhǐ qu.*
 33.2. *Jīntian bàoshang yǒu hěn duō guānyu xuéxiào de shìqíng.*
 33.3. *Wǒ bú xiàng nǐ néng kàn Zhōngguó bàozhǐ.*
- 34.0. (30) *rìjì* diary (i.e. a record) (N) [lit. day record]
rìjìběn, rìjìběr diary (i.e. a book) (N)
 34.1. *Wǒ měitiān dōu xiě rìjì.*
 34.2. *Wǒ bǎ yìtiānde shì dōu xiězai rìjìběnshang.*
 34.3. *Nǐ rìjìběn xiàtode nèizhāng bàozhǐ shì jīntiānde shì zuótiānde?*
- 35.0. (35) A shì B A is B (Note 5)
 35.1. *Nín 'dōu shì Zhōngguó yīfu.*
 35.2. *Tāmen yìnián dōu yòng yìqiāнкуài qián. Wǒ shì wǔbǎikuài qián.*
 35.3. *Dào Hángzhou lái wǒ shì dì yí cì.*
- 36.0. (39) *jiù* old (of things) (SV)
 36.1. *Wǒ bǎ suóyóude jiù yīfu dōu sònggei ta le.*
 36.2. *Wǒ qiántian kàn de nèichāng diànyǐngr shì jiù piānzi.*
 36.3. *Dàde, xiǎode, xīnde, jiùde—yàngyàng dōu yǒu.*
- 37.0. (43) *huò* commodity, goods, product (N)
huòchē freight truck, freight train [lit. goods vehicle]
huòchuán freighter, freight ship
 37.1. *Nǐ zhèige lùyīnjī shì Yīngguó huò shì Měiguó huò?*
 37.2. *Qùnián tāmen mǎi de nèige dà qìchē shì huòchē.*
 37.3. *Huòchuán bíjiǎo màn.*
- 38.0. (49) *liúli* fluent (SV)
 38.1. *Nèige huǒjī shuōde Yīngguó huà tèbié liúli.*
 38.2. *Xué yǔyán duō shuō jiù liúli.*
 38.3. *Wǒde Zhōngguó huà yuè tīng yuè juéde bù liúli.*
- 39.0. (51) *wàng* forget(to) (V)
 39.1. *Méiguì Lù de lù zì zěnmó xiě? Yǒu jǐhuá? Wǒ wàngle.*

- 39.2. Zāogāo! Jīntian shàng kè wàngle dài shū le.
- 39.3. Wǒde shìqing nǐ kě bié wàngle.
- 40.0. (56) shízài real, genuine, sure enough (SV) [lit. really exist]
Shízàide! Really!
- 40.1. Wáng Jiàoshòu duì yǔyánxué shízài yǒu yánjiu, yóuqíshi duì yúfǎ yìfāngmiàn.
- 40.2. Nín xiě de nèiběn kēxué shū zhēn bú cuò. . . . Nín kèqi. . . .
Shízàide!
- 40.3. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ tài máng. Shízài bù néng qù.
- 40.4. Xièxie nín lái jiē wo. Shízài máfan nín.
- 41.0. (56) gōngzuò work (V, N) [lit. work do]
41.1. Wǒde gōngzuò tài máng. Wǒ xiǎng qu bàifang wǒde lǎoshī, kěshi méi gōngfu qù.
- 41.2. Wǒ bù zěnmò xǐhuan wǒ xiànzàide gōngzuò.
- 41.3. Zhèizhǒng gōngzuò wǒ juéde hěn nán.
- 41.4. Tā duì nèizhǒng gōngzuò hěn yǒu jīngyan.
- 42.0. (58) chū guó go abroad, leave the country (VO) *opp. in*
42.1. Wǒ dǎsuan zuì jìn chū guó yíci.
- 42.2. Wáng Xiānsheng yǐjīng chū guó sānnián le.
- 42.3. Tā gāozhōng bìyè jiù chū guó qu niàn shū.
- 42.4. Wǒ xiǎng zuì jìn de jiānglái chū guó qu lǚxíng.
- 43.0. (61) nòng handle, arrange, see to (V) (Note 6)
43.1. Nǐ nòng wúxiàndiàn, wǒ nòng lùyīnjī.
- 43.2. Tāde jiā wǒ zhǎole bàntiān yě méi zhǎozháo. Wǒ bǎ fāngxiàng nòngcuòle.
- 43.3. Tā hěn huì gēn hái zi wár. Néng bǎ hái zimen nòngde hěn gāoxìng.
- 44.0. (61) luànqibāzāo at sixes and sevens, in a mess, helter-skelter [lit. confused seven eight mixed-up]
44.1. Zhèige wūzi lǐtou zěnmò zěnmò luànqibāzāode?
- 44.2. Wǒde shū luànqibāzāo yīnwei tài máng, méi gōngfu shōushi.
- 44.3. Tā shuō huà shuōde luànqibāzāo. Wǒ yìdiǎr yě bù míngbai tāde yìsi.
- 45.0. (67) míngpiār calling card (N) [lit. name card]
45.1. Wǒde míngpiārshang Zhōngwén míngzi Yīngwén míngzi dōu yǒu.
- 45.2. Wǒ gěi nín yìzhāng míngpiār.
- 46.0. (68) kǒuyīn accent (N) [lit. mouth sound]

- 46.1. Nín shuō huà de kǒuyīn xiàng Shāndōng rén.
 46.2. Tāde kǒuyīn shífēn hǎo, xiàng Zhōngguó rén yíyàng.
- 47.0. (69) běn oneself, one's own
 běn dì(fāng) one's own area, native, local
 běn rén oneself
 běn guó one's own country, domestic
- 47.1. Yīnwei tā shì běn dì rén, suǒyǐ shuō běn dì huà.
 47.2. Zhèr dōu shì běn guó huò.
 47.3. Shì ta běn rén lái ma? *in person*
- 48.0. (71) zhíwù duty, function, business, job (N) [lit. duty task]
 48.1. Nín zài túshūguǎn shì shénmo zhíwù?
 48.2. Wǒ zài zhèige xuéxiào de zhíwù shì dǎ zì.
 48.3. Guānyu jiǎnchá xínglǐ zhèizhōng zhíwù, tā yìdiǎr xìngqù yě méi yǒu.
- 49.0. (73) lìfū porter (N) [lit. strength person]
 49.1. Wǒde xínglǐ shì zìjǐ ná hǎo háishi jiào lìfū ná hǎo?
 49.2. Zhèrde lìfū bú shì Húnán rén jiù shì Húběi rén.
 49.3. Gěi lìfū xiǎofèi bù gěi?
- 50.0. (75) yàoshi if (MA)
 50.1. Yàoshi wǒ zuò fēijī wǒ kěnéng wǎn yìdiǎr zǒu.
 50.2. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ néng qù. Yàoshi wǒ bú qù wǒ jiù dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ.
- 51.0. (76) hángkōng aviation, air (N) [lit. sail space]
 hángkōng xuéxiào aviation school
 hángkōng xiáojie airplane stewardess
 hángkōng xìn airmail letter
- 51.1. Wǒ shì xué hángkōng de.
 51.2. Wǒ dīdi jīnnián jiǔyuē cái kāishǐ zài hángkōng xuéxiào niàn shū.
 51.3. Nǚ háizi bìděi shíbāsuì cái néng zuò hángkōng xiáojie.
 51.4. Běn guóde hángkōng xìn bāfēn qián.
- 52.0. (77) gōngsī company, concern, office (N) [lit. public manage]
 52.1. Wǒ dào hángkōng gōngsī qù mǎi fēijī piào.
 52.2. Wǒ mèimei jīnnián zài diànhuà gōngsī zuò shì.
- 53.0. (78) huǒchē train (N) [lit. fire vehicle]
 huǒchē zhàn railroad station

- 53.1. Dào Nánjīng de huǒchē xiàwǔ sāndiǎn èrshífēn dào.
- 53.2. Qǐng nǐ gěi huǒchē zhàn dǎ ge diànhuà wènwén cóng Hángzhou láide huǒchē jǐdiǎn zhōng dào?
- 54.0. (78) shìjiè world (N) [lit. world border]
- 54.1. Rúguǒ wǒ yǒu qián wǒ jiù dào quán shìjiè lǚxíng.
- 54.2. Nǐ zhīdao quán shìjiè yígòng yǒu duōshao rén?
- 54.3. Zhèige zázhède míngzi jiào Shìjiè Wénhuà.
- 55.0. (78) lǚguǎn hotel, inn (N) [lit. travel establishment]
- 55.1. Wai! Wai! Qǐng wèn, shì Shìjiè Lǚguǎn ma?
- 55.2. Yuándōng Lǚguǎn zài diànyǐngyuànde zuǒbiar.
- 55.3. Nán Hú běibiārde nèige lǚguǎn jiào shénmo míngzi?
- 55.4. Wǒ chīwánle zǎofàn ràng lǚguǎn suànsuan zhàng.
- 56.0. (80) jiù/cái then (AD) (Note 7)
- 56.1. Nǐ cóng zhèr yìzhíde jiù dào le.
- 56.2. Xīngqīliù wǒmen xuéxiào yǎn diànyǐng. Jiùshì wǒmen běn xuéxiàode xuésheng cái néng kàn.
- 56.3. Zhèizhǒng xiǎo bēizi jǐmáo qián jiù kényī mǎi.
- 56.4. Jèige qìchē sìqiānkūài qián cái kényī mǎi ne.
- 56.5. Wǒ wǔfēn zhōng jiù zǒu.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Tā zài diànchē gōngsī zuò shénmo gōngzuò? . . . Tā zài diànchē gōngsī de zhíwù shì màipiàoyuán.
2. Qǐng nǐmen yòng pīnyīn bǎ "Shàng yǒu tiāntáng, xià yǒu Sū-Háng" zhèijù huà xiězài běnzishang.
3. Xué Zhōngguó yǔyán zuì yàoǐnde shì jìzhu yúfǎ, cér, sìshēng, qīngzhòngyīn shénmode.
4. Qǐng nǐ gàosu hángkōng xiáojie wǒ zhù ta yílù píng'ān.

5. Péngyou gěi liǎngge rén jièshao de shíhou, zhèi liǎngge rén yīngdāng shuō "Jiúyǎng, jiúyǎng."
6. Cóng zhèitiáo lù wǎng xīnán guāi jiù shì Zhōngshān Lù.
7. Nèige duǎn jùzi yǒu jǐge yīnjié?
8. Tāde chángchu shì ta shuō de gùshi néng ràng rén xiào.
9. Nánfāng rén xǐhuan chī tiānde, Shānxi rén xǐhuan chī suānde.
10. Wǒmen méi yǒu jiǔ hē.
11. Jiùshi nǐ bú lù yīn wǒ yě yào lù.
12. Dǎ Shānxi dào Shāndong yǒu duōshao lǐ lù?
13. Nǐ bǎ bàozhǐ jiègei wǒ kànkàn.
14. Nèige hángkōng xiáojie shuō tā shì zài Sūzhou shēng de Hángzhou zhǎngdà de.
15. Xièxie nǐ. Jīntian wǒ bù hē chá, wǒ hē shuǐ.
16. Wǒ duì guówén hěn yǒu xīngqū. Wǒ duì shùxué méi shénmo xīngqū.
17. Gāo Xiānsheng hěn xǐhuan ta zhù de zhèige dìfang. Tā bǎ Běi Hú bǐzuò Xī Hú.
18. Shuō huà zuì yīngdāng zhùyì de shì sìshēng. Bǐfāng shuō huòchē zhèige cér rúguǒ sìshēng nòngcuò le jiù niànréng huòchē le.
19. Tā hǎoxiàng bú huì chǎo cài shìde.
20. Liǎngwǎn fàn wǒ yídìng chībùbǎo.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ qù jiǎnchá xíngli de shíhou hěn yǒu yìsi. Yīnwei wǒ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng Měiyīng shuō huà shuōde tài duō, shíhou tài cháng le, wǒ zuì hòu cái dào jiǎncháchù. Wǒ shì zuìhòu yíge rén le. Jiǎncháyuan yě bù máng le. Nèiwèi jiǎncháyuan hěn hǎo. Tā jiu màn mǎrde jiǎnchá wǒ

5 zhèi jǐjiàn dōngxī. Yímiàn kàn dōngxī yímiàn gēn wǒ tán. Ta yě shì

yíge niánqīng de rén. Zhèige rén hěn hǎo. Gèr bù gāo, hěn huì shuō huà, hěn kèqì.

Wǒ lái de shíhou bǎ xínglǐ dōu jiāogei lǚxíngshè jiāo chuán yùn le. Wǒ zìjǐ méi dài hěn duōde xínglǐ. Wǒ jiù dài le yíge dà píbāo yíge shǒutíbāo, hái dài ge dǎzìjǐ. Kěshi dà píbāoli chūle wǒ zìjǐde yīfu yǐwài, dōu shì yìxiē lǐwu. Gāo Xiānsheng Gāo Tàitai wǒ yīnggāi sòng yìdiǎr lǐwu. Měiyīng dāngrán yě yǒu le. Tóngshí wǒ mǔqīn yě gěi Měiyīng mǎile yìxiē dōngxi—shǒushi, nǚ hái zi yīfu, shēnmóde. Suóyǐ píbāo lǐtou yǒu hěn duō dà-xiǎo zhǐbāor. Jiǎncháyuan měi yíge zhǐbāor tā dōu dǎkai qiáoqiao. Suǐrán wǒde dōngxi bù duō kěshi yě jiǎnchále bàngē zhōngtóu.

Yǒude rén hěn bù gāoxìng jiǎncháyuan jiǎnchá tāmen de xínglǐ, kěshi nà shì tāmen de zhǐwu. Tāmen de gōngzuò jiù shì jiǎnchá me.

Wǒ mǎi fēijī piào de shíhou, wǒ xiě de shì Zhōngguó míngzi. Jiǎncháyuan yīwei wǒ shì Zhōngguó rén ne. Tā jiào wǒde míngzi yǐhòu tā yí kàn yuánlái wǒ shì 'wàiguó rén. Érqǐě wǒde shū gēn zázhi dōu shì Zhōngwénde. Tā dàgài hěn qíguài.

Tā shuō tā bù xǐhuan tā xiànzài zhèige gōngzuò. Tā duì zhèizhōng gōngzuò méi xìngqù. Tā xīwang jiānglái yǒu jīhui chū guó qu niàn shū. Zhèiwèi jiǎncháyuan Yīngwén shuōde hěn liúli.

Wǒ zài jiǎncháchù chàbuduō yǒu yǒu bàngē zhōngtóu. Jiǎncháyuan bǎ suǒyǒude zhǐbāor dōu dǎkai kàn le, suóyǐ bǎ dōngxi nòngde luànqībāzāo. Wǒ dōu shǒushihǎo, bǎ píbāo suǒshàng, hái děi zhùyì kànkàn làxia dōngxi méi you. Zhèi shíhou wǒ xīnli xiǎng Gāo Xiānsheng Měiyīng zài wàitou dēng de shíhou tài duō le.

Jiǎncháyuan, wǒ zǒu de shíhou, hái gàosu wǒ hángkōng gōngsī yǒu chē. Rúguǒ méi rén lái jiē wo, wǒ kéyǐ zuò hángkōng gōngsīde chē, dào chéng lǐtou hángkōng gōngsī mén kǒu, lǚguǎn, huǒchē zhàn, zhèi sāngē dìfang.

Yīnwèi Gāo Xiānsheng Gāo Xiáojie tāmen yǒu chē, suóyǐ wo bú bì zuò hángkōng gōngsīde chē. Wǒ jiù gàosu jiǎncháyuan Wàn Xiānsheng yǒu péngyou lái jiē wo, wǒ zuò péngyoude chē, yìzhí dào péngyou jiā lǐtou qu.

Wèntí

1. Yàoshi nǐ dào yíge dìfang qù nǐ xiàlè fēijī dào nǎr qu jiǎnchá xínglǐ?



2. Yào jiǎnchá nǐ xíngli de rén jiào shénmo?
3. Jiǎncháyuan zěnmō zhīdao Bái Xiānshengde míngzi shì Zhōngguo míngzi?
4. Bái Wénshānde xíngli shì bu shì dōu zìjǐ dàilái de?
5. Tā yígòng dài le jǐjiàn xíngli? Tā dài de shì shénmo xíngli?
6. Bái Wénshānde dà píbāo lǐtōu yǒu shénmo?
7. Bái Wénshānde shǒutíbāoli dōu yǒu shénmo?
8. Bái Wénshān de dǎzìjī shì něiguó huò?
9. Jiǎncháyuan shuō Bái Xiānshengde Zhōngguo huà zěnmoyàng?
10. Bái Xiānsheng shuō jiǎncháyuan shuōde Yīngwén zěnmoyàng?
11. Jiǎncháyuan xǐhuan jiǎnchá xíngli zhèige gōngzuò ma?
12. Jiǎncháyuan shuō tā xiǎng zuì jīnde jiānglái zuò shénmo qu?
13. Jiǎncháyuan shuō bǎ kèrende xíngli nòngde zěnmoyàng le?
14. Jiǎncháyuan xìng shénmo? Míngzi jiào shénmo?
15. Tā gěi Bái Xiānsheng shénmo le?
16. Bái Xiānsheng wèi shénmo bù gěi jiǎncháyuan míngpiànr?
17. Jiǎncháyuan shì nǎrde rén?
18. Bái Wénshān zěnmō zhīdao tā shì běn dì rén?
19. Jiǎncháyuan jiǎncháwánle Bái Xiānshengde xíngli tā duì Bái Xiānsheng shuō kèqì huà méi you?
20. Bái Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
21. Bái Xiānsheng yào líkai xíngli jiǎncháchù de shíhou jiǎncháyuan shuō tāde xíngli shì bu shì tā zìjǐ dàichuqu?
22. Fēijīchǎng bāngzhu ná xíngli de rén jiào shénmo?
23. Jiǎncháyuan shuō hángkōng gōngsī yǒu chē dōu keyi sòng Bái Xiānsheng dào nǎr?
24. Bái Xiānsheng shì bu shì zuò hángkōng gōngsīde chē?

25. Ta zuò shéide chē? Ta dào nǎr qu?
26. Yàoshi yíge dì yíci kànjian de péngyou gěi nǐ yìzhāng míngpiànr kěshi nǐ méi dài míngpiànr nǐ zěnmō shuō?
27. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐde Zhōngguó huà shuōde hěn líuli nǐ yīngdāng shuō shénmo?
28. Rúguǒ nǐ duì nǐde gōngzuò bù zěnmō xǐhuan nǐ gēn péngyou zěnmō shuō?
29. Yàoshi nǐ shuō yíwèi Zhōngguó péngyoude Yīngwén shuōde hǎo, nǐ zěnmō shuō?
30. Yàoshi yǒu rén gēn nǐ shuō wàiguó rén yánjiū Zhōngwén dōu hěn hǎo nǐ yīngdāng zěnmō shuō?

Dialogue: Mr. White talks with an inspector.

Mr. White is now at the customs office having his baggage examined. Since he is the last passenger and the inspector, Wan Xuewen, has nothing else to do, (the latter) on the one hand inspects the baggage and on the other engages Mr. White in conversation.

Wan : Which (gentleman) is Mr. Bai Wenshan?

White: I am.

Wan : It's a Chinese name on the (passenger) list. Actually you're a foreigner. I thought you were a Chinese.

White: Sorry to be late in coming. I spent too much time talking with friends. They came to meet me. We haven't seen (each other) for a long time and once we began to talk there was no end to it.

Wan : It doesn't matter. You have only these few pieces of baggage?

White: That's right. I have just these few with me. All the rest I turned over to the travel bureau to be transported by boat.

Wan : How many pieces of baggage do you have altogether?

White: [I have] three [pieces of baggage in all]: one briefcase, a large bag, and a typewriter.

Wan : Would you please unlock the large bag first? . . . What are all these packages?

White: They're various presents that I'm giving to friends.

Wan : What [things] are they all?

White: They're a woman's handbag, a small radio, jewelry, and so on.

Wan : I'm sorry, we have to open them all and look (at them). Are all these things to be given to friends?

White: Yes.

Wan : What about those suits?

White: They're for my own use.

Wan : You may lock it up. Please open the briefcase too.

White: There isn't anything in the briefcase. It's just magazines, newspapers, and a few books, and also a diary and so on.

Wan : What kind of magazines are they?

White: Literary magazines.

Wan : What are the books?

White: They're all books in Chinese.

Wan : All you have is Chinese books! Can you read Chinese?

White: Yes.

Wan : What is this big notebook?

White: It's my diary.

Wan : Is the typewriter new or old?

White: It's a new one.

Wan : Is it for your own use?

White: It's for my own use.

Wan : Where was it made?

White: It's an American product.

Wan : Oh, you brought it from America. Are you American?

White: Yes, I'm an American.

Wan : Is this the first time you've come here?

White: No, this is my second time.

Wan : You speak Chinese really fluently.

White: You flatter me. In the past I spoke it somewhat better than now. After returning to America, I didn't speak it for three years and forgot it all.

Wan : A language needs to be used and spoken constantly.

White: I just heard you speaking English with that gentleman. You actually speak very well: your pronunciation is accurate and you speak fluently.

Wan : You're being polite.

White: You really do. How long have you been working here?

Wan : I've been (here) over two years. I don't plan to do it for long. Very soon I hope to go abroad to study. I have no interest in this sort of work. Every day it's examining people's things. Before a plane arrives, you wait [here]. As soon as the plane comes, you're terribly busy making a mess of [other] people's things. This sort of work is of no interest. Have you come here to work or to study?

White: I've come to study.

Wan : Nowadays lots of foreigners study Chinese, and they all do very well at it.

White: I'm not so sure that all of them do. I forgot to ask you your name.

Wan : My surname is Wan, and my given name is Xuewen. Here's my card.

White: I'm sorry, Mr. Wan, I didn't bring a card. Listening to your accent, I take it you're a native here?

Wan : Yes, I'm a native. I'm sorry to have messed up your things.

White: It's your job, of course. May I go now?

Wan : You may go. You don't need to take your baggage. Please go to the exit [first] and wait. The porter will send out your things right away.

White: I hope we'll see each other again.

Wan : One other thing. (As to) your baggage, if you have friends who have come to meet you with a car, take the baggage with you. If no one has come to meet you, the airline company has a car which can take you and the baggage into the city, either to the doorway of the airline office, to the railroad station, or to the World Hotel.

White: I have some friends who have come to meet (me). Most likely they have a car. From here I go straight to my friends' home.

Wan : That's fine. Goodbye, Mr. White.

White: Goodbye, Mr. Wan.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. The man who inspects the baggage is called an inspector.
- 1.2. I have too much baggage. That inspector took two hours to finish checking it.
- 2.1. After we get off the plane we must first go to the customs office.
- 2.2. Please go first to the entrance of the customs office and wait for me.
- 3.1. I was the last to leave the plane.
- 3.2. I was the first to come of the guests that Mr. White invited today.
- 3.3. I hear Mr. Wang is returning to his own country very soon.
- 3.4. This book sells for \$1.50 at the most.
- 3.5. That house is enormous. I'm afraid it must sell for at least \$80,000.
- 3.6. If you go by plane it's best to take a jet. It's both fast and smooth.
- 3.7. Very recently I got a letter from him.
- 4.1. In studying a language you should listen to recordings while looking at the text.

- 4.2. He likes to eat while listening to his mother tell stories.
- 5.1. Is his name on the school list?
- 5.2. Very odd. How come my wife's name isn't on the list?
- 6.1. He said it's very easy to study Chinese. Actually it's quite hard.
- 6.2. Everyone says that student is very bright. Actually he's quite stupid.
- 7.1. I thought this pen was yours. It's his after all.
- 7.2. I supposed you weren't coming any more today.
- 7.3. I thought he could drink. Actually he can't.
- 8.1. This matter has a great deal to do with him.
- 8.2. I'm sorry I forgot to speak to him about your business. . . . It doesn't matter.
- 8.3. It doesn't matter if you don't go.
- 8.4. This affair has nothing to do with me.
- 8.5. Because of the rain the plane will be a little late in taking off.
- 8.6. Is the Mrs. Wang in middle school related to the Miss Wang in elementary school?
- 9.1. The book is entirely sold out. (We have) only this copy left.
- 9.2. All you have is a dollar. How can you eat in the restaurant?
- 9.3. Altogether we have only a few dollars. How can we eat roast duck?
- 10.1. There are only two courses that are appetizing. The rest are not.
- 10.2. Please take these books [away] with you. The rest I'll take myself.
- 11.1. How much money did he give you?
- 11.2. Please hand this book to Mr. Wang.
- 11.3. I gave him five dollars and asked him to buy me that picture painted by his teacher.
- 11.4. Please hand that history book to Professor Wang.
- 11.5. We're going on a trip Saturday. Have you handed in your money?
- 11.6. Yesterday my mother gave me a few dollars and asked me to buy some meat, vegetables, and soy sauce.
- 12.1. The travel bureau is a little over two miles from my home.
- 12.2. I turned over all my baggage to the travel bureau.
- 12.3. I have to go to the travel agency to ask how much a boat ticket to Japan is.
- 13.1. Transporting baggage is quite a nuisance.
- 13.2. All my baggage has been transported to the airport.
- 13.3. All the baggage that's too heavy I'm having shipped by boat.

- 14.1. He has fifteen pieces of baggage in all.
- 14.2. As for these two pieces of baggage [of mine], would it be better to take them myself or have the travel agency take them?
- 14.3. This garment was presented to me by a friend.
- 15.1-4. How many pieces of baggage do you have in all?
- 16.1. I bought this briefcase in Canton.
- 16.2. He put the clothes in the briefcase.
- 16.3. In my briefcase there's nothing but a number of books on Chinese culture.
- 17.1. Shall I buy a big bag or a small one?
- 17.2. Miss Gao's handbag is very attractive.
- 17.3. My suitcase isn't light. Most likely you can't carry it.
- 18.1. After the inspection is finished we'll leave together. And be sure not to leave things behind.
- 18.2. Please buy one Chinese writing brush, a hundred sheets of paper, and two colored pencils, one red and one blue.
- 18.3. We're having simple food—a soup, two dishes, and a little dessert.
- 19.1. Do you know how to type?
- 19.2. Miss Wang types very fast.
- 19.3. Typewritten words are easier to read than (hand-)written words.
- 19.4. I studied typewriting for five months.
- 20.1. I plan to buy a new typewriter next year.
- 20.2. Shall I type it [on the typewriter], or write it with a fountain pen?
- 20.3. Comparing our typewriters, mine's better after all.
- 21.1. My keys were also taken away by them.
- 21.2. This is the key that opens the big door.
- 21.3. Hang up the key.
- 22.1. Mom, please open the door with the key.
- 22.2. Please type [out] these sentences [using a typewriter].
- 22.3. Write down all the new[ly learned] words in your notebooks.
- 22.4. Record on a tape recorder all the sentences studied today.
- 22.5. Tell this joke in Chinese.
- 23.1. What's in that big package?
- 23.2. There are chopsticks in that package.
- 24.1. When he came back from Japan he brought a lot of presents.
- 24.2. Would it be better to give presents, or not to do so?

- 24.3. These presents are to be given partly to you and partly to him.
- 24.4. Mr. Wang is about to get married. I must buy a present to give to him.
- 25.1. Was the radio also bought in Japan?
- 25.2. Where did you buy this radio?
- 25.3. I'm too tired today. I'm not even going to listen to the radio.
- 26.1. Miss Wang doesn't like to wear jewelry as much as her mother does.
- 26.2. Almost all women like to wear jewelry.
- 27.1. My books, notebooks, pens, and other things have been taken away by someone.
- 27.2. Mrs. Zhang bought a lot of food yesterday—chicken, duck, pork, beef, shrimp, noodles, cabbage, and so on.
- 28.1. Look! Look! That famous actor is coming.
- 28.2. Not only are the mountains too far, but it's also overcast, so we can't see them [lit. the mountains].
- 28.3. Yesterday evening I saw a Chinese movie.
- 29.1. Are all these books yours? . . . Yes.
- 29.2. Are you going out? . . . Yes. I'm leaving right now.
- 30.1. I bought that suit on the seventh of March.
- 30.2. He bought a set of Chinese history books yesterday.
- 31.1. Did you lock the door? . . . There's no need to lock this door.
- 31.2. The door's locked. Could I trouble you to open it [with a key]?
- 32.1. I bought two Chinese magazines yesterday.
- 32.2. Chinese students and foreign students are alike in liking to read magazines.
- 32.3. Haven't you ever seen this [kind of] magazine?
- 33.1. I haven't read the newspaper yet. I must go out and buy one [lit. a newspaper].
- 33.2. Today there are a lot of things about the school in the newspaper.
- 33.3. I'm not like you in being able to read Chinese newspapers.
- 34.1. I write (in) my diary every day.
- 34.2. I write the whole day's events in my diary.
- 34.3. Is that newspaper under your diary today's or yesterday's?
- 35.1. You have [lit. are] nothing but Chinese clothes.
- 35.2. They all spend [lit. use] a thousand dollars a year. I spend [lit. am] \$500.
- 35.3. This is the first time I've come to Hangchow.

- 36.1. I presented him with all the old clothes.
- 36.2. That movie I saw the day before yesterday was an old one.
- 36.3. There are all kinds—big ones, little ones, new ones, old ones.
- 37.1. Is this tape recorder of yours an English or an American product?
- 37.2. That big motor vehicle they bought last year is a truck.
- 37.3. A freighter is comparatively slow.
- 38.1. The English that waiter speaks is particularly fluent.
- 38.2. In studying a language if you talk a lot you become fluent.
- 38.3. As for my Chinese, the more I hear it the less fluent I feel it to be.
- 39.1. How is the character dew of Rose Dew written? How many strokes does it have? I've forgotten (how to write it).
- 39.2. Darn! I forgot to bring my books when I came to class today.
- 39.3. Don't [you] by any means forget that business of mine.
- 40.1. Professor Wang has certainly done research in linguistics, especially with respect to grammar.
- 40.2. That science book you wrote is really good. . . . You're being polite. . . . Really!
- 40.3. I'm sorry, I'm too busy. I really can't go.
- 40.4. Thank you for coming to meet me. It's certainly an imposition.
- 41.1. My work keeps me too busy. I'd like to go pay a visit to my teacher, but I don't have time to go.
- 41.2. I'm not so crazy about my present job.
- 41.3. This sort of work [I feel] is very difficult.
- 41.4. He's had a lot of experience in that sort of work.
- 42.1. I plan to make a trip abroad very soon.
- 42.2. Mr. Wang has already been abroad three years.
- 42.3. He'll go abroad to study after graduating from upper middle school.
- 42.4. In the very near future I plan to go abroad on a trip.
- 43.1. You take care of the radio and I'll handle the tape recorder.
- 43.2. I looked for his house for a long time but couldn't find it. I took the wrong direction.
- 43.3. He's very good at playing with children. He can make children very happy.
- 44.1. How come this room is in such a mess?
- 44.2. My books are in a mess because I'm too busy and don't have time to put them in order.

- 44.3. He talks very confusedly. I don't understand what he means in the least.
- 45.1. My calling card has both my Chinese and English names.
- 45.2. Here's my card.
- 46.1. Your accent is like (that of) a person from Shantung.
- 46.2. His accent is excellent; it's like that of a Chinese.
- 47.1. Since he's a native, he speaks the local language.
- 47.2. Here everything is domestic goods.
- 47.3. Did he come himself?
- 48.1. What's your job in the library?
- 48.2. My job in this school is typing.
- 48.3. He doesn't have the least bit of interest in [this sort of job] inspecting baggage.
- 49.1. Would it be better for me to take my baggage or to have the porter take it?
- 49.2. The porters here are from either Hunan or Hupeh.
- 49.3. Do we tip the porter?
- 50.1. If I take a plane it's possible that I'll leave a little later.
- 50.2. I think I can go. If I don't go I'll give you a ring.
- 51.1. I'm studying aviation.
- 51.2. My younger brother only started studying at the aviation school in September of this year.
- 51.3. Girls must be eighteen years of age before they can be airplane stewardesses.
- 51.4. Domestic airmail is eight cents.
- 52.1. I'm going to the airline office to buy a plane ticket.
- 52.2. My younger sister is working in the telephone company this year.
- 53.1. The train to Nanking arrives at 3:20 P.M.
- 53.2. Please call the railroad station and ask when the train from Hangchow arrives.
- 54.1. If I had the money I'd travel the whole world over.
- 54.2. Do you know how many people there are in the whole world?
- 54.3. The name of this journal is World Culture.
- 55.1. Hello! Hello! [May I ask], is this the World Hotel?
- 55.2. The Far East Hotel is to the left of the movie theater.
- 55.3. What's the name of that hotel north of South Lake?
- 55.4. After I've finished breakfast I'll have the hotel figure up the bill.

- 56.1. (Go) straight from here and you'll get there.
- 56.2. On Saturday our school is showing a movie. Only students at our school can go see it.
- 56.3. You can buy a little cup like this for just a few dimes.
- 56.4. You can only buy this car (if you spend as much as) \$4,000.
- 56.5. (After) five minutes (have passed) then I'll leave.

Review Sentences

1. What (kind of) work does he do in the streetcar company? . . . His job [in the streetcar company] is that of ticket seller.
2. Please write in your notebooks in transcription the sentence 'Above is heaven, below are Suchow and Hangchow.'
3. The most important things to pay attention to in studying the Chinese language are grammar, words, tones, stress, and so on.
4. Please inform the airplane stewardess that I wish her Bon Voyage.
5. When a friend introduces two persons [to each other], they should say, 'Pleased to meet you.'
6. Turn southwest from this road and there's Sun Yatsen Avenue.
7. How many syllables are there in that phrase?
8. His strong point is that the stories he tells can make people laugh.
9. Southerners like to eat sweet things, and people from Shansi like to eat sour.
10. We have no wine to drink.
11. Even if you aren't going to record, I am.
12. How many miles is it from Shansi to Shantung?
13. Lend me the newspaper to read.
14. That airplane stewardess says she was born in Suchow and grew up in Hangchow.
15. Thank you. I'm not drinking tea today. I'm having water.
16. I have a lot of interest in Chinese studies. I don't have any particular interest in mathematics.
17. Mr. Gao is very fond of the place where he lives. He considers North Lake comparable to West Lake.
18. In speaking, what one must pay most attention to are the tones. Take for example the word train. If a mistake is made in the tone it is read as truck.
19. He doesn't seem to know how to make fried dishes.
20. I certainly can't get filled up on two bowls of rice.

Notes

1. Yǒu 'have' is optional after jiù 'only.' For instance,

Wǒ jiù yǒu wǔmáo qián 'I have only fifty cents' is often reduced to
Wǒ jiù wǔmáo qián.

2. Chinese word order is much less fixed in informal conversation than in careful writing. A surprising amount of permutation or rearrangement of the elements is possible: see sentences 15.1-4. Such permutations are sometimes identical in meaning, but often involve subtle differences in emphasis or shadings in meaning.
3. Hái yǒu 'still have' or 'there still is' is used as a connective 'and' in lists, and in the meaning 'one thing more' or 'in addition' in enumerating actions:

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi dìtú, zìdiǎn, hái yǒu liǎngzhī máobǐ. 'I plan to buy a map, a dictionary, and two writing brushes.'

Wǒ jīntiānde shìqíng hěn duō. Xiān dào xuéxiào qù. Zài dào shūdiàn mǎi shū. Hái yǒu. Wǒ hái děi dào chéng lǐtōu mǎi diǎn dōngxi. 'I have a lot to do today. First I'm going to school. Then I'm going to the bookstore to buy some books. And in addition I also have to go into the city to buy a few things.'

4. The pattern A ná/yòng B bǎ C V means 'A performs the action of V on C with (or using) B':

Nǐmen ná máobǐ bǎ suǒyǒude zì dōu xiěxiālai. 'Write down all the words using a writing brush.'

5. The pattern A shì B is used most often in equating two logically connected substantives:

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén. 'He is a Chinese.'

When the connection is not a logical equating, A acts as a topic about which the rest of the sentence comments:

Wǒ chīguo hǎoxiē cì Zhōngguó fàn. Nǐn ne? . . . Wǒ shì dì yí cì.
'I've eaten Chinese food a good many times. How about you? . . .
As for me, (this) is the first time' [lit. I am the first time].

6. The verb nòng means 'take care of' or 'handle [a thing or an activity],' in a broad general sense; it often alternates with verbs of more specific meanings. Compare:

Shéi nòng fàn? 'Who's taking care of dinner?'

Shéi zuò fàn? 'Who's making dinner?'

Similarly, nòngcuò 'do incorrectly' may be used instead of xiěcuò 'write incorrectly' or some other specific action.

7. The adverbs jiù 'then' and cái 'then (and only then)' are often used to connect clauses the first of which is syntactically sketchy, generally because of lack of a verb. Compare:

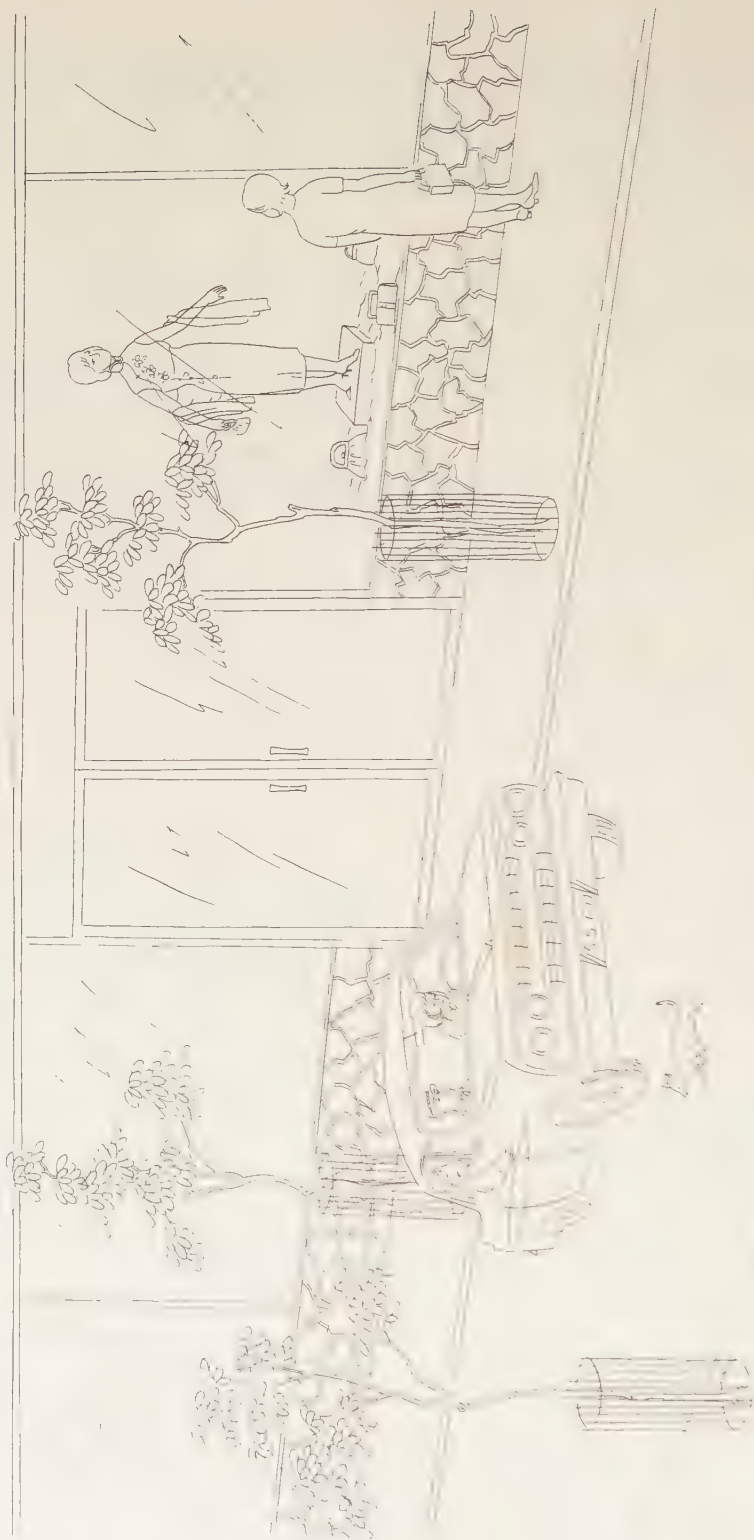
Nǐ cóng zhèr yìzhíde zǒu jiù kěyǐ dào. 'Go straight from here and then you'll get there.'

and

Nǐ cóng zhèr yìzhíde jiù kěyǐ dào. 'Straight from here and then you'll get there.'

For other examples see above, Sentences for New Words and Grammar, 56.1-56.5.

大華百貨公司



"Bié pèngle gǒu."

Dì Sānkè. Zuò Chē Jìn Chéng Chū Chéng

Huìhuà: Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Měiyīng, Bái Wénshān sāngē rén cóng fēijīchǎng zuò chē jìn chéng(yòu) chū chéng dào Gāo jiā.

Měi: Wénshān lái le, bàba.

Gāo: Zěnmoyàng Wénshān? Méi shénmo máfan ba?

5 Bái: Méi shénmo. Nín gēn Měiyīng zài zhèr(yòu) děngle bàntiān. Suírán xíngli méi shénmo máfan, kěshi nèiwèi jiǎncháyuan ne gēn wǒ xián tánle hěn jiǔ.

Gāo: Xíngli xiànzài jiu sòngchulai ma?

10 Bái: Shìde. Jiǎncháyuan shuō lǚ xiànzài jiu sòngchulai... Oh, xíngli lái le, nín qiáo. Wǒ jiù zhèi diǎr, jiù zhèi sānjiàn xíngli.

Měi: Nǐmen xiān děngzhe. Wǒ dào tíngchēchǎng bǎ chē kāiguolai.

Bái: Měiyīng huì kāi chē le!

15 Gāo: Měiyīng hěn xǐhuan kāi chē. Oh, wǒ hai méi gào su nǐ ne, Sān Yǒu Shūdiàn shì xīn mǎi de chē. Shūdiàn zuì jìn tài máng le, bìdèi yǒu ge chē.

Bái: Chē mǎile duō jiǔ le?

Gāo: Cái mǎile yíge duō yuè. Měiyīng bǎ chē kāiguolai le. Zhèige wǒ bāngzhe nǐ ná.

Bái: Bù, tài zhòng le. Nín bāng wǒ ná shǒutíbāo ba.

20 Gāo: Méi guānxi. Wǒ yùndong yùndong.

Bái: Nín háishi ná shǒutíbāo ba.

Gāo: Hǎo. Wénshān, nǐ gēn Měiyīng zuò qiántou, wǒ zuò hòutou. Bǎ dà píbāo fàngzai chē xiāng lǐtou.

Bái: Hǎo ba. Měiyīng, shénmo shíhou xué de kāi chē?

25 Měi: Wǒ shì qùnián xué de.

Gāo: Cóng fēijīchǎng dào chéng lǐtou lù hěn cháng. Wénshān, zhèitiáo lù wa, xiūde hěn hǎo.

Bái: Kě bu shì ma. Xiànzài xiūlide bǐ yǐqián hǎode duō.

30 Gāo: Nǐ qiáo, yòu kuān yòu píng, róngyì kāi chē. Kěshi Měiyīng, nǐ kě mǎn diār, bié kāi kuài chē.

Měi: Zhèr chē yòu shǎo, yòu méi shénmo rén zǒu lù, kāi kuài diār, pá shénmo de?

Gāo: Nǐ tīng wǒde, jiù màn diār kāi déle. *do it*

35 Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng, zhèi jǐnián lǐtōu zhèige dìfang gǎibiànle bù shǎo ba?

Gāo: Gǎibiànle bù shǎo. *in a moment* Huítóu nǐ kàn xīn gài de fángzi hěn duō, zēngjiāle bù shǎode pùzi. Xiànzài rènào jǐle.

Bái: Měiyīng, cóng zhèr dào fǔshang dōu jīngguo nǎr a?

Měi: Wǒmen cóng zhèr jìn Dōng Chéng Mén, wàng Xīn Huá Lù guǎi.

40 Bái: Dōng Chéng Mén dào Xī Chéng Mén bu shì Píng'ān Lù ma?

Měi: Shìde.

Gāo: Wénshān, zhèixiē lù nǐ dōu jǐde ba?

Bái: Jǐde.

45 Měi: Píng'ān Lù gēn Xīn Huá Lù zhè yídài ya, fēicháng rènào. Bìngqiě chē yě duō. Zài biéde lùkǒurshang dōu shì yíge jǐngchá, kěshì zhèige lù kǒurshang yǒu liǎngge jǐngchá. *not possible*

Gāo: Měiyīng, nǐ jiù zhùyì kāi chē hǎo bu hǎo?

Bái: Měiyīng chē kāide hěn bú cuò.

Měi: Bàba, nín tīng Wénshān shuō shénmo? *what*

50 Gāo: Wénshān, Xīn Huá Lù nǐ hái jǐde ba? Bú shì hěn huàide yìtiáo lù ma? Xiànzài xiūde ke hǎo jǐle. Yǐqián yǒu diànchē, xiànzài bǎ diànchē qǔxiāo le, zhǐ yǒu gōnggòng qìchē le.

Bái: Duìle. Wǒ yě jǐde yǒu yìtiáo lù yòu zhǎi yòu zāng. Jiù shì Xīn Huá Lù ba?

55 Gāo: Xiànzài ke gānjǐng jǐle. Píng'ān Lù Xīn Huá Lù jiàorshang zuì jìn xīn gài le yíge dà lǔguǎn, shícéng lóu. *newly built*

Bái: Jiào shénmo míngzi?

Gāo: Jiào Shìjiè Lǔguǎn, piàoliang jǐle. Wàibiar shì Xī shì de, lǐtōu dōu shì Zhōng shì de. Qiáng a, wánquán shì bōlide, jiǎngjiu jǐle.

60 Bái: Nín qùguo ma?

Gāo: Qùguo. Lǐtōu dìfang hěn dà. Cháng yǒu rén zài nèr kāi huì. Qiántou nǐ kàn nèizuò dà lóu jiu shì.

Bái: Oh, 'nèige dà lóu. Kě bu shì ma. Zhēn piàoliang. Yídìng hěn guì ba?

65 Gāo: Tīngshuō bú tài què.


Bái: Wǒ xiǎng 'zhènmo jiǎngjiude lǔguǎn bú huì tài piányide. Nín shuō shì ba?

Gāo: Xīn Huá Lù xībiar hái xīn gài le yíge dà bǎi huò gōngsī ne. Tīngshuō quán shìjiède huò tāmen dōu yǒu.

70 Měi: Wénshān, nèige dà bǎi huò gōngsī lí Yuǎn-Dà hěn jìn. Jiānglái nǐ mǎi dōngxī hěn fāngbian.

- Gāo: Měiyīng, bié shuō huà, zhùyì kāi chē.
 Měi: Wénshān, xiànzài yǒu ge xīnde dà yùndongchǎng.
 Bái: Zài nǎr a?
- 75 Měi: Yìhuěr nǐ jiu kànjian le.
 Gāo: Měiyīng, qiántou yǒu rén guò lù ou.
 Měi: Qiáojian le.
 Bái: Xiànzài cóng Yuǎn-Dà dào túshūguǎn shì bu shì hái shì sānhào gōnggòng qìchē ne?
- 80 Měi: Nǐde jìxing zhēn bú huài. Jǐhào chē dào nǎr, nǐ hái jìde ne.
 Gāo: Qiántou yǒu gǒu, kànjian le mei you? Bié pèngle gǒu.
 Měi: Bàba! Gāncuì nín kāi déle.
 Gāo: Wǒ pà nǐ chū shì a.
 Měi: Nín fàngxīn hǎo le. Wénshān, chūle Xīn Huá Mén jiu shì dà yùndongchǎng. . . . Nǐ kàn nèr jiù shì yùndongchǎng.
- 85 Bái: Ēi, yùndongchǎng zhēn bu xiǎo.
 Měi: Néng róng wǔwàn rén.
 Bái: Xuéxiào cháng kāi yùndong huì ma?
 Měi: Měinián kāi jǐcì. Dào Zhōngshān Lù le.
- 90 Bái: Aiya! Zhōngshāng Lù ke gǎibiànle bù shǎo wa. Jiǎnzhíde wǒ dōu bú rènshi le.
 Gāo: Xīn gài de zhùzhái hěn duō. Bú xiàng yǐqián le, shì bu shì?
 Bái: Duìle. Měiyīng, kuài guǎiwār le ba, duì bu duì?
 Gāo: Měiyīng, xiǎoxin, xiǎoxin! Wàng zánmen jiā qù de zhèitiáo lù bù róngyì kāi chē, nǐ zhīdao ba?
- 95 Měi: Wénshān, nǐ tīng wǒ bàba zhè yí lùshang!
 Gāo: Wǒ ràng nǐ xiǎoxin. Bié pèngle chē pèngle rén.
 Měi: Hái yǒu “Bié pèngle gǒu” duì bu duì?
 Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng tài guānxīn nǐ le.
- 100 Gāo: Shuō zhēnde wǒ nǚ’er chē kāide bú cuò.

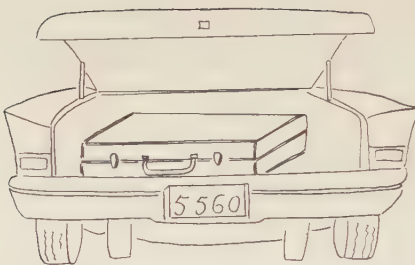
Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

1.0. (6) xián  idle, unoccupied (SV)


xián tán chat (V)

1.1. Wǒ méi shì, wǒ xiànzài xiánzhe ne.

1.2. Wǒmen dōu méi shì. Jiùshi lái gēn nǐ xián tán.



- 2.0. (11) **tíng** stop (V)
tíng chē stop or park a car
tíngchēchǎng parking lot *chǎng = 操场 = field*
 2.1. Zuótiān wǎnshàng wǒde biǎo tíng le. *(See p. 34)*
 2.2. Qǐng wèn, zhèr kéyǐ tíng chē ma?
 2.3. Tíngchēchǎng lí zhèr tài yuǎn le.
- 3.0. (18) **bāng** help (V) (Note 1)
bāng N(de) máng to help N
 3.1. Nǐ bāng wǒ ná dǎzìjī hǎo bu hǎo?
 3.2. Jīntiān wǎnshàng wǒ bāngzhe nǐ shōushi xínglǐ.
 3.3. Qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ yìdiǎr máng.
 3.4. Tā bāngle wǒ hěn duōde máng le.
- 4.0. (20) **yùndòng, yùndòng** exercise (IV) [lit. transport move]
 movement, sport (N)
yùndòngchǎng athletic field
yùndongyuán athlete
 Wǔ Sī Yùndòng May 4th Movement (Note 2)
 4.1. Wǒmen dào yùndòngchǎng qu yùndòng yùndòng.
 4.2. Tā shì yíge zuì hǎode yùndongyuán.
 4.3. Wǔ Sī Yùndòng shì xuésheng yùndòng.
 4.4. Nǐ xǐhuan nǐzhǒng yùndòng?
- 5.0. (23) **xiāng(zi)** (large) box, suitcase (with rigid exterior) trunk (N) (measures: zhǐ, gē)
shǒutíxiāng suitcase (with rigid exterior)
 5.1. Tā yǒu sìge dà xiāngzi yíge xiǎo xiāngzi.
 5.2. Wǒde chē xiāng hěn dà. Kéyǐ fàng hěn duō dōngxī.
 5.3. Wǒde shǒutíxiāng tài zhòng le, wǒ nábuqílái.

- 6.0. (27) **xiū(lí)** fix, repair, build (V) [lit. repair manage]
 6.1. Zhèitiáo lù xiūde zhēn hǎo.
 6.2. Wǒde biǎo tíng le. Wǒ děi qu xiūli xiūli.
 6.3. Wǒde qìchē bù zǒu le. Jīntian zǎochen xiūlile sānge zhōngtóu.
- 7.0. (29) **kuān** wide, broad (SV) *zhǎi*
 7.1. Zhèige wūzi yòu kuān yòu cháng.
- 8.0. (29) **píng** level, even, smooth (SV)
 8.1. Nèige lù hěn píng, róngyi kāi chē.
- 9.0. (34) **gǎi(biàn)** change (V, N) [lit. change alter]
 9.1. Zhèige zì xiěcuò le. Qǐng ni gǎiyigǎi.
 9.2. Zhèige dìfang gǎibiànle bù shǎo.
 9.3. Ta xiànzài gǎi le. Yǐqián bú yònggōng. Xiànzài yònggōng le.
 9.4. Zài wǒ líkai zhèr hěn duǎnde sānnián lǐtou, zhèige chéngde gǎibiàn hěn dà.
- 10.0. (36) **gài** build (TV)
 10.1. Shānshang xīn gàile hěn duō fángzi.
 10.2. Tāde fángzi shì qùnián gài de.
- 11.0. (37) **zēngjiā** increase, be increased, add (V) [lit. increase add]
 11.1. Zhèige xuéxiào jīnnián zēngjiāle bu shǎode xuésheng.
 11.2. Wǒmende guówén xià xīngqīyī kāishǐ měitiān zēngjiā yíge zhōngtóu.
- 12.0. (37) **pùzi** store (N) *diàn*
 12.1. Zhèixie pùzi dōu shì běn dì rén kāi de.
 12.2. Zhōngshān Lù běibiār nèige xiǎo pùzi shì mài shénmo de?
- 13.0. (37) **rènao** bustling (and noisy), busy, lively (SV) [lit. hot noisy]
 13.1. Zhèige dìfang jīnnián méi you yǐqián rènao le.
- 14.0. (38) **jīngguo** pass through, pass by (TV) [lit. traverse pass]
 14.1. Wǒ měitiān huí jiā yíding jīngguo hángkōng gōngsī mén kǒu.
 14.2. Wǒ shì zuò fēijī lái de, jīngguo Rìběn Sānfánshì dào Niǔyue.
- 15.0. (39) **Huá**  China; (also, a surname) (Note 1)
 Zhōnghuá China
 Huárén Chinese (person)
 15.1. Wǒ dào Huá Měi Lǚxíngshè qu mǎi fēijī piào.
 15.2. Zhōnghuá Fànguǎr cài zuòde zhēn hǎo.
 15.3. Huárén jiù shì Zhōngguo rén.

- 15.4. Wǒ jīntian zài pùzili yùjian Huá Xiānsheng le.
- 16.0. (42) **jìde** remember (V)
- 16.1. Zhèige zì zěnmō niàn? Wǒ bú jìde le.
- 16.2. Wǒ jìde nǐ hěn xǐhuan chī hóng shāo yú.
- 17.0. (44) **dài** belt (of), section (of), region (of) (M)
- 17.1. Zhōngshān Lù zhè ^{zhè, fùwù} yídài tài rènào le.
- 17.2. Wǒmen jiā nèi yídài dōu shì xīn gài de fángzi.
- 18.0. (44) **fēicháng** extraordinarily, unusually (AD) [lit. not frequently]
- 18.1. Tā fēicháng xǐhuan yánjiū Zhōngguó lìshǐ
- 18.2. Tā duì wǒ fēicháng hǎo.
- 19.0. (44) **bìngqiě** moreover (MA) [lit. and moreover]
- 19.1. Jīntian wǒ bú dào Wáng jiā qu le, yīnwèi xià yǔ bìngqiě wǒ hái méi niàn shū ne.
- 20.0. (45) **jǐngchá** policeman (N) [lit. warn investigate]
- 20.1. Jǐngcháde zhíwù shì bāngzhu rén.
- 21.0. (50) **huài** bad (SV)
- 21.1. Jīntiānde cài zhēn bú huài.
- 21.2. Tā shì ge huài rén.
- 22.0. (52) **qǔxiāo** get rid of, cancel, eliminate (TV) [lit. take disperse]
- 22.1. Xiànzài zhèr zhǐ yǒu èrhào gēn sìhào gōnggòng qìchē le. Bǎ sānhàode qǔxiāo le.
- 22.2. Xuéxiào bàogào le xià xīngqīliùde diànyǐng qǔxiāo le.
- 23.0. (53) **zhǎi** narrow (SV) *Кей*
- 23.1. Zhèige lù tài zhǎi. Chē bù róngyì guǎi.
- 24.0. (53) **zāng** dirty (SV)
- 24.1. Tā bǎ wūzi nòngde hěn zāng.
- 24.2. Nèige háizide yǐfu hěn zāng.
- 25.0. (55) **gānjìng** clean (SV) [lit. dry pure]
- 25.1. Chī de dōngxì zuì yào jǐnde shì děi gānjìng.
- 26.0. (55) **jiǎo(r)** corner (N)
- 26.1. Wǒ jiā jiù zài zhèitiáo lùde dōngběi jiǎorshang.
- 26.2. Wǒde shū jiǎorshang yǒu wǒde míngzi.
- 27.0. (56) **céng** layer, story (M)
- 27.1. Nèige fángzi yíòng jiù liǎngcéng.
- 27.2. Wáng Xiānsheng zhù dì jǐcéng?

28.0. (56) **lóu** building of two or more stories; [So-and-So] Restaurant

28.1. Zhōnghuá Lóude cài zěnmoyàng?

28.2. Wǒ zhù zai Xīn Huá Lù wǔhào lóushàng.

28.3. Tā yìhuěr jiù huílai. Tā dào lóuxià qu ná xìn.

28.4. Wǒ jiā zhùzai sìcéng lóushang. Měitiān pǎoshàng pǎoxià hěn lèi.

29.0. (58) **shì** style, model, pattern, fashion (N)

Xī shì Western style

Zhōng shì Chinese style

29.1. Wǒmen jiāde dōngxi dōu shì Zhōng shì de.

29.2. Wáng Tàitai jiù xǐhuan Xī shì de fángzi.

29.3. Tāde qìchē shì zuì xīn shì de.

30.0. (59) **qiáng** wall (of a building) (N)

30.1. Qiángshang guàzhe yìzhāng dìtú.

30.2. Tā bǎ yàoshi guāzai qiángshang le.

31.0. (59) **wánquán** complete (SV) [lit. complete all]

31.1. Zhèige jùzi yìsì bù wánquán.

wanquan bu d

31.2. Tā shuō de huà wǒ wánquán bù dǒng.

31.3. Fàngjià de shíhou xuésheng wánquán zǒuguāng le.

31.4. Tāde shìqing wǒ wánquán bù zhīdào.

32.0. (59) **bōli** glass (material) (N) 玻

bōlibēi (drinking) glass

玻 璃 杯

32.1. Bōlide yòngchu hěn duō.

32.2. Yòng dà bōlibēi hē shuǐ, xiǎo bōlibēi hē jiǔ.

33.0. (59) **jiǎngjiu** particular, meticulous; admirable, elegant (SV); be particular about (AV)

33.1. Wáng Xiānsheng jiā lǐtōu hěn jiǎngjiu.

Tā dūi N

33.2. Nèige diànyǐngyuàn gàide zhēn jiǎngjiu.

33.3. Zhāng Xiáojie zuì jiǎngjiu chuān.

34.0. (61) **huì** meeting (N)

kāi huì hold or open a meeting

yùndong huì athletic meet

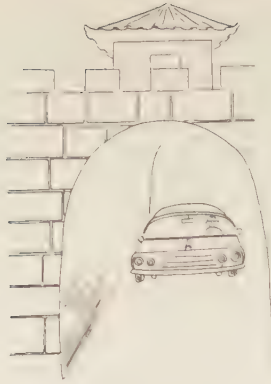
Shìjiè Yùndong Huì Olympics

34.1. Jīntian xiàwǔ xuéxiào yǒu yíge huì.

34.2. Xià xīngqīyī wǒmen xuéxiào kāi huì.

- 34.3. Míngnián Shìjiè Yùndòng Huì bu zhīdào zài nǎr kāi.
- 35.0. (62) zuò (measure for buildings, cities, mountains)
- 35.1. Nèizuò dà lóu jiù shì wǒmende xuéxiào.
- 35.2. Nèr de shānshuǐ hěn hǎo—liǎngzuò shān, zhōngjiàn yǒu yíge xiǎo hú.
- 36.0. (64) guì expensive (SV)
- 36.1. Zhèige pùzide dōngxì tài guì le.
- 37.0. (66) piányi cheap (SV)
- 37.1. Ta nèige màozi mǎide hěn piányi.
- 38.0. (68) bǎi huò gōngsī department store [lit. hundred goods company]
- 38.1. Xīn Huá Bǎi Huò Gōngsī xīn dào le hěn duō nǚrende yīfu.
- 39.0. (70) jiānglái hereafter, in the future (MA) [lit. imminent come]
- 39.1. Jiānglái nèige háizi yídìng shì yíge shùxuéjiā.
- 40.0. (71) fāngbian convenient (SV)
- 40.1. Zài zhèr zhù mǎi dōngxì shénmode dōu hěn fāngbian.
- 40.2. Zhèr méi yǒu gōnggòng qìchē. Dào nǎr qu dōu bu fāngbian.
- 41.0. (76) ou! Mind you! (particle of warning) (Note 4)
- 41.1. Zhùyì kāi chē. Qiántou yǒu rén zǒu lù ou!
- 41.2. Nǐde zì dōu xiěcuò l'ou!
- 42.0. (80) jìxing memory (N)
- 42.1. Wǒde jìxing ke zhēn huài. Zěnmó wǒ bǎ nèijiàn shìqíng wàngle ne?
- 42.2. Tāde jìxing zhēn hǎo. Shínián qián de shìqíng ta hái jìzhe.
- 43.0. (81) gǒu dog (measure: tiáo) (N)
- 43.1. Ta nèitiáo gǒu zhēn cōngmíng.
- 44.0. (81) pèng hit, run into (TV)
- pèngjian encounter
- 44.1. Tā zuótian wǎnshang kāi chē pèngle rén le.
- 44.2. Zuótian wǒ pèngjian Wáng Xiānsheng le.
- 45.0. (82) gāncuì frank, direct, straightforward (SV)
- gāncuì . . . déle. Would be best to . . . and have done with it.
- 45.1. Tā shuōde huà hěn gāncuì.
- 45.2. Wǒ bú qù le. Gāncuì nǐ yíge rén qù (déle.
- 46.0. (83) chū shì have an accident (VO) [lit. produce affair]
- 46.1. Ta kāi chē bù zhīdào ta chūle duōshao cì shì le.

- 46.2. Jǐntian zǎochen tāde qìchē chū shì le.
- 47.0. (84) fàngxīn be unworried, be assured (VO) [lit. put down heart]
 bú fàngxīn be uneasy (about), be worried (about)
- 47.1. Fēijī luòxialai wǒ cái fàngle xīn le.
- 47.2. Nín fàng xīn ba. Chūbuliǎo shì.
- 47.3. Tā kāi chē wo lǎo bú fàngxīn.
- 47.4. Mǔqīn lǎo bú fàngxīn tāmende háizi.
- 48.0. (86) Ěi! Yeah! Uh-huh! (Note 5)
- 48.1. Ěi! Zhèrde shānshuǐ zhēn bú cuò.
- 49.0. (87) róng hold, contain, accommodate (TV)
- 49.1. Zènmo xiǎode yíge wūzi zěnmó néng róng sìshí rén ne?
- 49.2. Nèige dìfang hěn dà. Néng róng sìqiān rén kāi huì.
- 50.0. (90) Aiya! Oh my! Goodness!
- 50.1. Aiya! Zāogāo! Wǒ wàngle dài qián le. TIAN H
- 51.0. (90) jiǎnzhí(de) simply, just (AD) [lit. simple straight]
- 51.1. Wǒ dìdi jiǎnzhíde bù xǐhuan niàn shū.
- 51.2. Tā jiǎnzhí jiù bù zhīdào zhèijiàn shì.
- 52.0. (92) zhùzhái dwelling, residence (N) [lit. dwell house]
- 52.1. Tāde zhùzhái zài nǎr?
- 52.2. Zhèr méi pùzi. Dōu shì zhùzhái.
- 53.0. (93) guǎiwān turn a corner (IV)
- 53.1. Cóng zhèr yì guǎiwān jiù dào le.
- 53.2. Bù guǎiwān. Yìzhíde wǎng dōng zǒu.
- 54.0. (94) xiǎoxīn be careful (SV), be careful (of), watch out (for) (TV, AV) [lit. small heart]
- 54.1. Xiǎoxīn! Xiǎoxīn! Bié pèngle dōngxī.
- 54.2. Zǒu lù yào xiǎoxīn. Bié ràng chē pèng le.
- 54.3. Xiǎoxīn gǒu.
- 54.4. Xiǎoxīn guò lù.
- 55.0. (99) guānxīn be concerned (about) (V) [lit. involve heart]
- 55.1. Tāde xīn tài hǎo le. Lǎoshi guānxīn bié rénde shì.
- 55.2. Nín kànjian Wáng Xiānsheng xièxie ta guānxīn wǒ.
- 56.0. (100) nǚ'er daughter (N) [lit. female child]
- 56.1. Gāo Tàitai zhǐ yǒu yíge nǚ'er.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Wǒ wēnxi bàntiān shū le. Wǒ xiànzài yīnggāi xiūxi xiūxi le.
2. Wǒ tiāntiān mángzhe niàn shū. Wǒde wūzili zāng jíle, yě méi gōngfu shōushi.
3. Wai. Wáng Xiānsheng, jīntian wǎnshang wǒ dào nǐ jiā qu tīng lùyīn hǎo bu hǎo?
4. Ta yìbiār xiūli qìchē yìbiār gēn péngyou xián tán.
5. Yìhuěr děng ta láile wǒmen yíkuài dào túshūguǎn qu.
6. Wǒ hái bù zhīdào ne, tā yuánlái shì běn dì rén.
7. Wǒ měitiān dào xuéxiào dōu jīngguo nǐ mén kǒu.
8. Nǐmen shéi bǎ wǒde dǎzlǐ gěi nònghuài le? Wǒ zěnmó xiū yě xiūbuhǎo le.
9. Qǐng nǐ ná yàoshi bǎ wǒde shǒutíxiāng suǒshang.
10. Tā Zhōngguo huà shuōde gēn Zhōngguo rén yíyàng liúli.
11. Wáng Xiānsheng yòu jiǎngjiu chī yòu jiǎngjiu chuān.
12. Wǒde jìxing bù hǎo. Shénmo shìqing yìhuěr jiu wàng.
13. Jīntiande tiānqi hěn huài. Kěnéng xià dà yǔ.
14. Yīnwei xià dà yǔ de guānxi nèige yùndong huì qǔxiǎole.
15. Zài zhei fùjìn xīn gài le yíge tíngchēchǎng.
16. Nǐ lái de shíhou yàoshi nǐ jīngguo pùzi qǐng nǐ bāng wo mǎi liùge bōlibēi lai.
17. Nǐ zhù de dìfang mǎi dōngxī fāngbian ma?
18. Zuótian Wáng Xiáojie dào wǒ zhèr lái bǎ shǒutíbāo làxia le.
19. Wǒ dào fēijīchǎng jiē péngyou lai le.
20. Wǒde yǎnjing bù hǎo. Wǒ bǎ dà zì kànchéng tài zì le.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ jiǎncháwánle xínglǐ yǐhòu yì chūlai Gāo Xiānsheng Měiyīng zài ner
dēngzhe wǒ ne. Méi you hǎo jiǔ lìfū bǎ wǒde xínglǐ jiù náchulai le.

Měiyīng xiànzài huì kāi chē le. Tā bǎ Sān Yǒu Shūdiàn de chē kàilai
jiē wo. Gāo Xiānsheng yě gēn wǒ shuōguo, shūdiàn mǎi shū mài shū
5 de shìqing tài máng le, bìděi yǒu ge chē, suǒyì zuì jìn mǎile yíge qìchē.

Měiyīng dào tíngchēchǎng qu bǎ chē kāiguolai. Gāo Xiānsheng bāng-
zhe wǒ bǎ xínglǐ fàngzai chē xiānglǐ, wǒmen sāngē rén yíkuàr zuò chē
jiù wǎng Gāo jia qù le.

Zài zhe yí lùshang Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Měiyīng gàosu wǒ zhèige
10 dìfang zěnmoyàng gǎibiàn le.

Zài Píng'ān Lù Xīn Huá Lù jiǎorshang xīn gài le yíge dà lúguǎn míngzi
jiào Shìjiè Lǚguǎn. Cóng wàimian kànqilai zhēn jiǎngjiu. Qiáng dōu shì
bōlide. Gāo Xiānsheng gàosu wǒ wàimian shì Xī shì kěshi lǐmian shì
Zhōng shìde. Lǐmian hěn dà. Chángcháng yǒu rén zài ner kāi huì.

15 Zǒudao Xīn Huá Lù xībiar nèr hái kǎile yíge xīn bǎi huò gōngsī.
Měiyīng gàosu wǒ jiānglái duì wǒ hěn fāngbian. Wǒ duì bǎi huò gōngsī
bù zěnmò yǒu xìngqu. Dàgài nǚrén chàbuduō 'dōu xǐhuan jìn bǎi huò
gōngsī ba?

Hái yǒu nèitiáo Xīn Huá Lù, gēn yǐqián yìdiǎr yě bu yíyàng le. Yǐqián
20 shì yòu zāng yòu zhǎi, lù yòu bù píng. Xiànzài zhèitiáo lù xiūde yòu
kuān yòu píng, bìngqiě gānjingde bùdéliǎo, gēn yǐqián wánquán bù yíyàng
le. Érqiě diàncā yě qǔxiāo le, zhǐ zǒu gōnggòng qìchē le.

Yí lùshang zēngjiāle bù shǎode pùzi, fēicháng rènáo. Suírán wǒ líkai
zhèr hěn duǎnde sānnián, kěshi yǒu hěn dàde gǎibiàn.

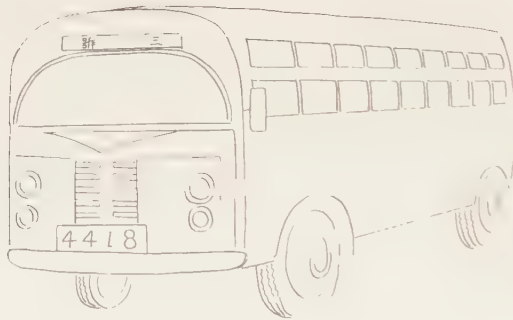
25 Píng'ān Lù gēn Xīn Huá Lù tài rènào le. Gāo Xiáojie shuō yīnwei rén duō chē duō de guānxi, zhèige lù kǒurshang yǒu liǎngge jǐngchá.

Yì chū Zhōnghuá Mén jiù shì xīnde dà yùndongchǎng. Měiyīng gàosu wo néng róng wǔwàn rén. Zhèige yùndongchǎng duì Yuǎn-Dà hěn yǒu guānxi. Wǒ yǐqián zài Yuǎn-Dà de shíhou yì kāi yùndong huì wǒmen
30 dōu děi qù dao hěn yuǎnde dìfang, dào gōnggòng yùndongchǎng qu, yīnwei Yuǎn Dàde yùndongchǎng bú gòu dà, róngbuliǎo hěn duō rén.

Zhōngshān Lù gǎibiàn hěn dà. Wǒ yìdiǎr yě bú rènshi le. Yuánlái Zhōngshān Lù méi yǒu hěn duōde zhùzhái fángzi. Xiànzài gàile bù shǎode fángzi le.

35 Zài zhe yí lùshang zuì kě xiǎode shì Gāo Xiānsheng. Yīnwei ta guānxīn Měiyīng, pà ta kāi chē chū shì, suóyì yí lùshang lǎoshi gēn Měiyīng shuō xiǎoxin, bié pèng rén, bié pèng chē, bié pèng gǒu, shénmode zhèixie huà.

Měiyīng chē kāide hěn wěn. Kěshi fùqīn mǔqīn dōu shì yíyàng bú
40 fàngxīn tāmente háizi.



Wèntí

1. Bái Wénshān jiǎncháwánle xíngli yǐhòu, Gāo Xiānsheng wèn ta shénmo ya?
2. Bái Xiānsheng wèi shénmo zài jiǎncháchù hěn jiǔ?
3. Wénshānde xíngli lǐfū gěi ta sòngchulai le. Měiyīng shuō qǐng tāmen zài nèr dēngzhe, tā qu zuò shénmo?
4. Gāo Xiānsheng yào bāngzhe Bái Xiānsheng ná nèige dà píbāo. Bái Xiānsheng ràng ta ná ma? Ràng ta ná shénmo?
5. Tāmen zuò chē de shíhou shéi zuò qiántou shéi zuò hòutou? Shéi kāi de chē?

6. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō bǎ dà pǔbào fàngzai nǎr?
7. Cóng fēijīchǎng dào chéng lǐtōu zhèitiáo lù zěnmoyàng?
8. Bái Xiānsheng shuō zhèige dìfang gǎibiànle bù shǎo. Zěnmō gǎibiàn le?
9. Bái Xiānsheng wèn Měiyīng dào tāmen jiā dōu jīngguo nǎr? Měiyīng gào su ta dōu jīngguo shénmo dìfang?
10. Gāo Xiǎojie gào su Bái Xiānsheng Píng'ān Lù gēn Xīn Huá Lù kǒurshang you jǐge jǐngchá?
11. Wénshān shuō Měiyīng chē kāide bú cuò. Měiyīng gēn ta bàba shuō shénmo?
12. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō Píng'ān Lù Xīn Huá Lù jiǎorshang gàide nèige dà lǔguǎn jiào shénmo míngzi? Jǐcéng lóu? Tā shuō jiǎngjiu jíle. Zěnmō jiǎngjiu?
13. Xīn Huá Lù xībiar kāile yíge shénmo gōngsī? Tāmen dōu mài nǎrde huò?
14. Měiyīng shuō Wénshānde jìxing zěnmoyàng?
15. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō pà Měiyīng kāi chē chū shì Měiyīng shuō shénmo?
16. Měiyīng shuō nèige dà yùndongchǎng néng róng duōshao rén?
17. Yí dào le Zhōngshān Lù Bái Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
18. Gāo Xiānsheng wèi shénmo yí lùshang hǎoxiē cì gēn Měiyīng shuō zhùyì xiǎoxin?
19. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō tā nǚ'er chē kāide zěnmoyàng?
20. Yàoshi nǐ kāi chē dào fēijīchǎng qu jiē péngyou, tā chūlaile nǐ yīnggāi zuò shénmo?
21. Yàoshi yíge péngyou xiànzài huì kāi chē le nǐ yīngdāng gēn ta shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi yíge péngyou hěn jiǔ yǐqián de shìqing hái méi wàng ne, nǐ shuō ta shénmo?
23. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou kāi chē tāde fùqīn yí lùshang shuōle hǎoxiē cì bié pèngle rén xiǎoxin shénmode zhèixie huà nǐ yīngdāng shuō shénmo?
24. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou cóng biéde dìfang huílaile xiànzài zhèr yòu xīn gàide dà lóu gēn fángzi nǐ zěnmō gào su ta?
25. Yàoshi yíge péngyou láile tā shuō zhèige dìfang gǎibiàn le nǐ zěnmō shuō?
26. Yàoshi nǐ kāi chē bié rén shuō xiǎoxin bié chū shì nǐ shuō shénmo?
27. Shìjiè Lǔguǎn zài nǎr?
28. Nǐ zěnmō zhīdao Bái Xiānshengde jìxing bú cuò?
29. Cóng fēijīchǎng dào Gāo jia jīngguo de lù dōu jiào shénmo míngzi?
30. Nǐ shuō zhèi sānnián lǐtōu zhèige dìfang yǒu shénmo gǎibiàn?

Dialogue: Mr. Gao, Gao Meiyong, and Vincent White drive from the airport into the city and then out of the city to the Gao's home.

Mei : Vincent's come, papa.

Gao : Well, Vincent? There was no trouble?

White: None. You and Meiyong have again had to wait [here] for a long time. Although the baggage was no trouble, the inspector chatted with me for a long time.

Gao : Is the baggage going to be brought out right now?

White: Yes. The inspector said the porter would send it right out. . . . Oh, the baggage has come, see. I have only a little, just three pieces [of baggage].

Mei : You two wait a while [first]. I'll go to the parking lot and drive the car over.

White: Meiyong has learned how to drive!

Gao : Meiyong loves to drive. Oh, I haven't told you yet, the Three Friends Bookstore has recently acquired a car. The bookstore has been awfully busy lately and needs to have a car.

White: How long has it been since the car was bought?

Gao : Just a little over a month. Meiyong has brought the car over. I'll help you with this (big suitcase).

White: No, it's too heavy. Help me with the briefcase.

Gao : It doesn't matter. I'll get some exercise.

White: Still, (please) take the briefcase.

Gao : All right. Vincent, you and Meiyong sit in front and I'll sit in back. Put the big suitcase in the trunk.

White: Fine. Meiyong, when did you learn to drive?

Mei : [I learned how to] last year.

Gao : It's quite a long way from the airport to the city. Vincent, this road has been very well built.

White: That's so. It's been fixed up so that it's a lot better now than before.

Gao : Look, it's wide and smooth and easy to drive on. But Meiyong, you slow up a bit, don't speed [lit. drive fast car].

Mei : There aren't many cars here, and there's nobody on the road, so what's there to be afraid of in driving a little faster?

Gao : You listen to me and just drive slower, that's all.

White: Mr. Gao, in these (past) few years this place has changed quite a bit, hasn't it?

Gao : [It's changed] quite a bit. In a moment you'll see that there are a lot of

new[ly built] buildings, and that quite a few stores have been added. It's quite bustling now.

White: Meiying, how do we go from here to your home?

Mei : From here we go in through the East City Gate, and turn at New China Avenue.

White: From the East City Gate to the West City Gate isn't it Pacific Avenue?

Mei : Yes.

Gao : Vincent, you remember all these streets, I suppose?

White: Yes.

Mei : The area of Pacific and New China Avenues is exceptionally busy. And there are a lot of cars too. At other intersections there is one policeman, but at this intersection there are two [policemen].

Gao : Meiying, you just concentrate on driving, O.K.?

White: Meiying isn't a bad driver at all.

Mei : Papa, did you hear what Vincent said?

Gao : Vincent, I suppose you still remember New China Avenue? Wasn't it a very bad road? It's been fixed up now so that it's really very nice. It used to have streetcars, but now they have all been gotten rid of, and there are only buses.

White: Yes. I [also] remember [that there was] a street that was both narrow and dirty. That was New China Avenue, wasn't it?

Gao : But now it's very clean. At the corner of Pacific and New China Avenues a big ten-story hotel was built recently.

White: What's it called?

Gao : [It's called] the World Hotel. It's very striking. Outside it's Western style, and inside it's all Chinese style. As for the walls, they're all of glass, very elegant.

White: You've gone (into it)?

Gao : Yes. Inside there's lots of space. People often hold meetings there. Up ahead, see that big building, that's it.

White: Oh, that big building. Yes, indeed. It's very attractive. It must be very expensive.

Gao : I hear it's not too expensive.

White: I should think such an elegant hotel can't be too inexpensive. Don't you agree?

Gao : On the west side of New China Avenue they've recently built a big department store. I hear they have things from all over the world.

Mei : Vincent, that [big department] store is close to Far Eastern University. Hereafter it will be very convenient for you to buy things.

- Gao : Meiying, don't talk, concentrate on driving.
- Mei : Vincent, now we have a big new athletic field.
- White: Where is it?
- Mei : You'll see it in a moment.
- Gao : Meiying, up ahead there are people crossing the street, mind you.
- Mei : I see them.
- White: Does the No. 3 bus still go [lit. is it still the No. 3 bus] from Far Eastern University to the library?
- Mei : Your memory's really good. You still remember what number bus goes where.
- Gao : Watch out for the dog up ahead. Don't run into it.
- Mei : Papa! It would be best for you to drive and have done with it.
- Gao : I'm afraid of your having an accident.
- Mei : You can put your mind at rest. Vincent, after we go out through the New China Gate there's the big athletic field. . . . Look there, that's it [the athletic field].
- White: Yeah! The athletic field is certainly tremendous [not small].
- Mei : It can hold 50,000 people.
- White: Does the school often have athletic meets?
- Mei : It has several a year. We've reached Sun Yatsen Avenue.
- White: Gosh! Sun Yatsen Avenue has really changed a lot. I simply don't recognize it at all.
- Gao : There are a lot of new[ly built] dwellings. It's not as it used to be, [is it?]
- White: You're right. Meiying, we make a turn soon, right?
- Gao : Meiying, be careful, be careful! This road to our house is not easy to drive on, you know.
- Mei : Vincent, just listen to my daddy the whole way!
- Gao : I want you to be careful. Don't bump into cars and run into people.
- Mei : And, "Don't run into dogs," right?
- White: Mr. Gao is very concerned for you.
- Gao : To tell the truth, my daughter isn't such a bad driver.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

1. 1. I don't have anything to do. I'm not occupied now.
1. 2. We don't have anything (special to see you about). We've just come to shoot the breeze with you.

2. 1. Last evening my watch stopped.
2. 2. Could you tell me if it's all right to park here?
2. 3. The parking lot is too far from here.
3. 1. Help me with the typewriter, O.K.?
3. 2. This evening I'll help you pack your baggage.
3. 3. Please help me a bit.
3. 4. He helped me a lot.
4. 1. Let's go to the athletic field for some exercise.
4. 2. He's a superb athlete.
4. 3. The May 4th Movement was a student movement.
4. 4. What kind of sports do you like?
5. 1. He has four big trunks and one small trunk.
5. 2. The trunk in my car is quite large. (You) can put a lot of things (in it).
5. 3. My suitcase is too heavy. I can't lift it.
6. 1. This road is very well built.
6. 2. My watch has stopped. I have to [go to] have it [lit. my watch] repaired.
6. 3. My car wouldn't go. I spent three hours fixing it this morning.
7. 1. This room is wide as well as long.
8. 1. That road is very smooth. It's easy to drive on.
9. 1. This character is written incorrectly. Please correct [lit. change] it.
9. 2. This place has changed quite a bit.
9. 3. He's changed now. In the past he wasn't studious, but now he works hard.
9. 4. In the three short years that I've been away from here there have been great changes in this city.
10. 1. A lot of houses have been built recently [lit. newly] on the hill.
10. 2. His house was built last year.
11. 1. This school added quite a few students this year.
11. 2. Beginning next Monday our (course in) national language and literature will be increased an hour a day.
12. 1. These stores were all opened by local people.
12. 2. What does that little store north of Sun Yatsen Avenue sell?
13. 1. This year this place isn't as lively as before.
14. 1. I [certainly] go past [the doorway of] the airline company every day on my way home.
14. 2. I came by plane, via Japan and San Francisco to New York.
15. 1. I'm going to the China-America Travel Bureau to buy a plane ticket.

- 15.2. The food at the China Restaurant is really good.
- 15.3. Huárén are simply Chinese.
- 15.4. I met Mr. Hua in the store today.
- 16.1. How is this character read? I don't remember it any more.
- 16.2. I remember you're very fond of [eating] red-cooked fish.
- 17.1. This area around Sun Yatsen Avenue is very busy.
- 17.2. The section around our home consists entirely of new[ly built] houses.
- 18.1. He's tremendously interested in [studying] Chinese history.
- 18.2. He's exceptionally nice to me.
- 19.1. I'm not going to Wangs' today after all, because it's raining, and besides, I still haven't done my studying.
- 20.1. A policeman's duty is to help people.
- 21.1. Today's food is really not bad.
- 21.2. He's an awful person.
- 22.1. At present there are only No. 2 and No. 4 buses here. The No. 3 bus has been eliminated.
- 22.2. The school announced that next Saturday's movie has been canceled.
- 23.1. This road is too narrow. It's not easy for cars to make a turn.
- 24.1. He let the room get very dirty.
- 24.2. That child's clothes are very dirty.
- 25.1. The most important thing about food is that it must be clean.
- 26.1. My home is right on the northeast corner of this road.
- 26.2. My name's on the corner of my book.
- 27.1. That building has only two floors [in all].
- 27.2. What floor does Mr. Wang live on?
- 28.1. How's the food at the China Restaurant?
- 28.2. I live upstairs at No. 5 New China Avenue.
- 28.3. He'll be back in a moment. He's gone downstairs to get the mail.
- 28.4. I live on the fourth floor. It's pretty tiring running up and down every day.
- 29.1. The things in our home are all Chinese style.
- 29.2. Mrs. Wang only likes Western-style houses.
- 29.3. His car is the newest model.
- 30.1. There's a map hanging on the wall.
- 30.2. He hung the key on the wall.

31. 1. This sentence is incomplete [in meaning].
31. 2. I'm completely baffled by what he says.
31. 3. At vacation time the students leave en masse.
31. 4. I know nothing at all about his affairs.
32. 1. Glass has many uses.
32. 2. The large glasses are [used] for [drinking] water, the small glasses for [drinking] wine.
33. 1. The interior of Mr. Wang's home is very elegant.
33. 2. That movie theater is really elegant[ly built].
33. 3. Miss Zhang is very particular about (what she) wears.
34. 1. There's a meeting at school this afternoon.
34. 2. Next Monday our school is having an assembly.
34. 3. I don't know where the Olympics are to be held next year.
35. 1. That big building is our school.
35. 2. The scenery there is very nice: two mountains, with a little lake in between.
36. 1. The things in this store are too expensive.
37. 1. He bought that hat [of his] very inexpensively.
38. 1. A lot of women's clothes have arrived recently at the New China Department Store.
39. 1. [In the future] that child will certainly be a mathematician.
40. 1. If you live here, shopping and so forth will be very convenient.
40. 2. There are no buses here. Getting anywhere (from here) is inconvenient.
41. 1. Pay attention to driving the car. Up ahead there are people walking, mind you.
41. 2. Your characters are all written incorrectly, you know.
42. 1. My memory is really awful. How did I forget that [matter]?
42. 2. His memory is really good. He still remembers things of a decade ago.
43. 1. That dog of his is really clever.
44. 1. He ran into someone while driving last night.
44. 2. Yesterday I encountered Mr. Wang.
45. 1. He's very direct in what he says.
45. 2. I'm not going. It would be best for you to go by yourself and have done with it.
46. 1. He's had I don't know how many accidents while driving.
46. 2. This morning he had an accident with his car.

- 47.1. I didn't stop worrying until the plane landed.
- 47.2. Don't worry. (We) can't have an accident.
- 47.3. When he drives I'm always worried.
- 47.4. Mothers are always worrying about their children.
- 48.1. Yeah! The scenery here is really not bad at all.
- 49.1. How can such a small room hold forty people?
- 49.2. That place is huge. It can hold 40,000 people [having a meeting].
- 50.1. Oh my gosh! I forgot to bring money.
- 51.1. My younger brother simply does not like to study.
- 51.2. He simply doesn't know about this matter.
- 52.1. Where is his residence?
- 52.2. There are no stores here. It's all residences.
- 53.1. Make a turn here and you'll be there.
- 53.2. Don't turn. Go straight east.
- 54.1. Be careful! Be careful! Don't bang into things.
- 54.2. Be careful in walking along the road. Don't get hit by a car.
- 54.3. Beware of the dog.
- 54.4. Watch out in crossing the street.
- 55.1. He's awfully kind. He's always concerned about other people's affairs.
- 55.2. If you see Mr. Wang, thank him for his concern for me.
- 56.1. Mrs. Gao has only one daughter.

Review Sentences

- 1. I've been reviewing for a long time. I should rest for a while now.
- 2. I'm busy studying every day. My room is awfully dirty, but I don't have time to clean it.
- 3. Hello. Mr. Wang, will it be all right for me to go to your home this evening to listen to recordings?
- 4. He fixed the car as he chatted with his friends.
- 5. In a while after he comes we'll go to the library together.
- 6. I still didn't know that he was actually a local man.
- 7. I pass your place [lit. your doorway] every day on my way to school.
- 8. Who [of you] damaged my typewriter? No matter how I try, I can't fix it.
- 9. Please lock my suitcase [with the key].
- 10. He speaks Chinese as fluently as a Chinese.

11. Mr. Wang is particular about what he eats and what he wears.
12. My memory is no good. I forget everything in a short while.
13. It's rotten weather today. There's a possibility that it will rain hard.
14. Owing to the heavy rain that athletic meet was canceled.
15. A parking lot has just been constructed in this vicinity.
16. When you come, if you pass a store please buy half a dozen glasses for me.
17. Is the place where you live convenient for shopping?
18. Yesterday Miss Wang came here and left her briefcase behind.
19. I've come to the airport to meet a friend.
20. My eyes are no good. I read the character dà as the character tài.

Notes

1. Bāng 'help,' a shortened form of bāngzhu, is used most often with a following clause:

Wǒ bāng nǐ xiě xìn. 'I'll help you write the letter.'

In this usage it is interchangeable with bāngzhu and with the continuative form bāngzhe. A generalized expression for 'help,' without reference to any specific kind of help, is bāng máng 'help (one's) busyness':

Qǐng nǐ bāng máng. 'Please help.'

The person being helped can be expressed either as the object of the coverb gěi or as a noun modifier of máng, with or without an intervening de:

Tā gěi wǒ bāng máng. or

Tā bāng wǒ máng. or

Tā bāng wǒde máng. 'He is helping me.'

2. The May 4th Movement, which started in 1919 with a protest, led by students, against foreign-dictated treaties, marks the beginning of an important phase of modern Chinese nationalism.
3. The syllable huá 'splendor, glory' is used as a somewhat more elegant designation for China and things Chinese. It occurs in such expressions as Zhōnghuá 'China' and Huárén 'a Chinese.' Since the establishment of the Chinese Republic in 1912 the expression Xīn Huá 'New China' has been especially popular. Xīn Huá and Zhōnghuá are frequently used in names of streets, restaurants, and so on.
4. The particle ou is added at the end of a sentence to indicate a mild warning. After vowels it effects an elision. Thus le plus ou becomes l'ou.
5. The exclamation ěi, spoken with a long-drawn-out low tone, expresses surprised agreement.



"Mā zài mén kǒu dēngzhe ne."

Dì Sīkè. Dào Péngyou Jiā

Huìhuà: Bái Wénshān dào le Gāo jia gēn Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Tàitai, Gāo Měiyīng tán huà.

Měi: Bàba nín kàn. Mā zài mén kǒu dēngzhe ne.

Gāo: Oh! Ta dàgài tīngjian wǒmen huilai le.

5 Tàì: Wénshān, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn ne. Hái shì nèige yàngzi. Fǔshang dōu hǎo a?

Bái: Dōu hǎo. Gāo Tàitai nín hǎo? Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Wǒ mǔqin wèn nín hǎo ne.

Tàì: Xièxie. Kuài jìnqu xiūxi. Hěn lèi ba?

10 Bái: Bú lèi. Wǒ yòu lái máfan nín.

Tàì: Nǎrde huà ne. Zìjǐ rén hébì kèqì. (Duì Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Měiyīng:) Nǐmen bāngzhe Wénshān ná dōngxī ya.

Bái: Wǒ dōngxī hěn shǎo. Wǒ yíge rén nádeliǎo.

Gāo: Lái, Wǒ bāngzhe nǐ ná.

15 Bái: Xièxie nín. Gāo Tàitai, nín xiān qǐng jìnqu.

Tàì: Hǎo, wǒ xiān jìnqu.

Bái: Fǔshang hái shì yǐqiándede lǎo yàngzi.

Tàì: Wénshān, nǐ xiān dào xízǎofáng xíxi liǎn. Lěng rè shuǐ dōu yǒu. Wǒ gàosu nǐ shǒujīn féizào dōu zài nǎr ne.

20 Bái: Xièxie nín.

Tàì: Nǐ kàn zhèitiáo huáng yánse shǒujīn shì nǐde. Féizào zài nèr ne. Nǐ xǐ. Wǒ qī chá nòng diǎnxīn.

Gāo: Xiān lái chá. Wǒmen dōu kě le.

Bái: Nín bié tài fèi shì.

25 Tàì: Wǒ jiù nòng diǎn miàn gěi nǐ chī.

Bái: Hǎojí le. Wǒ zhēn è le. Zài fēijīshang wǒ méi chīhǎo.

Tàì: Dāngrán le. Fēijīshangde fàn bù hǎo chī.

Gāo: Wénshān, wǒ nèiren yì zhīdao nǐ yào lái de xiāoxi tā gāoxìngde bùdeliǎo.

30 Bái: Wǒ zhīdao Gāo Tàitai zuì ài wǒ le.

Gāo: Huì chōu yān le ba, Wénshān?

- Bái: Chōuzhe wár. Zài xuéxiào lǐtōu tóngxué chōu yān yǒude shíhou yě chōu yìzhī. mw
- Gāo: Gěi nǐ yān. Yánghuǒ zài zhèr.
- 35 Bái: Wǒ gěi nín diǎn.
- Gāo: Xièxie nǐ.
- Bái: Wǒ cóng Měiguó dàilái yíge dāhuǒjī, shì gěi nín mǎi de.
- Gāo: Wǒ zhèng xiǎng mǎi ge dāhuǒjī ne.
- Tài: Diǎnxin hǎo le. Wénshān chī diǎnxin.
- 40 Bái: Miàn wénzhe, wèr zhēn hǎo. Jǐnián méi chī Gāo Tàitai zuò de fàn le.
- Gāo: Qǐng zuò.
- Bái: Ròu sī miàn, duì bu duì?
- Tài: Duìle. Ròu sī tāng miàn.
- 45 Gāo: Duō chī diar a.
- Bái: Xièxie nín. Wǒ bú kèqì. Wǒ chīde hěn duō.
- Tài: Wénshān, méi yǒu lìngwài yìjiān wūzi gěi nǐ zhù. Jiu ràng nǐ zhùzai shūfáng lǐtōu. Gāo Xiānsheng shūfáng yuánlái jiù yǒu yìzhāng chuáng.
- 50 Bái: Nín tài kèqì. Shūfáng hěn hǎo me. Bìngqiě wǒ jiu zhù liǎng sāntiān.
- Tài: Yǒu ge xiǎo zhuōzi, yìzhāng xiězìzhuō, hái yǒu liǎngbǎ yǐzi. Zhuōzishang kényì suíbiàn fàng diar dōngxì.
- Bái: Hǎojíle.
- 55 Tài: Dà píbào gēn shǒutíbào a, kényì fàngzai bìchú lǐtōu. Dǎzìjī ya, kényì fàngzai xiǎo zhuōzishang.
- Bái: Hǎode, hǎode.
- Tài: Wénshān, zěnmoyàng, yí lùshang hěn hǎo?
- Bái: Hěn hǎo. Jiùshì zài Rìběn de shíhou yòu guā fēng yòu xià yǔ, dào zhèr wǎnle bàngē zhōngtóu. Ràng Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Měiyīng zài fēijiǎng dēngle bàntiān.
- 60 Gāo: Wénshān, wǒ nàiren jīntian wǎnshang zuò de hóng shāo shīzi tóu, ròu sī tāng, chǎo xiārér, táng cù yú, nǎi tāng báicài, mántou.
- Bái: Tài hǎo le. Gāo Tàitai zhīdao wǒ xǐhuan zhèi jǐge cài.
- 65 Tài: Yìhuěr wǒmen jiu chī le.
- Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng, nín zhèige diànshì hěn hǎo a, zuì xīn shì de.
- Gāo: Xīn shìde dào shì xīn shìde, kě* shì ge jiùde. Yíwèi Yīngguo

* Kě is here shortened from kěshì 'but' to avoid repeating the sound of the following shì 'is' in a sequence kěshì shì 'but is.'

péngyou huí guó le, yīnwei ta xíngli tài duō, tā jiù bǎ zhèige diànshì sònggei wǒ le.

70 Bái: Nín xǐhuan kàn diànshì ma?

Gāo: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan kàn. Yǒude shíhou bù chūqu, zài jiā lǐtou kànkàn hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ zhǔyàode shì kàn xīnwén.

Měi: Fàn hǎo le. Dào fàntīng chī fàn ba.

Bái: Oh, Měiyīng zài chufáng bāng máng le ba?

75 Měi: Méi you.

Gāo: Shéi shuō de? Nèige chǎo xiā rér bú shì nǐ chǎo de ma?

Měi: Nín gǎnmá shuōchūlai ya?

Gāo: Wénshān, zǒu, wǒmen dào fàntīng chī fàn qu.

Tài: Wénshān jīntian gěi nǐ jiē fēng. Nǐ zuò shàngzuòr.

80 Bái: Gāo Tàitai, wǒ nǎr gǎndāng? Zài nín liǎngwèi miàn qián wǒ zěnmó néng zuò shàngzuòr ne? Dāngrán nín liǎngwèi zuò shàngzuòr le.

Tài: Jīntian wǎnshang 'nǐ zuò shàngzuòr. Míngtian kāishǐ 'wǒmen zuò shàngzuòr, hǎo bu hǎo?

Bái: Zěnmó zěnmó duōde cài ya!

85 Gāo: Suíbiàn chī. Bié kèqi.

Bái: Wǒ zài nín zher hái kèqi ma? Cài zhēn hǎo. Měiyīng, nǐ xiànzài zuò de cài gēn Gāo Tàitai yíyàng hǎo ma?

Měi: Wǒ zuò bu hǎo. Wǒ bú huì zuò. ^{hellu (kerné!)}

Bái: Nǐ bié kèqi le. Xiārér chǎode duó hǎo a! . . .

90 Tài: Wénshān, zài lái diar fàn.

Bái: Xièxie, bù chī le. Wǒ kě tài bǎo le.

Tài: Nǐmen xiān zuòzhe. Wǒ qù qī chá, ná shuǐguǒr.

Bái: Wǒ bāng nín shōushi jiāhuo.

Tài: 'Bú yòng. Wǒ gēn Měiyīng wǒmen liǎngge rén jiù shōushi le.

95 Bái: Gāi wǒ xǐ jiāhuo.

Tài: Nǐ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng tántan ba.

Gāo: Tàitai, bǎ shuǐguǒr gēn chá gěi wǒmen fàngzai kètīng hǎo bu hǎo?

Tài: Hǎo a.

Gāo: Wǒ zhēn kěle. Wénshān, wǒmen dào kètīng, hē chá, chī shuǐguǒr qu.

100

Bái: Nín qiángshang zhèizhāng zihuàr xiěde tài hǎo le! Nín de zì bǐ yǐqián xiěde gèng hǎo le.

Gāo: Tiāntiān yǒu rén zhǎo wǒ xiě zì.

Bái: Jiānglái yě qǐng nín gěi wǒ xiě yìzhāng.

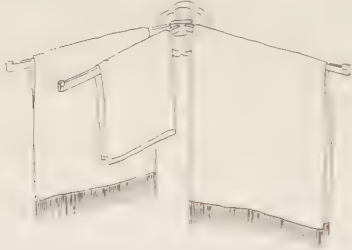
105 Gāo: Dāngrán gěi nǐ xiě le.

Tài: Wénshān, nǐ měitiān shuì jiǎo de xíguàn shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

Gāo: Wǒ hǎo jiǔ méi gēn Wénshān tántan le. Jīntian wǎnshang wǒmen wǎn diār shuì. Zánmen tántan.

110 Tài: Ēi! Tā zuò fēijī zuòde hěn lèi. Ràng ta zǎo diār xiūxi. Tán de rìzi chángzhe ne. *that*

Bái: Wǒ bú lèi. *emphasizes Chang*



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

1.0. (5) yàngzi appearance; type, kind, model, pattern (N)

1.1. Nèige rénde yàngzi hěn bú cuò.

1.2. Nèige xiáojie zhǎngde yàngzi hěn hǎo kàn.

1.3. Kàn tāde yàngzi hǎoxiàng bù gāoxìng.

1.4. Suǐrán nèige chēde yàngzi bú tài hǎo kěshi bù róngyi huài.

2.0. (11) zìjǐ rén (one's) own people, persons like members of one's own family, in the same family

2.1. Wǒmen dōu shì zìjǐ rén. Bié tài kèqi.

3.0. (11) hébì . . . (bukě) why need (to)? why must? [lit. why must . . . (not can)]

3.1. Nǐ yíge rén jiù zuò le. Hébì liǎngge rén bukě ne?

3.2. Nǐ bù xǐhuan qù, hébì qù ne?

3.3. Nǐ kǎode bù hǎo. Xià cì yònggōng me. Hébì bù gāoxìng?

4.0. (18) xǐ wash (TV)

xǐ zǎo take a bath [lit. wash bathe]

xǐzǎofáng bathroom

4.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ yīfu xǐyixǐ.

4.2. Wǒ yìtiān xǐ liǎngcì zǎo.

4.3. Wǒmen jiāde xǐzǎofáng tài xiǎo le.

5.0. (18) liǎn face (N)

5.1. Xiān xǐ liǎn hòu chī fàn.

- 6.0. (18) **lěng** cold (SV)
 6.1. Tiānqì tài lěng. Wǒ jīntiān bù xǐ zǎo le.
- 7.0. (18) **rè** hot (SV)
 nòng rè to heat, warm up (TV)
 7.1. Xǐ zǎo shuǐ tài rè le.
 7.2. Bǎ shuǐ nòng rè yìdiǎr.
- 8.0. (19) **shǒujīn** towel (N) (measure: tiáo) [lit. hand cloth]
 xíliǎn shǒujīn face towel
 xízǎo shǒujīn bath towel
 8.1. Zhèitiáo shǒujīn shì shéide?
 8.2. Wǒde xíliǎn shǒujīn shì lán yánsè de.
 8.3. Wǒ xíliǎn gēn xízǎo de shǒujīn dōu shì hóngde.
- 9.0. (19) **féizào** soap (N) (measure: kuài)
 9.1. Zhèikuài féizào shì xǐ yīfu yòng de.
- 10.0. (21) **huáng** yellow (SV), (also, a surname)
 10.1. Hóngde shì nǐde, huángde shì wǒde.
 10.2. Huáng Xiānsheng zuótiān chū shì le.
- 11.0. (22) **qī** brew, steep (TV)
 11.1. Huǒji, qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ zǎi qī yìhú chá.
- 12.0. (23) **kě** thirsty (SV)
 12.1. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎr kě.
 12.2. Wǒ tài kě le. Wǒ děi hē diǎr chá.
- 13.0. (24) **fèi** expend (uselessly), waste (TV)
 fèi shì expend effort (uselessly)
 V fèi shì it is a lot of effort to V
 13.1. Tiāntiān kàn diànyǐng tài fèi qián le.
 13.2. Wǒ fèile hěn duō gōngfù cái bǎ zhèiběn shū xiěhǎo.
 13.3. Wǒ dào fēijīchàng qu jiē péngyou. Fèile wǒ hěn duō shíhou.
 13.4. Zánmen zìjǐ rén. Bié fèi shì.
 13.5. Zuò Zhōngguó fàn tài fèi shì.
- 14.0. (26) **è** hungry (SV)
 14.1. Nǐ è bu è?
 14.2. Wǒ yìtiān méi chī fàn, ède bùdéliǎo.
- 15.0. (28) **xiāoxi** information, news (about someone or something) (N)

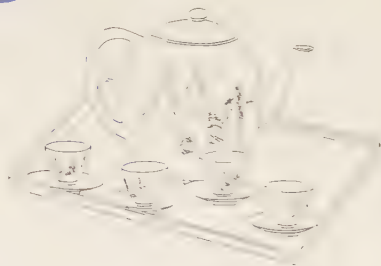
- 15.1. Wǒ yì tīngjian zhèige xiāoxi gāoxìng jíle.
- 15.2. Wǒ yì tīngshuō ta bìngqī de xiāoxi wǒ mǎshàng jiù qù kàn tā.
- 16.0. (30) ài love, be fond of, like (TV); love to, like to (AV)
kě ài lovable, likable
- 16.1. Wǒ mǔqīn zuì ài méiguī.
- 16.2. Wǒ zuì ài tīng wúxiàndiàn.
- 16.3. Nèige hái'izi zhēn kě ài.
- 17.0. (31) chōu draw out; inhale, smoke (TV)
- 17.1. Nǐ chōu bu chōu?
- 17.2. Xièxie nín, wǒ bù chōu.
- 18.0. (31) yān smoke; cigarette (N) (measure: zhī)
- 18.1. Wǒ měitiān jiù chōu liǎng sānzhī yān.
- 18.2. Xièxie nǐ, wǒ bù chōu yān.
- 18.3. Wǒ méi yān chōu le.
- 19.0. (32) V-zhe wár to V for the fun of it
shuōzhe wár say something without really meaning it
chīzhe wár eat something as a snack
- 19.1. Bú shì zhēnde. Wǒ shuōzhe wár ne.
- 19.2. Wǒmen bu shì chī fàn ne. Wǒmen chīzhe wár ne.
- 19.3. Wǒ bú huì chōu yān. Wǒ jiù shì chōuzhe wár.
- 20.0. (34) yánghuǒ match(es) (N) [lit. foreign fire]
- 20.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ yánghuǒ dīgei wǒ.
- 21.0. (35) diǎn ignite, kindle (TV)
- 21.1. Lái, wǒ gěi nǐ diǎn.
- 21.2. Měiyīng gěi bàba diǎn yān.
- 22.0. (37) dāhuǒjī (cigarette) lighter (N) [lit. hit fire machine]
- 22.1. Wǒ xīn mǎile yíge dāhuǒjī.
- 23.0. (40) wén smell, sniff (TV)
wénjian smell (RV)
- 23.1. Nǐ wénwen zhèige ròu huài le méi you?
- 23.2. Nǐ wéndejiàn wénbujàn?
- 24.0. (40) wèr smell, odor, fragrance (N)
- 24.1. Zhèige wèr bù hǎo wén.
- 25.0. (43) sī shreds (N)

- 25.1. Wǒmen yào chǎo jī sī hǎo bu hǎo?
- 25.2. Wǒ chī zhū ròu sī chǎo báicài. Nǐ ne?
- 26.0. (47) **lìngwài** additional(ly), separate(ly) [lit. separate outside] *out*
- 26.1. Wǒ zhèizhī bǐ bù hǎo yòng. Lìngwài yǒu yìzhī hǎode.
- 26.2. Jīnnián wǒmen dào lìngwài yíge dìfang qu lǚxíng hǎo bu hǎo?
- 26.3. Wǒ lìngwài zài mǎi yíge.
- 26.4. Wǒ shì lìngwài yíge xuéxiào.
- 26.5. Wǒ lìngwài yǒu yíge dǎzìjī gěi nǐ yòng.
- 27.0. (47) **-jiān** (measure for rooms in a house)
- jiān fángzi room(s) in a house
- jiān wūzi room(s) in a house
- 27.1. Zhèr yígòng yǒu jǐjiān fángzi?
- 27.2. Wǒmen jiā zhǐ yǒu sānjiān wūzi.
- 28.0. (48) **shūfáng** study (room) (N) [lit. book room]
- 28.1. Suírán wǒde shū hěn duō kěshì wǒde shūfáng hěn xiǎo.
- 28.2. Wǒde shūfáng lǐtou yǒu tā huà de yìzhāng huà.
- 29.0. (49) **chuáng** bed (N) (measure: zhāng)
- 29.1. Yòubiarde chuáng shì nǐde.
- 30.0. (52) **zhuō(zi)** table (N) (measure: zhāng)
- shūzhuō desk
- xiězìzhuō writing table
- 30.1. Wǒmen jiā chī fàn de zhuōzi hěn dà.
- 30.2. Bǎ shū fàngzai shūzhuōshang.
- 30.3. Wǒde xiězìzhuōshang luànqibāzāo.
- 31.0. (52) **yǐzi** chair (N) (measure: bǎ)
- 31.1. Yǐzi huài le. Wǒ xiūli xiūli.
- 32.0. (52) **bǎ** (measure for chairs, objects with handles) *dao (knife)*
- 32.1. Zài nà yìbǎ yǐzi lai.
- 33.0. (55) **bìchú** closet (N) [lit. wall wardrobe]
- closet, wardrobe, closet, wardrobe*
- 33.1. Bǎ zhèxiē yīfu guāzai bìchúli.
- 34.0. (59) **fēng** wind (N)
- 34.1. Zuótian wǎnshang fēng hěn dà.
- 35.0. (59) **guā** blow (IV)
- guā fēng wind blows, it is windy

- 35.1. Fēng guāde hěn dà.
 35.2. Jīntiān tiānqì bù hǎo. Yòu guā fēng, yòu xià yǔ.
 36.0. (62) A V de (shì) B what A V'd was B (Note 1)
 36.1. Wǒ zuótiān mǎide shì màozi, shǒutíbāo, shénmode.
 36.2. Wǒ zài pùzi mǎide shǒujīn, féizào.
 37.0. (63) nǎi milk (N)
 niú nǎi (cow's) milk
 nǎi tāng báicài cabbage soup with milk
 37.1. Wǒ zǎofàn hē niú nǎi.
 37.2. Nǐ xǐhuan chī nǎi tāng báicài ma?
 38.0. (63) mǎntou steamed bread rolls (N)
 38.1. Nǐ chī mǎntou háishi chī fàn?
 39.0. (66) diànshì television (N) [lit. electric see]
 39.1. Wǒ měitiān kàn yíge zhōngtóude diànshì.
 40.0. (72) zhǔyào main, essential (SV) [lit. master important]
 zhǔyào wèntí main problem, main question
 zhǔyào yìsi main idea, main point
 zhǔyào(de) shì the main thing is (that), chiefly
 40.1. Wǒ jīntiān zhǔyàode shì qīng nǐ lái.
 40.2. Wǒmen yánjiū de zhǔyào wèntí shì néng bù néng nàiyàng zuò.
 40.3. Tā shuō de huà zhǔyào yìsi shì tā bù xǐhuan zhèige fāngfa.
 40.4. Wǒ jīntiān qīng kè zhǔyàode shì qīng nǐ.
 41.0. (72) xīnwén news (in newspapers, over radio) (N) [lit. new hear]
 41.1. Jīntiān bàoshang xīnwén hěn duō.
 41.2. Wǒmen kàn bào zhǔyàode shì kàn xīnwén.
 42.0. (73) fàntīng dining room (N) [lit. food room]
 42.1. Xuéxiàode fàntīng néng róng duōshao rén chī fàn?
 42.2. Qīng nǐ bǎ zhèibǎ yǐzi nádao fàntīng qu.
 43.0. (74) chúfáng kitchen (N) [lit. kitchen building]
 43.1. Wǒ mǔqīn zài chúfáng zuò fàn ne.
 44.0. (77) gànma why, what for?; do what? [lit. manage what] (Note 2)
 44.1. Nǐ gànma lǎo xǐhuan yòng qiānbǐ ya?
 44.2. Tā gànma cháng dào Rìběn qu?
 44.3. Nǐ yòu dào Rìběn qu gànma?

- 45.0. (79) **A gěi B jiē fēng** A gives B welcome party [lit. meet wind] (Note 3) *from B to A*
- 45.1. Nǐ jīntian yǒu gōngfu ma? Wǒ gěi nǐ jiē fēng.
- 45.2. Zuótian wǎnshang wǒ qǐng kè. Shì gěi Wáng Xiānsheng jiē fēng.
- 46.0. (79) **shàngzuò(r)** seat of honor (N) [lit. top seat]
- 46.1. Zhǔyàode kèren zuò shàngzuòr.
- 47.0. (80) **gǎndāng** be worthy; dare do [lit. dare undertake] *
- 47.1. Nín duì wǒ zènmò kèqì, wǒ zènmò gǎndāng ne?
- 47.2. Xièxie nín, zhēn bù gǎndāng.
- 48.0. (80) **miàn(zí)** face (generally abstract) (N)
- zài N miàn qián in front of N, before N
- yào miànzi desire 'face' or prestige *save face*
- yǒu miànzi have face
- méi (yǒu) miànzi not have face, lose face
- 48.1. Tā hěn yào miànzi.
- 48.2. Tā zài shéi miàn qián dōu hěn kèqì.
- 48.3. Wǒ yì qīng, tā jiù lái le. Wǒ hěn yǒu miànzi.
- 48.4. Ta cháng shuō wǒ bù hǎo. Wǒ hěn méi miànzi.
- 49.0. (92) **shuǐguǒ(r)** fruit (N) [lit. water fruit]
- guǒzi fruit
- 49.1. Xiànzài shuǐguǒr hěn piányi.
- 50.0. (93) **jiāhuo** *also - "méc"* tools, implements, utensils; kitchen things (pots, pans, dishes, etc.) (N)
- 50.1. Wǒmen xiān bǎ jiāhuo shōushi le. Děng yìhuēr zài xǐ.
- 51.0. (95) **gāi N (V) le** it is up to N (to V), it is N's turn (to V)
- 51.1. Jīntian gāi wǒ xǐ jiāhuo le.
- 51.2. Gāi nǐ shuō le.
- 51.3. Gāi nǐ le.
- 52.0. (97) **kètīng** living room (N) [lit. guest room]
- 52.1. Tāmen jīng rén zài kètīng zuòzhe xián tán ne.
- 53.0. (101) **zìhuà(r)** scroll with characters (N) (measure: zhāng) [lit. character drawing]
- 53.1. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng tā gěi wǒ xiě yìzhāng zìhuà.
- 53.2. Zhōngguó rénde kètīnglǐ chàbuduō dōu guàzhe zìhuà.
- 54.0. (106) **shuì (jiào)** to sleep (IV)
- 54.1. Měitiān zuì shǎo yào shuì bāge zhōngtóude jiào.

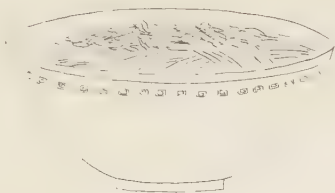
- 54.2. Nèige háizi zěnmō hái méi shuì ne?
- 54.3. Zuótian wǎnshang wǒ shuìbuzháo jiào.
- 55.0. (106) **xíguan** custom, habit (N) [lit. custom habit] *Earlier than now*
- 55.1. Tāde xíguan shì měitiān zǎochen bādiǎn zhōng chī zǎofàn.
- 55.2. Zhōngguó rén chī fàn de xíguan shì zuì hòu hē tāng.
- 55.3. Nǐ měitiān chī zǎofàn de xíguan shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?
- 56.0. (109) **Ēi!** Say! Look! Well! (Note 4)
- 56.1. Ēi, nǐ cóng nǎr lái ya?
- 57.0. (110) **rìzi** day (N)
- 57.1. Nǐ duōshao rìzi kàn yíci diànyǐng a? *last time*
- 57.2. Wǒ hǎoxiē rìzi yě méi kànjian tā le.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Kàn tāde yàngzi hǎoxiàng bìng le.
2. Tiānqì zhēn lěng. Nǐ děi duō chuān diār yīfu.
3. Chá hái shì hē rède hǎo.
4. Èle de shíhou shénmo dōu hǎo chī.
5. Wǒ xué Zhōngwén hái bú dào sāngē yuè ne.
6. Xià xīngqī kāishǐ wǒ jiù bù chōu yān le.
7. Wǒ měitiān zǎofàn hē yìbēi niú nǎi.
8. Jīntian wǎnshang chī de shì mántou, ròu sī chǎo báicài.
9. Wǒ měitiān zuò zài nèibā dà yǐzishang niàn shū.
10. Jǐge háizi dōu zài kètīng kàn diànshì ne.
11. Yīnwei lùshang chē duō de guānxi suǒyǐ wǒ lái wǎn le.
12. Jīntian bàoshang méi shénmo tèbiéde xīnwén.
13. Nǐ zěnmō bù niàn shū wa? . . . Shéi shuō de? Wǒ yǐjīng niànle liǎngge zhōngtóude shū le.
14. Wǒ nèige shūzhuō yòu kuān yòu cháng.
15. Yòng dáhuǒjī diǎn yān hěn fàngbian.

16. Wǒmen jiāde yǐzi dōu jiù le.
17. Wǒde xíguān shì chī fàn yǐhòu chī shuǐguǒ.
18. Wǒ xiànzài bù kě. Dēng yìhuěr zài hē.
19. Nǐ yǒu gōngfu qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèige wúxiàndiàn xiūli xiūli.
20. Zhèikè shū zhǔyàode yìsi shì shénmo?



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng Měiyīng wǒmen sānge rén yí lùshang shuōzhe huà shíhou guòde hěn kuài, yìhuěr jiù dào le Gāo jia le. Zài chēshang kànjian Gāo Tàitai zài mén kǒu dēngzhe wǒmen. Tā kànjian wǒ lái le hěn gāoxìng.

- 5 Wǒ sānnián méi kànjian Gāo Tàitai le. Gāo Tàitai zuì xǐhuan wo, zhēnshi bǎ wǒ kànchéng zìjǐ rén yíyàng. Wǒmen xiàle chē Gāo Tàitai jiù ràng Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Měiyīng bāng wǒ ná dōngxī, kěshi wǒ méi duōshao dōngxī. Wǒ gēn Gāo Tàitai shuō wǒde dōngxī bù duō, wǒ zìjǐ kényǐ ná. Gāo Xiānsheng háishi bāng wǒ ná le. Dào le Gāo jia yǐhòu Gāo Tàitai jiào wǒ xǐ liǎn, gàosu wǒ xízǎofáng lǐtou shǒujìn féizào dōu zài nǎr.

Zài chī diǎnxīn de shíhou Gāo Tàitai gēn wǒ shuō tāmen méi yǒu lìngwài yìjiān wūzi. Gāo Tàitai tài kèqì, Gāo Xiānsheng shūfáng hěn hǎo. Wǒ dàoshi hěn xǐhuan zhùzài tāde shūfáng lǐtou, yīnwei Gāo Xiānshengde shū hěn duō, wǒ kényǐ suíbiàn kàn shū. Tāde shūfáng yǒu ge dà bìchú.

- 15 Wǒ bǎ wǒde dà píbào gēn shǒutíbào dōu fàngzài bìchú lǐtou le.

Gāo Tàitai jīntian diǎnxīn zuò de shì ròu sī tāng miàn, hǎo chī jí le, wèr zhēn hǎo. Zhèige shíhou wǒ zhēn è le. Yīnwei fēijīshang de fàn wǒ bú dà xǐhuan chī, suóyǐ méi chī hǎo.

- Jīntian méi jīhui gēn Měiyīng duō tán huà. Tā dàgài zài chúfáng bāngzhe Gāo Tàitai zuò fàn ne.

Gāo Xiānsheng wèn wo huì chōu yān bu huì. Wǒ shuō wǒ jiushi

chōuzhe wár. Wǒ yǐqián zài zhèr de shíhou Gāo Xiānsheng chōu yān dòu shì yòng yángguǒ, suóyǐ wǒ zài Měiguó gěi tā mǎile yíge dāhuǒjī. Wǒ gào su ta, ta fēicháng gāoxìng, tā shuō tā zhèng xiǎng mǎi ge dāhuǒjī ne.

25 Wǒ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng wǒmen liǎngge rén zài kètīng zuòzhe tán, méi you hǎo jiǔ Měiyīng chūlai ràng wǒmen dào fàntīng qu chí fàn. Wǒ wèn Měiyīng shì bu shì bāngzhe Gāo Tàitai zuò fàn ne. Ta shuō méi you. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō xiārér shì Měiyīng chǎo de. Měiyīng shuō Gāo Xiānsheng bù yīnggāi shuōchulai. Dàgài shì pà chǎode bù hǎo chī, méi
30 miànzi.

Jīntian cài zuòde tài hǎo le. Gāo Tàitai zhēn huì zuò cài. Shīzi tóu zuòde xiàng dòufu yíyàng. Nǎi tāng báicài zuòde zhēn piàoliang. Xiārér shì Měiyīng chǎo de, yě hěn hǎo, gēn Gāo Tàitai zuò de chàbuduō.

Wǒ sānnián méi chī Gāo Tàitai zuò de fàn le. Jīntian chīde tài duō
35 le, bǎode bùdéliǎo. Chī fàn yǐhòu wǒ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng zài kètīng hē chá chī shuǐguǒ Gāo Tàitai gēn Měiyīng shōushi jiāhuo.

Chī fàn de shíhou Gāo Tàitai jiào wǒ zuò shàngzuò. Wǒ zài tāmen liǎngwèide miàn qián zěnmó néng zuò shàngzuò ne? Kěshi Gāo Tàitai yíding jiào wǒ zuò shàngzuò, shuō jīntian shì gěi wo jiē fēng, yǐhòu 'zài
40 chī fàn de shíhou jiù shì tāmen zuò shàngzuò le. Wǒ méi fázi, jiù zuòxia le.

Gāo jia xiànzài yǒu yíge diànshì, yàngzi fēicháng hǎo, zuì xīn shìde. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō ta zhǔyàode shì kàn xīnwén.

Gāo Xiānshengde zì bǐ yǐqián xiěde hái hǎo. Kètīng qiángshang guàle
45 yìzhāng ta zuì jìn xiě de zì, tài hǎo le. Tā yǒu gōngfu děi qǐng ta gěi wǒ xiě yìzhāng.

Gāo Tàitai pà wǒ tài lèi le, xīwang wǒ zǎo diar xiūxi. Tā wèn wǒ shuì jiào de xíguān shì jǐdiǎn zhōng. Wǒ hái méi shuōchulai ne, Gāo Xiānsheng jiù shuō wǒmen jīntian děi wǎn diar shuì, tántan. Gāo Tàitai
50 shuō tán de shíhou duōzhe ne. Wǒmen liǎngge rén háishi tánle hěn jiǔ cái shuì de.

Wèntí

1. Gāo Tàitai zěnmó zhīdao Gāo Xiānsheng tāmen huilai le?
2. Gāo Tàitai wèi shénmo jiào Wénshān jìnqu xiūxi?



3. Bái Wénshān gēn Gāo Tàitai shuō yòu láí máfan, Gāo Tàitai shuō shénmo?
4. Gāo Tàitai ràng shéi bāngzhe Wénshān ná dōngxī?
5. Wénshān xǐ liǎn Gāo Tàitai qū zuò shénmo?
6. Gāo Tàitai shuō qū nòng diǎnxīn, Wénshān gēn Gāo Tàitai shuō shénmo kèqì huà le?
7. Gāo Tàitai gěi Wénshān nòng de shénmo diǎnxīn?
8. Wénshān wèi shénmo zài fēijīshàng méi chīhǎo?
9. Gāo Tàitai wèi shénmo xǐhuan Wénshān dào zhèr lái?
10. Bái Wénshān huì chōu yān ma?
11. Tā shuō tā zài nǎr chōu yān?
12. Yánghuǒ gēn dáhuǒjī dōu shì zuò shénmo yòng de?
13. Bái Wénshān wèi shénmo jīnián dōu méi chī Gāo Tàitai zuò de fàn le?
14. Bái Wénshānde dà píbāo shǒutíbāo dōu fàngzài nǎr le?
15. Gāo Tàitai wèn Wénshān yí lùshàng dōu hǎo ma. Wénshān zěnmō gàosu Gāo Tàitai de?
16. Gāo jiā nàitiān wǎnshàng dōu zuò de shénmo cài? Nèixie cài nǐ dōu chīguo ma?
17. Gāo jiāde diànshì hǎo bu hǎo? Shì shénmo yàngzide? Gāo Xiānsheng zuì xǐhuan kàn shénmo?
18. Měiyīng zuò de shénmo cài? Tā wèi shénmo bú ràng Gāo Xiānsheng shuōchulai?
19. Gāo Tàitai wèi shénmo jiào Wénshān zuò shàngzuǒr?
20. Bái Wénshān měitiān shuì jiào de xíguān shì jīdiǎn zhōng, nǐ zhīdao ma?
21. Yàoshi nǐde hǎo péngyou cóng yuǎn dìfāng lái le, nǐ gěi tā kāi mén, nǐ kànjian tā yǐhòu gēn tā shuō shénmo?
22. Nǐde péngyou lái le yǐhòu nǐ ràng tā xiān zuò shénmo? Nǐ yīnggāi zuò shénmo?
23. Yàoshi nǐ dào yíge péngyou jiā qù le, tāmen hěn bāngzhu nǐ, bìngqiě duì nǐ hěn kèqì, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
24. Yàoshi nǐ bú huì chōu yān, rénjiā ràng nǐ chōu yān, nǐ shuō shénmo?

25. Yàoshi péngyou chōu yān de shíhou tā méi yǒu yánghuǒ, kěshì nǐ yǒu, nǐ zuò shénmo?
26. Yàoshi péngyou sòng nǐ yíge dāhuǒjī nǐ duì ta shuō shénmo?
27. Yàoshi péngyou qǐng nǐ chī fàn, tāmen cài zuòde hěn hǎo, nǐ shuō shénmo?
28. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu diànshì nǐ kàn shénmo?
29. Yàoshi péngyou qǐng nǐ chī fàn ràng nǐ zuò shàngzuòr, nǐ zuò ma?
30. Yàoshi nǐ nǚ péngyou zài chúfáng bāngzhe ta mǔqin zuò fàn, nǐ gēn nǐ nǚ péngyou shuō shénmo?

Dialogue: After arriving at the Gaos', Vincent White talks with Mr. Gao, Mrs. Gao, and Gao Meiying

Mei : Papa, look. Mom is waiting in the doorway.

Gao : Oh! Perhaps she heard us coming [back].

Tai : Vincent, I haven't seen you for a long time. You look just the same as you used to [lit. still that appearance]. Is everyone well at home?

White: They're all well. How are you, Mrs. Gao? Haven't seen you for a long time. My mother asked after you.

Tai : Thanks. Come [lit. go] right in and rest. You must be very tired.

White: No, I'm not. Here I am again troubling you.

Tai : Nonsense. (You're like) a member of the family and there's no need to be polite. (To Mr. Gao and Meiying:) Help Vincent with his things.

White: I have very few things. I can manage them myself.

Gao : Come, I'll help you [take them].

White: Thank you. Mrs. Gao, you go in first.

Tai : All right [I'll go in first].

White: Your home still looks as it did before [lit. still is the old appearance of before].

Tai : Vincent, you (may) go first to the bathroom and wash up (if you like). There's both hot and cold water. I'll tell you where the towels and soap are.

White: Thank you.

Tai : [You see] this yellow towel is yours. The soap is there. Wash up. I'll prepare [lit. brew] some tea and get you a snack.

Gao : First bring some tea. We're all thirsty.

White: Don't go to so much bother for me.

Tai : I'll just prepare a few noodles for you [to eat].

White: Wonderful. I'm really famished. I didn't eat well on the plane.

- Tai : Naturally. The food (served) on planes is unappetizing.
- Gao : Vincent, when my wife learned [the news] of your coming she was awfully happy.
- White: (Politely) I know Mrs. Gao is very fond of me.
- Gao : I suppose you smoke now, Vincent?
- White: I can take it or leave it. At school I sometimes have one with the other students.
- Gao : Have a cigarette. Here are the matches.
- White: Let me give you a light.
- Gao : Thank you.
- White: I've brought a lighter from America. I bought it for you.
- Gao : I was just thinking of buying a lighter.
- Tai : The snack is ready. Vincent, have a bite.
- White: The noodles smell good [lit. smelling the noodles, smell is very good]. I haven't eaten your [lit. Mrs. Gao's] cooking for several years.
- Gao : Please sit down.
- White: Noodles with bits of meat, right?
- Tai : Right. Noodles in soup with bits of meat.
- Gao : Have a little more.
- White: Thank you. I'm making myself at home. I'm certainly eating a lot.
- Tai : Vincent, we don't have a separate room for you [to stay in]. We're simply having you stay in the study. There's [originally] a couch in Mr. Gao's study.
- White: You're too kind. The study will do fine, of course. Moreover, I'm just staying two or three days.
- Tai : It has a small table, a writing table, and a couple of chairs. Feel free to put things on the tables.
- White: Fine.
- Tai : You can put the big suitcase and the briefcase in the closet, and the typewriter on the small table.
- White: Good.
- Tai : Vincent, how was it, did everything go well on the trip?
- White: Very well. Only when we were in Japan it was windy and raining, and we were half an hour late in getting here. I made Mr. Gao and Meiying wait for a long time at the airport.
- Gao : Vincent, this evening my wife has made red-cooked lion's head, soup with bits of meat, fried shrimps, sweet-and-sour fish, cabbage soup with milk, and steamed bread rolls.

White: Wonderful. Mrs. Gao knows I like these dishes.

Tai : We'll eat in a moment.

White: Mr. Gao, this television set of yours is very nice. It's the latest style.

Gao : It may be the latest style, but it's a second-hand one [lit. old one]. An English friend who was returning to England had too much baggage and so presented the television to me.

White: Do you like to watch TV?

Gao : Very much. Sometimes I don't go out and find it interesting to watch [it at home]. What I do mainly is look at the news.

Mei : Food's ready. Come to the dining room and eat.

White: Oh, Meiying, you've been helping in the kitchen?

Mei : No, I haven't.

Gao : What do you mean? [lit. Said by whom?] Isn't that fried shrimp your doing?

Mei : Why do you have to tell?

Gao : Vincent, let's go to the dining room.

Tai : Vincent, today we are welcoming you. You sit in the seat of honor.

White: Mrs. Gao, how can I presume to do so? Before you two how can I sit there? Naturally you two should have the seat of honor.

Tai : This evening you take the seat of honor. Beginning from tomorrow we'll occupy it, all right?

White: How is it that there are so many dishes!

Gao : Help yourself. Make yourself at home.

White: Would I act like company here? The food is really delicious. Meiying, can you cook as well as your mother [lit. Mrs. Gao] now?

Mei : I cook badly. I don't know how to cook.

White: Don't be so modest. The shrimps are so beautifully fried.

Tai : Vincent, have some more rice.

White: Thanks, I won't have any more. I'm really too full.

Tai : You all (go) sit for a while [first]. I'll go make some tea and bring some fruit.

White: I'll help you clear the table [lit. clear up the dishes].

Tai : There's no need. [The two of us] Meiying and I will do it.

White: Then I should wash the dishes.

Tai : Why don't you go and chat with Mr. Gao?

Gao : [Wife,] put the fruit and tea in the living room for us, will you?

Tai : All right.

- Gao : I'm sure thirsty. Vincent, let's go to the living room [to have tea and fruit].
- White: This character scroll on the wall is so well written! Your characters are even better [written] than before.
- Gao : Every day someone asks me to write characters.
- White: Later I'll also ask you to do a scroll for me.
- Gao : Of course I'll do it for you.
- Tai : Vincent, when do you customarily go to sleep [every day]?
- Gao : I haven't talked with Vincent for a long time. This evening we'll be a little late in getting to sleep. We're going to talk a while.
- Tai : Well! He's quite tired from his plane trip. Let him go to bed [lit. rest] earlier. There are lots of [lit. long] days for talking.
- White: I'm not tired.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. That man has a very nice appearance.
- 1.2. That young lady has grown to be quite attractive.
- 1.3. Judging from his appearance he seems to be unhappy.
- 1.4. Although that car isn't much in looks it holds up well [lit. doesn't break down easily].
- 2.1. We're all in the same family. Don't stand on ceremony.
- 3.1. You do it by yourself. Why (do you need) two men?
- 3.2. If you don't like to go why do you need to go?
- 3.3. (So) you've done badly on the exams. Next time you'll study, of course. Why must you be depressed?
- 4.1. Please wash the clothes.
- 4.2. I take two baths a day.
- 4.3. The bathroom in our home is too small.
- 5.1. First wash your face, then eat.
- 6.1. The weather's too cold. I'm not taking a bath today.
- 7.1. The bath water is too hot.
- 7.2. Heat up the water a bit.
- 8.1. Whose towel is this?
- 8.2. My face towel is blue [-colored].
- 8.3. My face towels and bath towels are all red.
- 9.1. This bar of soap is to be used for washing clothes.

- 10.1. The red one is yours, the yellow one is mine.
10.2. Mr. Huang had an accident yesterday.
11.1. Waiter, please get [lit. steep] me another pot of tea.
12.1. I'm a little thirsty.
12.2. I'm [too] thirsty. I must have a little tea.
13.1. Seeing a movie every day wastes too much money.
13.2. It took a lot of time for me to finish writing this book.
13.3. I went to the airport to meet a friend. It took a lot of my time.
13.4. We're all in the family, don't go to a lot of effort.
13.5. It's too much effort to make Chinese food.
14.1. Are you hungry?
14.2. I haven't eaten all day. I'm terribly hungry.
15.1. As soon as I heard this news I was extremely happy.
15.2. As soon as I heard the news that he was sick I immediately went to see him.
16.1. My mother likes roses best of all.
16.2. I like most to listen to the radio.
16.3. That child is really lovable.
17.1. Do you smoke?
17.2. Thank you, I don't smoke.
18.1. I smoke only two or three cigarettes a day.
18.2. Thank you, I don't smoke.
18.3. I don't have any more cigarettes [to smoke].
19.1. It isn't really so. I said it for the fun of it.
19.2. We're not eating (a full meal). We're just having a snack.
19.3. I don't [lit. can't] smoke. I just have an occasional smoke for the fun of it.
20.1. Please hand me the matches.
21.1. Come, I'll light it for you.
21.2. Meiying, light the cigarette for your daddy.
22.1. I recently bought a lighter.
23.1. Smell this meat to see if it's spoiled.
23.2. Can you smell it?
24.1. This odor is unpleasant [lit. not good to smell].
25.1. Let's order some fried chicken shreds, O.K.?

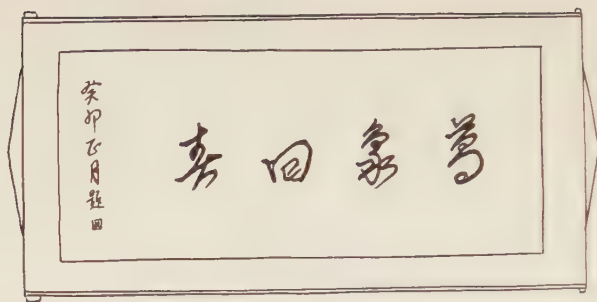
- 25.2. I'm eating fried cabbage with shredded pork. How about you?
- 26.1. This pen of mine is no good [to use]. [In addition] I have a better one.
- 26.2. This year let's go to some other place for a trip, O.K.?
- 26.3. I'm buying an additional one.
- 26.4. I'm (from) a different school.
- 26.5. I have another typewriter that I'll give you to use.
- 27.1. How many rooms are there in all here?
- 27.2. Our home has only three rooms.
- 28.1. Although I have a lot of books my study is very small.
- 28.2. There's a picture painted by him in my study.
- 29.1. The bed on the right is yours.
- 30.1. The dining table in our home is quite large.
- 30.2. Put the books on the desk.
- 30.3. My writing table is in a mess.
- 31.1. The chair is broken. I'm fixing it.
- 32.1. Bring another chair.
- 33.1. Hang these clothes in the closet.
- 34.1. The wind last evening was very strong.
- 35.1. The wind is blowing hard.
- 35.2. The weather today is bad. It's windy and rainy.
- 36.1. What I bought yesterday was a hat, a briefcase, and some other things [lit. and so on].
- 36.2. I bought towels and soap in the store.
- 37.1. I drink milk at breakfast.
- 37.2. Do you like [to eat] cabbage soup with milk?
- 38.1. Do you (want to) eat steamed bread or rice?
- 39.1. I watch television one hour a day.
- 40.1. The main thing is my inviting you today.
- 40.2. The most important question that we're studying is whether it's possible to do it that way.
- 40.3. The main idea in what he said is that he doesn't like this method.
- 40.4. The most important (reason for) my inviting guests today is to ask you [to come].
- 41.1. There's lots of news in the paper today.
- 41.2. We read the newspapers chiefly for the news.

- 42.1. How many people can the school dining room hold [to eat]?
- 42.2. Please take this chair to the dining room.
- 43.1. My mother is in the kitchen cooking.
- 44.1. Why do you always [like to] use a pencil?
- 44.2. Why does he always go to Japan?
- 44.3. What are you going to do when you go to Japan again?
- 45.1. Are you free this evening? I'd like to have a party for you.
- 45.2. I invited friends last night. It was to welcome Mr. Wang.
- 46.1. The most important guest occupies the seat of honor.
- 47.1. You're so kind [lit. polite] to me. How do I deserve it?
- 47.2. Thank you, I really don't deserve it.
- 48.1. He is avid for prestige.
- 48.2. He's very polite in front of everyone.
- 48.3. As soon as I invited (him), he came. It boosted my prestige.
- 48.4. He's always saying I'm no good. I've lost a lot of face.
- 49.1. Fruit is very cheap now.
- 50.1. Let's stack the dishes first. We'll wash them after a while.
- 51.1. It's my turn to do the dishes today.
- 51.2. It's your turn to speak.
- 51.3. It's your turn.
- 52.1. They're in the living room sitting and chatting.
- 53.1. I'm thinking of asking him to write a character scroll for me.
- 53.2. Almost all Chinese living rooms are hung with character scrolls.
- 54.1. [Every day] one should sleep at least eight hours a day.
- 54.2. How come that child hasn't gotten to sleep yet?
- 54.3. Last night I couldn't get to sleep.
- 55.1. His habit is to eat breakfast at eight o'clock [every morning].
- 55.2. The Chinese custom in eating is to have the soup last.
- 55.3. At what time are you accustomed to eating breakfast [daily]?
- 56.1. Well! Where did you come from?
- 57.1. How often [lit. in how many days] do you see a movie?
- 57.2. I haven't seen him for quite a few days.



Review Sentences

1. From his appearance he seems to be sick.
2. The weather's really cold. You should put on a few more clothes.
3. Tea is best drunk hot.
4. When one's hungry everything tastes good.
5. I've been studying Chinese for less than three months.
6. Beginning next week I'm not going to smoke any more.
7. I drink a glass of milk at breakfast every day.
8. What we ate this evening was steamed bread and fried cabbage with shredded meat.
9. I study every day sitting in that big chair.
10. Several children are in the living room watching TV.
11. I'm late because of the heavy traffic.
12. There's no special news in the paper today.
13. Why haven't you been studying? . . . What do you mean? I've already been studying for two hours.
14. That desk of mine is both wide and long.
15. Lighting cigarettes with a lighter is very convenient.
16. The chairs in our home are all old.
17. It is my custom to have some fruit after eating.
18. I'm not thirsty now. I'll drink after a while.
19. (When) you have time please fix this radio.
20. What's the most important point in this lesson?



Notes

1. A completed action meaning 'What A did was B' is expressed by A V de (shi) B, with the shi optional:

Wǒ zuótiān mǎi de shì Zhōngguó shū. or

Wǒ zuótiān mǎi de Zhōngguó shū. 'What I bought yesterday was Chinese books,' or simply 'I bought Chinese books yesterday.'

Note that out of context Wǒ zuótiān mǎi de Zhōngguó shū is ambiguous, depending on whether it can be alternatively expressed by a sentence with shì after mǎi de, or by one with shì after the subject (see Beginning Chinese, Lesson 11, Notes 3-4). Compare:

Wǒ zuótiān mǎi de (shì) Zhōngguó shū. 'What I bought yesterday was Chinese books.'

Wǒ (shì) zuótiān mǎi de Zhōngguó shū. 'It was yesterday that I bought the Chinese books.'

2. Gànmá before a verb functions as a movable adverb with the same meaning as wèi shénmo? 'why?' but somewhat more colloquial. After a verb phrase it means 'do what?' Compare:

Nǐ gànma dào nèr qu? 'Why are you going there?'

Nǐ dào nèr qu gànma? 'What are you going there to do?'

3. The expression jiē fēng, literally 'meet (or greet) the wind,' is used in connection with offering dinner to a person who has arrived after a trip. It does not necessarily involve inviting other guests as well.
4. The exclamation ēi is a short high-pitched sound for calling attention. It is distinguished by its shortness and high pitch from ěi, a long, low-pitched sound of surprised agreement or approval (see Lesson 3, Notes).
5. Several passages bear on matters of Chinese etiquette and customs.

Mrs. Gao prepares a thirst-quenching light snack of noodles as a token of welcome to one who has arrived after a long journey.

When Vincent White says "I know Mrs. Gao is very fond of me," he is making the point that he is aware of Mrs. Gao's kindness. The word ài

is appropriate in indicating the relationship between persons of disparate ages. If he were the same age as Mrs. Gao, he would say huānying wǒ lái 'welcome my coming' instead.

Later, after Meiyang announces that dinner is ready, modesty requires that she deny having helped in the kitchen, and reprove her father for telling that she had prepared the fried shrimp dish.



“Zhèige bāozi nǐ néng chī jǐge?”

Dì Wǔkè. Tán Zhǎo Fángzi

Huìhuà: Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Tàitai, Gāo Měiyīng, Bái Wénshān
sìge rén yìbiār chīzhe zǎofàn, yìbiār tán guānyu zhǎo
fángzi de wèntí.

Gāo: } Wénshān zǎo.
Tài: }

5 Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Tàitai zǎo.

Měi: Zǎo, Wénshān.

Bái: Zǎo, Měiyīng.

Tài: Wénshān, wǎnshang shuìde nènmo wǎn zènmo zǎo jiu qīlai le. Shuì
hǎo le ma?

10 Bái: Wǒ shuìde hěn hǎo. Yí yè méi xīng. Xǐngle, jiu bādiǎn le.

Tài: Nèige chuáng shuìzhe shūfu ma?

Bái: Hěn shūfu.

Gāo: Wǒmen shuìde hěn wǎn. Yìdiǎn duō zhōng wǒmen cái shuì de.

Tài: Nǐmen liǎngge rén yīnggāi bú shuì, shuōdao tiān liàng.

15 Gāo: Lái, qǐng zuò, wǒmen chī záodiǎn.

Bái: Gāo Tàitai, nín yòu fèile hěn duō shì. Wǒ zài zhèr nín bié tài
fèi shì. Yǒu shénmo chī shénmo.

20 Tài: Méi fèi shì. Jiù shì bāozi xīfàn. Yàoshi nǐ chī miànbāo, niú nǎi,
kāfēi, shémode yě yǒu. Hái yǒu niú yóu, guōzi jiàng. Wǒmen
yě yǒu miànbāo lú, kéyi chī kǎo miànbāo.

Bái: Wǒ chī bāozi xīfàn. Měiyīng, zhèi bāozi nǐ néng chī jǐge?

Měi: Wǒ néng chī liǎngge. Nǐ ne?

Bái: Wǒ néng chī liùge.

Měi: Wǒ bú xìn. Nǐ yàoshi chībuliǎo liùge zěnmo bàn?

25 Bái: Wǒ shòu fá.

Měi: Fá ni shénmo?

Bái: Fá wo qǐng nǐ kàn diànyǐng.

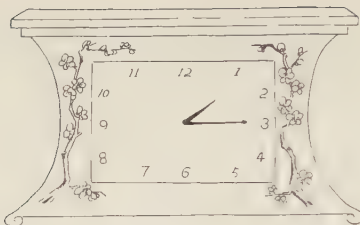
Tài: Měiyīng, bǎ jiàngyóu dīgei Wénshān.

- Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng, fángzi zěnmoyàng? Dàxué fùjìn róngyì zhǎo ma?
- 30 Gāo: Máng shénmo? Zhù jǐtiān xiūxi xiūxi zài shuō me.
- Bái: Wǒ xiǎng háishi bǎ fángzi xiān juédìngle hǎo yìdiǎr.
- Gāo: Wǒ jiēdàole nǐde xìn yǐhòu wa, jiù wènguó jǐge péngyou.
- Bái: Hěn máfan nín.
- 35 Gāo: Yǒu yíwèi péngyou xìng Huá. Zhèiwèi Huá Xiānsheng shì gōngchéng-shī. Yǒu liǎngge érzi, dōu hěn cōngmíng. Dàxué dōu bìyè le.
- Bái: Shì Yuǎn-Dàde ma?
- Gāo: Shìde. Dōu shì Yuǎn-Dà bìyè de.
- Bái: Tāmen shì xué shénmo de?
- Gāo: Dà érzi shì xué lìshǐ de. Shū niànde fēicháng hǎo. Huá Xiānsheng
- 40 xīwang dà érzi jiānglái niàn bóshi.
- Bái: Èr érzi ne?
- Gāo: Èr érzi shì xué yuánzǐ-néng de. Bǐ dà érzi xiǎo yísuì. Kěxī jǐge yuè yǐqián zhèige háizi sǐ le. Tāmen fūqī liǎngge rén fēicháng nánguò.
- 45 Bái: Zhēn kěxī.
- Gāo: Suóyì tāmen xiǎng bǎ èr érzi nèijiān wūzi zhǎo yíge xuésheng zhù.
- Bái: Wǒ qu zhù zuì hǎo le.
- Gāo: Tāmen xiǎng zhǎo rén zhù de yuányīn yǒu liǎngge. Dì yíge yuányīn shì miǎnde xiǎng tāmende érzi, yì huílai kànbufuàn tāmende háizi
- 50 jiù shì yìjiān kōng wūzi.
- Bái: Hái yǒu shénmo yuányīn?
- Gāo: Dì èrge yuányīn shì tāmen fūqī cháng bu zài jiā. Huá Xiānsheng shì gōngchéngshī. Biéde dìfang yǒu gōngchéng tāmen dāngrán yě yào qù le. Tāmen xiǎng zhǎo ge xuésheng zhù gěi dà érzi zuò bàr.
- 55 Bái: Dà érzi duó dà le?
- Gāo: Jīnnian èrshiwūsù le.
- Bái: Wǒ èrshìsì. Bǐ wǒ dà yísuì.
- Gāo: Jiānglái yéxǔ nǐmen huì chéngle hǎo péngyou.
- Bái: Wǒ yě hěn xīwang.
- 60 Bāo: Wǒ xiǎng jiānglái nǐ zhùzài tāmen jiā lǐtou gēn zìjǐ jiā yíyàng, yīnwei Huá Xiānsheng Huá Tàitai tāmen dōu hěn hǎo.
- Bái: Shì.
- Gāo: Xiànzài zū fángzi hěn nán, yīnwei zēngjiǎle hěn duō xuésheng, dōu zài zhè fùjìn zhǎo fángzi. Zhù sùshè bǐjiǎo róngyì, yīnwei xuéxiào
- 65 gàile hěn duō jiān sùshè.

- Bái: Yuánlái wǒ shì xiǎng zhù sùshè de, yòu jīngjì yòu fāngbian. Kěshì yǒu chángchū yě yǒu duǎnchū. Zhù sùshè lǐtōu bǐfang shuō lái péngyou huòzhe zìjǐ zuò fàn shénmode dōu bù kěnéng.
- 70 Gāo: Nǐ zhù Huá jiā gēn zìjǐ jiā yíyàng. Kètīng fàntīng nǐ keyì suíbiàn yòng. Nǐ lái péngyou dōu hěn fāngbian. Tāmen yíqiè jiāju dōu yǒu, xiàng chuáng, yīguì, shū jiàzi, shénmode. Tāmen yǒu yònggren shǒushì wūzi, xǐ yīfu, zhèixie shùqīng, nǐ dōu bù yòng guǎn.
- Bái: Hǎo jǐle.
- 75 Gāo: (duì Gāo Tàitai) Nǐ gěi Huá Tàitai dǎ ge diànhuà wènwén shénmo shíhòu keyì qù kànkan nèijiān fángzi.
- Tài: Hǎo.
- Gāo: Wǒ nèiren yǐjīng gēn Huá Tàitai shuōle shù yíwèi Měiguó péngyou. Tā shuō hěn hǎo. Dàjiā jiàn miàn tántán. Wǒ xiǎng nǐ zhùzài Huá jiā bǐ zhù yíge bù rènshi de fángdōngde fángzi bǐjiào hǎo.
- 80 Bái: Hěn hǎo.
- Gāo: Wénshan, nǐ zhùzài nèr bié hàipà yǐwei tā érzi sǐzai wūzili. Qíshí tā bìng méi sǐzai jiālǐ. Tā shì zài yīyuàn sǐ de.
- Bái: Wǒ bù hàipà.
- Gāo: Tā hūrán bìng le. Tāde bìng jǐge dàifu yě zhìbuhǎo.
- 85 Bái: Zhēn kěxī.
- Gāo: Nèige hái zi cháng gēn wǒmen zài yíkuàr. Wǒmen hěn shǒu de. Suǒyǐ tā sǐle wǒ gēn wǒ nèirén hěn nánguò.
- Tài: Diànhuà dǎtōng le, shì Huá Tàitai jiē de. Tā yuē wǒmen shíyīdiǎn zhōng qù kàn fángzi.
- 90 Gāo: Nǐ méi wèn Huá Tàitai duōshao qián fángzū ma?
- Tài: Tā méi huídá zhèige wèntí. Tā shuō jiàn miàn zài tán.
- Gāo: Yìhuěr Měiyīng péi Wénshān qù ba.
- Měi: Hǎo.
- Bái: Měiyīng, máfan nǐ le.
- 95 Měi: Bié kèqì.

Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (10) **xǐng** wake up (IV)
- 1.1. Wǒ shì liùdiǎn zhōng xǐng de.
- 1.2. Wǒ yì xǐngle jiù shídiǎn bàn le.
- 2.0. (10) **yè** night (M)
- 2.1. Cóng zhèr dào Nánjīng zuò chuán liǎngtiān, liǎngyè.



- 2.2. Zuótiān wǎnshàng shuìbuzháo. Yí'yè yě méi shuì jiào.
- 3.0. (11) **shūfu** comfortable (SV) [lit. relax submit]
 bù shūfu uncomfortable; indisposed, unwell
- 3.1. Zhèibā yǐzi zuòzhe hěn shūfu.
- 3.2. Wǒ jīntiān yǒu yìdiǎr bù shūfu.
- 4.0. (14) **liàng** bright, light (SV)
 tiān liàng the day is light
- 4.1. Kuài qīlai ba. Tiān yǐjīng liàng le.
- 4.2. Nǐ zěnmó shuìde zěnmó zǎo wa? Tiān hái liàngzhe ne.
- 4.3. Tiān gāng liàng wǒmen jiù qīlai le.
- 5.0. (15) **záodiǎn** breakfast (N) [lit. early bit]
 5.1. Wǒmen qǐng tā chī záodiǎn hǎo bu hǎo?
- 6.0. (18) **bāozi** stuffed steamed rolls (N)
 6.1. Huá Tàitai zuòde bāozi zhēn hǎo chī
- 7.0. (18) **xīfàn** (rice) porridge, gruel (N) [lit. thin rice]
 7.1. Wǒ měitiān zǎochen chī xīfàn.
- 8.0. (18) **miànbāo** (Western-style) bread (N) [lit. flour package]
 kǎo miànbāo toast (N)
- 8.1. Zhōngguó rén chī mántou, wàiguó rén chī miànbāo.
- 8.2. Wǒ xǐhuan chī kǎo miànbāo.
- 9.0. (19) **kāfēi** coffee (N)
 9.1. Yǒude rén hē kāfēi shuìbuzháo jiào.
- 10.0. (19) **yóu** oil
 niú yóu butter (made from cow's milk)
- 10.1. Zuò zhèige cài yào duō fàng yìdiǎr yóu.
- 10.2. Chī miànbāo yào niú yóu bu yào?
- 11.0. (19) **jiàng** soybean paste; jam (N)
 guǒzi jiàng jam, jelly
- 11.1. Wǒmen yǒu jiàng, méi yǒu jiàngyóu.

- 11.2. Zuò Zhōngguo cài chàbuduō dōu yǒng jiàngyóu.
- 11.3. Nǐ chī miànbāo yào bu yào guǒzi jiàng?
- 12.0. (20) **lú(zi)** (small) stove (N)
miànbāo lú toaster *Kao miànbao ji*
- 12.1. Wǒmende lúzi huài le. Děi zhǎo rén xiūli xiūli.
- 12.2. Qǐng nǐ zài nà yíkuài miànbāo fàngzai miànbāo lú lǐtou.
- 13.0. (24) **xìn** believe (V) *言 same for letter*
- 13.1. Wǒ bú xìn ta. *human word = true*
- 13.2. Tā shuō de huà méi rén xìn.
- 13.3. Nǐ bú xìn wǒde huà ma?
- 13.4. Wǒ bú xìn tā míngnián néng chū guó.
- 14.0. (24) **bàn** arrange, manage (V)
bàn shì arrange or manage a matter
bànhǎo finish (a job satisfactorily)
zěnmō bàn? How manage? What's to be done? What then?
- 14.1. Zhèijiàn shì tā néng bàn ma?
- 14.2. Wǒ xiānzài chūqu bàn shì.
- 14.3. Tā bǎ nèijiàn shìqīng méi bànhǎo.
- 14.4. Zhèijiàn shìqīng zěnmō bàn ne?
- 14.5. Méi qián zěnmō bàn ne?
- 15.0. (25) **shòu** receive, suffer, endure (V)
shòubujiǎo unable to endure
shòudeliǎo able to endure
- 15.1. Zhèige wūzi zěnmō rè, nǐ zěnmō shòudeliǎo?
- 16.0. (25) **fá** punish, penalize, fine (TV)
fá qián fine, impose a money fine
shòu fá be punished
(A) fá B V (A) penalizes B by making him V
- 16.1. Wǒ fá ta qǐng wǒ chī fàn.
- 16.2. Jǐngchá fále wǒ liǎngkuài qián.
- 16.3. Chē tíngcuòle dìfang yào fá qián.
- 16.4. Tā wèi shénmo zài xuéxiào shòu fá le?
- 17.0. (28) **dìgei** pass (to), hand (to) (TV) [lit. pass give]
17.1. Nǐ bǎ nèiběn shū dìgei wǒ.

- 18.0. (31) **juéding** decide (to do something) (V) [lit. cut fix]
 18.1. Zhèijiàn shìqing wǒ hái méi juéding.
 18.2. Wǒ juéding míngtiān qù bàifāng tā.
- 19.0. (34) **gōngchéng** construction enterprise (N) [lit. work pattern]
 gōngchéngshī engineer (also used as title) [shī = teacher]
 gōngchéngxué engineering
 19.1. Gàì nèigè lǚguǎn shì hěn dàde gōngchéng.
 19.2. Wáng Xiānsheng shì yíwèi gōngchéngshī.
 19.3. Gōngchéngxué hěn nán xué.
- 20.0. (35) **érzi** son (N)
 dà érzi eldest son
 èr érzi second son
 xiǎo érzi youngest son
 20.1. Tā yǒu liǎngge érzi.
 20.2. Wáng Xiānshengde dà érzi yǐjīng jiēhūn le.
 20.3. Tāde èr érzi hěn cōngmíng.
 20.4. Tā zuì xǐhuan tā zuì xiǎode érzi.
- 21.0. (40) **bóshi** doctor of philosophy, Ph.D. (N) [lit. learned scholar]
 Wáng Bóshi Dr. Wang
 niàn bóshi study for the doctorate
 21.1. Tā yǐjīng shì bóshi le.
 21.2. Wáng Bóshi hěn yǒu xuéwen.
 21.3. Wǒ xiànzài niàn bóshi.
- 22.0. (42) **yuánzǐ** atom (N) (Note 1)
 yuánzǐ-néng atomic energy
 yuánzǐ-bǐ ball-point pen
 22.1. Tā shì yánjiū yuánzǐ-néng de.
 22.2. Yuánzǐ-bǐ bǐ gāngbǐ piányi.
- 23.0. (42) **kěxī** be regrettable, be a shame, be too bad, unfortunate (SV)
 [lit. can regret]
 23.1. Tāmende nèitiáo xiǎo gǒur sǐle. Zhēn kěxī.
- 24.0. (43) **sǐ** die (IV) (Note 2)
 Vsi kill by V-ing, die from being V-ed
 SV de yào sǐ extremely SV
 24.1. Tāde chē chū shì le. Pèngsile yíge rén.

- 24.2. Yīnwei fēijī chū shìle ta sǐ le.
 24.3. Yì tiān méi chī fàn. Wǒ èsile.
 24.4. Nèige dīfang dáqilai le. Dásile hěn duō rén.
 24.5. Tā bú shì chū shì sǐ de, shì bìngsi de.
 24.6. Jīntiān tiānqì tài rè. Wǒ rèsile.
 24.7. Wǒ děi xiūxi yìhuēr. Lèisile.
 24.8. Wǒ ède yào sǐ.
- 25.0. (43) fūqī man and wife, husband and wife (N)
 25.1. Tāmen fūqī liǎngge dōu shì bóshi.
- 26.0. (44) nánguò sad, distressed (SV) [lit. hard pass]
 26.1. Tīngshuō ta bìng le. Wǒ hěn nánguò.
 26.2. Wǒ duì ta nièjiàn shèqīng méi bāng máng, hěn nánguò.
- 27.0. (48) yuányīn reason (N) [lit. origin because]
 27.1. Shénmo yuányīn ta xiànzài bú niàn shū le?
 27.2. Tā bù lái de yuányīn wǒ bù zhīdào.
- 28.0. (49) miǎn avoid (V)
 miǎnbuliǎo unable to avoid
 miǎnde so as to avoid
 28.1. Kāi chē yào xiǎoxīn miǎnde chū shì.
 28.2. Yàoshi nǐ dào túshūguǎn qu, qǐng nǐ bǎ nèiběn shū gěi wǒ jièlai, miǎnde wǒ qù le.
 28.3. Xiě zǐ xiěcuòle shì miǎnbuliǎo de.
- 29.0. (50) kōng empty, unoccupied (SV)
 kōng wūzi empty room
 kōng huà empty talk
 29.1. Zhèige xiāngzi shì kōng de.
 29.2. Wǒmen jiā yǒu yìjiān kōng wūzi.
 29.3. Tā lǎo shuō kōng huà.
- 30.0. (54) bàn companion (N)
 A gěi B zuò bàn A is a companion to B, A keeps B company
 30.1. Nǐ bú bì jiē wo. Wǒ yǒu bàn.
 30.2. Wáng Xiáojie gěi Qián Xiáojie zuò bàn qu le.
- 31.0. (58) chéng become (V)
 31.1. Wǒ gēn ta xiànzài chéng péngyou le.

32.0. (63) **zū** rent (as a tenant) (V)

zūgei rent to

chūzū be for rent; rent out

32.1. Wǒ xiǎng zū yìjiān wūzi.

32.2. Zū fángzi hěn bù róngyi.

32.3. Wǒde fángzi zūgei Wáng Xiānsheng le.

32.4. Qǐng wèn, nín zhèr yǒu wūzi chūzū ma?

33.0. (64) **sùshè** dormitory (N) [lit. lodge hut]

33.1. Zhèige xuéxiào zhǐ yǒu nán sùshè, méi yǒu nǚ sùshè.

34.0. (66) **jīngjì** economical (SV), economics (N)

jīngjìxué (study of) economics

34.1. Zài jiālì chī fàn bǐ zài fànguǎr chī fàn jīngjì.

34.2. Tā shì yánjiū jīngjìxué de.

34.3. Yàoshi yòng fēijī yùn, zài jīngjì yìfāngmiàn tài bu jīngjì le.

35.0. (67) **lái péngyou** have friends come, invite friends (Note 3)

35.1. Jīntian nǐmen jiā lái péngyou bù lái?

36.0. (70) **yíqiè(de)** all [lit. one all]

36.1. Wǒ yíge rén zuò. Yíqiè bù yòng nǐ.

36.2. Jiāli yíqiède shìqíng dōu shì wǒ mǔqín zuò.

37.0. (70) **jiāju** furniture (N)

37.1. Tā jiāde jiāju hěn jiǎngjiu.

37.2. Nèisuǒ fángzi lǐtou shénmo jiāju dōu yǒu.

38.0. (71) **yīguì** wardrobe (closet), cabinet (N)

38.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèi jǐjiàn yīfu guàzai yīguìlǐ.

39.0. (71) **jiàzi** frame, rack (N)

shū jiàzi bookcase

shǒujīn jiàzi towel rack

yī-jiàzi clothes rack

39.1. Tāde shū jiàzishang yǒu hěn duō Zhōngguó shū.

39.2. Nǐde shǒujīn zài shǒujīn jiàzishang.

39.3. Zuótian mǎile yíge yī-jiàzi.

40.0. (71) **yòngren** servant (N) [lit. use person]

40.1. Huá Tàitāide yòngren hěn hǎo.

41.0. (72) **guǎn** control, manage, take care of (TV)

bùguǎn . . . no matter . . .

- 41.1. Zhèige shìqing shéi guǎn?
- 41.2. Wǒ guǎn zuò fàn, nǐ guǎn xǐ jiāhuo.
- 41.3. Tā shénmo yě bù guǎn.
- 41.4. Bùguǎn nǐ qù bu qù, wǒ yíding qù.
- 42.0. (78) **dàjiā** everyone [lit. big home]
nǐmen dàjiā you [plural]
- 42.1. Dàjiā yíkuài chī.
- 42.2. Nǐmen dàjiā dōu qǐng zuò.
- 43.0. (79) **fángdōng** landlord, landlady (N) [lit. house east]
fángdōng tàitai landlady
- 43.1. Fángdōng shuō liǎngge xīngqī gěi yíci qián yě kéyì.
- 44.0. (81) **hàipà** be afraid, be fearful (IV) [lit. suffer fear]
- 44.1. Wǒ yíge rén zhù zhèr zhēn hàipà.
- 45.0. (81) **qíshí** actually, really, in fact (MA) [lit. it's reality]
- 45.1. Nǐ kàn tāde yàngzi hǎoxiang hěn bèn. Qíshí tā hěn cōngming.
- 46.0. (82) **bìng + negative** not at all, not actually, not after all
- 46.1. Qíshí wǒ bìng bù xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng.
- 46.2. Wǒ zuótian bìng méi qù.
- 47.0. (82) **yīyuàn** hospital (N) [lit. heal hall]
- 47.1. Wǒ děi dào yīyuàn qu jiǎnchá jiǎnchá.
- 48.0. (84) **hūrán** suddenly, unexpectedly (MA) [lit. sudden is]
- 48.1. Tiānqi hūrán rèqilai le.
- 49.0. (84) **dàifu** doctor, physician (N) [lit. doctor person]
Wáng Dàifu Dr. Wang
- 49.1. Wǒ bìng le, děi kàn dàifu qu.
- 49.2. Qǐng Wáng Dàifu gěi ta kànkàn.
- 50.0. (84) **zhì** treat (an illness), cure (V)
zhì bìng treat an illness
zhìhǎo cure
- 50.1. Tāde bìng méi fázi zhì.
- 50.2. Wǒ děi zhǎo dàifu gěi hái zi zhì bìng.
- 50.3. Wáng Dàifu bǎ tāde bìng zhìhǎo le.
- 51.0. (86) **shóu, shú** ripe;(well) done; well acquainted (opposite of shēng) (SV)

shú rén acquaintance

51.1. Wǒ gēn tā shì shú péngyou.

51.2. Zhèr dōu shì shēng rén. Méi yíge shú rén.

51.3. Mā, wǒ èle. Fàn shóu le méi you?

52.0. (88) **tōng** go through, put through (V)

tōng diànhuà put through a phone, call

dǎtōng get through (on the phone)

52.1. Nèige chéng tōng huǒchē ma?

52.2. Niètiáo lù bu tōng.

52.3. Zuótian wǒ gēn tā tōng diànhuà le.

52.4. Diànhuà dǎle bàntiān yě dǎbutōng.

52.5. Nǐ gěi tā dǎtōngle méi you?

52.6. Wǒ gěi tā dǎ diànhuà dǎbutōng.

53.0. (88) **yuē** invite; make an appointment (V)

yuēhǎo agree on

yuēhui appointment

53.1. Wǒ jīntian wǎnshang yuē péngyou chī fàn.

53.2. Wǒ yǐjīng gēn tā yuēhǎole míngtiān qù.

53.3. Wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng gēn tā yǒu yuēhui.

54.0. (90) **fángzū** rent (for a room or house) (N) [lit. house rent]

54.1. Nǐ zhù de fángzi yíge yuè duōshao qián fángzū?

55.0. (91) **(huí)dá** answer (V) [lit. return answer]

huídá answer (N)

55.1. Wǒ wèn, nǐmen dá.

55.2. Zhèige wèntí zěnmó huídá?

55.3. Qǐng nǐmen bǎ shū fàngxia. Wǒmen wèn dá.

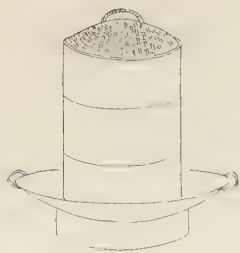
55.4. Tā hái méi huídá wo.

55.5. Nǐ nèige huídá cuò le.

56.0. (92) **péi** accompany, entertain (TV); accompanying, being with (CV)

56.1. Wǒ jīntian dào Wáng jiā qù péi Wáng Xiǎojié.

56.2. Zuótian péi wǒ mǔqīn qù mǎi dōngxī.



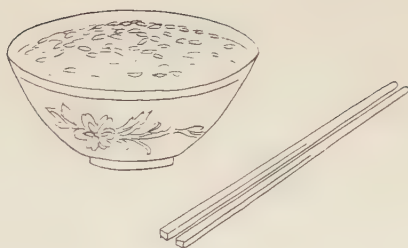
Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Wǒde xíguān shì xǐngle yǐhòu mǎshàng jiù qīlai.
2. Nèibǎ yīzi nǐ zuòzhè shūfu ma?
3. Zuótian wǎnshang shū kǎnde tài duō le, suóyì yǎnjīng bù shūfu.
4. Zhèige bāozi shì zhū ròu báicài de.
5. Shuǐ duōde fàn jiù shì xīfàn.
6. Chǎo dòufu děi duō fàng yóu.
7. Guōzi jiàng shì yòng shuǐguǒ zuòde.
8. Wǒmen chufáng lǐtou yǒu liǎngge lúzi.
9. Zěnmò bàn ne? Wǒ wàngle bǎ shū dàilái le.
10. Jīntian zěnmò rè, wǒ zhēn shòubuliǎo.
11. Nǐde chē tíngzai nèr gāi fá qián le.
12. Qǐng nǐ dìgei wǒ yīzhī yān.
13. Qù bu qù wǒ xiànzài hái méi juéding ne.
14. Wáng Bóshi juéding míngnián qù Yīngguó.
15. Tāmen fūqī liǎngge dōu xǐhuan kàn diànshì.
16. Tā kǎoshì kǎode bù hǎo. Tā xīnlǐ fēicháng nánguò.
17. Zhèige fángzi shì kōngde. Méi rén zhù.
18. Wǒ nèijiān wūzi zǎo jiù zūgei rénjiā le.
19. Jīntian wǎnshang wǒmen jiā lái péngyou.
20. Gāngcái wǒ gěi ta dǎ diànhuà. Zěnmò dǎ yě dǎbutōng.

Dāndú Tánhuà

Zuótian wǎnshang wǒ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng tándao yìdiǎn bànle cái shuǐ jiào. Jīntian zǎochen yì xǐngle jiù bādiǎn le. Gāo Tàitai zǎochen qīlai zuòle hěn duō bāozi. Tā zhīdao wǒ hěn xǐhuan chī bāozi.

Zài chī záodiǎn de shíhou wǒ wèn Měiyīng néng chī jǐge bāozi. Tā



- 5 shuō néng chī liǎngge. Tā wèn wǒ kéyǐ chī jǐge. Wǒ shuō néng chī liùge. Tā bú xìn. Tā shuō wǒ yàoshi bù néng chī liùge zěnmó bàn? Wǒ shuō yàoshi wǒ chībuliǎo fá wo. Tā shuō fá shénmo, wǒ shuō fá wǒ qǐng kàn diànyǐngr. Měiyīng hěn xǐhuan kàn diànyǐngr. Liùge bāozi chīdeliǎo chībuliǎo dōu děi qǐng ta qu kàn diànyǐngr.
- 10 Yòu gēn Gāo Xiānsheng tándao zhǎo fángzi de wèntí. Wǒ wèn Gāo Xiānsheng fángzi róngyì zhǎo ma. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō máng shénmo, xiūxi xiūxi zài shuō. Gāo Xiānshengde yìsi shì ràng wǒ zài zhèr duō zhù xie rìzi, kěshi wǒ xiǎng háishi xiān zhǎo fángzi. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō yǐjīng gēn jǐge péngyou shuōguo le. Wǒ zhīdao zhèi yídàide fángzi
- 15 bù zěnmó hǎo zhǎo.

Gāo Xiānsheng shuō yǒu yíwèi Huá Xiānsheng yě shì Gāo Xiānshengde péngyou, shì gōngchéngshī. Tāmen nàr yǒu yìjiān wūzi. Huá Xiānsheng yǒu liǎngge érzi. Dà érzi shì niàn lǐshǐ de. Èr érzi shì xué yuánzǐ-néng de. Kěxī jǐge yuè yǐqián sǐle, suóyǐ èr érzi zhèijiān wūzi jiù kōngqilai

20 le. Huá Xiānsheng fūqī liǎngge kànjian zhèijiān kōng wūzi jiù xiángqǐ tāmen de érzi lai le, suóyǐ tāmen xīwang zhǎo yíge xuésheng zhù. Hái you yíge yuányīn, shì Huá Xiānsheng yàoshi biéde dìfang yǒu gōngchéng tā yě děi qù suóyǐ fūqī liǎngge cháng bú zài jiā. Zhǎo ge xuésheng zhù gěi tāmen dà érzi zuòzuò bàr.

- 25 Gāo Xiānsheng shuō jiānglái zhù zai tāmen jiā lǐtou yídìng hěn hǎo, gēn zìjǐ jiā lǐtou yíyàng, yīnwei Huá Xiānsheng fūqī liǎngge rén hěn hǎo. Hái shuō Huá Xiānshengde dà érzi gēn wǒ chàbuduō yíyàng dà. Yǐhòu kéyǐ chéngle hǎo péngyou. Wǒ yě gāoxìng duō yǒu jǐge Zhōngguo péngyou.

Gāo Xiānsheng shuō zuì jìn dàxué gàile bù shǎode xīn sùshè. Tā

30 shuō zhù sùshè bìjiǎo róngyì. Zuì jìn zhǎo fángzi hěn nán. Dàxué zēngjiāle hěn duōde xuésheng, dōu zài zhè fùjìn zhǎo fángzi. Qíshí yuánlái wǒ shì dāsuan zhù sùshe de. Zhù sùshe bìjiǎo jīngjì, kěshi yǒu péngyou lái

huòzhe zuò fàn jiù bù fāngbian le. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō wǒ zhùzai Huá
jia shénmo dōu fāngbian. Yàoshi lái péngyou kètīng fàntīng kényī suíbiàn
35 yòng. Bìngqiě yǒu yòngren bāngzhe wǒ shǒushi wūzi xǐ yīfu shénmode.

Gāo Xiānsheng ràng Gāo Tàitai gěi Huá jia dǎ ge diànhuà, shuō yuē
ge shíhou qù kànkàn fángzi. Zài diànhuà lǐtōu Huá Tàitai gēn Gāo Tàitai
yuēhǎole shuō jīntian shìyīdiǎn zhōng qù kàn fángzi. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō
ràng Měiyīng péi wǒ qù.

40 Tóngshí Gāo Xiānsheng hai gào su wo, Huá jiade èr érzi bìng méi
sǐzai jiā lǐtōu, tā shì sǐzai yīyuàn le. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō yàoshi wǒ
zhùzai Huá jia kě bié hài pà. Gāo Xiānsheng zhēn guānxīn wo.



Wèntí

1. Zǎochen qǐlai Gāo Tàitai wèn Bái Wénshān shénmo?
2. Bái Wénshān wèi shénmo yíyè yě méi xǐng?
3. Gāo Xiānsheng gēn Bái Xiānsheng wèi shénmo shuō de hěn wǎn?
4. Gāo Tàitai zuò de shénmo záodiǎn? Gāo Tàitai shuō tāmen hái yǒu shénmo
chī de dōngxì?
5. Bái Wénshān gēn Gāo Tàitai shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
6. Měiyīng bú xìn Wénshān néng chī liùge bāozi, Wénshān shuō shénmo?
7. Bái Xiānsheng gēn Gāo Xiānsheng tándao zhǎo fángzi Gāo Xiānsheng ràng
ta xiànzài jiù zhǎo fángzi ma?
8. Bái Xiānshengde yìsi zěnmoyàng?
9. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō nǎr yǒu yìjiān fángzi?
10. Huá Xiānsheng shì zuò shénmo shì de?
11. Ta wèi shénmo fángzi yào chūzū?
12. Huá Xiānsheng liǎngge érzi dōu shì xué shénmo de?
13. Dà érzi gēn èr érzi zěnmoyàng?
14. Bái Xiānsheng wèi shénmo bú zhù sùshè, yào zū fángzi zhù?
15. Zhù sùshè yǒu shénmo hǎochu?

16. Gāo Xiānsheng wèi shénmo gàosu Wénshān zhùzai Huá jia bié hàipà?
17. Huá jiade èr érzi sǐzai nǎr le?
18. Gāo Tàitai dǎwánle diànhuà yǐhòu tā gēn Gāo Xiānsheng Bái Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
19. Gāo Xiānsheng wèn Gāo Tàitai wèn méi wèn fángzū duōshao qián? Gāo Tàitai shuō shénmo?
20. Shéi péi Wénshān qu kàn fángzi?
21. Yàoshi yǒu péngyou zài nǐ jiā lǐtou zhù, zǎochen qīlai nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi nǐ zài péngyou jiā lǐtou zhù, péngyou tèbié gěi nǐ zuò záodiǎn, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
23. Yàoshi yíge wàiguo péngyou zài nǐ jiā zhù, nǐ yīnggāi zuò shénmoyàngr zǎofàn?
24. Yàoshi péngyou zài nǐ jiā lǐtou zhù, tā shuō yào zhǎo fángzi nǐ shuō shénmo?
25. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō yíge rén sǐle nǐ shuō shénmo?
26. Yàoshi nǐ gěi péngyou jièshao biéde péngyoude fángzi, nǐ dōu gēn ta shuō shénmo?
27. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou yǐqián xiě xìn qǐng nǐ gěi ta zhǎo fángzi, nǐ yǐjīng gěi ta wènguole, nǐ duì ta zěnmō shuō?
28. Yàoshi nǐ péngyou qu kàn fángzi nǐ jiu ràng ta yíge rén qù ma?
29. Yàoshi péngyou shuō zhù sùshè hǎo nǐ zěnmō shuō?
30. Yàoshi péngyou shuō xīwang nǐ gēn bié ren zuò péngyou nǐ zěnmō huídá?

Dialogue: Mr. Gao, Mrs. Gao, Gao Meiyīng, and Vincent White, while having breakfast, discuss the problem of where to find quarters.

Gao :)

Tai : } Good morning, Vincent.

White: Good morning [Mr. Gao and Mrs. Gao].

Mei : Morning, Vincent.

White: Morning, Meiyīng.

Tai : Vincent, you went to bed so late last night and yet you're up so early. Did you sleep well?

White: [I slept] very well. I didn't wake up until eight.

Tai : Was the bed comfortable [for sleeping]?

White: Very [comfortable].

- Gao : We went to bed very late. We didn't get to sleep until after one.
- Tai : You two should have stayed up and talked till daybreak.
- Gao : Come on, please sit down, let's have breakfast.
- White: Mrs. Gao, you've put yourself to lots of trouble again. When I'm here don't put yourself out too much. I'll eat whatever there is.
- Tai : I didn't go to any trouble. It's just steamed rolls and hot cereal. If you (would rather) have bread, milk, coffee, and so on, (we) have them too. And there's also butter and jam. We have a toaster, too, so you can have toast.
- White: I'll have steamed rolls and hot cereal. Meiyong, how many of these rolls can you eat?
- Mei : [I can eat] two. How about you?
- White: I can eat six.
- Mei : I don't believe it. [If you can't eat six what then?]
- White: I bet I can. [lit. I'll suffer a penalty.]
- Mei : What do you bet? [lit. Penalize you with what?]
- White: [I'll be penalized by having to ask you to see] a movie.
- Tai : Meiyong, pass the soy sauce to Vincent.
- White: Mr. Gao, what about a place to live? Will it be easy to find (a place) near the University?
- Gao : What's your hurry? Stay a few days and rest and then we'll talk about it.
- White: I think it would be better to decide on a place to live first.
- Gao : After I got your letter I asked a number of friends (about a place to live).
- White: It's a lot of trouble for you.
- Gao : I have a friend named Hua. This Mr. Hua is an engineer. He had two sons, both very bright. Both graduated from college.
- White: Were they Far Eastern (students)?
- Gao : Yes. Both graduated from Far Eastern.
- White: What did they take up?
- Gao : The older son studied history. He did exceptionally well in his studies. Mr. Hua hopes that [in the future] he will study for a Ph.D.
- White: What about the younger son?
- Gao : The second son studied atomic energy. He was a year younger than the elder son. Unfortunately this youngster died a few months ago. The parents [lit. the two of them husband and wife] were heartbroken.
- White: What a pity.

Gao : So they want to find a student to live in their [second] son's room.

White: It would be fine if I could go there to live.

Gao : There are two reasons for their wanting to find someone to live (there). The first [reason] is to avoid brooding about their son when they come back and see, not their child, but just an empty room.

White: What's the other reason?

Gao : The second reason is that the two of them [lit. husband and wife] are often not home. If there's a construction job somewhere else naturally they have to go. They want to find a student to live there and be a companion to their elder son.

White: How old is he [lit. the elder son]?

Gao : He's twenty-five this year.

White: I'm twenty-four. He's a year older than I.

Gao : Later perhaps you will become good friends.

White: I certainly hope so [too].

Gao : I think [hereafter] if you live in their home it will be like your own home, for Mr. and Mrs. Hua are both very nice.

White: Yes.

Gao : Now it's hard to rent a place because there are a lot more students, and they're all looking for quarters in this vicinity. Living in a dormitory is easier, as the school has built a lot of dormitories.

White: Originally I had thought of living in a dormitory, as it's both economical and convenient. But there are advantages and disadvantages. If you live in a dormitory you can't do things like having friends in or making your own meals.

Gao : If you live in the Hua home it will be like your own home. You can use the living room and dining room as you please. Having your friends come will be quite convenient. They have all the furniture for your room, such as bed, wardrobe, bookcases, and so on. They have a servant to keep (your) room in order, wash (your) clothes, and so on, none of which you have to concern yourself about.

White: That's wonderful.

Gao : (to Mrs. Gao) Give Mrs. Hua a ring and ask when it's possible to go see the place.

Tai : Yes.

Gao : My wife has already told Mrs. Hua that you were [lit. it was a matter of] an American. She said that's fine. When you see each other you can talk things over. I think living at the Huas' will be better than living in the house of a landlord you don't know.

White: Very good.

Gao : Vincent, [living there] don't be afraid [thinking] that their son died in that room. As a matter of fact he didn't [die at the house]. He died in a hospital.

White: I wouldn't be afraid.

Gao : He took sick suddenly and even (with) several doctors it was not possible to stay the illness.

White: That's really sad.

Gao : That youngster was often with us. We were very close, so when he died my wife and I were very upset.

Tai : I made the call, and it was Mrs. Hua who answered. She invited us to go look at the house at eleven o'clock.

Gao : You didn't ask Mrs. Hua how much the rent was?

Tai : She didn't answer that question. She said to discuss it further when we meet.

Gao : In a little while Meiying can go there with Vincent.

Mei : Fine.

White: Meiying, (sorry to) trouble you.

Mei : Not at all.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. I woke up at six o'clock.
- 1.2. I didn't wake up until ten-thirty.
- 2.1. From here to Nanking it's two days and two nights by boat.
- 2.2. I couldn't get to sleep last evening. I didn't sleep the whole night.
- 3.1. This chair is very comfortable [for sitting].
- 3.2. I'm a little under the weather today.
- 4.1. Get up right away. It's already light.
- 4.2. Why are you going to sleep so early? It's still light.
- 4.3. We got up just as the day dawned.
- 5.1. How about our asking him to breakfast?
- 6.1. The stuffed rolls that Mrs. Hua makes are really delicious.
- 7.1. I eat hot cereal every morning.
- 8.1. Chinese eat steamed rolls, foreigners eat bread.
- 8.2. I'd like to have toast.
- 9.1. Some people can't sleep when they drink coffee.

- 10.1. In making this dish you have to use a little more oil.
- 10.2. Do you want butter when you eat bread?
- 11.1. We have soybean paste, but not soy sauce.
- 11.2. In making Chinese dishes you almost always use soy sauce.
- 11.3. Would you like jam with the bread?
- 12.1. Our stove has broken down. We must find someone to fix it.
- 12.2. Please put another piece of bread in the toaster.
- 13.1. I don't believe him.
- 13.2. Nobody believes what he says.
- 13.3. You don't believe what I say?
- 13.4. I don't believe he can go abroad next year.
- 14.1. Can he manage this matter?
- 14.2. I'm going out now to take care of something.
- 14.3. He didn't do a good job in that matter.
- 14.4. How is this matter to be arranged?
- 14.5. What's to be done if there's no money?
- 15.1. This room is so hot. How can you stand it?
- 16.1. As a penalty I had him invite me to dinner.
- 16.2. The policeman fined me two dollars.
- 16.3. If you park in the wrong place you'll be fined.
- 16.4. Why was he punished in school?
- 17.1. Hand me that book.
- 18.1. I haven't yet decided about this matter.
- 18.2. I've decided to go make a call on him tomorrow.
- 19.1. Building that hotel was a big construction job.
- 19.2. Mr. Wang is an engineer.
- 19.3. Engineering is very hard [to study].
- 20.1. He has two sons.
- 20.2. Mr. Wang's eldest son is already married.
- 20.3. His second son is very bright.
- 20.4. He is fondest of his youngest son.
- 21.1. He's already a Ph D.
- 21.2. Dr. Wang is very learned.
- 21.3. I'm studying for my doctorate now.

- 22.1. He's studying atomic energy.
- 22.2. Ball-point pens are cheaper than fountain pens.
- 23.1. That little dog of theirs died. It's really a pity.
- 24.1. His car was in an accident. It ran into a man and killed him.
- 24.2. He died in [lit. because of] a plane accident.
- 24.3. I haven't eaten all day. I'm dying of hunger.
- 24.4. Fighting has started in that place. A lot of people have been killed.
- 24.5. He didn't die in an accident, he died of an illness.
- 24.6. The weather's too hot today. I'm dying from the heat.
- 24.7. I must rest a while. I'm dead tired.
- 24.8. I'm famished.
- 25.1. Husband and wife are both Ph.D.'s.
- 26.1. I hear he's taken ill. I'm very distressed.
- 26.2. I'm quite distressed that I didn't help in that matter of his.
- 27.1. What's the reason that he's not studying any more now?
- 27.2. I don't know the reason for his not coming.
- 28.1. One must be careful when driving so as to avoid having accidents.
- 28.2. If you're going to the library, please borrow that book for me so that I won't have to go.
- 28.3. In writing characters, making mistakes is unavoidable.
- 29.1. This trunk is empty.
- 29.2. There's a vacant room in our home.
- 29.3. He's always given to empty talk.
- 30.1. You don't need to meet me. I have a companion [lit. someone to accompany me].
- 30.2. Miss Wang has gone to keep Miss Qian company.
- 31.1. He and I have become friends now.
- 32.1. I'd like to rent a room.
- 32.2. Finding a house to rent is not at all easy.
- 32.3. My house was rented to Mr. Wang.
- 32.4. May I ask, do you have a room to rent here?
- 33.1. This school has only men's dormitories, not women's [dormitories].
- 34.1. It's more economical to eat at home than in a restaurant.
- 34.2. He's studying economics.
- 34.3. [From the economic aspect] it's too expensive [lit. uneconomical] to ship by plane.

- 35.1. Are you having friends [come] today?
- 36.1. I'll do it myself. I don't need you for anything.
- 36.2. Everything at home is done by my mother.
- 37.1. The furniture in his home is quite elegant.
- 37.2. There's every (sort of) furniture in that house.
- 38.1. Please hang these clothes in the wardrobe closet.
- 39.1. There are a lot of Chinese books in his bookcase.
- 39.2. Your towels are on the towel rack.
- 39.3. Yesterday I bought a clothes rack.
- 40.1. Mrs. Hua's servant is excellent.
- 41.1. Who's in charge of this matter?
- 41.2. I'll take care of cooking, you take care of washing the dishes.
- 41.3. He doesn't concern himself with anything.
- 41.4. No matter whether you go or not, I'm going.
- 42.1. Let's all eat together.
- 42.2. All of you please sit down.
- 43.1. The landlord said it will also be all right to pay once every two weeks.
- 44.1. I'm really frightened to live here by myself.
- 45.1. From his appearance he seems stupid. As a matter of fact he's quite intelligent.
- 46.1. Actually, I don't like seeing movies at all.
- 46.2. Yesterday I didn't go after all.
- 47.1. I must go to the hospital for a check-up.
- 48.1. The weather has suddenly turned hot.
- 49.1. I'm sick and have to go see a doctor.
- 49.2. Ask Dr. Wang to have a look at him.
- 50.1. There is no way of curing his illness.
- 50.2. I must find a doctor to treat the child.
- 50.3. Dr. Wang cured him [lit. his illness].
- 51.1. He and I are close friends.
- 51.2. Everyone here is a stranger. There isn't a single acquaintance (of mine).
- 51.3. Mom, I'm hungry. Is dinner ready?
- 52.1. Do trains go through that city?
- 52.2. That road is closed.

- 52.3. Yesterday I got through to him on the phone.
52.4. I rang for a long time but couldn't get through on the phone.
52.5. Did you reach him (on the phone)?
52.6. I couldn't reach him on the phone.
53.1. I've invited friends to dinner this evening.
53.2. I've already arranged with him to go tomorrow.
53.3. I have an appointment with him at three o'clock.
54.1. What is the rent per month for the house where you live?
55.1. I'll ask, you answer.
55.2. How do you answer this question?
55.3. Please put your books down. We'll have questions and answers.
55.4. He hasn't answered me yet.
55.5. Your answer is incorrect.
56.1. I'm going to the Wangs' to keep Miss Wang company.
56.2. Yesterday I went shopping with my mother.

Review Sentences

1. It is my habit to get up right away after waking up.
2. Do you find that chair comfortable [to sit in]?
3. Yesterday evening I read too much, so my eyes are smarting[lit. not comfortable].
4. This stuffed roll is (made) of pork and cabbage.
5. Rice with a lot of water is xifàn.
6. In frying bean curd it's necessary to use [lit. put down] a lot of oil.
7. Jam is made from fruit
8. There are two stoves in our kitchen.
9. What's to be done? I forgot to bring my books.
10. It's so hot today. I really can't stand it.
11. If you park the car there you'll be fined.
12. Please hand me a cigarette.
13. I still haven't made up my mind [now] whether or not to go.
14. Dr. Wang has decided to go to England next year.
15. The two of them, husband and wife, both like to watch television.
16. He did badly on the exams. He's very upset [in heart].

17. This house is empty. There's no one living in it.
18. I've long since rented out that room of mine to someone else.
19. This evening we're having friends come to our home.
20. I rang him just now. I tried and tried but couldn't get him.

Notes

1. The word yuánzǐ, in addition to its meaning 'atom,' as when compounded with néng 'able' in yuánzǐ-néng 'atomic energy,' is also used as an attention-getter in the names of ordinary mechanical devices like pens, stoves, pressure-cookers, and so on. Thus a yuánzǐ-bǐ is not an atomic-powered pen, but simply means 'ball-point pen.'
2. The verb sǐ 'die' in its neutral form is used as a postverb:

dási	'kill by striking'
pèngsi	'die by being run into,' 'kill by running into'
bìngsi	'die of illness'
èsi	'die of hunger'
kěsi	'die of thirst'

These last two are also used figuratively. Another figurative use is

lèisi 'dead tired'

Sǐ also enters into the construction SVde yào sǐ 'extremely SV' [lit. 'so SV that (I) want to die']:

Wǒ lèide yào sǐ. 'I'm terribly tired.'

Wǒ kěde yào sǐ. 'I'm dying of thirst.'

3. The verb lái, in addition to its intransitive meaning of 'come,' has also the transitive meaning 'cause to come.' In restaurants (see Beginning Chinese, Lesson 21, Note 6), it is used in requests to waiters:

Lái yìwǎn fàn 'Bring [lit. cause to come] a bowl of rice.'

It also means 'invite' or 'have [someone] over':

Wǒmen jīntiān lái kèrén. 'We're having [lit. causing to come] guests today.'

Dì Liùkè. Wēnxi

Lesson Contents

A. Substitution Frames (p. 123)

- I. Nǐ zěnmō zhīdao . . . ? (p. 123)
- II. Nǐ wèi shénmō . . . ? (p. 124)
- III. Qǐng wèn, dào . . . zěnmō zǒu? (p. 125)
- IV. Nǐ bǎ shénmō . . . ? (p. 126)
- V. Wǒmen zài nǎr . . . ? (p. 126)
- VI. . . . duōshao qián? (p. 127)
- VII. Nǐ zài . . . zuò shénmō? (p. 127)
- VIII. Nǐ shénmō shíhou . . . ? (p. 128)
- IX. Wǒmen yòng . . . zuò shénmō? (p. 128)
- X. Shénmō shí . . . de? (p. 129)

B. Narratives and Dialogues (p. 129)

A. Substitution Frames

The following review exercises consist of substitution frames followed by lists of expressions which can be used to fill in the blank space in the sentence. These expressions are listed in the order of the lessons in which they occurred (indicated by numbers in parentheses), so that they can be reviewed either here or earlier. The exercises can be used in various ways. One of the best is to have the teacher ask questions using the listed expressions and the students give one or more appropriate answers. It is not necessary to limit oneself to a simple question and answer. These can often be expanded into an exchange of several sentences.

I. Nǐ zěnmō zhīdao . . . ?

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) 1. fēijī yào qǐ fēide wǎn | 5. pēnshèjī fēide hěn wǎn |
| 2. tā shì ge gāo gèzi | 6. xuésheng dōu zǒuguāng le |
| 3. tā bǐ yǐqián shòu le | 7. tā mángzhe kǎoshì ne |
| 4. tā bǎ zhōngdiǎr xiěcuò le | 8. tā hǎoxiang hěn jìmo shide |

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 9. tāmen hěn jiǔ méi jiàn | 11. nèr méi yǒu pēnshèjī fēijīchǎng |
| 10. zhèhuí ta yíding lái kàn wo lai | 12. tā cái zǒu |
| (2) 1. tā yìbiān niàn shū, yìbiān zuò shì | 6. yòng huǒchē yùn huò hěn guì |
| 2. tā yuánlái shì niàn kēxué de | 7. tā shuōde bǐ wǒ liúli |
| 3. tā gēn zhèijiàn shì yǒu guānxi | 8. tā bú shì běn dì rén |
| 4. zhèijiàn yīfu shì tāde | 9. tā yǐwei nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén |
| 5. tā ná yàoshi bǎ mén suǒshàng le | 10. tāde zhíwù shì hěn nán zuò de |
| (3) 1. tā gǎibiànle hěn duō | 7. xuésheng zēngjiāle bù shǎo |
| 2. tāde fángzi shì xīn gài de | 8. nèige jiǎorshàng bù néng tíng chē |
| 3. dì èrcéng méi rén zhù | 9. zhèidàide fángzi dōu guì |
| 4. yùndòngchǎng néng róng yíwàn rén | 10. tā jiānglái bú niàn shū le |
| 5. tā hěn guānxīn tāde nǚ'er | 11. nèige dìfang hěn rènáo |
| 6. nèizuò dà lóu shì lǚguǎn | |
| (4) 1. wǒ kě le | 6. tā hěn yào miànzi |
| 2. wǒ xǐhuan chī mántou | 7. wǒ yǒu tāde xiǎoxi |
| 3. gāi wǒ xǐ jiāhuo | 8. tā yǒu zǎo qǐ de xíguān |
| 4. bàoshàng xīnwén bù duō | 9. chuángshàng de yīfu shì tāde |
| 5. wǒ ède bùdéliǎo | 10. nèige wèi bù hǎo wén |
| (5) 1. tā yí yè méi shuì jiào | 7. tā hūrán sǐle |
| 2. tā xǐngde hěn wǎn | 8. tāmen chéngle hǎo péngyou |
| 3. Wáng Bóshi bù shūfu | 9. tā lǎo shuō kōng huà |
| 4. tiān liàng le | 10. tāde bìng hái mei zhìhǎo ne |
| 5. tā shòu fá le | 11. tāmen shì shù péngyou |
| 6. tā shì gōngchéngshī | 12. zhèige fāngxiàng bú duì |

II. Nǐ wèi shénmo ?

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) 1. ná rénjiade dōngxì | 5. shuō ta bǐ wǒ pàng |
| 2. bù gēn ta tōngxìn | 6. bú zuò pēnshèjī |
| 3. bù mǎi xīnde | 7. xiǎngniàn ta |
| 4. xǐhuan xià yǔ | 8. xīnli bú tòngkuai |

9. shuō tāde yǎnjīng bù hǎo 11. chángcháng nènmo jùmo
 10. jiào ni bàba lái 12. dāndú yíge rén qù
- (2) 1. xiě rìjì 6. bù mǎi bàozhǐ
 2. bú kàn bàozhǐ 7. bú dài shǒushì
 3. suǒshang mén 8. gěi ta lǐwu
 4. bú zuò huǒchē 9. bù dǒng tāde kǒuyīn
 5. bú zuò nèige gōngzuò 10. yǒu nènmo duō zhǐbǎor
- (3) 1. bú fàngxīn 7. shuō mǎshàng qù bù fāngbian
 2. qǔxiāo zhèi sìge zì 8. bù xiǎoxīn
 3. shuō ta fēicháng cōngmíng 9. shuō tāde jìxing bù hǎo
 4. zài zhèr guǎiwār 10. bú jìde tāde míngzì
 5. zhèixiē zì bù wánquan xiě le 11. shuō tāde qìchē chū shì le
 6. dào yùndong huì qu
- (4) 1. bú ài ta 6. bú zuò shàngzuòr
 2. bù gěi ta qī chá 7. shuō bù gǎndāng
 3. bú lìngwài mǎi yìběn 8. bù chī ròu sī miàn
 4. gěi ta jiē fēng 9. bù gěi ta diǎn yān
 5. bú kàn diànshì 10. guā fēng yě yào qù
- (5) 1. juédìng zhù sùshè 7. bù huídá
 2. bù qǐng fūqī liǎngge rén 8. nèrde tiānqì shòubuliǎo
 3. hàipà 9. bú xìn tāde huà
 4. bù xǐhuan niàn jīngjixué 10. bù gēn dàjiā qù
 5. bù guǎn zhèijiàn shìqing 11. ràng ta gēn nǐ zuò bàr
 6. nènmo nánguò

III. Qǐng wèn dào . . . zěnmó zǒu?

- (1) 1. kèren chūkǒuchù 2. pēnshèjī fēijīchǎng
 (2) 1. lǚxíng shè 4. hángkōng gōngsī
 2. hángkōng xuéxiào 5. huǒchē zhàn
 3. Shìjiè Lǚguǎn 6. jiǎncháchù
- (3) 1. tíngchēchǎng 3. Xīn Huá Lóu
 2. yùndongchǎng 4. bǎi huò gōngsī

5. nǐde zhùzhái

7. Zhōnghuá Mén

6. zuì rènade dīfang

(4) 1. Huáng jiā

(5) 1. nǚ sùshè

3. yīyuàn

2. nán sùshè

4. Wáng Dàifu jiā

IV. Nǐ bǎ shénmo . . . ?

(1) 1. xiěchéng sān zì

2. làzai chēshang le

(2) 1. xiězai míngdānshang

5. fàngzài píbāoli

2. jiāogei màipiàoyuán

6. suǒshang le

3. yùndao Zhōngguo qu le

7. wàng le

4. fàngzai shǒutíbāoli

8. nòngde luànqibāzāo

(3) 1. tíngzai tíngchēchǎng

6. qǔxiāo le

2. fàngzai chēxiāngli

7. nòngzāng le

3. fàngzai shǒutíxiāngli

8. nònggānjīng le

4. xiūli xiūli

9. guàzai qiángshang

5. nònghuài le

(4) 1. nàdao shūfángli

4. nàdao chúfángli

2. fàngzai zhuōzishang

5. nàdao kètīngli

3. guàzai bìchúli

6. nàdao fàntīngli

(5) 1. dīgei ta

3. gěi tāde yòngren

2. gěi ta xiǎo érzi

V. Wǒmen zài nǎr . . . ?

(1) 1. làxia dōngxī le

3. wēnxi jùzi

2. xiūxi yìhuěr

4. mǎi pēnshèjī piào

(2) 1. jiǎnchá xíngli

3. qiáodejiàn jiǎncháyuan

2. yùndong yùndong

4. zhǎodezháo lìfū

(3) 1. kéyi tíng chē

4. pèngle gǒu

2. zhǎodezháo jǐngchá

5. guǎiwār

3. kāi yòndong huì

- | | | |
|-----|-------------------|------------------|
| (4) | 1. guà yīfu | 5. qī chá |
| | 2. guà zìhuà | 6. xǐ jiāhuo |
| | 3. xǐ zǎo | 7. kàn diànshì |
| | 4. xǐ liǎn | 8. kéyì chōu yān |
| (5) | 1. néng zū fángzi | 2. mǎi niú yóu |

VI. . . . duōshao qián?

- | | | |
|-----|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) | 1. nǐde xīn màozi | 2. yìzhī hóng qiānbǐ |
| (2) | 1. zhèitào yīfu | 5. yíge wúxiàndiàn |
| | 2. nǐde shǒutíbào | 6. yìběn rìjìběn |
| | 3. yíge píbāo | 7. yìzhī bǐ zuì duō |
| | 4. yíge dǎzìjī | 8. yìzhī bǐ zuì shǎo |
| (3) | 1. yíge bōlibēi | 3. yìsuǒ Xī shì fángzi |
| | 2. yíge shǒutíxiāng | |
| (4) | 1. yìtiáo xízǎo shǒujīn | 5. yìbǎ yǐzi |
| | 2. yíkuài féizào | 6. yíge diànshì |
| | 3. yíge dáhuǒjī | 7. yìbēi niú nǎi |
| | 4. yìzhāng zhuōzi | 8. yìtiáo xīliǎn shǒujīn |
| (5) | 1. yìbēi káféi | 4. suǒyǒude jiāju |
| | 2. yìwǎn xīfàn | 5. fángzū |
| | 3. yíge bāozi | |

VII. Nǐ zài . . . zuò shénmo?

- | | | |
|-----|---------------------|--------------------|
| (1) | 1. kèren chūkǒuchù | |
| (2) | 1. jiǎncháchù | 4. hángkōng gōngsī |
| | 2. lǔxíngshè | 5. huǒchē zhàn |
| | 3. hángkōng xuéxiào | 6. Shìjiè Lǔguǎn |
| (3) | 1. tíngchēchǎng | 4. yòndong huì |
| | 2. yòndongchǎng | 5. bǎi huò gōngsī |
| | 3. pùzi | |
| (4) | 1. nèijiān wūzili | 2. shūfángli |

- | | |
|--------------|------------|
| 3. bíchú ner | 5. chúfáng |
| 4. fàntīng | 6. kètīng |
- (5) 1. yīyuàn

VIII. Nǐ shénmo shíhou . . . ?

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) 1. xīnli bú tòngkuai | 4. jiǎnchá xínglǐ |
| 2. gēn ta jiàn miàn | 5. wēnxi jùzi |
| 3. xiūxi | 6. shōushi wūzi |
| (2) 1. jiāogei ta qián | 6. xiě rìjì |
| 2. sòng péngyou lǐwu | 7. zuò zhège gōngzuò |
| 3. tīng wúxiàndiàn | 8. chū guó |
| 4. suǒshang mén | 9. gěi rén míngpiàn |
| 5. kàn bàozhǐ | 10. chuān zhèitào yīfu |
| (3) 1. gēn péngyou xián tán | 4. chū shì de |
| 2. jīngguo Rìběn | 5. bú fàngxīn |
| 3. fēicháng tòngkuai | 6. bāng rénde máng |
| (4) 1. xǐ liǎn | 5. gěi ta jiē fēng |
| 2. xǐ zǎo | 6. kàn diànshì |
| 3. qī chá | 7. chī shuǐguǒ |
| 4. ài chōu yān | 8. shuì jiào |
| (5) 1. chī záodiǎn | 5. bàn zhèijiàn shì |
| 2. yuēhǎole gēn ta yíkuài qù | 6. péi ta qù |
| 3. lái péngyou | 7. néng gēn ta tóng diànhuà |
| 4. pèngjian ta le | 8. chī guōzi jiàng |

IX. Wǒmen yòng . . . zuò shénmo?

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| (1) 1. shēng cài | 2. shēng zì |
| (2) 1. míngdǎn | 5. wúxiàndiàn |
| 2. shǒutǐbào | 6. yàoshi |
| 3. pǐbào | 7. rìjìběn |
| 4. dàzì | |

- | | | |
|-----|---------------|----------------|
| (3) | 1. bōlibēi | 3. shǒutíxiāng |
| | 2. chē xiāng | |
| (4) | 1. féizào | 3. dáhuǒjī |
| | 2. yánghuǒ | |
| (5) | 1. miànbāo lú | 3. yīguì |
| | 2. yuánzǐ-bǐ | 4. shū jiàzi |

X. Shénmo shi . . . de?

- | | | |
|-----|-----------------|-----------------|
| (1) | 1. xīn | 3. shēng |
| | 2. hóng | |
| (2) | 1. jiù | 2. luànqibāzāo |
| (3) | 1. yùn huò | 8. jiǎngjiu |
| | 2. fēicháng hǎo | 9. gèng guì |
| | 3. tài zhǎi | 10. gèng piányi |
| | 4. hěn zāng | 11. bù fāngbiān |
| | 5. hěn gānjīng | 12. hěn kuān |
| | 6. Xī shì | 13. bù píng |
| | 7. Zhōng shì | |
| (4) | 1. lěng | 4. zuì zhǔyào |
| | 2. rè | 5. hěn fèi shì |
| | 3. huáng | |

B. Narratives and Dialogues

I

Zuótian wǒ dào fēijīchǎng qu jiē péngyou. Yīnwei wǒ qù wǎn le, wǒ dào fēijīchǎng yí kàn fēijī lái le dou. Wǒ xīnlǐ xiǎng: "Aiya! Zhēn zāogāo. Bù zhīdào kèren xiàle fēijī méi you. Gāncuì dào kèren chūkǒuchù dēngzhe ba." Kěshi hǎoxiàng kèren hai méi xiàlai. Wǒ yòu xiǎng háishi kàn kèren xià fēijī ba. Zài fēijīchǎng jiē kèren de méi you wǒ rènshi de, dōu shì shēng rén. Nèitiān tiānqì hěn rè. Zài fēijīchǎng jiǎnzhíde rèsile. Hènbude mǎshàng líkai fēijīchǎng.

II

Zuótian xuéxiào bàogàole shuō xià xīngqī fàngjià sāntiān. Gāo Tàitai shuōguo fàngjià de shíhou jiù jiào wǒ dào tāmen jiā lǐtōu qu miǎnde yíge rén zài sùshè lǐtōu hěn jìmo. Zhè shì Gāo Tàitai de hǎo xīn. Qíshí wǒ zài sùshè bìng bú jìmo.

III

Gāo Xiānsheng, zuótian wǒ méi dào nín fūshang qù. Hěn duìbuqǐ. Xiànzài wǒ bǎ méi qù de yuányīn gào su nín. Běnlái wǒ shì xiǎng qù de, kěshì dào le wǔdiǎn zhōng de shíhou tiānqì hěn huài: xià dà yǔ, bìngqiě fēng yě hěn dà, hěn bù róngyì kāi chē. Wǒ kǒngpà qìchē chū shì, suóyì méi qù. Qíyúde shì jiānglái jiànle miàn zài tán.

IV

Zuótian Lǎo Zhāng ràng wǒ qǐng kè. Ta ràng wǒ qǐng ta chī wǎnfàn. Nǐ cāi zěnmó, wǒ jiù liǎngkuài qián. Nǐ shuō wǒ zěnmó qǐng? Méi fázi. Wǒ shuō: 'Jīntian nǐ qǐng ba. Jiānglái wǒ zài qǐng.' Lǎo Zhāng hǎoxiàng hěn bu gāoxìng de yàngzi.

V

Zuótian wǒ zài Sān Yǒu Shūdiàn kànjian yìběn shū, hěn hǎo, bìngqiě yě bú guì, wǔkuài qián jiù kěyì mǎi. Hái yǒu yìzhāng huà. Nèizhāng huà huà de shízài hǎo, jiùshì tài guì le. Sānbǎikuài qián cái kěyì mǎi. Yīnwei wǒ méi yǒu sānbǎikuài qián, suóyì wǒ méi fázi mǎi.

VI

A: Zhèi jītiān tiānqì hěn hǎo wa.

B: Ēi! Tiānqì zhēn bú cuò.

A: Wǒmen qù lǚxíng hǎo bu hǎo?

B: Hǎo wa. Dào nǎr qu?

5 A: Nǐ shuō ba.

B: Háishi 'nǐ shuō ba.

A: Wǒmen zìjǐ rén, gàn má kèqì? Háishi nǐ shuō ba.

B: Gāncuì zánmen dào Xī Hú.

A: Yígòng yǒu jǐge rén? Shéi mǎi chī de dōngxī shénmo de?

- 10 B: Zhèige wǒ dōu bù zhīdào. Yíqièyíqiède huítóu Wáng Xiānsheng láile zài shuō.
 A: Yàoshi rén shǎo jiù zuò wǒde chē qù. Yàoshi rén duō jiù dōu zuò gōngòng qìchē le.
 B: Kěxī nǐde chē huài le, yàoburán nǐde chē kéyì zuò bù shǎo rén.
- 15 A: Qíshí wǒde chē bìng bù zěnmó huài, kěshì yì xiūli jiù děi hǎoxiē rìzi.
 B: Nǐ bu shì zìjǐ huì xiūli chē ma?
 A: Xiā shuō. Shéi shuō wǒ huì xiūli chē?
 B: Ēi! Lǎo Zhāng gàosu wo nǐ huì me. Nǐ dàoshi huì bu huì ya?
 A: Wǒ shízài bú huì. Lǎo Zhāng shuōzhe wár ne.

VII

- A: Wáng Xiānsheng, xièxie nǐ lái jiē wo.
 B: Bié kèqì. Nǐ zuò wǒde chē huíqu ba.
 A: Xièxie nǐ. Wǒ hái shì zuò hángkōng gōngsīde chē ba, yīnwei wǒde xínglǐ tài duō.
- 5 B: Yígòng jǐjiàn xínglǐ nǐ yǒu?
 A: Yígòng wǒ yǒu wǔjiàn xínglǐ.
 B: Wǒde chē dà, kéyì.

VIII

- A: Xínglǐ nǐ yígòng yǒu jǐjiàn?
 B: Wǒ yígòng yǒu wǔjiàn xínglǐ.
 A: Dōu shì nǐ zìjǐ yòng de ma?
 B: Yǒude shì wǒ zìjǐ yòng de, yǒude shì sòng péngyou de lǐwu.
 A: Hǎo, nǐ nàzǒu ba.

IX

- A: Zuótian wǒmen měi yíge rén gěi ta liǎngbǎikuài qián.
 B: Zěnmó? Nǐmen dōu liǎngbǎikuài qián ne? Wǒ shì wǔbǎikuài qián.
 A: Dàgài shì kàn nǐ yǒu qián, suóyì ràng nǐ duō gěi diār.

UNIT II



“Xuexiao yǎn xì bùjīng gēn guāngào shénmode wǒ yě bāngzhu huà.”

Dì Qīkè. Tán Guòqu de Shìqing

Past abs. things

Huìhuà: Bái Wénshān, Gāo Měiyīng yìbiār zǒu lù yìbiār tán huà.

Bái: Měiyīng, shídiǎn duǒ le. Wǒmen xiànzài jiù qù ba.

Měi: Hǎo. Wǒ qu huàn jiàn yīfu. Yìhuěr jiù lái.

Bái: Gāo Tàitai, Huá jiā zài nǎr a?

5 Tàì: Jiù zài Yuǎn-Dà dùmiǎr, nèitiáo xiǎo lùshang, lù míngzi jiào Běi Hú Lù, mèn pái shíjiǔhào. Měiyīng rènshi.

Bái: Hǎo.

Měi: Wénshān, wǒmen zǒu wa.

Bái: Hǎo. Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Tàitai huítóu jiàn.

10 Tàì: Dēngzhe nǐmen liǎngge rén huílai, wǒmen yíkuàr chī wǔfàn.

Bái: Wǒ kàn bú bì dēng wǒmen le. Yéxǔ kàn fángzi dānwu de shíhou tài duǒ, guòle chī fàn de shíhou le. Wǒ gēn Měiyīng suíbiàn zài fànguǎr chī yǐdiǎr.

Tàì: Wǎn diār chī. Dēngzhe nǐmen.

15 Gāo: Jiù ràng tāmen zài wàibiār chī diār me.

Bái: Huítóu jiàn.

Gāo: Huítóu jiàn.

Bái: Měiyīng, wǒmen wàng nēibiār zǒu?

20 Měi: Wǒmen wàng qiánbiār zǒu shì Zhōngshān Lù. Zài wàng zuǒ guǎi jiù shì Běi Hú Lù. Huá jiā zài Běi Hú Lù de běi tóu, lí wǒmen xuéxiào dàlǐtáng bù yuǎn.

Bái: Zěnmó? Dàxuéde dàlǐtáng bú shì zài dàxué lǐtōu ma?

Měi: Xīn dàlǐtáng jiù zài dàxué fùjìn. Qúnian cái gǎihào de. Wǒmen kāi huà yǎn xī, dōu zài zhèige xīnde dàlǐtáng. Lǐtōu piàoliang jíle.

25 Bái: Zhōngshān Lù gēn yǐqián wánquan bù yíyàng le.

Měi: Kě bu shì ma. Cóngqián zhèr shì ge dà shùlínzi. Nǐ jìde ba.

Bái: Jìde.

Měi: Xiànzài gǎile hěn duō fángzi. Kěshi shùlínzi méi le, shù dōu kǎn le.

30 Bái: Wǒ bú zànchéng, yīnwei xiū lù, gài fángzi, bǎ shù yìkē yìkēde dōu gěi kǎn le. Duōmo kěxī.

- Měi: Wǒ yě fānduì zhèizhǒng bànfǎ.
- Bái: Kěshì huà yòu shuōhuílai le, bù kǎn shù, zěnmō xiū lù, gài fángzi, ne?
- 35 Měi: Nǐ zhèige rén zhēn máodùn. Xiān, shuō bú zàncheng, xiànzài yòu shì zàncheng le, shì bu shì?
- Bái: Wǒde yìsi shì, yàoshi rén kǒu duō xūyào fángzi, yě méi fázi.
- Měi: Wǒ hěn xīhuan shù. Nǐ kàn, chūntiān shù yèzi zhǎngchulai, duómō piàoliang. Tīngshuō Měiguó shù yèzi qiūtiān shì hóngde. Shì zhēnde ma?
- 40 Bái: Shì zhēnde.
- Měi: Nǐ kàn zhèr gǎibiàn bù shǎo ba?
- Bái: Gǎibiànde tài duō le.
- Měi: Gōngyuánli xiànzài hái xiūle yíge yóuxìchǎng ne, zhuān wèi xiǎo háizi xiū de.
- 45 Bái: Na, wǒmen nǐtiān wárwar qu, hǎo bu hǎo?
- Měi: Wǒmen yě bú shì xiǎo háizi.
- Bái: Wǒmen qu kànkān me.
- Měi: Nà, dào kéyi.
- 50 Bái: Měiyīng, wǒ láidàole yǐhòu, lǎo gēn Gāo Xiānsheng tán huà le, méi dé jīhui gēn nǐ tán. Nǐ bǎ zhè sānniǎnde qíngxíng gào su wo, hǎo bu hǎo?
- Měi: Shìqíng tài duō le. Cóng nǎr shuōqǐ ne? Wǒ xiǎngxiāng a, wǒ cóng kǎo dàxué nèr shuō ba.
- 55 Bái: Wǒ yào tīngting nǐ yíqiè yíqiède shìqíng.
- Měi: Bú shì nǐ zǒude nèinián wǒ kǎo dàxué ma? Wǒ gào su nǐ ba, zài méi kǎo yíqián ne, xīn lǐtou hàipàde bùdéliǎo. Wǒ xiǎng yàoshi kǎobushàng, nǐ shuō duó nánkàn. Xìng'er kǎoshàng le.
- Bái: Nǐ yìzhíde dōu niàn wénxué ma?
- 60 Měi: Wǒ yìzhíde niàn wénxué xī. Wǒ duì wénxué hěn yǒu xìngqù.
- Bái: Nǐ chule niàn shū yǐwài duì shénmo yǒu xìngqù?
- Měi: Wǒ chule niàn shū yǐwài duì xǐjù yífāngmiàn yǒu xìngqù. Bǐfāng shuō xuéxiào yǎn xī bùjǐng gēn guānggāo shénmode wǒ yě bāngzhu huà. Nǐ zài Měiguó de yíqiè yě gào su gào su wǒ le.
- 65 Bái: Nǐ hai méi shuōwán nǐde ne.
- Mei: Hěn duōde shìqíng nǐ ràng wo yìshí zěnmō shuōdewán ne?
- Bái: Hǎo, wǒ shuō. Wǒ cóng huíqu yǐhòu, lǎo xiǎng huí Zhōngguó lái. Yòu yì xiǎng, huí guó niàn shū lai le, wèi shénmo lǎo xiǎng huí Zhōngguó, děi nǚlì niàn shū wa.
- 70 Měi: Nǐ wèi shénmo xiǎng huílai?

Bái: 'Nǐ shuō wǒ, wèi shénmo xiǎng huílai. Wǒ niànle yìniándè dàxué, bīyè yǐhòu, wǒ jiù niàn bóshi. Zài zhèi sānniánli, wǒ dào shì hěn yònggōng. *PHD rather*

Měi: Nǐ cóngqián yě hěn yònggōng me. *(1/2004)*

75 Bái: Yǐqián méi yǒu huídào Měiguó nènmo yònggōng. Měiguode jiàoyu shuǐzhǔn xiànzài yòu tígāo le. Fēi yònggōng bù kě. *1.9*

Měi: Nǐ fàngjià de shíhour dōu zuò shénmo ne? *Vac.*

Bái: Wǒ fàngjià de shíhou zài yíge gōngsī zuò shì zhuàn yìdiǎr qián. Yǒude shíhou gēn dìdì mèimei péngyoumen chūqu wárwar. Dōngtian xiàwǔ dào liúbīngchǎng qu liū yíge zhōngtóude bīng. Xiàtiān dào hǎibiārshang qu yóuyǒng. Nǐ ne? *80*

Měi: Yǒude shíhour bāngzhe mǔqīn zuò diār shì. Wǒ yě méi hěn duōde gōngfu. Xuéxiào yàoshi yì yǎn xī le, huà bùjǐng guǎnggào dōu yào fèi hěn duō shíhou. *(1/1/19)*

85 Bái: Wǒ xiànzài duì zhào xiàng hěn yǒu xìngqù. Wǒ juéde zhào xiàng hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ gěi dìdì mèimei tāmen zhàole hěn duō xiàng.

Měi: Xiàngpiār dàilai le ma? *most*

Bái: Dàilai le. Huíqu gěi nǐ kàn. Wǒ bú shì zì kuā, wǒ zuǐ jīn zhào xiàng de jǐshù hěn bú cuò. Yóuqíshì cǎisè xiàng, wǒ zìjǐ kàn zhàode fēicháng hǎo. Wǒ zài Měiguó jiù xiǎng, huílai wǒ yídìng gěi nǐ zhào jǐzhāng xiàng. *gen = 1*

Měi: Wǒ hěn xǐhuan zhào xiàng.

Bái: Wǒ hái yǒu yíge lǐwu, jiānglái gěi nǐ. Nǐ cāi shì shénmo. *(1/1/19)*

Měi: Wǒ bù zhīdào.

95 Bái: Nǐ cāi.

Měi: Wǒ zěnmo cāidezǎo ne? Shì chīde shì yòng de?

Bái: Yòng de.

Měi: Wǒ cāibuzǎo. Nǐ bù shuōchulai, wǒ yí bèizi yě cāibuzǎo. *(1/1/19)*

Bái: Shì zhàoxiàng běnzi.

100 Měi: Měiguode zhàoxiàng běnzi hěn piàoliang. Yíge péngyou, tā gēge cóng Měiguó jìgei ta yìběn, zhēn piàoliang.

Bái: Wǒ xīwang nèige zhàoxiàng běnzi nǐ hěn xǐhuan.

Měi: Wǒ yídìng hěn xǐhuan. Wǒ dī yǐzhāng xiàngpiār xiān tiē nǐde.

Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzì

1.0. (3) huàn change, convert (TV)

1.1. Wǒ děi bǎ chē huàn dìfang. Yàoburán gāi fá qián le.

1.2. Wáng Xiānsheng huàn qián qu le.

zhao = 11/11/19

jiang =



- 1.3. ✓ Zuótian wǒ mǎile yíge màozi. Tài xiǎo le, wǒ děi qu huàn.
- 2.0. (5) **duìmiàn**, duìmiàn opposite (place) (PW) [lit. toward face]
- 2.1. ✓ Wǒ jiāde duìmiàn jiù shì yíge xiǎo xuéxiào.
- 2.2. ✓ Tā zhùzai wǒde duìmiàn.
- 3.0. (5) **A míngzi jiào B** A is named B, the name of A is B
- 3.1. ✓ Nèiběn shū ^{name is called} míngzi jiào Zhōngguo Wénxué.
- 4.0. (6) **pái(zi)** tag, check, label (N)
- 4.1. ✓ Qǐng wèn, fúshang mén pái jǐhào? ^{what door label what #?}
- 4.2. ✓ Nǐde gǒu, zěnmó méi dài páizi?
- 4.3. ✓ Qǐng nǐ bǎ xíngli páizi náchulai. ^{how, I see}
- 5.0. (11) **dānwu** waste (time); miss (plane, etc.) (V) [lit. delay neglect]
- 5.1. ✓ Zuótian tā lái, shuōle hěn duō méi yǒu yìsi de huà, dānwu wǒ hěn duōde shíhou.
- 5.2. ✓ Yīnwèi wǒ bìngle dānwule yìnián, yàoburán wǒ yǐjīng dàxué bìyè le. ^{because I was sick I wasted a year, otherwise I would have graduated}
- 5.3. ✓ Lùshang chē tài duō, suóyì dānwu hěn duō shíhou.
- 5.4. ✓ Kuài diār zǒu, bié dānwule fēijī.
- 6.0. (16) **tóu** head (N); first (SP)
- tóu(r) head, front end
- yuè tóu(r) beginning of the month
- nián tóu(r) beginning of the year
- 6.1. ✓ Ta tóushang dài de màozi hěn tèbié. ^{he is wearing a hat?}
- 6.2. ✓ Wǒ jiā zài zhèitiáo lùde xī tóu.
- 6.3. ✓ Zhèi shì wǒ tóu yìcì kànjian ta.
- 6.4. ? Zuì hǎo nǐ shì měige yuède yuè tóu gěi ta qián.
- 7.0. (21) **dàilǐtáng** auditorium (N) [lit. great ceremony hall]
- 7.1. Wǒmen xuéxiào de dàilǐtáng néng róng sānqiān rén.
- 8.0. (24) **xì(ju)** drama, play (N) [lit. drama play]
- jiù xì old-style drama
- xīn xì new-style drama

gēn jū
tīng xì attend Chinese opera

kàn xì attend a play

xìjuxué dramatics

8.1. ? Nèixie yǎnyuán zhǐ yǎn xīn xì.

8.2. ? Zhōngguó jiù xì hěn bu róngyi yǎn.

8.3. ? Guānyu xǐju wǒ yìdiǎr yě bù dòng.

8.4. ✓ Wǒ tīng Zhōngguó xì yìdiǎr yě tīngbudǒng.

8.5. ✓ Wǒmen zuótian kànde wàiguo xì.

8.6. ✓ Wǒ niàn xìjuxué. Nǐ ne?

9.0. (26) shù tree (N) (measure: kē)

9.1. ? Měiguó méi yǒu zhèizhōng shù.

10.0. (26) shùlínzi forest, woods (N) [lit. tree + forest + zi]

10.1. Zhè fùjìn dōu shì dà shùlínzi.

11.0. (28) méi le finished, used up (from méi yǒu le)

V méi le use up by V-ing

11.1. Miànbāo méi le. Zài lái yìdiǎr.

11.2. Wǒ bǎ qián mǎi dōngxì, dōu mǎi méi le.

12.0. (28) kǎn chop (TV)

12.1. Tā dào shùlínzi lǐtóu kǎn shù qu le.

12.2. Tā měitiānde yùndòng shì kǎn bàngē zhōngtóude shù.

➤ 13.0. (30) zàncheng approve of, be for, accept (V) [lit. praise become]

13.1. Wǒ hěn zàncheng tāde fázi.

13.2. Tā bú zàncheng nǐ gēn wàiguo rén jiēhūn ma?

14.0. (30) de V (see Note 1)

14.1. Tā bǎ shū yìběn-yìběn-de dōu niànwán le.

14.2. Tā bú-kuài-bú-màn-de chízhe.

14.3. Tāmen jǐge rén hěn-gāoxìng-de tánzhe.

15.0. (30) kē (measure for trees)

15.1. Wǒ jiā mén kǒur yǒu liǎngkē dà shù.

➤ 16.0. (32) fǎnduì oppose, be opposed to (TV) [lit. contrary toward]

16.1. Nǐ zènmo zuò tā yíding fǎnduì.

16.2. Tāmen bù fǎnduì nǐ dào wàiguo qù niàn shū ma?

17.0. (32) bànfa way of doing something (N) [lit. manage method]

17.1. Zhèijiàn shì wǒ yìdiǎr bànfa yě méi yǒu.

- 17.2. Wǒ fǎnduì ta yòng zhèige bànfǎ.
- 18.0. (33) huà yòu shuōhuílái le on the other hand
- 18.1. Huà yòu shuōhuílái le tā bú yònggōng yě méi fázi.
- 19.0. (35) máodùn contradictory (SV) [lit. spear shield]
- 19.1. Tā zhēn máodùn: yìhuěr shuō hǎo yìhuěr shuō bù hǎo.
- 19.2. Tāmen shuō de huà máodùnde dìfang hěn duō.
- 20.0. (37) rénkǒu(r) people, population (N) [lit. man mouth]
- 20.1. Shìjièshàngde rénkǒu yuè lái yuè duō.
- 21.0. (37) xūyào need (to) (V) [lit. must want]
- 21.1. Nǐ bú bì gěi wǒ qián, wǒ bù xūyào.
- 21.2. Wǒ xūyào mǎi yìzhī gāngbǐ.
- 21.3. Wǒ hěn xūyào nǐ bāngzhu wǒ.
- 22.0. (38) chūntiān spring (TW) [lit. spring day]
- 22.1. Chūntiānde tiānqì zuì hǎo, bù lěng bú rè de.
- 23.0. (38) yèzi leaf (N)
- 23.1. Měiguó tiānqì yì lěng le, shù yèzi jiù hóng le.
- 24.0. (39) qiūtiān autumn (TW) [lit. autumn day]
- 24.1. Dàole qiūtiān shù yèzi dōu luòxiālai le.
- 25.0. (44) yóuxì recreation, amusement, game (N) [lit. travel play]
- yóuxìchǎng playground, place of amusement
- 25.1. Zhōngguó xiǎo háizi zuì xǐhuan de yóuxì shì shénme?
- 25.2. Yóuxìchǎng shì xiǎo háizi wár de dìfang.
- 26.0. (44) zhuān(mén) special, specially, specialized [lit. single door]
- zhuānménde special(ly)
- zhuānménjiā specialist
- zhuānmén xuéxiào specialized school
- 26.1. Zhèi jǐtiān wǒ zhuān niàn lìshǐ.
- 26.2. Zài zhè sānnián lǐtōu wǒ zhuānmén yánjiū yǔyánxué.
- 26.3. Tā niàn zhuānmén xuéxiào.
- 26.4. Duìyú Zhōngguó yǔyán tā shì ge zhuānménjiā.
- 26.5. Tā zhuānménde xué nèige yǎnyuán yǎn xī.
- 27.0. (44) wèi, wèile, wèizhe for (the sake of), for (the purpose of)
- 27.1. Tā wèi guó sǐ de.
- 27.2. Wǒ shì wèizhe yánjiū Zhōngguó xuéwén láidào Zhōngguó de.

- 27.3. Zhèiběn shū shì wèile wàiguo rén xiě de.
- 27.4. Wǒ lái zhèr shì wèile niàn shū.
- 28.0. (51) **qíngxíng** situation (N) [lit. condition form]
- 28.1. Bàoshang shuō nèr zuì jīnde qíngxíng bù zěnmó hǎo.
- 29.0. (57) **méi** V **yǐqián** before V-ing (Note 2)
- 29.1. Nǐ méi qù yǐqián xiān dǎ ge diànhuà gěi ta.
- 30.0. (58) **nǐ shuō duó(mo)** (see Note 3)
- 30.1. Nèige hái zi zhǎngde nǐ shuō duómó kě ài.
- 31.0. (58) **xìng'er** fortunately (MA) [lit. lucky but]
- 31.1. Zuótiān nèige fēijī chū shì le. Xìng'er wǒ zuótiān méi zǒu.
- 32.0. (60) **xì** department of instruction (M)
- 32.1. Tā shì wénxué xì biyè de.
- 32.2. Wǒmen nèixìde jiàoshòu dōu hěn hǎo.
- 33.0. (63) **bùjǐng** (stage) scenery (N) [lit. spread scenery]
- 33.1. Zuótiān wǎnshang wǒ kàn de nèige **xì** bùjǐng zhēn hǎo.
- 34.0. (63) **guǎnggào** advertisement, announcement (N) [lit. broad inform]
- 34.1. Bàozhǐshangde guǎnggào tài duō.
- 35.0. (66) **yìshí** a moment (TW) [lit. one time]
- 35.1. Kāi chē bīdēi zhùyì. Yìshí bù xiǎoxīn, ^{then} jiù huì ^{accident} chū shì.
- 35.2. Tāde míngzi wǒ yìshí xiǎngbùqǐlái.
- 36.0. (69) **nǚlì** strive hard, (V) [lit. exert strength]
- 36.1. Tā zuò shì dàoshì hěn nǚlì.
- 36.2. Wǒ děi hěn nǚlì de niàn shū, yàoburán wǒ kǎobushàng.
- 37.0. (75) **jiàoyù** education (N) [lit. teach nurture]
- 37.1. Wǒ niàn dàxué de shíhou wǒ xué de shì jiàoyù.
- 38.0. (76) **shuǐzhǔn** ^{standards} level (N) [lit. water accurate]
- 38.1. Zhèige xuéxiàode jiàoyù shuǐzhǔn hěn gāo. ^{education level} ^{tall}
- 39.0. (76) **tígāo** raise, uplift (TV) [lit. raise high] ^{think method raise}
- 39.1. Zhèrde jiàoyù bú gòu shuǐzhǔn. Bīdēi xiāng fázi tígāo.
- 40.0. (76) **fēi(děi)** V (bù kě) absolutely have to V, insist on V-ing [lit. not must not can] ^{negative implication} ^{Philippine} ^{nostalgia}
- 40.1. Nǐ fēiděi qù ma? ^{must}
- 40.2. Zuótiān wǒ qù mǎi shū. Wǒ bú ràng wǒ dìdi gēn wǒ qù, tā fēi yào qù. ^{had to walk} ^{couldn't not}
- 40.3. Jīntiān tiānqi bù hǎo. Wǒ ràng ta zhùzai zhèr, tā fēiděi zǒu bù kě.

- 40.4. Nǐ hébì fēi dào Zhōngguó qù nián shū bù kě ne?
- 41.0. (78) **zhuàn** earn (money) (TV)
- 41.1. Tā měiyuè bǐ wǒ duō zhuàn wǔshikuài qián.
- 42.0. (79) **dōngtian** winter (TW) [lit. winter day]
- 42.1. Dōngtian shù yèzi dōu luò le.
- 43.0. (80) **liū** slip (out), slide (away) (TV) . *liu bing = ice skate*
- liūxiaqu slide down, coast, slip and fall down
- liūchuqu, liūchulai slip away
- 43.1. Wǒ bù xǐhuan gēn ta shuō huà. Tā lái le, wǒ jiù liū le.
- 43.2. Nǐ zài nàr zǒu yào zhùyì. Bié liūxiaqu.
- 43.3. Wǒ fùqin jīntian 'bú ràng wo chūlai. Wǒ shì liūchulai de.
- 44.0. (80) **bīng** ice (N) (measure: kuài)
- bīngkuài ice cubes
- 44.1. Zhèikuài bīng tài dà le.
- 44.2. Qǐng nǐ ná jǐkuài bīngkuài lai.
- 45.0. (80) **liū bīng** skate on ice
- liūbīngchǎng skating rink
- 45.1. Wǒ dōngtian měitiān dào liūbīngchǎng qù liū bīng.
- 46.0. (80) **xiàtiān** summer (TW) [lit. summer day]
- 46.1. Jīnnián xiàtiān zhèr rède bùdéliǎo.
- 47.0. (81) **hǎi** sea, ocean (N)
- hǎibiān seashore
- Shànghǎi Shanghai
- 47.1. Zhènmó xiǎode chuán bù néng zài hǎili zǒu.
- 47.2. Xiàtiān wǒ xǐhuan dào hǎibiān qù wán.
- 47.3. Shànghǎi zhèige dìfangde míngzi shì dào hǎi de yìsi.
- 48.0. (81) **yóuyǒng** swim (TV) [lit. swim swim]
- yóuyǒng-yī bathing suit
- 48.1. Wǒmen xiàtiān dào hǎibiān qù yóuyǒng.
- 48.2. Zāogāo! Wǒ wàngle dài yóuyǒng-yī.
- 49.0. (85) **zhào** (xiàng) take a picture, photograph, be photographed (Note 4)
- [lit. photograph likeness]
- A bǎ B zhàoxiàlai. A takes a picture of B (an object).
- A gěi B zhào xiàng. A takes a picture of B (a person).

zhàoxiàng běnzi picture album

zhàoxiàngjī camera

49.1. Wǒ bù xǐhuan zhào xiàng.

49.2. Zuótian Wáng Xiānsheng gěi wo zhàole jǐzhāng xiàng.

49.3. Wǒ yǒu yíge hěn piàoliangde zhàoxiàng běnzi.

49.4. Tāde zhàoxiàngjī shì Rìběn huò.

49.5. Nèikē shù hěn piàoliang. Bǎ ta zhàoxialai.

49.6. Wǒ zhàochu xiàng lai zhēn nánkàn.

50.0. (87) xiàngpiār photograph (N) (measure: zhāng) [lit. likeness slip] = *jiào pian*

50.1. Nèizhāng xiàngpiār shì shéi?

50.2. Nèizhāng xiàngpiār shì shéi zhàode?

51.0. (88) zì self (AD)

zì lái shuǐ running water [lit. self come water]

zìláishuǐ bǐ fountain pen = *gang bi*

51.1. Chéng lǐtoute fángzi dōu yǒu zì lái shuǐ.

51.2. Zhèizhī zìláishuǐ bǐ zhēn hǎo yòng.

52.0. (88) kuā praise, flatter; boast. (TV)

zì kuā boast

52.1. Zuótian wǒ fùqin kuāle wo bàntiān.

52.2. Tā cháng zì kuā ta zěnmō cōngmíng.

*Kua jiāng = be flattered
exag. Speak: you have exaggerated
my qualities.*

53.0. (89) jìshù technique, skill (N) [lit. talent art]

53.1. Nǐ zhào xiàng de jìshù méi tā hǎo.

53.2. Wǒ yóuyǒng de jìshù méi yǒu nǐ nènmo hǎo.

54.0. (89) cǎisè *multicolored* various colors

54.1. Nèibù piānzi shì cǎisède ma?

54.2. Cǎisè xiàng bù róngyi zhào.

*cǎi sè diàn yǐng
dian'shi*

55.0. (98) bèizi lifetime (N)

55.1. Wǒ zhèi bèizi méi zhàoguó xiàng.

55.2. Wǒ yí bèizi Zhōngguó huà yě xuébuhǎo le.

56.0. (100) gēge older brother (N)

56.1. Tā gēge huì Yīngwén.

57.0. (101) jì transmit, send (TV)

jìchu send out

jìgei send to

jì xìn mail letters

57.1. ✓ Wǒ jìgei wǒ dìdi yìběn ^{māgāzine} zázhi.

57.2. ? Tā qu jì xìn qu le.

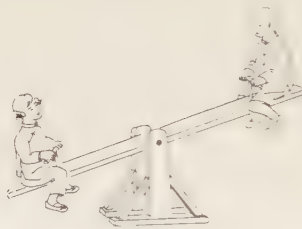
57.3. ! Tā měige yuè jìgei tā mǔqin yìbǎikuài qián.

57.4. Wǒ bǎ wǒ zhèizhāng xiàngpiār jìgei wǒ mǔqin.

57.5. Nǐ bǎ xìn jìchuqu le méi you?

58.0. (103) tiē paste (TV)

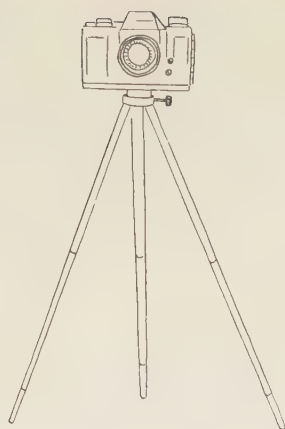
58.1. Wǒ bǎ dìtú tiēzai ^{māp} ^{ak} ^{weji - mto} qiángshang.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Bié máng. Nín mànmarde chī.
2. Zuótiān zài lùshang dānwule yìhuěr, suóyi dào le fēijīchǎng fēijī yǐjīng qǐ fēi le.
3. Wǒ hěn xūyào yìběn hěn hǎode zìdiǎn.
4. Tā zhuānmén xīhuan yánjiu lìshǐ.
5. Mántou shì zhuān wèi tā zuò de.
6. Nèijiàn shìqing bǐdèi wǒ bāng máng, suóyi fēi qù bù kě.
7. Wǒ bù zěnmò xīhuan zhào xiàng, yīnwei wǒ zhǎngde bú piàoliang.
8. Tā méi shénmò xuéwen, kěshi lǎo zì kuā tā yǒu xuéwen.
9. Tā xiūli wúxiàndiàn de jìshù bù zěnmò hǎo.
10. Zuótiān wǒ jìgei wǒ dìdi yìběn shū.
11. Tā shuō nèifēng xìn tā zǎo jiù jìchulai le.
12. Wǒ děi qù huàn qián.
13. Wǒ zàncheng nǚ xué kēxué.
14. Tā hěn fǎnduì nǚrén dài shǒushi.
15. Bàoshangde xiǎoxi shìjièshangde qíngxíng hěn bù hǎo.
16. Nǐ méi shuō yǐqián wǒ jiù zhīdao le.
17. Wǒde Zhōngguó huà yìdiǎr yě bù líuli. Wǒ děi nǚlì.

18. Wǒmen zhǔyàode shì yào bǎ jiàoyu tígāo.
 19. Wǒ jiāde duìmiàn shì ge dà shùlínzi.
 20. Zhèige dōngxī míngzi jiào diànshì.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Jīntian chīle záodiǎn gēn Huá Tàitai yuēhǎole shíyídiǎn zhōng qù kàn fángzi. Gāo Xiānsheng ràng Měiyīng gēn wǒ yíkuàr qù. Wǒ zhèng xīwangzhe néng gēn Měiyīng zài yíkuàr tántan ne.

- Shídiǎn duō zhōng wǒ jiù gēn Měiyīng chūqu le. Zǒu de shíhou Gāo
 5 Tàitai shuō děngzhe wǒmen huílai chī wǔfàn. Wǒ xiǎng gēn Měiyīng zài wàitou chī fàn, wǒ shuō bú bì děng. Gāo Tàitai shuō děngzhe wǒmen, wǎn diar chī. Háishi Gāo Xiānsheng cōngming, shuō jiù ràng wǒmen zài wàitou chī diar.

- Wǒ gēn Měiyīng méi zuò chē. Wǒmen zǒuzhe lù, tánzhe huà. Jīntian
 10 wǒ gāoxìng jíle, yīnwei gēn Měiyīng sānnián bú jiàn le, wǒmen néng zài yíkuàr tántan. Nǐmen niàn zhèiběn shū de rén xiāngyixiǎng wǒ xīn lǐtou duómo tòngkuai.

- Wǒmen chūle mén wàng qiánbiar, zǒu jiù shì Zhōngshān Lù. Zhōngshān
 15 Lù ke gǎibiànle bù shǎo wa. Nàxie dà shùlínzi, xiànzài dōu méi le. Wánquán shì lù gēn fángzi le.

Wǒ wèn Měiyīng zhe sānnián lǐtou, tā yíqiède qíngxíng. Tā gàosu wǒ le yídiǎr. Měiyīng shì yíge xīhuan xīju de nǚ hái. Tā chūle niàn shū yǐwài yàoshi xuéxiào lǐtou yǎn xī de shíhou, tā jiù huà bùjǐng gēn guǎnggào. Zài zhèi yífāngmian tā yòngle hěn duōde shíhou.

- 20 Wǒ hěn guānxīn tāde yíqiè. Dāngrán tā yě hěn guānxīn wǒ le, suǒyǐ wǒ bǎ zài Měiguó de shìqíng yě gàosu tā yìxiē. Suǐrán wǒ zài Měiguó de shíhou cháng gěi ta xiě xìn, kěshi hái you hěn duōde shìqíng xiěbùwán.

Wǒ gàosu ta wǒ zài Měiguó fàngjià de shíhou gēn dìdi mèimei xiàtiān
qu yóuyóǒng, dōngtiān wǒmen jiù qu liú bīng. Wǒ yě gàosu ta wǒ duì
25 zhào xiàng xiànzài hěn yǒu xìngqù, ^{(mó(è)u)} bǐngqiě zhào xiàng de jìshu yě bú
cuò, yóuqíshì cǎisède. Tā hěn xiǎng kànkān wǒ zhào de xiàng.

? Wǒ zài Měiguó méi lái yǐqián, wǒ jiù xiǎng huílai yīhòu gěi Měiyīng
hǎohāorde zhào diǎn xiàng. Tā shì yíge zuì piàoliangde nǚ hái. Tā
zhàochu xiàng lai nǐ xiǎng gāi duómo hǎo kàn. Wǒ yǐqián yě gěi ta
30 zhàoguó jǐzhāng xiàng, kěshì nèige shíhou, wǒ duì zhào cǎisè xiàng de
jìshu bù zěnmò hǎo. Wǒ hái cóng Měiguó dàilái le yíge zhàoxiàng běnzi
shì sònggei Měiyīng de. Wǒ xiǎng jiānglái wǒ gěi Měiyīng zhào de xiàng
dōu tiēzai zhèige běnzishang.



Wèntí

1. Bái Wénshān qu kàn fángzi shì shéi gēn ta yíkuàr qù de?
2. Tāmen yào zǒu yǐqián Měiyīng qu zuò shénmo?
3. Nǐ zhīdao Huá jia zài nǎr ma?
4. Tāmen yào zǒu de shíhou Gāo Tàitai gēn Wénshān shuō shénmo?
5. Huá jia nèitiáo lù jiào shénmo míngzi? Tāmen jiā zài nǐ tóur?
6. Wèi shénmo xuéxiàode dàlǐtáng bú zài xuéxiào lǐtou?
7. Zhōngshān Lùde shùlínzi wèi shénmo dōu méi le?
8. Gāo Xiáojie shuō Bái Xiānsheng máodùn. Ta zěnmò máodùn le?
9. Nǐ zhù de zhèige dìfang rénkou duō bu duō? Nǐ zhīdao zhèr yǒu duōshao rénkou?
10. Dà gōngyuán lǐtou xīn xiūle yíge shénmo?
11. Wénshān ràng Měiyīng bǎ sānniánde shìqīng dōu gàosu ta. Měiyīng dōu gàosu ta le ma?
12. Měiyīng duì shénmo yǒu xìngqù? Xuéxiào yǎn xī de shíhou tā dōu zuò shénmo?
13. Měiyīng shénmo shíhou kǎo de dàxué? Tā zài méi kǎo yǐqián pà shénmo? Yàoshi kǎobushàng zěnmò le?

14. Nǐ zhīdao bù zhīdào Bái Wénshān huíqu yǐhòu wèi shénmo lǎo xiǎng huí Zhōngguo lai?
15. Bái Wénshān wèi shénmo huídao Měiguó niàn shū hěn yònggōng ne?
16. Bái Wénshān gàosu Měiyīng ta zài Měiguó fàngjià de shíhou dōu zuò shénmo?
17. Wénshān shuō ta xiànzài duì shénmo hěn yǒu xìngqù?
18. Bái Wénshān shuō ta zhàode zuì hǎo shì shénmo xiàng?
19. Wénshān hái lìngwài sònggei Měiyīng de shénmo?
20. Rúguǒ nǐ huì zhào xiàng nǐ dōu gěi shéi zhào?
21. Nǐ xiǎng Gāo Xiānsheng wèi shénmo jiào Měiyīng gēn Wénshān qu kàn fángzi?
22. Yàoshi nǐ jiā lǐtou yǒu péngyou zhù, tā chūqu de shíhou nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo?
23. Yàoshi nǐ zài péngyou jiā lǐtóu zhùzhe, nǐ chūqu de shíhou tāmen shuō děngzhe nǐ huilai chī fàn, nǐ zěnmo huídá?
24. Yàoshi nǐ zuì hǎo de péngyou jǐnián bú jiàn, jiàn miàn yǐhòu nǐ yào wèn ta shénmo?
25. Yàoshi péngyou shuō yào gěi nǐ zhào xiàng, nǐ shuō shénmo?
26. Yàoshi nǐde nǚ péngyou nǐ sānnián bú jiàn le, nǐ dì yíci kànjian ta nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo?
27. Yàoshi nǐ huì zhào xiàng le, nǐ zěnmo gàosu ta?
28. Yíge péngyou ràng nǐ cāi yíge dōngxì huòzhe yíjiàn shì, nǐ cāibuzháo nǐ zěnmo shuō?
29. Yàoshi nǐ nǚ péngyou sòng nǐ lǐwu de shíhou shuō xīwang nǐ xǐhuan nèige lǐwu, nǐ zěnmo huída ta?
30. Yàoshi nǐ nǚ péngyou sòng nǐ yíge zhàoxiàng běnzi nǐ duì ta shuō shénmo?

Dialogue: Vincent White and Gao Meiyong talk as they walk along.

White: Meiyong, it's after ten o'clock. Let's go now.

Mei : All right. I'll go change my clothes. I'll be with you in a moment.

White: Mrs. Gao, where is the Hua home?

Tai : It's opposite Far Eastern University on that little road called North Lake Road, number 19. Meiyong knows it.

White: Fine.

Mei : Vincent, let's go.

White: O.K. Mr. Gao, Mrs. Gao, see you soon.

Tai : We'll have lunch together after you two come back.

White: I don't think you need to wait for us. Perhaps we'll take too much

time looking at the room, and it'll go beyond lunch time. Meiyang and I will have a bite in a restaurant.

Tai : (We can) eat a little late. We'll wait for you.

Gao : Let them have a bite outside.

White: See you soon.

Gao : See you soon.

White: Meiyang, in what direction do we go?

Mei : We go straight ahead to Sun Yatsen Avenue. Then we turn left at North Lake Road. The Huas' home is at the northern end of North Lake Road, not far from our university auditorium.

White: What? Isn't the university auditorium in the university?

Mei : The new auditorium is near the university. It was finished only last year. All our assemblies and plays are held there [lit. in the new auditorium]. The inside is awfully attractive.

White: Sun Yatsen Avenue is entirely different from what it used to be.

Mei : Isn't that so! It used to be a big forest here. You remember?

White: I do.

Mei : Now a lot of houses have been built. But the woods are gone, the trees have all been cut down.

White: I don't approve of cutting down the trees one by one in order to build roads and houses. It's such a pity.

Mei : I'm against this way of doing things too.

White: But on the other hand if the trees aren't cut down how are roads and houses to be built?

Mei : You're really contradictory: first you say you don't approve, now you approve, isn't that so?

White: I mean that if there's a tremendous population and houses are necessary there's no help for it.

Mei : I like trees a lot. How pretty the leaves are when they come [lit. grow] out in the spring. I hear that in America the leaves turn red in the fall. Is that really so?

White: That's right.

Mei : Don't you think it has changed a lot here?

White: It's changed too much.

Mei : A playground has been built in the park [now]. It was built especially for children.

White: How about our going to have some fun there some day?

Mei : But we're not children.

White: We'll just go look, of course.

Mei : Well, that's O.K.

White: Meiying, since I've arrived I've always been busy talking with your father [lit. Mr. Gao]. I haven't had a chance to talk with you. Tell me about things these past three years, won't you?

Mei : There are too many things. Where shall I start [talking] from? Let me think, oh, I'll start from when I was taking the exams for college.

White: I want to hear all about you.

Mei : Wasn't it the year you left that I took the exams for college? I tell you before I took the exams I was scared stiff. I thought to myself, if I don't pass it will sure look bad. Fortunately I passed.

White: Have you been studying literature right along?

Mei : I've been studying in the literature department right along. I'm very much interested in literature.

White: What are you interested in besides your studies?

Mei : Apart from my studies I'm interested in drama. For example, when the school gives a play I help do the scenery and the announcements. Now you tell me all about yourself in America.

White: You haven't finished telling about yourself.

Mei : There are so many things, how can you expect me to finish telling about them in a minute?

White: All right, I'll tell you. After I went back (to America) I kept wanting to return to China. Then again I thought, I've come back home to study, and why am I always longing to return to China? I should work hard at studying.

Mei : Why were you longing to return?

White: You tell me why [I was longing to return]. I studied for a year and graduated, and afterward I studied for the doctorate. In these three years I've worked unusually hard.

Mei : You were very studious before, of course.

White: In the past I didn't work as hard as after I returned to America. The level of education in America has [also] been raised now. You've just got to work hard.

Mei : What did you do at vacation time?

White: During vacations I worked in a company to earn some money. Sometimes I went out and had fun with my [younger] brother and sister and friends. On winter afternoons I went to the skating rink and skated for an hour. Summers I went swimming at the seashore. And how about you?

Mei : Sometimes I helped Mother a bit. I haven't had much leisure time. Whenever the school gives a play, doing the scenery and announcements takes a lot of time.

White: I'm very much interested in photography now. I think taking pictures is a lot of fun. I've taken quite a few pictures of my [younger] brother and sister.

Mei : Did you bring the pictures?

White: Yes. When we return I'll let you see them. I don't mean to boast, but I've gotten pretty good at photography recently. Especially on colored shots, I [myself] think I do awfully well. When I was in America, I thought when I returned, I would certainly take more pictures of you.

Mei : I like to have my picture taken.

White: I have another present that I'll give you later. Guess what it is.

Mei : I don't know.

White: Guess.

Mei : How can I guess? Is it something to eat or something to use?

White: To use.

Mei : I can't guess. If you don't tell me I couldn't guess in a lifetime.

White: It's a picture album.

Mei : American picture albums are beautiful. The (older) brother of a friend of mine sent her one. It's really beautiful.

White: I hope you will like [the] album.

Mei : I'll certainly like it. The first photograph I paste in it will be yours.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. I have to change the place where my car is parked. Otherwise I'll have to pay a fine.
- 1.2. Mr. Wang has gone to get some money changed.
- 1.3. I bought a hat yesterday. It's too small, I must go exchange it.
- 2.1. Opposite my home is a small school.
- 2.2. He lives opposite me.
- 3.1. The title of that book is Chinese Literature.
- 4.1. Please tell what the number of your house is.
- 4.2. How come your dog isn't wearing a tag?
- 4.3. Please take out your baggage check.
- 5.1. Yesterday he came and engaged in a lot of boring talk, wasting a lot of my time.
- 5.2. I lost a year because of illness, otherwise I'd already be graduated from college.
- 5.3. There's too much traffic on the streets, so one wastes a lot of time.

- 5.4. Go faster, don't miss the plane.
- 6.1. The hat she's wearing [on her head] is pretty unusual.
- 6.2. My home is at the western end of this street.
- 6.3. This is the first time I've seen him.
- 6.4. It would be best for you to pay him at the beginning of each month.
- 7.1. Our school auditorium can hold three thousand people.
- 8.1. Those actors only act in modern plays.
- 8.2. Old-style Chinese plays are very hard to stage.
- 8.3. I don't understand anything about drama.
- 8.4. When I listen to Chinese opera I don't understand anything at all.
- 8.5. Yesterday we saw a foreign play.
- 8.6. I'm studying dramatics. What about you?
- 9.1. America doesn't have this kind of tree.
- 10.1. All around here is a big forest.
- 11.1. The bread's all gone. Bring some more.
- 11.2. I spent all my money buying things.
- 12.1. He's gone to the forest to chop trees.
- 12.2. His daily exercise consists of chopping trees for half an hour.
- 13.1. I heartily approve of his method.
- 13.2. Doesn't he approve of your marrying a foreigner?
- 14.1. He finished reading all the books [one by one].
- 14.2. He's eating neither (too) fast nor (too) slow.
- 14.3. They're talking very happily.
- 15.1. There are two big trees at the doorway of my home.
- 16.1. If you do it this way he will certainly oppose it.
- 16.2. Don't they object to your going abroad to study?
- 17.1. I have no way of doing anything about that matter.
- 17.2. I object to his using this procedure.
- 18.1. On the other hand, if he doesn't work hard it can't be helped.
- 19.1. He's really contradictory: one moment he says good, another he says no good.
- 19.2. There are a lot of contradictions in what they say.
- 20.1. The world population is becoming greater and greater.
- 21.1. You don't have to give me money, I don't need any.
- 21.2. I need to buy a pen.

- 21.3. I very much need your help.
- 22.1. Spring weather is best, neither cold nor hot.
- 23.1. In America, as soon as the weather turns cold the leaves on the trees turn red.
- 24.1. When autumn comes the leaves on the trees all fall [down].
- 25.1. What games do Chinese children like best?
- 25.2. A playground is a place where children have fun.
- 26.1. These [few] days I'm doing nothing but study history.
- 26.2. During the past three years I have specialized in linguistic research.
- 26.3. He's studying in a specialized school.
- 26.4. He's a specialist in the Chinese language.
- 26.5. He is making a special study of how that actor performs.
- 27.1. He died for (his) country.
- 27.2. I have come to China to study Chinese scholarship.
- 27.3. This book was written for foreigners.
- 27.4. I've come here in order to study.
- 28.1. The papers say the latest situation there isn't so good.
- 29.1. Before you go, give him a ring.
- 30.1. That child has grown to be so lovable.
- 31.1. Yesterday that plane was in an accident. It was lucky that I didn't go yesterday.
- 32.1. He graduated from the literature department.
- 32.2. The professors in all our departments are very good.
- 33.1. The scenery in that play I saw last night was really nice.
- 34.1. There are too many ads in the paper.
- 35.1. One must pay attention when driving a car. A moment's carelessness and one might have an accident.
- 35.2. I can't think of his name right at this moment.
- 36.1. He's very conscientious about working, though.
- 36.2. I must study hard, otherwise I won't pass the exam.
- 37.1. When I was in college I studied education.
- 38.1. The educational level of this school is very high.
- 39.1. Education here is at too low a level. We must think of ways to raise it.
- 40.1. Is it absolutely necessary for you to go?
- 40.2. Yesterday I went to buy some books. I didn't want [lit. let] my younger brother to go with me, but he insisted on going.

- 40.3. The weather's bad today. I wanted him to stay here but he insisted on leaving.
- 40.4. Why do you insist on going to China to study?
- 41.1. He earns \$50 a month more than I do.
- 42.1. In winter all the leaves fall.
- 43.1. I don't like to talk with him. When he comes, I slip out.
- 43.2. You must watch out when you walk there. Don't fall down.
- 43.3. My father wouldn't let me out today. I sneaked out.
- 44.1. This chunk of ice is too big.
- 44.2. Please bring a few ice cubes.
- 45.1. In the winter I go to the skating rink every day to skate.
- 46.1. This summer it's terribly hot here.
- 47.1. A boat as small as this cannot go on the ocean.
- 47.2. In the summer I like to go to the seashore [for recreation].
- 47.3. The place-name Shanghai means to the sea.
- 48.1. In the summer we go swimming at the seashore.
- 48.2. Darn! I forgot to bring my bathing suit.
- 49.1. I don't like taking pictures. (or: I don't like having my picture taken.)
- 49.2. Yesterday Mr. Wang took several pictures of me.
- 49.3. I have a very pretty picture album.
- 49.4. His camera is [a] Japanese [article].
- 49.5. That tree is very pretty. Take a picture of it.
- 49.6. I photograph badly.
- 50.1. Who is that a picture of?
- 50.2. Who took that picture?
- 51.1. The houses in the city all have running water.
- 51.2. This fountain pen is really nice to use.
- 52.1. Yesterday my father praised me for a long time.
- 52.2. He's always boasting about how smart he is.
- 53.1. You aren't as good at taking pictures as he is.
- 53.2. I don't swim as well as you do.
- 54.1. Is that movie in color?
- 54.2. Color pictures are not easy to take.
- 55.1. I've never in my life taken a picture.
- 55.2. In a whole lifetime I won't be able to master Chinese.

- 56.1. His older brother knows English.
- 57.1. I'm sending a magazine to my younger brother.
- 57.2. He's gone to mail some letters.
- 57.3. He sends his mother a hundred dollars a month.
- 57.4. I'm sending this picture of me to my mother.
- 57.5. Did you mail [out] the letters?
- 58.1. I pasted the map on the wall.

Review Sentences

- 1. Don't hurry. Take your time eating.
- 2. Yesterday I wasted a little time on the way so that when I got to the airport the plane had already left.
- 3. I'm badly in need of a good dictionary.
- 4. He especially likes to study history.
- 5. The bread rolls were made specially for him.
- 6. I must help (him) in that matter, so I absolutely have to go.
- 7. I don't much like having my picture taken, as I'm [lit. I have grown to be] not attractive.
- 8. He hasn't any education, but he's always boasting that he has [learning].
- 9. He isn't very good at fixing radios.
- 10. Yesterday I sent a book to my younger brother.
- 11. He said he mailed that letter long ago.
- 12. I must go change some money.
- 13. I approve of your studying science.
- 14. He's very much opposed to women wearing jewelry.
- 15. (According to) the news in the (news)papers, the world situation is pretty bad.
- 16. I knew it before you spoke.
- 17. My Chinese is not at all fluent. I must work hard.
- 18. The most important (thing) for us is to raise the educational level.
- 19. Opposite my house is a big forest.
- 20. This thing is called a television set.

Notes

1. Phrases ending in the particle de are used before verbs as adverbial expressions:

Tā hěn yònggōng de niàn shū. 'He studies very diligently.'

2. Chinese often uses the negative form of a verb in a 'before' clause:

Wǒ méi lái Zhōngguó yǐqián 'before I came to China' [lit. 'before when I had not yet come to China']

3. In addition to their literal meanings, the expressions nǐ shuō 'you say,' nǐ kàn 'you see,' and nǐ xiǎng 'you think' are rhetorical exhortations. They occur especially often with duó(mo) 'so' plus a stative verb, or with zěnmō bàn, lit. 'how manage?' in the following patterns:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Nǐ shuō} \\ \text{Nǐ kàn} \\ \text{Nǐ xiǎng} \end{array} \right\} \quad (\text{N}) \text{ duó(mo)} \text{ SV} \text{ 'How SV N is!'}$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Nǐ shuō} \\ \text{Nǐ kàn} \\ \text{Nǐ xiǎng} \end{array} \right\} \quad + [\text{sentence}] + \text{zěnmō bàn? 'What if + [sentence]?'}$$

$$[\text{Sentence}] + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Nǐ shuō} \\ \text{Nǐ kàn} \\ \text{Nǐ xiǎng} \end{array} \right\} + \text{zěnmō bàn? 'What if + [sentence]?'}$$

The following examples illustrate these patterns:

Nǐ shuō tā duó bèn! 'How stupid he is!'

Nǐ kàn tā duómō piàoliang! '(See) how pretty she is!'

Nǐ xiǎng wǒ duómō máng! '(You imagine) how busy I am!'

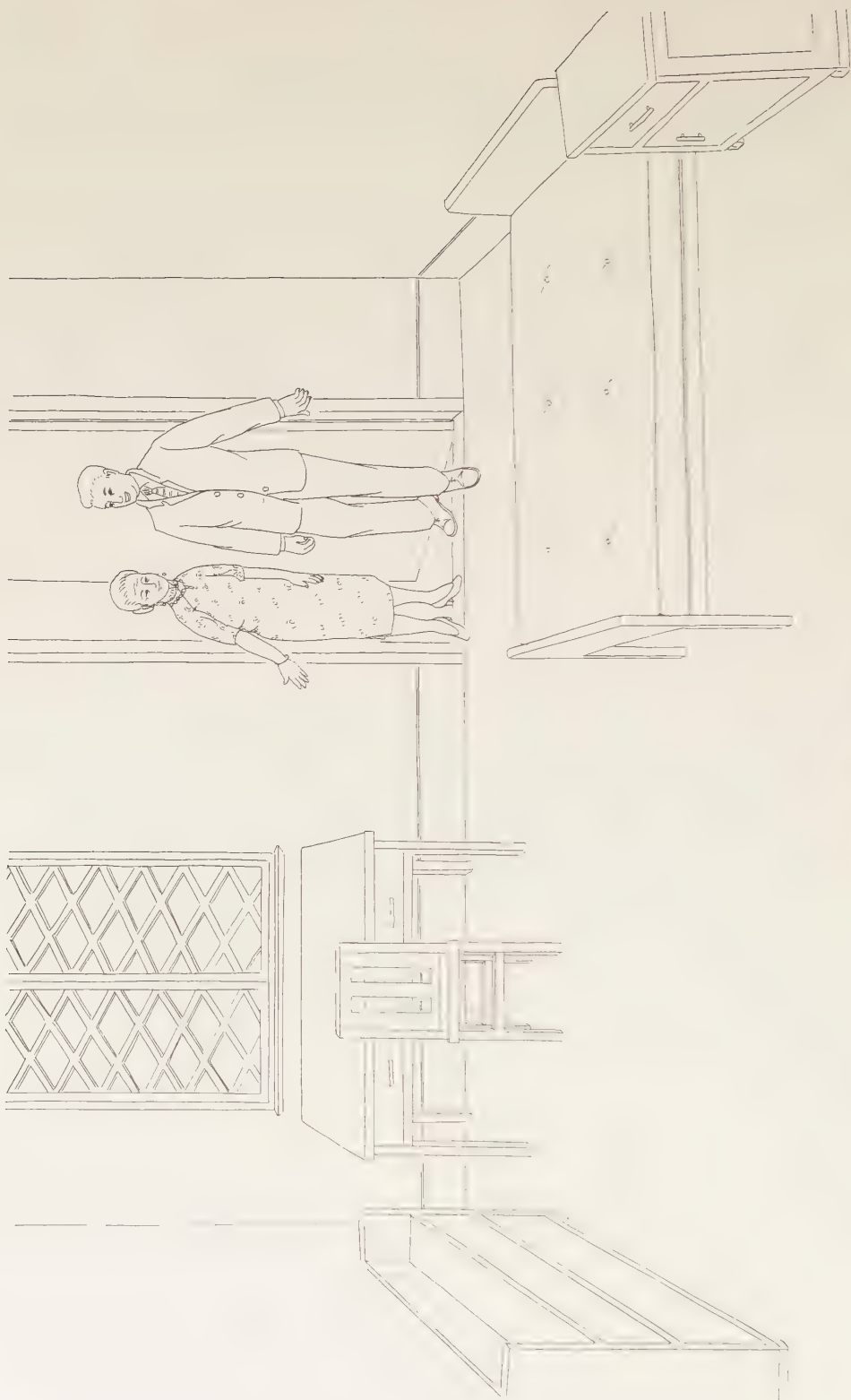
Nǐ shuō tā bù lái zěnmō bàn? 'What if he doesn't come?'

Nǐ kàn tā sǐ le zěnmō bàn? 'What if he dies?'

Nǐ xiǎng tā kǎobùshàng zěnmō bàn? 'What if he doesn't pass the entrance exams?'

Tā bù lái nǐ shuō zěnmō bàn? 'What if he doesn't come?'

4. Zhào xiàng 'take a picture' is used in both an active and a passive sense: 'photograph, take a picture (of)' and 'be photographed.' Context will generally make clear what sense is intended.



“Jiù zhèjiān.”

Dì Bākè. Zū Fángzi

Huìhuà: Bái Wénshān, Gāo Měiyīng, gēn Huá Tàitai tán zū Huá
jia fángzide yíqiè wèntí.

Měi : Wénshān, dào le.

Bái : Oh, jiù zhèr a.

5 Měi : Shìde. Nǐ èn mén língr.

Wáng: Shéi ya?

Měi : Wǒ, Wáng Mā.

Wáng: Oh, Gāo Xiáojie, nín hǎo. Zěnmó hǎo jiù méi lái ya? Zhèiwèi
shì . . . ?

10 Měi : Zhèi shì Bái Xiānsheng.

Wáng: Bái Xiānsheng, nín hǎo. Qǐng liǎngwèi jìnlái zuò ba. Wǒmen
tàitai dēngzhe nín ne.

Tài : Shéi ya? Shì Měiyīng a? Měiyīng, nǐ fùqin mǔqin dōu hǎo?

15 Měi : Hěn hǎo. Wǒ fùqin mǔqin ràng wǒ wèn nín hǎo. Bómǔ, wǒ gěi
jièshào jièshào. Zhèi shì Bái Wénshān. Zhèiwèi jiù shì Huá
Tàitai.

Bái : Nín hǎo.

Tài : Bái Xiānsheng, jiúyǎng. Gāo Xiānsheng fūqī cháng gēn wǒ tídao
ni.

20 Měi : Bómǔ, nín jiù jiào ta Wénshān ba.

Tài : Nà zěnmó hǎo yìsi ne?

Bái : Wǒ shì wǎnbèi. Nín jiù jiào wǒ míngzi déle.

Tài : Wáng Mā qī chá!

Wáng: Láile.

25 Měi : Bómǔ, wǒ mǔqin jīntian zǎochen yǐjīng gēn nín tōngguo diànhuà
le.

Tài : Shìde. Ta shuō ràng Bái Xiānsheng lái kàn fángzi.

30 Měi : Shì. Suóyì wǒ fùqin mǔqin ràng wǒ dài ta lái le. Guānyu fángzide
yíqiè wèntí ne, nín jiù gēn ta tán ba. Ta Zhōngguó huà shuōde
hěn hǎo. Nín shuō shénmo tā dōu dōng. Nín jiù gēn ta shuō déle.

Tài : Hǎo. Wǒmen xiān hē diār chá zài shuō. Lái zuòzhe zuòzhe.

- Bái : Nín tài kèqi. Xièxie nín.
- Měi : Bómǔ, nín zěnmò hái yùbei zěnmò duō diǎnxin ne? Wǒmen chūlai yǐqián chīguo záodiǎn lái de.
- 35 Tài : Zài chī diar me.
- Měi : Chībuxià le.
- Tài : Bái Xiānsheng chī diar.
- Bái : Wǒ yě chībǎo le. Xièxie nín. Nín tài kèqi, tài fèi shì le.
- Tài : Zuòxia tán. Nǐmen bù chī diǎnxin wǒmen hē chá.
- 40 Bái : Guānyu zhèige fángzi. . . .
- Tài : Guānyu zhèige fángzi de shìqing a, wǒ xiǎng Gāo Tàitai yǐjīng gēn nǐ shuōguo le, shì bu shì? Dàgàide qíngxíng tā yǐjīng gàosu nǐ le. Nǐ zhīdao, zuì jìn wǒde èr érzi sǐle, wǒ xīnli hěn nánguò.
- Bái : Shìde. Gāo Tàitai gàosu wǒ le. Hěn kǎixī. Nín yě bié tài nánguò le.
- 45 Tài : Wǒmen jiā rénkou hěn jiǎndān. Wǒ dà érzi měitiān shàng xué qu. Wǒmen fūqī liǎngge měitiān chūqu. Huá Xiānsheng shì ge gōngchéngshī. Hěn máng. Yǒude shíhour chūqu dào hěn yuǎnde dìfang qù zuò shì, wǒmen jiù bù huílai. Yǒude shíhour jiù zhùzai wàibiār. Suóyì jiù xiǎng zhǎo ge qīngnián rén, gēn wǒde zhèige háizi zuòzuò bàr. Wǒ jiù qǐng Gāo Xiānsheng bāng wo jièshao qīngniánde péngyou lái zhù. Nǐ yíge rén shì bu shì?
- 50 Bái : Shìde. Wǒ lái niàn shū. Wǒ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng shuō le, yàoshi zhù sùshè, yǒude shíhou juéde bù zěnmò fāngbian, suóyì háishi zìjǐ zhǎo yìjiān fángzi zhù. Gāo Xiānsheng jiù gàosu wo nín fūshang yǒu yìjiān fángzi kéyì ràng wo zhù.
- 55 Tài : Nǐ xiān kànkàn nèijiān fángzi duì nǐ héyòng bù héyòng. Fàntīng kètīng me, nǐ suǐbiàn yòng yàoshi nǐ qǐng kè shénmode. Nǐ shì Gāo jiade péngyou yě jiù shì wǒmende péngyou. Wǒ kàn nǐ zhèige rén yě hěn hǎo. Fǎnzhèng wǒ gēn wǒ xiānsheng yě cháng bu zài jiā.
- 60 Bái : Xièxie nín. Wǒ hái yào kànkàn ma?
- Tài : Dāngránde. Nǐ yīnggāi kànkàn.
- Bái : Hǎo. Wǒ kànyìkàn.
- 65 Tài : Jiù zhèijiān.
- Bái : Hěn hǎo zhè fángzi. Fángzi hěn dà ya.
- Tài : Chuáng, shū jiàzi, xiězìtái shénmode nǐ yàoshi xīhuan nǐ jiù yòng. Pūgai, chuáng dānzi wǒmen dòu yǒu. Nǐ bú bì mǎi.
- Bái : Na hǎo jíle. Wǒ shì zuò fēijī lái de. Wǒ méi dài pūgai. Nín jiègei wǒ yòng wǒ jiù bú bì mǎi le.
- 70 Tài : Shì a. Nǐ bié mǎi le.
- Bái : Qǐng wèn, nín zhe fángzū zěnmò suàn ne?

- 75 Tàì : Wǒ gāngcái bu shì shuō le ma? Nǐ shì Gāo jiade péngyou yě jiu shì wǒmende péngyou. Nǐ zhù sùshè duōshao qián jiu gěi wo duōshao qián déle. Wǒ bú shì wèile qián. Wǒ zhǔyàode shì zhǎo yíge héshìde rén lái zhù gěi wǒ nèige hái'zi zuò bàr. Liǎngge qīngnián rén zài yíkuàr tántan, yíkuàr bícǐ yánjiu yánjiu gōngke.
- Bái : Wǒ hěn xièxie nín. Wǒ zhùzai nín fǔshang qīng nín duō zhàoying.
- Tàì : Wǒ érzide niánji dàgài gēn nǐ chàbuduō. Nǐ jīnnian duó dà le?
- 80 Bái : Wǒ èrshisì le.
- Tàì : Bǐ wǒ dà érzì xiǎo yísuì. Hái yǒu. Wǒmen zhèige lǎomāzi hěn hǎo. Tā yě hěn huì zuò shì. Nǐ bānlai yǐhòu wa, ta kéyì gěi nǐ xǐ yīfú shòushì wūzi. Ta zuò fàn yě bú cuò. Rúguǒ nǐ chīzhe yǒu shénmo bù hé nǐde kǒuwèi de shíhou nǐ zhǐguǎn shuō huà. Bié kèqi. Ta yě kéyì gěi nǐ máimai dōngxi shénmode. Nǐ měiyuè jīngtiē ta yìdiǎr qián jiù shì le.
- 85 Bái : Nín kàn wǒ yīngdāng gěi ta duōshao qián?
- Tàì : Suǐbiàn gěi ta jǐkuài qián. Nǐ měitiān sǎndùn fàn dōu zài jiā chī ma? Nǐ záodiǎn chī shénmo?
- 90 Bái : Wǒ záodiǎn chī kǎo miànbāo, kāfēi, huòzhe yǒude shíhou qǐng yòngren gěi wǒ jiān ge jīdàn huòshi chǎo ge jīdàn. Zhōngfàn wǒ xiǎng zài xuéxiào huòshi zài wàibiar chī yìdiǎr. Wǎnfàn wǒ zài jiā chī.
- Tàì : Gěi nǐ dān kāi ne hái'shì gēn wǒmen yíkuàr chī ne?
- 95 Bái : Suí nín hǎo le. Nín juéde zěnmoyàng fāngbian? Wǒ wúsuǒwèi.
- Tàì : Zěnmozhe hǎo le: Wǒmen zài jiā ne, wǒmen dàjiā zài yíkuàr chī rènáo. Yàoshi wǒmen bú zài, nǐ gēn wǒ érzì nǐmen liǎngge rén yíkuàr chī hǎo bu hǎo?
- Bái : Hǎojíle. Fàn qián wǒ yíge yuè yīnggāi gěi duōshao?
- 100 Tàì : Fàn bú bì gěi qián le ba.
- Bái : Nà zěnmó chéng? Nǎr néng ràng nín tiāntiān qǐng kè ya? Bú shì ǒu'erde chī yícì. Nín bié kèqi.
- Tàì : Nènmo děng dào yuè dǐ wǒ suànyisùan nǐ yīngdāng fēntān duōshao jiù gěi duōshao déle.
- 105 Bái : Méi shénmo shǒuxu ma?
- Tàì : 'Méi shénmo shǒuxu. Zhèrde guīju shì shàngqī jiāo zū.
- Bái : Xiànzài wǒ bǎ fángzū jiāogei nín.
- Tàì : Máng shénmo? Nǐ bānguolai zài shuō me.
- Bái : Xiān gěi nín ba.
- 110 Tàì : Nǐ shénmo shíhou bānlai ya?
- Bái : Wǒ dāsuan míngtian shàngwǔ jiù bānlai. Kéyì ma?
- Tàì : Kéyì. Huítóu wǒ ràng Wáng Mā gěi nǐ dásao dásao. . . . Wáng

115 Mā lái! Bái Xiānsheng míngtian jiù bānlai le. Nǐ bāng ta shōushi wūzi, xīxi yīfu, zuò záodiǎn. Zhōngfàn tā zài wàibiān chī. Wǎnfàn zài jiā chī, gēn wǒmen yíkuài chī. Línglingsuīsuīde shìqing nǐ duō bàng Bái Xiānsheng yìdiǎr máng.

Wáng: Shì, tàitai.

Bái : Wáng Mā, wǒ lái gěi nǐ tiān máfan.

Wáng: Nǎrde huà ne. Nín jiào wǒ zuò shénmo shì, nín zhíguǎn fēnfu.

120 Bái : Xièxie nǐ. Huá Tàitai, wǒmen xiànzài zǒu le.

Měi : Huá Bómǔ, wǒ mǔqīn shuōle shénmo shíhou qǐng nín gēn Huá Bóbo dào wǒmen jiā wár qu.

Tài : Hǎo. Wǒ gēn nǐ mǔqīn tōng diànhuà hǎo le.

Bái : Wǒ míngtian shàngwǔ shénmo shíhou bānlai hǎo ne, nín shuō?

125 Tài : Suībiàn jídiǎn zhōng dòu keyi.

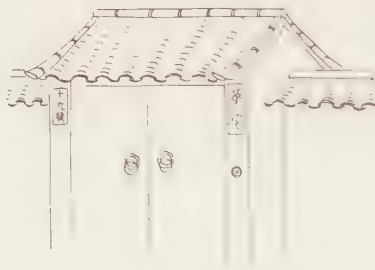
Bái : Wǒ míngtian shàngwǔ shídiǎn zuǒyou bānlai ba?

Tài : Hǎode.

Bái : Dájiǎo nín. Zàijiàn.

Tài : Zàijiàn.

130 Měi : Zàijiàn.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

1.0. (5) èn press (with finger or palm) (TV)

ènhuài break by pressing

1.1. Ta yí èn jiù bǎ nàizhāng xiǎo zhuōzi ènhuài le

2.0. (5) líng(r) bell (N)

dǎ líng ring bell (by striking)

èn líng ring bell (by pressing)

2.1. Bié shuō huà le. Yǐjīng dǎ líng shàng kè le.

2.2. Nǐ tīng. Shì bu shì yǒu rén èn mén líng?

3.0. (7) Mā (title for married woman servants)

- 3.1. Wǒmen jiāde Zhāng Mā zhēn hǎo. Zài wǒmen jiā yǐjīng zuòle shíwǔnián le.
- 4.0. (14) bómǔ aunt (specifically, father's older brother's wife) (N) (Note 1)
- 4.1. Zuótiān wǒ zài lùshang yùjian Zhāng Bómǔ le.
- 5.0. (21) hǎo yìsi have the nerve (to do something), be right (to do something) [lit. good meaning]
- bù hǎo yìsi not have the nerve to, be diffident about, be embarrassed to
- 5.1. Tā qǐng kè. Wǒ hǎo yìsi bú qù ma?
- 5.2. Wǒ bù hǎo yìsi ràng nǐ qǐng kè.
- 5.3. Ràng nǐ yíge rén ná qián wǒmen zěnmó hǎo yìsi ne?
- 6.0. (22) bèi generation (M)
- wǎnbèi younger generation [lit. late generation]
- zhǎngbèi older generation [lit. grown generation]
- 6.1. Tā bǐ wǒ dà yībèi.
- 6.2. Wǒ shì tāde wǎnbèi.
- 6.3. Tā hái shì wǒ fùqīnde zhǎngbèi ne.
- 6.4. Wǒmen zhèi yībèi rén niàn shūde jīhuì bǐjiǎo duō.
- 7.0. (33) yùbei prepare (V) [lit. beforehand prepare]
- 7.1. Tiānqī lěng le. Wǒmen yào yùbei dōngtiānde yīfú le.
- 7.2. Tā zhèi jǐtiān máng jíle. Tā yùbei chū guó le.
- 7.3. Nǐde dōngxì dōu yùbeihǎo le ma?
- 8.0. (50) qīngniǎn youth (N)
- qīngnián rén youth, young person (about 18–30)
- (Nán) Qīngnián Huì YMCA
- Nǚ Qīngnián Huì YWCA
- 8.1. Qīngnián rén yīngdāng nǚlì niàn shū.
- 8.2. Nán Qīngnián Huì lí Nǚ Qīngnián Huì hěn jìn.
- 8.3. Yánjiū Zhōngguó wénxué Xīn Qīngnián nèiběn zázhi hěn yǒu bāngzhù.
- 9.0. (57) héyòng be suited to one's use, be suitable (SV) [lit. suit use]
- 9.1. Nǐ kàn zhèixie jiāju dōu héyòng ma?
- 10.0. (60) fǎnzhèng anyway, anyhow (MA)
- 10.1. Tā yào qǐng kè jiù ràng tā qǐng ba. Fǎnzhèng tā yǒu qián.
- 11.0. (67) xiězìtái writing desk (N) [lit. write characters table]

- 11.1. Zhèige xiězìtái mài duōshao qián?
- 12.0. (68) pūgai bedding (N)
- 12.1. Tiānqi tài lěng le. Nǐde pūgai tài shǎo le.
- 13.0. (68) dānzi sheet, list, bill (N)
- chuáng dānzi bed sheet
- kāi dānzi make a list
- 13.1. Zuótian wǎnshang dào fànguǎr qù chǐ fàn huǒji bǎ dānzi xiěcuò le. Wǔkuài qián xiěchéng wǔshikuài qián le.
- 13.2. Wáng Mā zhēn gānjīng. Tiāntiān gěi wǒ huàn chuáng dānzi.
- 13.3. Nǐ xiǎng mǎi de dōngxī kāi dānzi méi you?
- 14.0. (76) héshì fit, fitting, suitable, congenial (SV) [lit. suit shape]
- 14.1. Zuótian mǎi de nèijiàn yīfu chuānzhe bù héshì. Wǒ děi qù huàn.
- 15.0. (77) bícǐ mutually, reciprocally, each other (AD)
- Bícǐ bícǐ (the compliment) is mutual, same to you
- 15.1. Wǒmen liǎngge rén yīngdāng bícǐ bāng máng.
- 15.2. Oh, Wáng Xiānsheng, wǒ zǎo jiù yīnggāi kàn nín lai, kěshì tài máng le. . . . Bícǐ bícǐ.
- 16.0. (77) gōngke course, subject of instruction, studies (N) (measure: mén, mér) [lit. service lesson]
- 16.1. Nǐde gōngke máng bu máng?
- 16.2. Jīntian wǒ bù chūqu. Wǒde gōngke tài máng le.
- 16.3. Nǐ zài dàxué niàn jǐmén gōngke?
- 16.4. Wǒ duì Wáng Jiàoshòu jiāo de Zhōngguó lìshǐ nèimér gōngke yìdiǎr yě méi xìngqu.
- 16.5. Zhèiběn shūli měi dì liùkè shì yíge wēnxi gōngke.
- 17.0. (78) zhàoying take care of, look after (TV)
- 17.1. Nèige háizi tài xiǎo le. Qǐng nǐ duō zhàoying ta.
- 18.0. (79) niánji age (in years) (N) [lit. year record]
- 18.1. Kàn yàngzi tāde niánji bǐ wǒ xiǎode duō.
- 18.2. Tā duó dà niánji?
- 19.0. (31) lǎomāzi married woman servant, maid (N)
- 19.1. Tāmen jiā yǒu jǐge lǎomāzi?
- 20.0. (32) bān move (TV)
- bān jiā move, change residence
- 20.1. Zhèige zhuōzi tài dà le. Kǒngpà yíge rén bù néng bān.
- 20.2. Wǒ jīnnian bānle sāncì jiā le.

- 20.3. Tāde jiā bāndao Shànghǎi qu le.
- 20.4. Qǐng nǐ bǎ xiězìtái bāndao shūfángli qu.
- 21.0. (84) kǒuwèi taste, preference as to food (N) [lit. mouth flavor]
- 21.1. Měige rén de kǒuwèi dōu bù yíyàng.
- 22.0. (84) hé to suit (V)
- 22.1. Wáng Mā zuòde cài hěn hé wǒde kǒuwèi.
- 23.0. (84) zhíguǎn just (MA) [lit. only manage]
- 23.1. Yǒu shénmo wèntí nǐ zhíguǎn shuōchulai.
- 24.0. (86) jīngtiē give extra (as, pay or assistance) (V), extra pay, assistance, gratuity (N)
- 24.1. Wǒmen gōngsī měinián dōu lìngwài jīngtiē wǒmen yìdiǎr qián.
- 24.2. Xuéxiào gěi nǐ de jīngtiē shì duōshao qián?
- 25.0. (86) jiù shì le and that'll do, that's all there is to it
- 25.1. Nǐ bǎ wǔkuài qián gěi ta jiù shì le.
- 26.0. (88) dùn (measure for meals)
- 26.1. Wǒ měitiān chī liǎngdùn fàn.
- 27.0. (91) jiān fry (in slightly greased pan) (V)
- 27.1. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan chī jiān jiǎozi.
- 28.0. (91) jīdàn (chicken) egg (N)
- chǎo jīdàn scrambled eggs
- jīdàn tāng egg-drop soup
- 28.1. Wǒ měitiān zǎochen chī kǎo miànbāo chǎo jīdàn.
- 28.2. Wǒmeñ yào ge jīdàn tāng. hǎo bu hǎo?
- 29.0. (91) huòshi . . . huòshi either . . . or
- 29.1. Nǐmen shuōhǎo huòshi nǐ qù huòshi tā qù.
- 29.2. Wǒ huòshi jīntian huòshi míngtian zǒu.
- 30.0. (91) zhōngfàn wǔfàn lunch (N) [lit. middle food]
- 30.1. Sāndiǎn le dou. Wǒ hái méi chī zhōngfàn ne.
- 31.0. (94) dān only, singly, alone (AD)
- 31.1. Nǐmen xiān zǒu ba. Wǒ lìngwài děn qù.
- 32.0. (94) kāi fàn serve up a meal (VD) [lit. open food]
- 32.1. Fǔshang jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi fàn ne?
- 33.0. (95) suí follow (V)
- suí A de yìsī follow A's idea
- suí A (de) biàn follow A's convenience

suí A hǎo le do what A likes

- 33.1. Suí nǐde yìsi wǒmen chī shénmo.
 33.2. Qù bu qù suí nǐde biàn.
 33.3. Wǒmen zuò chuán háishi zuò huǒchē? . . . Suí nǐ hǎo le.
- 34.0. (95) wúsùǒwèi make no difference, not matter
 34.1. Chī Zhōngguó fàn chī wàiguó fàn wǒ dōu wúsùǒwèi.
- 35.0. (96) yíkuàir V rènào be entertaining, be sociable to V together
 35.1. Wǒmen zài yíkuàir hē chá rènào.
- 36.0. (101) chéng be O.K., be all right, be satisfactory, (that'll) do (V)
 36.1. Lǎojià nǐ huílai de shíhou gěi wǒ dài běn shū chéng bu chéng?
 36.2. Zhèjiàn shì wǒ zènmò bàn chéng ma?
 36.3. Lǎo ràng 'nǐ qǐng kè zènmò chéng?
- 37.0. (101) nǎr where? how? why? (rhetorical) (Note 2)
 nǎr chéng how will it do?
 nǎrde huà not at all, something which shouldn't be said; nonsense!
 37.1. Nǐ yíge rén zuò hěnduō shì nǎr chéng?
 37.2. Nín shuō nǎrde huà ne. Zhè shì wǒ yīngdāng zuò de me.
 37.3. Nǐ bǎ ta gěi ènhuài le. Wǒ shàng nǎr qu mǎi qu?
 37.4. Méi yǒu mài de. Wǒ nǎr mǎidezáo?
 37.5. Nèijiàn shì nǎr néng ta yíge rén zuò?
- 38.0. (102) óu'ěr occasionally, once in a while, by chance (MA)
 38.1. Zhōngguó fàn wǒ bù zènmò xǐhuan chī, kěshì óu'ěr yě chī yíci.
 38.2. Wǒ zuótian zài fēijīchǎng óu'ěr yùjian ta le.
- 39.0. (103) dǐ end (TW)
 dǐxia bottom (PW)
 (zài) A dǐxia under A
 dào dǐ to the end, after all
 yuè dǐ end of the month
 nián dǐ end of the year
 39.1. Wǒ yuè dǐ jiù yǒu qián le.
 39.2. Tā bǎ nèijiàn shì cóng tóur dào dǐ gēn wǒ shuōle yíci.
 39.3. Nǐ dào dǐ bān jiā bù bān jiā?
 39.4. Nǐ zhǎo de zázhi zài zìdiǎn dǐxia.
 39.5. Zhuōzi dǐxia yǒu shénmo?

- 40.0. (103) fēntān pay as one's share (V) [lit. divide apportion]
 40.1. Zhèicì lǚxíng měi rén fēntān duōshao qián?
- 41.0. (105) shǒuxu (formal) procedure, process, method (N) [lit. hand succeed]
 41.1. Xuéxiàode shǒuxu nǐ bàn le méi you?
 41.2. Chū guó de shǒuxu hěn máfan.
- 42.0. (106) guīju custom, customary rules and regulations (N); be observant of the rules (SV) [lit. rule pattern]
 42.1. Nèige fànguārde guīju shì bú yào xiǎofèi.
 42.2. Nèige háizi hěn guīju.
- 43.0. (106) qī period of time (N)
 dào qī reach the end of a specified period of time
 guò qī pass the end of a specified period of time, become overdue
 shàng qī beginning of a period
 xià qī end of a period
 43.1. Wǒ děi bān jiā yīnwei wǒde fángzi dào qī le.
 43.2. Yǐjīng guòle qī le. Nǐ zěnmó hái bu jiāo qián?
 43.3. Wǒmen zhèr zū fángzi dōu shì shàng qī gěi qián.
 43.4. Zài Měiguó zuò shì dōu shì xià qī gěi qián.
- 44.0. (106) jiāo zū pay rent (VO) [lit. deliver rent]
 44.1. Wǒ zhù de fángzi shì měiyuè jiāo yíci zū.
- 45.0. (112) dásao clean up (TV) [lit. hit sweep]
 45.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèijiān wūzi dásao dásao.
- 46.0. (115) língsui miscellaneous, fragmentary (SV) [lit. remnant fragment]
 46.1. Wǒ jīntian zuò de shì língsuide shìqīng.
- 47.0. (115) línglingsuìsuì very fragmentary (Note 3)
 guīgūijūjū very punctilious
 tòngtongkuàikuài very happy
 47.1. Tāde qián línglingsuìsuì dōu yòngwán le.
 47.2. Tā měitiān guīgūijūjūde zuò shì.
 47.3. Wǒmen zuótian zài nèr tòngtongkuàikuàide wárlé yìtiān.
- 48.0. (118) tiān add, increase (TV)
 tiānshang add
 tiān qián increase the money
 48.1. Yàoshì qián bú gòu nǐ zài tiānshang diār.

- 48.2. Nèige dōngxi zài tiān liǎngkuài qián jiù kéyǐ mǎi le.
- 49.0. (119) fēnfu give instructions or commands (to) (V) [lit. order command]
- 49.1. Nǐ yǒu shénmo shìqing fēnfu wǒde hái zi qù zuò.
- 50.0. (122) bóbo uncle, father's older brother (N) (Note 1)
- 50.1. Wáng Bóbo lái le! Nín qǐng jìnlái.
- 51.0. (126) zuǒyòu approximately, more or less (after numbers) [lit. left right]
- 51.1. Wǒ kàn ta hǎoxiàng sānshí zuǒyòu.
- 52.0. (127) hǎode O.K., fine
- 52.1. Hǎode. Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshàng yíding lái.
- 53.0. (128) dǎjiǎo disturb, inconvenience (said politely by visitor on leaving)
- 53.1. Wǒ zǒu le. Bù duō dǎjiǎo nín le.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Tā niánniānqīngqīngde jiù sǐ le.
2. Nǐ chuān nèitào yīfu héshì bù héshì?
3. Suǐ nǐde biān nǐ xiǎng shàng nǎr qù wǒmen jiù shàng nǎr qù.
4. Wǒ bǎ suǒyǒude jiāju dōu jiègei ta yòng le.
5. Fángdōng shuō nǐ zhù lúguǎn duōshao qián jiù gěi ta duōshao qián.
6. Nèige dìfang hěn píng'ān. Nǐ zhíguǎn qù.
7. Nǎrde huà ne. Wǒ yīngdāng de me.
8. Suǐbiàn nǐ xiě zì niàn shū dōu kéyǐ.
9. Tā ràng wǒ qù. Wǒ zěnmō hǎo yìsi bú qù ne?
10. Wǒ bǎ suǒyǒude gōngke dōu yùbeihǎo le.
11. Diànshì huài le méi guānxi. Fǎnzhèng wǒ yě bù xǐhuan kàn.
12. Wǒmen èrshinián bú jiàn le. Jiànzhào yǐhòu bícǐ dōu bú rènshi le.
13. Wǒmen xuéxiǎode gōngke shuǐzhǔn tígāo le, suǒyǐ mángde bùdéliǎo.

14. Wǒ bān jiā de shíhou nǐ kéyi bāng wǒ máng ma?
15. Míngtiān dào nàr qù huòshi nǐ qù huòshi wǒ qù xiànzài wǒmen shuōhǎo.
16. Nèige hái zi tài xiǎo le. Ràng ta yíge rén chūqu nǎr chéng ne?
17. Nǐde fángzi shénmo shíhou dào qī?
18. Wǒ ràng wǒ dìdi jiào nǐ shì gēge.
19. Fēnfu Wáng Mā jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu kèren, duō zuò diār fàn.
20. Zhèige lùyīnjī nǐ kànle bàntiān. Dào dǐ mǎi bu mǎi?



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Měiyīng dào le Huá jiā. Huá jiā de lǎomāzi Wáng Mā gěi wǒmen kāide mén. Jīnqū yīhòu jiànle Huá Tàitai. Měiyīng gěi wǒmen jièshao le. Huá Tàitai hěn kèqi. Kàn yàngzi yǒu sìshíjǐsuì. Gèzi bù hěn gāo, bú pàng bú shòu. Wǒ xiǎng ta niánqīng de shíhou yídìng hěn piàoliang.

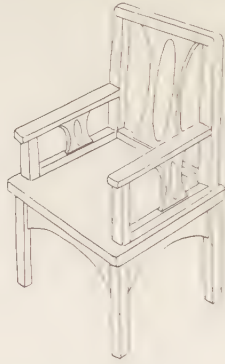
- 5 Huá Tàitai jiào lǎomāzi gěi wǒmen qī chá bìngqiě hái gěi wǒmen yùbeile diǎnxīn. Wǒ gēn Měiyīng chīde hěn bǎo cái chūqu de. Nǎr néng chīdexià ne?

- Wǒmen hēzhe chá tándào fángzide wèntí. Huá Tàitai shuō tāde èr érzi sǐle yīhòu tā xīn lǐtou hěn nánguò. Tā shuō ta zhèjiān fángzi zūgei
- 10 bié ren zhù zhǔyàode yuányīn shì gěi tāde dà érzi zuò bàr. Nèijiān fángzi hěn dà. Huá jiā hěn jiǎngjiu, suóyi tāmende jiāju dōu hěn hǎo. Huá Tàitai hái shuō kètīng fàntīng wǒ suǐbiàn yòng. Búdàn zhèxiè érqǐ lián pūgai dōu bú yòng wǒ zìjǐ yùbei.

- Tándào fángzū Huá Tàitai shuō wǒ shì Gāo jiāde péngyou zhù sùshè
- 15 duōshao qián jiù ràng wǒ gěi ta duōshao qián. Yòu tándào chī fàn de wèntí. Kāishǐ ta shuō chī fàn bú bì gěi qián le. Zěnmō néng nènmo bàn ne? Wǒ zhīdao Huá Tàitai zhè shì yíjù kèqi huà. Hòulái tā shuō dào yuè dǐ dàjiā fēntān hǎo le.

Zhèige shíhou Huá Tàitai yòu bǎ Wáng Mā jiàochulai fēnfu ta wǒ
 20 bānqu yǐhòu ràng ta gěi wo xǐ yīfu, shòushi wūzi, shénmode. Wáng Mā
 yě hěn hǎo. Huá Tàitai shuō yàoshi fàn bù hé wǒde kǒuwèi de shíhou,
 jiào wǒ gàosu tāmen. Wǒ shì shénmo dōu néng chī. Wǒ xiǎng méi you
 shénmo bù hé wǒ kǒuwei de.

Wǒ xiǎng zǎo yìdiar bānlai suóyi mǎshàng wǒ jiù juédìngle míngtian
 25 shàngwǔ bānlai.



Wèntí

1. Wáng Mā shì Huá jiā de shénmo rén?
2. Měiyīng kànjian Huá Tàitai ta xiān shuō shénmo?
3. Měiyīng wèi shénmo ràng Huá Tàitai jiào Bái Xiānsheng shì Wénshān?
4. Huá Tàitai shuō bù hǎo yìsi jiào Bái Xiānsheng de míngzì Bái Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
5. Wèi shénmo rénjiā yùbeile diǎnxīn Bái Xiānsheng Gāo Xiáojie tāmen liǎngge rén dōu bù chī?
6. Huá Tàitai shuō tāde èr érzi sīle tā zěnmoyàng?
7. Huá Tàitai shuō tāmen jiālǐde rén duō bu duō?
8. Huá Xiānsheng shì zuò shénmo shì de?
9. Wèi shénmo ta cháng bú zài jiā?
10. Huá Tàitai xīwang bǎ fángzi zūgei shénmo rén zhù?
11. Bái Xiānsheng wèi shénmo bù xǐhuan zhù sùshè?
12. Bái Xiānsheng shì lái kàn fángzi. Ta wèi shénmo Huá Tàitai jiào ta kàn fángzi ta yòu shuō "Wǒ hái yào kànkān ma?"
13. Huá Tàitai shuō dōu gěi ta shénmo yòng?
14. Lǎomāzi shì shéi? Lǎomāzi shì zuò shénmo de?
15. Bái Xiānsheng shuō ta záodiǎn dōu chī shénmo?

16. Huá Tàitai shuō chī fàn bú bì gěi qián le. Bái Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
17. Bái Xiānsheng zài Huá jia chī fàn ta shénmo shíhou cái gěi qián ne? Gěi duōshao qián?
18. Bái Xiānsheng gēn Wáng Mā shuō ta láile gěi ta tiān máfan. Wáng Mā dōu shuō shénmo?
19. Zǒu de shíhou Měiyīng gàosu Huá Tàitai shénmo?
20. Bái Xiānsheng shénmo shíhou bāndao Huá jia qu?
21. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu fángzi chūzū rénjia lái kàn fángzi, nǐ yīnggāi gēn rénjia shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi yíwèi bǐ nǐ niánjiǎo lǎo de rén jiào nǐ shì xiānsheng, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo kèqǐ huà?
23. Yàoshi yǒu liǎngge péngyou tāmen bú rènshi kěshi nǐ dōu rènshi nǐ yīngdāng zuò shénmo?
24. Yàoshi nǐ kànhaole yíjiān fángzi nǐ xiǎng zū, nǐ yào wèn fángdōng duōshao qián nǐ zěnmó wèn?
25. Yàoshi nǐ zūhaole fángzi le nǐ yīngdāng gēn fángdōng shuō shénmo kèqǐ huà?
26. Yàoshi nǐde fángdōng yǒu yǒngren ta bāngzhe nǐ zuò shì nǐ gēn tā shuō shénmo kèqǐ huà?
27. Yàoshi nǐ wèn fángdōng fàn qian duōshao, fángdōng yàoshi gēn nǐ kèqǐ shuō bú yào qián, nǐ zěnmó shuō?
28. Yàoshi nǐ yǒu fángzi yǒu rén lái zū nǐ shuō shénmo?
29. Yàoshi nǐde fángzi zūgei bié ren le, nǐ dōu gàosu nǐde yǒngren shénmo?
30. Nǐ dào rénjia jiā lǐtōu qu dānwu rénjia hěn duō shíhou nǐ zǒu de shíhou yīngdāng shuō shénmo kèqǐ huà?

Dialogue: Vincent White and Gao Meiyang discuss with Mrs. Hua everything [lit. all questions] pertaining to renting a room in the Hua household.

Mei : Vincent, we've arrived.

White: Oh, this is it.

Mei : Yes. Ring the bell.

Wang: (from inside) Who is it?

Mei : It's me, Wang Ma.

Wang: Oh, Miss Gao, how are you? How come you haven't come for so long? This gentleman is . . . ?

Mei : This is Mr. Vincent White.

Wang: Mr. White, how are you? Please come in and sit down. Mrs. Hua [lit. our Mrs.] is waiting for you.

Tai : Who is it? It's Meiyang? Meiyang, are your father and mother well?

Mei : Very well. They asked me to give you their best. Auntie, let me introduce you. This is Vincent White. This is Mrs. Hua.

White: How do you do.

Tai : Mr. White, pleased to meet you. Mr. and Mrs. Gao have often spoken to me about you.

Mei : Auntie, just call him Vincent.

Tai : How can I do that?

White: I'm of a younger generation. Just call me by my given name.

Tai : Wang Ma, make some tea!

Wang: Coming.

Mei : Auntie, my mother already phoned you this morning?

Tai : Yes. She said she was having Mr. White come see the room.

Mei : Yes. So my parents had me bring him. You take up everything about the room with him. He speaks Chinese very well. He understands everything you say. You can just talk to him.

Tai : Fine. Let's first have some tea and then we'll talk. Come and sit down.

White: You're too kind. Thank you.

Mei : Auntie, why have you prepared so many refreshments? We had breakfast before we left.

Tai : But have a bit more.

Mei : I can't [eat it down].

Tai : Mr. White, have a little.

White: I'm also full. Thank you. You're too kind, you've put yourself out too much.

Tai : Let's sit and talk. If you're not having anything to eat let's have some tea.

White: About this room . . .

Tai : Regarding [the matter of] the room, I guess Mrs. Gao has already spoken to you, isn't that so? She's already told you the general situation. You know, very recently my second son died and I've been very sick at heart.

White: Yes. Mrs. Gao told me. It's very sad. [Don't keep on being too anguished.]

Tai : Our family [population] is very small [lit. simple]. My older son goes to school [every day] and my husband and I go out every day. Mr. Hua is an engineer. He's very busy. Sometimes we go out to quite distant places to work, and then we don't come back (for a while). Sometimes we just live out. So I thought of finding a young man to be a companion

to my son. I asked Mr. Gao to introduce me to a young friend who might come and live here. You're by yourself, aren't you?

White: Yes. I've come to study. (As) I said to Mr. Gao, if I live in a dormitory I think it won't be so convenient at times, so it would be better if I found a room for myself. Then Mr. Gao informed me that in your home there was a room which you might let me have.

Tai : First look and see if the room suits you. The dining room and the living room you can use as you please if you have guests and so on. Since you're a friend of the Gaos' you're also a friend of ours. And I see you're a nice person. Anyway my husband and I are often not at home.

White: Thank you. Do I still need to look at it?

Tai : Of course. You should [look at it].

White: All right [I'll look at it].

Tai : This is it.

White: Very nice, this room. It's quite large.

Tai : The bed, bookcases, writing desk, and so on you can use if you like them. Bedding and bed sheets we have, so you don't need to buy them.

White: That's excellent. I came by plane and didn't bring any bedding. If you let me use them, I won't have to buy any.

Tai : Yes. Don't buy any.

White: Could you tell me how much the room is?

Tai : Didn't I just say that since you're a friend of the Gaos' you're a friend of ours? Just give us whatever it would be if you lived in the dormitory. I'm not (doing this) for the money, but chiefly to find a suitable person to come and keep my son company. You two young people can talk together and do your studying together.

White: I'm very grateful to you. When I live in your home please consider me one of the family [lit. look after me].

Tai : My son is probably about the same age as you are. How old are you [this year]?

White: I'm twenty-four.

Tai : A year younger than my [elder] son. There's something else. This maid of ours is very good. She's also very competent in doing things. After you move in, she can wash clothes and take care of the room for you. She also cooks pretty well. Whenever there's something that doesn't suit your taste just speak up. Don't be polite. She can also buy things for you and soon. Each month just give her a little extra money.

White: How much do you think I should give her?

Tai : As you wish, give her a few dollars. Will you have all three meals at home? What do you have for breakfast?

White: For breakfast I have toast and coffee, or sometimes I'll ask the servant to fry or scramble an egg for me. (At) lunch (time) I think I'll have a bite at school or outside. Dinner I'll eat at home.

Tai : Shall we serve you by yourself or will you eat with us?

White: Whatever you like. What do you think would be convenient? It doesn't matter to me.

Tai : Then let's do it this way: If we're at home, it'll be more sociable for all of us to eat together. If we're not here you and my son can eat together, all right?

White: Fine. How much shall I give for meals each month?

Tai : You don't need to pay for meals.

White: How will that do? How can I let you have me as a guest every day? It's not having an occasional meal. Don't be polite.

Tai : In that case at the end of the month I'll figure up how much you should give as your share, and you just give that much.

White: There aren't any special regulations?

Tai : No. The custom here is to pay rent at the beginning of the (rental) period.

White: I'll give you the rent now.

Tai : What's the hurry? We can take care of it after you've moved in.

White: Let me give it to you now.

Tai : When will you move in?

White: I plan to move in tomorrow morning. May I?

Tai : Yes. In a moment I'll have Wang Ma clean the room for you. . . . Wang Ma, come! Mr. White is moving in tomorrow. You help him by taking care of the room, washing his clothes, and getting breakfast. He'll have lunch outside. Dinner he'll have at home, with us. You help Mr. White with various things.

Wang : Yes Ma'am.

White: Wang Ma, I've come to add to your work.

Wang : Not at all. Whatever you want me to do, just tell me.

White: Thank you. Mrs. Hua, we'll leave now.

Mei : Aunt Hua, my mother said that sometime she will invite you and Uncle Hua to visit us.

Tai : Fine. I'll give your mother a ring.

White: Mrs. Hua, what time tomorrow morning may I move in? [You tell me.]

Tai : Any time that's convenient for you will do.

White: What if I move in [tomorrow morning] about 10:00?

Tai : Fine.

White: Sorry to have troubled you. Goodbye.

Tai : Goodbye.

Mei : Goodbye.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. As soon as he pressed on that little table he broke it.
- 2.1. Stop talking. The bell has already rung for class.
- 2.2. Listen. Is someone ringing the doorbell?
- 3.1. Our Zhang Ma is very good. She's already worked fifteen years in our home.
- 4.1. I met Aunt Zhang on the street yesterday.
- 5.1. He's invited (me to be his) guest. Would it be right for me not to go?
- 5.2. I'm embarrassed to have you ask me as a guest.
- 5.3. Would it be right for us to let you pay all by yourself?
- 6.1. He's a generation older than I am.
- 6.2. I'm a generation below him.
- 6.3. After all he's a generation before my father.
- 6.4. We of our [lit. this one] generation have greater opportunities to study.
- 7.1. The weather's turned cold. We must get our winter clothes ready.
- 7.2. He's been terribly busy these days. He's preparing to go abroad.
- 7.3. Have you gotten all your things ready?
- 8.1. Young people should work hard at studying.
- 8.2. The YMCA is close to the YWCA.
- 8.3. The journal New Youth is a great help in studying Chinese literature.
- 9.1. Do you think all this furniture is suitable?
- 10.1. If he wants to be the host, let him. Anyway he has the money.
- 11.1. How much does this writing desk sell for?
- 12.1. The weather has become too cold. You have too little bedding.
- 13.1. Yesterday evening when I went to the restaurant to eat the waiter made a mistake on my bill. He wrote \$5 as \$50.
- 13.2. Wang Ma is really clean. She changes the sheets on my bed every day.
- 13.3. Have you made a list of the things you are going to buy?
- 14.1. That garment I bought yesterday doesn't fit. I must go exchange it.
- 15.1. We two should help each other.
- 15.2. Oh, Mr. Wang, I should have come long ago to see you, but I've been too busy. . . . I too (should have seen you).

- 16.1. Are you busy with your studies?
- 16.2. I'm not going out today. I'm too busy with my studies.
- 16.3. How many courses do you take at the university?
- 16.4. I'm not at all interested in that Chinese history course of Professor Wang's.
- 16.5. In this book every sixth lesson is a review lesson.
- 17.1. That child's very young. Please look after him more.
- 18.1. From his appearance he's considerably younger than I am.
- 18.2. How old is he?
- 19.1. How many maidservants are there in their home?
- 20.1. This table is too big. I'm afraid one person can't move it.
- 20.2. I've moved [my home] three times this year.
- 20.3. He's moved to Shanghai.
- 20.4. Please move the writing desk into the study.
- 21.1. Everyone's taste is different.
- 22.1. Wang Ma's cooking suits my taste.
- 23.1. If you have any questions just speak out.
- 24.1. Our company gives us a little extra money every year.
- 24.2. How much money does the assistance given to you by the school amount to?
- 25.1. Give him five dollars and that'll do.
- 26.1. I eat two meals a day.
- 27.1. I like [to eat] fried dumplings very much.
- 28.1. I eat toast and scrambled eggs every morning.
- 28.2. Let's have an order of egg-drop soup, O.K.?
- 29.1. Make up your minds whether you are going or he is going.
- 29.2. I'm leaving either today or tomorrow.
- 30.1. It's already three. I haven't had lunch yet.
- 31.1. You go ahead. I'll go by myself [separately].
- 32.1. When is dinner served in your home?
- 33.1. We'll eat whatever you feel like.
- 33.2. Go or not as you see fit.
- 33.3. Shall we go by boat or by train? . . . As you like.
- 34.1. It makes no difference to me whether we eat Chinese or foreign food.
- 35.1. It's (more) sociable if we have tea together.

- 36.1. When you come back please bring me a book, O.K.?
- 36.2. Will it do if I handle this matter this way?
- 36.3. How will it do to have you always be the host?
- 37.1. How will it do for just you to do a lot of work?
- 37.2. You're talking nonsense. This is something I should do, of course.
- 37.3. You've broken it [by pressing]. Where shall I go to buy (another)?
- 37.4. No one sells it. Where is it possible for me to buy it?
- 37.5. How can he take care of that matter by himself?
- 38.1. I'm not very fond of [eating] Chinese food but I occasionally eat it [once].
- 38.2. I met him by chance at the airport yesterday.
- 39.1. I'll have money at the end of the month.
- 39.2. He spoke to me [once] of that matter in detail [lit. from beginning to end].
- 39.3. After all are you moving or not?
- 39.4. The magazine you're looking for is under the dictionary.
- 39.5. What's under the table?
- 40.1. How much money does each person pay as his share on this trip?
- 41.1. Did you go through the school procedures?
- 41.2. The red tape in going abroad is a nuisance.
- 42.1. The custom at that restaurant is no tipping.
- 42.2. That child is very observant of the rules.
- 43.1. I have to move because the time for (which I've rented) my room is up.
- 43.2. It's overdue. How come you haven't paid?
- 43.3. When we rent rooms here payment is always made at the beginning of the (rental) period.
- 43.4. In America, payment is always made at the end of the period of work.
- 44.1. I pay rent once a month for the house where I live.
- 45.1. Please clean up this room.
- 46.1. I'm doing odds and ends of chores today.
- 47.1. He used up his money bit by bit.
- 47.2. He works punctiliously every day.
- 47.3. We amused ourselves very happily there for a day yesterday.
- 48.1. If there isn't enough money, add a bit.
- 48.2. You can buy that thing if you add a couple more dollars.
- 49.1. If you have anything (that needs doing) tell my youngster to go do it.

- 50.1. Uncle Wang [you've come]! Please come in.
51.1. I think he seems to be about thirty.
52.1. O.K. I'll certainly come this evening.
53.1. I'm leaving. I won't trouble you any further.

Review Sentences

1. He died very young.
2. Does that suit fit you?
3. Wherever it pleases you to go, we'll go.
4. I lent all the furniture to him (to use).
5. The landlord says just give him as much money as you pay in staying at the hotel.
6. That area is very peaceful. Just (don't worry and) go (there).
7. Nonsense. I should, of course.
8. You can write characters or study, as you wish.
9. He's asked me to go. How do I have the nerve not to go?
10. I've finished preparing all my lessons.
11. It doesn't matter if the television is out of order. I don't care to watch it anyhow.
12. We hadn't seen each other for twenty years. When we met we didn't recognize each other.
13. The level of the courses in our school has been raised, so I'm terribly busy.
14. When I move can you help me?
15. Let's decide now whether you go or I go there tomorrow.
16. That child is very small. How can you let him go out by himself?
17. When does the rental period for your house end?
18. I'll have my younger brother address you as 'older brother.'
19. Tell Wang Ma that we're having guests this evening and to cook more food.
20. You've looked at this tape recorder for a long time. After all are you buying it or not?

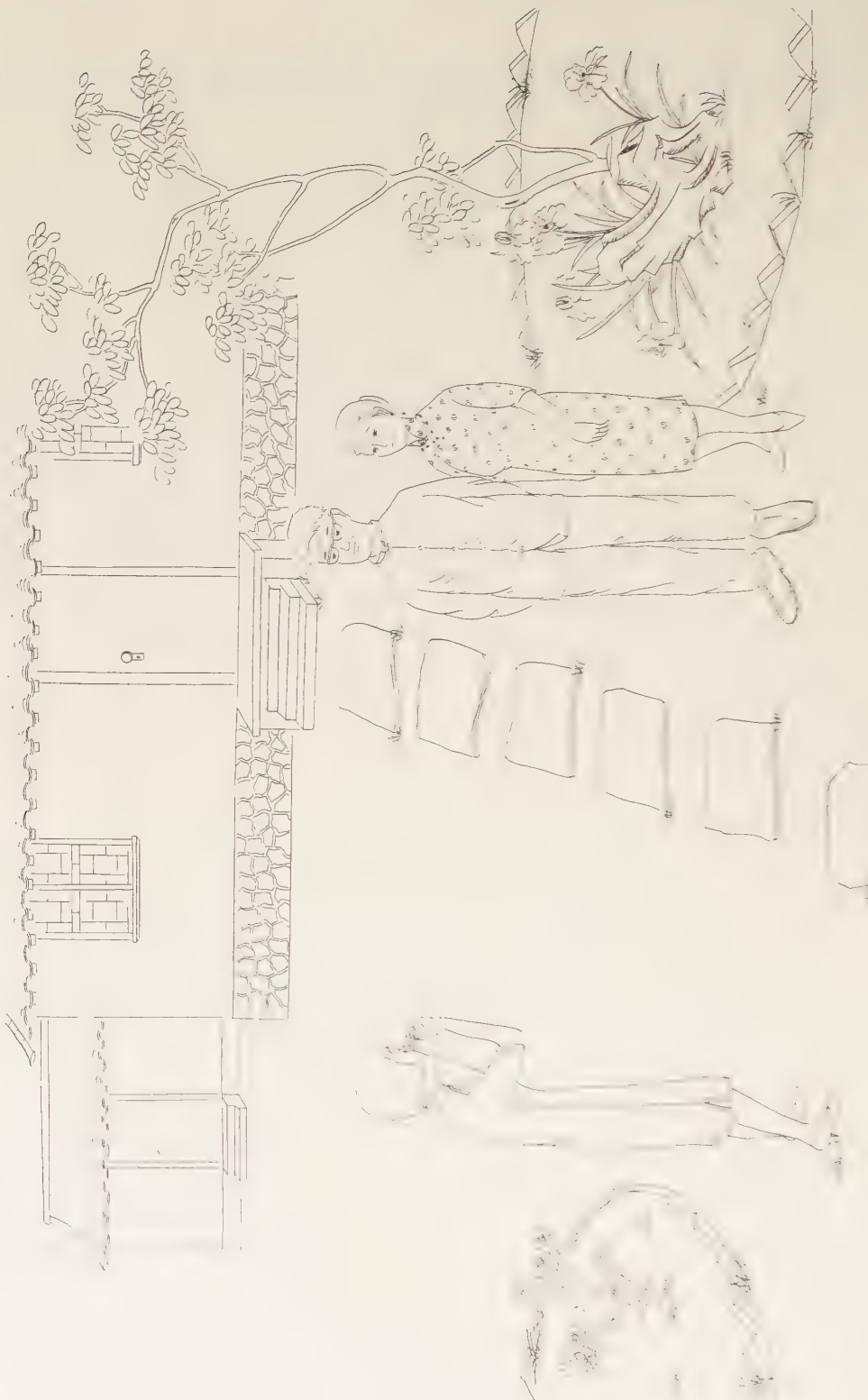
Notes

1. The term bóbo refers to one's father's older brother, and bómǔ to the wife of one's father's older brother. The corresponding English words 'uncle' and 'aunt' are of course less specific in meaning. These terms are

also applied to friends of the same generation as one's father who are not blood relatives; in addition, they are frequently used as polite forms of address to such relatives and friends.

2. The word nǎr—literally 'where?'—is used in rhetorical questions: nǎr yǒu? 'where is there?' (implying that there isn't), nǎr néng 'how is it possible?' (implying that it is not possible), and so on. The expression nǎrde huà 'talk (which exists) where?' implies that no such talk should be uttered. It is about equivalent to 'Nonsense!' as spoken in reply to a sentence such as 'Sorry to trouble you.'
3. Stative verbs composed of two syllables A B are reduplicated in the form A A B B to convey an intensive and rather lively flavor:

Nǐ kàn nèixiē xiǎo háizi nènmo gāogāoxìngxìngde wár. 'See how happily the children are playing.'



“Tā duìyu chuān yīfu bù zénmo jiāngjiu. . . . Huá Tàitai chuānde hěn jiāngjiu.”

Dì Jiǔkè. Tán Yì Jiā Rén

Huìhuà: Bái Wénshān gēn Gāo Měiyīng líkai Huá jia yǐhòu, zài lùshang tán Huá jia měi yíge rén.

Bái: Měiyīng, wǒmen xiān chī fàn qu, hǎo bu hǎo?

Měi: Nǐ è le ma?

5 Bái: Wǒ bú è, wǒ pà nǐ è. Wǒ zǎoshang chīde tài duō le, dào xiànzài yìdiǎr yě méi è ne.

Měi: Wǒ yě bú è.

Bái: Bù chī fàn wǒmen dào nǎr qu ne? Kàn diànyǐng shíhou yòu bú duì.

10 Měi: Wǒ tíyì wǒmen jiù zài lùshang liūda liūda.

Bái: Hǎo. Aiya! Zāogāo! Méi dài zhàoxiàngjī lai. Jīntian tiānqi zènmo hǎo, wǒmen yīnggāi zhàozhao xiàng.

Měi: Wǒ zài jiā zǒu de shíhour yě méi xiángqilai. Yǐhòu zài zhào ba.

15 Bái: Měiyīng, Huá Tàitai rén hěn hǎo. Bù zhīdao Huá Xiānsheng shì zěnmoyàng yíge rén?

Měi: Huá Bóbo rén hǎo jíle. Píqi cái hǎo ne, duì shéi dōu tǐng héqide, cónglái bù fā píqi. Tā duì rén de tàidu zhēn hǎo.

Bái: Yǒu duō dà suǐshu le?

20 Měi: Gēn Huá Bómǔ chàbuduō, dàgài wúshisuǐ zuǒyòu. Zhōngděng gèzi, bù gāo bù ǎi de, dàgài yǒu wǔchǐ bā-jǐucùn nènmo gāo.

Bái: Nǐ shuōde shì Yīngchǐ háishi Zhōngguochǐ? Xiànzàide chǐ hěn duō—yǒu Yīngchǐ, Zhōngguochǐ, gōngchǐ.

Měi: Wǒ shuōde shì Yīngchǐ.

Bái: Nènmo gēn Gāo Xiānsheng chàbuduō gāo le?

25 Měi: Wǒ fùqin bǐ ta ǎi yìdiǎr. Tā bǐ wǒ fùqin pàng yìdiǎr. Tāde ěrduo yǒu yìdiǎr máobing. Tǐng bu dà qīngchu.

Bái: Tā yǒu yìdiǎr lóng ma?

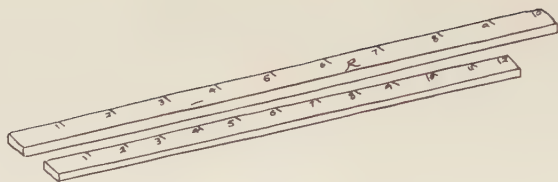
30 Měi: Tā yǒu yìdiǎr lóng. Kěshì yǒude shíhou nǐ gēn ta shuō huà tā xiǎng biéde shìqing, jiù méi zhùyì. Bú yào jǐnde shìching tā suǐsuibìanbiàn māmāhūhū de. Tā duìyu chuān yīfu bù zěnmō jiǎngjiu. Yīfu búlùn zěnmō zāng, tā yě bú zhīdao huàn. Bìděi Huá Bómǔ ràng ta huàn tā cái huàn ne.

- Bái: Huá Tàitai chuānde hěn jiǎngjiu.
- 35 Měi: Huá Bóbode xié pòde bùdéliǎo cái mǎi xīnde. Tóufa lǎo yě bù shū.
Méimao hěn zhòng.
- Bái: Nǐ zěnmō zhīdaode zěnmō qīngchū wa?
- Měi: Dāngrán le. Wǒ fùmǔ gēn Huá Bóbo Huá Bómǔ shì lǎo péngyou le. Suǒyǐ wǒmen dōu chángcháng jiàn miàn.
- Bái: Tāmen liǎngge érzi shì zěnmoyàngde rén?
- 40 Měi: Liǎngge érzi zhǎngde dōu hěn hǎo, hěn jiànkāng yě hěn cōngmíng.
- Bái: Dōu hěn jiànkāng èr érzi zěnmō huì sǐle ne!
- Měi: Jiù shì ne. Tā hūrán jiù bìng le. Bú dào liǎngtiān jiù sǐle.
- Bái: Èr érzi sǐle zhēn kěxī.
- 45 Měi: Dà érzi gēn tā fùqīn yíyàng yě shì jìnshīyǎn, dài yǎnjīng. Liǎngge
érzi dōu shì gāo gèr.
- Bái: Yǒu wǒ zěnmō gāo ma?
- Měi: Gēn nǐ chàbuduō, dōu yǒu liùchǐ gāo. Tāmen liǎngge rénde jiǎo
dōu hěn dà, mǎi xié dōu děi dīngzuò. Méi yǒu tāmen nènmo dàde
chǐcun.
- 50 Bái: Gēn wǒ yíyàng. Wǒ zài Zhōngguó mǎi xié yě shì děi dīngzuò.
- Měi: Tāmen dōu xǐhuan yùndòng. Gēbei hěn cū, tuǐ hěn cháng, shǒu hěn
dà, shǒu zhítou yě hěn cháng, gēbeishang dōu shì máo. Nǐ shuō
xiàng bu xiàng wàiguó rén?
- Bái: Nǐ shuō de zhèige yàngzi zhēn xiàng wàiguó rén.
- 55 Měi: Èr érzi píqī hěn hǎo, xiàng Huá Bóbo. Hěn xǐhuan kāi wánxiào.
- Bái: "Hǎo rén bù cháng shòu."
- Měi: Tā sǐle yǐhòu, Huá Bómǔ nánguòde bùdéliǎo, tiāntiār kū. Wǒ mǔqīn
tiāntiār qu quàn ta.
- Bái: Tā xiànzài zěnmoyàng?
- 60 Měi: Xiànzài hǎode duō le. Nǐ bānguoqu, yàoshi tā zài jiā de shíhour,
duō zhǎo jīhuì gēn Huá Bómǔ tántan, miǎnde ta lǎo xiǎng érzi.
- Bái: Dà érzi píqī zěnmoyàng?
- Měi: Dà érzi píqī yǒu yìdiǎr jí. Shì ge jí xìngzi.
- 65 Bái: Bù zhīdào ta duì bié rén zěnmoyàng? Yàoshi wǒ jiānglái zhùzài
tāmen fūshang xiāngchùde bù hǎo le zěnmō bàn?
- Měi: Bú huì de. Tā jiù shì jí xìngzi. Tā duì péngyou hěn hǎo. Jí xìngzi
shì ta duì shénmo shìqīng dōu xǐhuan kuài diar zuò, bìng bú shì duì
rén fā píqī.
- Bái: Dà érzi jiào shénmo míngzi?
- 70 Měi: Jiào Huá Xuéxīn.

- Bái: Huá wǒ zhīdao, shì Zhōnghuá de Huá. Xué shì bu shì xuéwen de xué? Kěshì xīn shì nǐge xīn zì ne?
- Měi: Jiù shì xīn jiù de xīn.
- 75 Bái: Oh, wǒ zhīdao le. Ta míngzide yìsi shì xué xīnde dōngxi, duì bu duì?
- Měi: Duìle.
- Bái: Huá Tàitai zhǎngde hěn niánqīng. Nǐ kàn ta hǎoxiang sānshíjǐ suì.
- Měi: Shì a, ta suǐrán chàbuduō wúshisuì le, kěshì kànbuchulái—pífu yòu bái yòu xì, xiǎo zuǐr dà yǎnjīng, gāo bízi, hěn hēide tóufa.
- 80 Bái: Nǐ shuō gāo bízi hǎo kàn!
- Měi: Dāngrán le. Gāo bízi duómo hǎo kàn ne!
- Bái: Na bu chéngle yáng guǐzi le? Nǐ shuō wǒde bízi hǎo kàn ma? Rénjia dōu jiào wo Dà Bízi.
- Měi: Ànzhe Zhōngguó rénde kànfa, gāo bízi piàoliang.
- 85 Bái: Zhèi shì Zhōngguó rén gēn wàiguó rén de kànfa bù yíyàng. Wǒ rènwei bízi tài gāo le, bù hǎo kàn.
- Měi: Wǒ yě méi shuō bízi tài gāo le hǎo kàn. Yàoshi yìchǐ duō gāo de bízi, dāngrán yě bù hǎo kàn le. Děi gāode hé biāozhǔn.
- Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ cǎi shéide bízi zuì biāozhǔn?
- 90 Měi: Wǒ bù zhīdao.
- Bái: 'Nǐde bízi zuì biāozhǔn. Bù gāo bù ǎi. Wǒ rènwei nǐde bízi zuì piàoliang.
- Měi: Bié xiā shuō le. Aiya! Zǒudào nǎr lai le? Wǒmen yìbiār shuō huà, yìbiār liūda, bùzhībùjuéde zǒuchu zhènmo yuǎn lai le. Nǐ shuō yǒu jíjí lù le?
- 95 Bái: Zǒuchu hěn yuǎn le. Nǐ lèi le ba. Wǒmen xiān qu chí fàn qu. Zhèr fùjìn yǒu fànguǎr ma?
- Měi: Yǒu yíge Guǎngdong fànguǎr. Cài hái bú cuò.
- Bái: Wǒmen qù chí Guǎngdong cài hǎo bu hǎo?
- 100 Měi: Hǎo wa.

Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (5) zǎoshang morning (TW) [lit. early on]
- 1.1. Wǒ měitiān zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng qīlai.
- 2.0. (10) tíyì (shuō) suggest, make a motion (AV); suggestion, motion (N) [lit. raise discuss]
- 2.1. Tā zài huìshang tíyì zhōngxué jiàoyu shuǐzhǔn yào tígāo.



- 2.2. Wǒ fǎnduì tāde tíyì.
- 3.0. (10) liūda (take a) stroll (IV)
- 3.1. Wǒmen liūda liūda ba.
- 3.2. Wáng Xiānsheng bú zài jiā. Chūqu liūda qule.
- 4.0. (14) bù zhīdào I don't know (Note 1)
- 4.1. Wǒ xiǎng xià xīngqī qǐng nín chī fàn. Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu méi you?
- 4.2. Wǒ dǎsuan ràng tā jiāo wǒ niàn Zhōngwén. Bù zhīdào tāde xuéwen zěnmoyàng?
- 5.0. (16) píqi temper, temperament (N) [lit. disposition air]
fā píqi lose [lit. emit] one's temper, get angry
píqi dà quick to anger
- 5.1. Tā hǎo jīle. Yìdiǎr píqi yě méi yǒu.
- 5.2. Wáng Xiānsheng chángcháng duì rén fā píqi.
- 5.3. Nèige rén xuéwen hǎo, jiù shì píqi dà.
- 6.0. (16) tǐng, dǐng very extremely (AD)
- 6.1. Ta nèige rén tǐng hǎo. Duì rén kèqi jīle.
- 6.2. Wǒ xiǎng shìjièshang tā shì dǐng hǎode yíge rén.
- 7.0. (16) héqi congenial, easy to get along with (SV) [lit. harmony air]
- 7.1. Tā gēn shéi shuō huà dōu nènmo héqi.
- 8.0. (17) cónglái bù/méi never
- 8.1. Wǒ cónglái bù chuān hóng yīfu.
- 8.2. Tā cónglái méi kànguo diànyǐngr.
- 9.0. (17) tàidu manner, bearing, attitude (N) [lit. behavior rule]
- 9.1. Nǐ duì xuésheng de tàidu yīnggāi gǎiyigǎi.
- 9.2. Tā duì wǒ de tàidu hěn huài.
- 10.0. (18) suìshu(r) age (N) [lit. year number]
- 10.1. Wáng Dàifu duó dà suìshu le?
- 10.2. Nǐ cāi tāde suìshu yǒu duó dà.
- 11.0. (19) děng(de) class (of), degree (of), grade (of) (M)

- tóuděng(de) first class [lit. head class]
 shàngděng(de) first class, upper class
 gāoděng(de) first class, high class
 zhōngděng(de) middle class, average
 xiàděng(de) lower class
- 11.1. Èrděng huǒchē piào duōshao qián?
 11.2. Zhèitiáo chuán yígòng yǒu jǐděng? . . . Yǒu sānděng—tóuděng, èrděng, sānděng.
 11.3. Wǒmen bú zhù shàngděngde lǚguǎn. Wǒmen zhù zhōngděngde yīnwei shàngděngde tài guì le.
 11.4. Wǒmen zhèrde piào zhǐ yǒu gāoděng gēn zhōngděngde, méi yǒu sānděngde.
- 12.0. (20) ǎi short (of stature) (SV)
 12.1. Ta zhǎngde hěn piàoliang, jiù shì tài ǎi le.
- 13.0. (20) chǐ foot (M) (Note 2)
 Zhōngguochǐ Chinese foot [= 14.1 English inches]
 Yīngchǐ English foot
 gōngchǐ meter [lit. common foot]
- 13.1. Yì gōngchǐ yǒu sān Yīngchǐ duǒ.
 13.2. Yīngchǐ bǐ Zhōngguochǐ xiǎo.
- 14.0. (20) cùn inch (M) (Note 2)
 14.1. Zhōngguochǐ yìchǐ shì shícùn.
 14.2. Yì gōngchǐ shì yìbǎi gōngfēn.
- 15.0. (20) A yǒu B (nènmò) SV A is SV by B amount (Note 3)
 15.1. Wáng Xiānsheng yǒu liùchǐ èrcùn nènmò gāo.
- 16.0. (25) ěrduo ear (N)
 16.1. Zhōngguó rén shuō dà ěrduo hǎo.
- 17.0. (26) máobing defect, trouble (N)
 chū máobing develop a defect
- 17.1. Wǒde yǎnjing yǒu máobing. Kàn duōle shū jiù bù shūfu.
 17.2. Wǒde chē chū máobing le. Zěnmò kāi yě bù zǒu le.
- 18.0. (26) qīngchū clear (SV) [lit. clear distinct]
 kànqīngchū see clearly
 kàndeqīngchū able to see clearly
 kànbuqīngchū unable to see clearly

- kànde hěn qīngchu see very clearly
 kàn bu dà qīngchu not see very clearly
 qīngqingchúchǔ very clear
- 18.1. Wǒde huà nǐ tīngqīngchu le ma?
 18.2. Nǐ zuòzai nèr kànde qīngchu ma?
 18.3. Nǐ xiěde zì wǒ kàn bu qīngchu.
 18.4. Nǐ zuòzai zhèr jiù kéyì tīngde hěn qīngchu.
 18.5. Xiānsheng, nǐ xiě de zì wǒ kàn bu dà qīngchu.
 18.6. Ta bǎ dānzi kǎide qīngqingchúchǔde.
- 19.0. (27) lóng deaf (SV)
 lóngzi deaf person (N)
- 19.1. Qǐng nǐ zài shuō yíbiàn. Wǒ yǒu diār lóng.
 19.2. Tā shì ge lóngzi. Nǐ gēn ta shuō huà ta tīng bu jiàn.
- 20.0. (30) mǎhu, māhu careless, absent-minded
 māmāhūhū, māmāhūhū careless, absent-minded
- 20.1. Nèige rén zuò shì hěn māhu.
 20.2. Tā nèige rén lǎo shì nènmo māmāhūhūde.
- 21.0. (30) búlùn, wúlùn no matter [lit. not discuss]
 21.1. Búlùn gēn shéi tā dōu nènmo héqí.
 21.2. Wúlùn nǎitiān dōu kéyì.
- 22.0. (34) xié shoe (N)
- 22.1. Wǒde xié chuānzhe bù héshì.
- 23.0. (34) pò break, tear; broken, torn
 dǎpò break (by striking)
 chuānpò wear out
- 23.1. Wǒde màozi pòle. Děi mǎi xīnde.
 23.2. Wǒde yīfu dōu chuānpò le.
 23.3. Shéi bǎ zhèige bōlibēi dǎpò le?
- 24.0. (34) tóufa hair on the head (N) [lit. head hair]
 24.1. Yǒu hěn duō wàiguo rén tóufa shì huángde.
- 25.0. (34) shū comb (V)
 shūzi comb (N) (measure: bǎ)
- 25.1. Nǐ bǎ tóufa shūyishū.
 25.2. Zhèibǎ shūzi shì péngyou sòng wǒ de.

- 26.0. (35) méimao eyebrow (N)
 26.1. Yǒude Zhōngguo rén xiǎng méimao zhòng cōngmíng.
- 27.0. (40) jiànkāng healthy (SV) [lit. strong robust]
 27.1. Wǒ mǔqīn suírán hěn lǎo le kěshì hěn jiànkāng.
- 28.0. (44) -shi -sighted
 jìnshi(yǎn) near-sighted
 yuǎnshi(yǎn) far-sighted
 28.1. Wǒde yǎnjīng yǒu diār jìnshi.
 28.2. Yuǎnshiyǎn néng kàn yuǎn bù néng kàn jìn.
- 29.0. (44) yǎnjìngr eyeglasses (N) [lit. eye mirror]
 29.1. Yuǎnshiyǎn jìnshiyǎn dōu děi dài yǎnjìng.
- 30.0. (47) jiǎo (a person's) foot (N) (measure: zhǐ)
 30.1. Wǒde jiǎo chuān zhèizhǒng xié bú shǔfu.
- 31.0. (48) dìng arrange for, contract for, fix (a time), subscribe to (TV)
 dìng piào reserve tickets
 dìng bào(zhǐ) subscribe to a newspaper
 dìng yíge shíhou fix a time (to do something)
 dìng ge rìzi fix a day (to do something)
 dìngzuò (arrange to) have made
 31.1. Jīntian kàn diànyǐng de xiān dìng piào, yàoburán mǎibuzháo piào.
 31.2. Wǒ xiǎng dìng yíge yuè Zhōngwén bàozhǐ.
 31.3. Wǒmen shénmo shíhou qu kàn ta xiān dǎ diànhuà gēn ta dìng ge shíhòu.
 31.4. Shénmo shíhou qu lǔxíng? Xiànzài xiān dìng ge rìzi.
 31.5. Wǒ xiǎng dìngzuò yítào yīfu. Nǐ shuō něige pùzi zuòde hǎo?
- 32.0. (49) chǐcun (linear) size (N) [lit. inch foot]
 32.1. Nǐde xié duó dà chǐcun? . . . Wǒ chuān shíhào bàn.
- 33.0. (51) gēbei, gēbo arm (N) (measure: zhǐ)
 33.1. Wǒmen bǐyībǐ wǒmen liǎngge rén shéide gēbo cháng?
- 34.0. (51) cū coarse, crude, rough, roughly built (SV)
 34.1. Tāmen xiànzài yòng de zhǐ dōu shì hěn cūde.
- 35.0. (51) tuǐ leg (N) (measure: tiáo)
 35.1. Tāde zuǒ tuǐ yǒu yìdiǎr máobīng, suóyì zǒu lù bù fāngbian.
 35.2. Tā yìtiáo tuǐ cháng yìtiáo tuǐ duǎn.

- 36.0. (51) shǒu hand (N) (measure: zhǐ)
 36.1. Nǐ cāi wǒ zhèizhǐ zuǒ shǒu lǐtōu yǒu shénmo?
- 37.0. (52) zhǐtōu finger (N)
 shǒu zhǐtōu fingers
 jiǎo zhǐtōu toe
 37.1. Tāde shǒu zhǐtōu yǒu cū yǒu duǎn.
 37.2. Nǐde nèige jiǎo zhǐtōu zěnmō huài de?
- 38.0. (52) máo(r) body hair, fur, wool, feather (N)
 38.1. Nǐ nèitiáo gǒude máor zhēn piàoliang.
- 39.0. (55) wánxiào joke, prank (N)
 kāi wánxiào crack jokes, play pranks, kid
 A gēn B kāi wánxiào A plays a joke on B
 39.1. Wǒ dīdi lǎo gēn wǒ kāi wánxiào.
- 40.0. (56) shòu long life, span of life; birthday (N) (Note 4)
 wàn shòu long life
 40.1. Zhù nín wàn shòu.
 40.2. Míngtiān Wáng Jiàoshòu zuò shòu.
- 41.0. (57) kū cry
 kūqilai burst into tears
 41.1. Bié kū le. Kū yě méi yòng.
 41.2. Nèige háizi bù zhīdào wèi shénmo tā hūrán kūqilai le.
- 42.0. (58) quàn calm, soothe (TV); urge, (try to) persuade (V)
 42.1. Tā kùle bàntiān le. Zěnmō quàn yě quàn bùhǎo.
 42.2. Nǐ quàn tā yǐhòu duō yònggōng niàn shù.
- 43.0. (63) jí impatient, nervous, excitable, excited, upset, angry (SV)
 43.1. Tāde píqi hěn jí.
 43.2. Mǎnmǎrde zuò me. Nǐ jí shénmo?
 43.3. Tā bù xǐhuan rénjiā gēn tā kāi wánxiào. Yì gēn tā kāi wánxiào tā jiù jíle.
- 44.0. (63) xìngr, xìngzi disposition, character, nature (N)
 jí xìngzi (person of) impatient disposition
 màn xìngzi (person of) easy-going disposition
 44.1. Tā xìngr hěn jí.
 44.2. Tā búlùn shénmo shì dōu xiǎng kuài zuòwán. Tā xìngzi jí.
 44.3. Gēge gēn dīdi píqi bú yíyàng. Gēge shì jí xìngzi, dīdi shì màn xìngzi.

- 45.0. (65) (xiāng)chù get along with someone (IV) [lit. mutually dwell]
 (xiāng)chùbùlái unable to get along with (someone)
 (xiāng)chùdelái able to get along with (someone)
- 45.1. Wǒ gēn ta xiāngchùde hěn hǎo.
 45.2. Wǒmen liǎngge rén chùde bú cuò.
 45.3. Tā píqi hěn tèbié. Wǒ gēn ta chùbulái.
 45.4. Wǒmen liǎngge rén bícǐ xiāngchùbulái.
- 46.0. (78) pí(fu) skin, leather (N)
 dǎ pí skin, peel (VO) [lit. hit skin]
- 46.1. Wǒde píbāo hěn guì yīnwei shì pí zuò de.
 46.2. Wǒ xiàtiān xǐhuan yóuyǒng, suóyi pífu hěn hēi.
 46.3. Zài zhèr chī shuǐguǒr zuì hǎo shì dǎ pí.
- 47.0. (79) xì fine, thin, delicate; detailed, minute (SV)
 Zhèiběn shūde zhǐ hěn xì.
 47.2. Wǒ méi tīng míngbai. Nǐ zài xì shuō yícì.
 47.3. Nèige zì nǐ niàncuò le. Nǐ zài xìxide kànyikàn.
- 48.0. (79) zuǐ, zuǐr mouth (N)
 48.1. Nèige háizi zuǐli yǒu shénmo?
 48.2. Tā nǚ'er xiǎo zuǐr dà yǎnjīng, zhēn hǎo kàn.
- 49.0. (79) bízi nose (Note 5)
 49.1. Tāde bízi zěnmó le? . . . Pènghuài le.
- 50.0. (82) yáng ocean (in compounds, often means 'from beyond the ocean')
 Dà Xī Yáng Atlantic Ocean [lit. great west ocean]
 Běi Bīng Yáng Arctic Ocean [lit. north ice ocean]
 Nán Bīng Yáng Antarctic Ocean [lit. south ice ocean]
 yángchē ricksha
 yánghuǒ matches
 Xīyáng Occident
- 50.1. Nǐ zuòguo yángchē méi you?
 50.2. Xīyáng rén hěn xǐhuan lǚxíng.
 50.3. Měiguode dōngbiar shì Dà Xī Yáng.
 50.4. Xiànzài pēnshèjī keyì yìzhíde cóng Yīngguo jīngguo Běi Bīng Yáng dào Zhōngguo.
- 51.0. (82) guǐ devil, evil spirit (Note 6)
 guǐzi outsider, foreigner (term of abuse)
 yáng guǐzi foreign devil

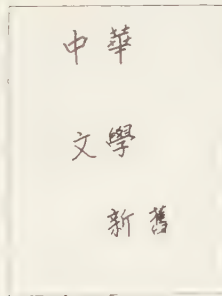
- 51.1. Nǐ xìn yǒu guǐ ma?
- 51.2. Zhōngguó rén jiào wàiguó rén shì yáng guǐzi.
- 52.0. (84) àn, ànzhe, ànzhào according to, by the (hour, day, etc.)
- 52.1. Àn nǐ zènmo yì shuō tāmen liǎngge rén xiāngchùde hěn bù hǎo wa.
- 52.2. Ànzhe nǐde yìsi zhèijiàn shìqing nǐ kàn yīnggāi zěnmò bàn?
- 52.3. Nèijiàn shìqing wǒ wánquán ànzhào tāde yìsi qu zuò de.
- 52.4. Wǒ zuò shì, tāmen shì àn zhōngdiǎn gěi wǒ qián.
- 53.0. (84) kànfǎ view, opinion, way of looking at (N)
- 53.1. Nǐde kànfǎ gēn tāde kànfǎ chàbuduō.
- 53.2. Wǒde kànfǎ tāde bìng hǎobuliǎo.
- 54.0. (86) rènwei be of the opinion that, believe, regard (V) [lit. recognize as]
- 54.1. Wǒ rènwei wǒ zhèi bèizi yě xuébuhuì Hànzì le.
- 55.0. (88) biāozhǔn example, (normal) standard (N); be standard (SV) [lit. mark exact]
- biāozhǔn yǔ standard language
- biāozhǔn yīn standard pronunciation
- A ná B zuò biāozhǔn A takes B as a model
- 55.1. Wáng Gōngchéngshī gài de fángzi bù hé biāozhǔn.
- 55.2. Běijīng huà shì Zhōngguó huà de biāozhǔn yǔ.
- 55.3. Tā shuō de huà dào shì biāozhǔn yīn.
- 55.4. Wáng Xiānsheng yòng shénmo zuò biāozhǔn gài nèisuǒr fángzi?
- 56.0. (94) bùzhībùjuéde unconsciously, without realizing it
- 56.1. Shíhou guòde zhēn kuài. Bùzhībùjuéde yòu shì xiàtiān le.
- 56.2. Wáng Xiānsheng hěn néng zuò shì. Nǐ bùzhībùjuéde tā bǎ shìqing jiù dōu zuòhǎo le.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Nǐ jiǎoshang chuān de pí xié shì bu shì Měiguó huò?
2. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ chī Zhōngguó fàn. Bù zhīdào nǐ xǐhuān chī bù xǐhuān chī?

3. Zhèitiáo lù zhǐ yǒu bànlǐ cháng.
4. Wǒ bù hǎo yìsi gēn ta kāi wánxiào.
5. Wǒ děi yùbei gōngke le yīnwei kuài yào kǎoshì le.
6. Fǎnzhèng nǐ yě méi shì. Wǒmen qu liūda liūda ba.
7. Tā shuō tā gēn nǐ dìng yíge shíhou. Dào dǐ dìng le méi you?
8. Wǒ dìng de xié, chǐcun bú duì le. Wǒ děi qù huàn.
9. Wǒ fǎnduì nǐ zhèige tíyì.
10. Tā nèizhōng bànfǎ wǒ rènwei bú duì.
11. Wǒde yǎnjīng yǒu diār jìnshi, xūyào dài yǎnjīng le.
12. Tāmen zuò de dōu hěn hé biāozhǔn, yīnwei tāmen shì zhuānménjiā.
13. Wǒ wéile niàn bóshi suóyì dào Zhōngguó lái.
14. Wǒ mǎi xié méi yǒu wǒ zènmo dāde. Fēiděi dìngzuò bù kě.
15. Zuótian jìgei wǒ dìdi yìběn dǐng hǎode gùshi shū.
16. Tā bǎ wǒ yíqiède shìqīng dōu gěi wo bàn de hěn qīngchu.
17. Wǒ děi zuò qiánbiar, miǎnde wǒ tīngbuqīngchǔ.
18. Zuótian wǒ yǐjīng gēn ta tōngguo diànhuà le.
19. Wǒ yǐjīng gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎole xiàwǔ wǒmen yíkuàr qu dìngzuò yifu.
20. Yì gōngchǐ shì duōshao gōngfēn nǐ hái jìde ba?



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Měiyīng líkai Huá jiā zhèng shì chī fàn de shíhou. Kěshi wǒmen dōu bú è. Měiyīng tíyì shuō zài lùshang liūda yìhuēr. Jīntian tiānqì hǎode hěn. Kěxī méi dài zhàoxiàngjī lai gěi Měiyīng zhàozhào xiàng a.

5. Wǒmen liǎngge rén liūdazhe jiù tánqì Huá Xiānsheng zhè yì jiā rén lai le. Měiyīng gàosu wǒ tāmen měi yíge rén de pǐqì gēn zhǎng de yàngzi.

Měiyīng shuō Huá Xiānsheng píqi hěn hǎo, cónglái bù fā píqi. Wúlùn duì
shéi dōu shì tǐng héqi de. Wǒ wèn Měiyīng Huá Xiānsheng yǒu duó dà
niánji. Tā shuō yǒu wǔshí zuǒyòu. Zhōngděng gèzi—bù gāo bù ǎi, gēn
10 Gāo Xiānsheng chàbuduō, bǐ Gāo Xiānsheng pàng.

Měiyīng shuō Huá Xiānsheng duìyú chuān yīfu shénmode yìdiǎr yě bù
jiǎngjiu. Yīfu zāngde bùdéliǎo yě bú huàn, pí xié pòle yě bù mǎi, tóufa
lǎo yě bù shū.

Wǒ yòu wèn Měiyīng guānyu tāmen liǎngge érzi de yíqiè. Měiyīng
15 gàosu wǒ liǎngge rén gèzi dōu hěn gāo, chàbuduō yǒu liùchǐ gāo. Měiyīng
shuō liǎngge érzi dōu hěn jiànkāng. Wǒ jiù xiǎngle tāmen dōu hěn jiànkāng
zěnmò èr érzi huì sǐle ne.

Měiyīng shuō liǎngge érzide shǒu jiǎo dōu hěn dà. Hái shuō tāmen
dōu xǐhuan yùndong, suóyì gēbo hěn cū, shǒu hěn dà, jiǎo yě hěn cháng,
20 mǎi xié dōu děi dìngzuò, méi yǒu tāmen nènmo dà de chǐcun.

Měiyīng yòu shuō tāmen liǎngge rénde píqi. Ta shuō dà érzi shì
ge jí xìngzi kěshi tā duì rén hěn hǎo. Èr érzide píqi hǎoxiang Huá
Xiānsheng, cónglái yě bù fā píqi. Měiyīng shuō ta sǐle Huá Tàitai fēicháng
nánguò. Měiyīng xīwang wǒ bānguoqu yǐhòu cháng zhǎo jīhui gēn Huá
25 Tàitai tántan.

Huá Tàitai suǐrán wǔshí zuǒyòu le, kànqilai hǎoxiang sānshíjǐsuìde
yàngzi. Měiyīng shuō Huá Tàitaide pífu yòu bái yòu xì, gāo bízi, dà
yǎnjīng. Měiyīng yì tídào gāo bízi wǒ jiù gēn Měiyīng shuō xiàohuar le.
Wǒ shuō gāo bízi yǒu shénmo hǎo kàn, xiàng yáng guǐzi yíyàng. Yǒude
30 péngyou kāi wánxiào jiào wǒ shì Dà Bízi. Měiyīng shuō tài gāole yě bù
hǎo kàn, yào hé biāozhǔn. Shuō gāo bízi hǎo kàn zhèi shì Zhōngguó rénde
kànfǎ, gēn wàiguó rén bù yíyàng. Měiyīng cháng shuō tāde bízi tài ǎi.
Kěshi wǒ rènwei Měiyīngde bízi zuì biāozhǔn, bù gāo bù ǎi de, hěn hǎo
kàn de. Měiyīng hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ yì shuō ta piàoliang jiù shuō wǒ xiā
35 shuō.

Wǒmen liǎngge rén yìbiār liūdazhe yìbiār shuō huà, bùzhǐbùjuéde
zǒuchu hěn yuǎn le. Wǒ xiǎng Měiyīng dàgài hěn lèi le. Wǒmen jiù zài
fùjīnde yíge Guǎngdong fàngǔar qu chí fàn xiūxile yìhuēr.



Wèntí

1. Bái Wénshān shuō qǐng Měiyīng qù chī fàn. Wèi shénmo tāmen xiān méi qù ne?
2. Měiyīng tíyì bù chī fàn dào nǎr qu?
3. Bái Wénshān shuō jīntiān tiānqì zěnmō hǎo yīnggāi zuò shénmo?
4. Tāmen wèi shénmo méi zhào xiàng ne?
5. Měiyīng gēn Wénshān shuō Huá Xiānshengde píqì zěnmoyàng?
6. Tā shuō Huá Xiānsheng yǒu duō dà suǐshu? Yǒu duō gāo?
7. Nǐ zhīdao yì gōngchǐ shì duōshao gōngfēn ma? Zhōngguó chǐ dà hái shì Yīngguó chǐ dà?
8. Huá Xiānsheng duìyu chuān yīfu jiǎngjiu ma?
9. Huá jia liǎngge érzi de píqì dōu yíyàng ma? Qǐng nǐ shuōshuo tāmen liǎngge rén de yàngzi.
10. Tāmen mǎi xié mǎidezháo mǎibuzháo? Wèi shénmo mǎibuzháo?
11. Tāmen liǎngge érzi dōu xǐhuan zuò shénmo?
12. Qǐng nǐ shuōshuo dà érzide míngzi shì shénmo yìsi.
13. Èr érzi sīle yǐhòu Huá Tàitai zěnmoyàng?
14. Huá Tàitai zěnmō pàoliang qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō.
15. Huá Tàitai yǒu duō dà suǐshu le? Kànqilai xiàng duō dà niánji?
16. Wénshān gēn Měiyīng zǒude yuǎn bu yuǎn?
17. Měiyīng wèi shénmo ràng Wénshān bānguoqu yào cháng gēn Huá Tàitai tán?
18. Měiyīng zài lùshang liūdàle bàntiān tā lèi le méi you?
19. Wénshān shuō rénjiā dōu jiào ta shì shénmo?
20. Nǐ zhīdao Zhōngguó rén jiào wàiguó rén shì shénmo?
21. Yàoshi nǐ gēn nǐ nǚ péngyou yíkuài chūqu dào le chī fàn de shíhou nǐ zěnmō bàn?

22. Yàoshi nǐ nǚ péngyou shuō xiān bu chī fàn liūda nènmo yìhuěr nǐ hái qǐng bu qǐng ta le?
23. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng gěi nǐ nǚ péngyou zhào xiàng kěshi nǐ wàngle dài zhàoxiàngjī le nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo?
24. Nǐ yào gàosu nǐ péngyou shuō lìngwài yíge péngyoude píqi hěn hǎo nǐ zěnmō shuō?
25. Yàoshi yǒu rén gàosu nǐ yíge rén sīle nǐ shuō shénmo?
26. Yàoshi nǐ rènshi de yíge tàitai rénjiā wén'ni zhǎngde shénmo yàngzi nǐ zěnmō gàosu ta?
27. Yàoshi bié rén wèn nǐ nǐde péngyoude píqi zěnmoyàng nǐ zěnmō huídá?
28. Yàoshi nǐde jiǎo tài dàle mǎibuzháo xié nǐ yīnggāi zěnmō bàn?
29. Yàoshi nǐ shì jīnshíyān zěnmō bàn?
30. Yàoshi bié rén hěn nánguò nǐ yīnggāi zuò shénmo?

Dialogue: After Vincent White and Gao Meiying leave the Hua home, they chat along the way about each member of the Hua family.

White: Meiying, let's go eat [first], shall we?

Mei : Are you hungry?

White: No, but I'm afraid you might be. I ate too much this morning, and I'm not the least bit hungry [up to now].

Mei : Neither am I.

White: If we don't eat where shall we go? It's not the right time for seeing a movie either.

Mei : I suggest we just stroll a while [on the road].

White: Fine. Oh gosh, I didn't bring my camera. It's such nice weather today we should take some pictures.

Mei : I didn't think of it either when we were at home. We'll take some later.

White: Meiying, Mrs. Hua is very nice [as a person]. What sort of person is Mr. Hua?

Mei : Uncle Hua is an awfully fine person. He has a nice disposition, gets along very well with everybody, and never gets angry. His attitude toward people is really nice.

White: How old is he?

Mei : About the same as Aunt Hua, perhaps fifty or so. He's of medium height, neither tall nor short, probably five feet eight or nine inches.

White: Are you speaking of English or Chinese feet? There are many (different) feet nowadays—English feet, Chinese feet, meters.

Mei : I mean English feet.

White: Then he's about as tall as Mr. Gao?

Mei : My father is a little shorter than he is. He's a little stouter than my father. There's something wrong with his ears. He doesn't hear clearly.

White: Is he a little deaf?

Mei : A little. But sometimes when you talk to him he's thinking of something else and doesn't notice. In unimportant things he's very absent-minded. He's not particular about his clothes. He doesn't remember [lit. know] to change his clothes no matter how soiled. Aunt Hua has to remind him to change.

White: Mrs. Hua is very particular in her dress.

Mei : Uncle Hua buys new shoes only when his are all worn out. He is always neglecting to comb his hair, and he has bushy [lit. heavy] eyebrows.

White: How come you know them so well?

Mei : [Of course.] My parents are old friends of Uncle Hua and Aunt Hua, so we all see (each other) frequently.

White: Their two sons, what about them [lit. what sort of persons]?

Mei : Both were* well-developed, healthy, and smart.

White: It's strange that though both were healthy, the second son passed away.

Mei : Yes indeed. He became ill very suddenly and died in less than two days.

White: His death was really tragic.

Mei : The older son, like his father, is near-sighted and wears glasses. Both sons were tall.

White: As tall as I am?

Mei : Just about. Both were six feet tall. Both of them had big feet and had to have their shoes made to order. They couldn't find their size.

White: Like me. When I buy shoes in China I also have to have them made to order.

Mei : Both of them liked to exercise. They had brawny arms, long legs, big hands, long fingers, and hair all over their arms. Don't you think they sound like foreigners?

White: The way you describe them they surely do resemble foreigners.

Mei : The second son had an awfully nice disposition, like Uncle Hua. He liked to kid around.

White: "The good don't live long."

* In Chinese the same verb can be used in speaking of both the living older son and the deceased younger son. Here and elsewhere below, several Chinese verbs have been rendered in the past tense, since English verbs must show tense; this results in a clumsy rendition of the tenseless Chinese forms.

Mei : After he died, Aunt Hua was heartbroken and wept day in day out. My mother went every day to comfort her.

White: How is she now?

Mei : She's a lot better now. After you move in, when she's at home take every opportunity you can to talk with Aunt Hua so as to take her mind off her son.

White: What's the eldest son like [in temperament]?

Mei : He's rather impatient [in temperament]. He's an intense person.

White: What's he like toward other people? What if we don't get along [later] when I go to live at their home?

Mei : That can't be. He's just of an intense nature. Toward friends he's very nice. His being an intense person means he wants to do everything in a hurry, not that he gets into a temper with people.

White: What's the older son's name?

Mei : [He's called] Hua Xuexin.

White: Huá I know; it's the Huá [China] in Zhonghuá [China]. Isn't Xué the xué [study] in xuéwen [learning]? But which word xīn is the xīn?

Mei : It's the xīn in xīn jiù [new old].

White: Oh, I get it. His name means 'study new things,' right?

Mei : Right.

White: Mrs. Hua seems [lit. has grown to be] very young. She appears to be thirty-odd.

Mei : Yes, although she's about fifty, you can't tell it—white and delicate skin, small mouth and big eyes, a high nose, very black hair.

White: Are you saying that a high nose is attractive?

Mei : Of course. A high nose is so attractive!

White: Doesn't that make one a foreign devil? Do you think my nose is attractive? People call me Big Nose.

Mei : According to the Chinese point of view, a high nose is beautiful.

White: On this, Chinese and foreign views differ. I believe that if a nose is too high it's ugly.

Mei : But I didn't say too high a nose is attractive. If it's over a foot long of course it's ugly. It must be [only so high as to accord with the] normal.

White: Meiying, guess who has the most perfect [lit. standard] nose?

Mei : I don't know.

White: Your nose is perfect, neither high nor low. I believe you have the most attractive nose.

Mei : Quit your kidding. My! Where have we walked to? We've been talking

and walking and without realizing it have come all this way. How many miles do you suppose it's been?

White: We've walked [out] quite a distance. You must be tired. Let's go eat [first]. Is there a restaurant nearby?

Mei : There's a Cantonese restaurant. (Their) food's not bad.

White: How about our [going and] having some Cantonese food?

Mei : Fine.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. I get up at seven o'clock every morning.
- 2.1. He made a motion in the meeting that the level of middle school education be raised.
- 2.2. I'm opposed to his suggestion.
- 3.1. Let's take a stroll.
- 3.2. Mr. Wang is not at home. He's gone out for a walk.
- 4.1. I'd like to ask you to dinner next week. Would you be free?
- 4.2. I'm planning to have him teach me Chinese. How is he as to scholarship?
- 5.1. He's very nice. He's not at all bad-tempered [lit. He has no temper at all.]
- 5.2. Mr. Wang often gets angry at people.
- 5.3. That man is very learned, only he has a bad temper.
- 6.1. He's a very nice person. He's awfully courteous [to people].
- 6.2. I think he's the nicest person in the world.
- 7.1. He's that congenial whoever he talks to.
- 8.1. I never wear red [clothes].
- 8.2. He's never seen a movie.
- 9.1. You should change your attitude toward students.
- 9.2. His attitude toward me is very bad.
- 10.1. How old is Dr. Wang?
- 10.2. How old do you guess he is?
- 11.1. How much is a second-class railway ticket?
- 11.2. How many classes are there [in all] on this boat? . . . There are three classes—first, second, and third.
- 11.3. We don't stay at first-class hotels. We stay at middle-class ones because first-class ones are too expensive.

- 11.4. Our tickets here include only first and middle class, no third class.
- 12.1. She's grown to be very attractive, only she's too short.
- 13.1. One meter is more than three English feet.
- 13.2. The English foot is smaller than the Chinese foot.
- 14.1. The Chinese foot has [lit. is] ten (Chinese) inches [to the foot].
- 14.2. A meter is a hundred centimeters.
- 15.1. Mr. Wang is six feet two inches tall.
- 16.1. Chinese say big ears are nice.
- 17.1. There's something wrong with my eyes. After I've read a lot they're uncomfortable.
- 17.2. Something's gone wrong with my car. No matter how I try I can't get it to go.
- 18.1. Did you hear distinctly what I said?
- 18.2. Can you see clearly sitting there?
- 18.3. I can't see clearly the characters you're writing.
- 18.4. If you sit here you can hear very clearly.
- 18.5. Sir, I can't see [very clearly] the characters you've written.
- 18.6. He wrote out the list very very clearly.
- 19.1. Please say it again. I'm a little deaf.
- 19.2. He's [a] deaf [person]. When you talk to him he can't hear.
- 20.1. That person is very careless in doing things.
- 20.2. He [that man] is always so absent-minded.
- 21.1. He's always very agreeable no matter who he's with.
- 21.2. Any day will do.
- 22.1. My shoes don't fit [in wearing].
- 23.1. My hat is torn. I must buy a new one.
- 23.2. My clothes are all worn out.
- 23.3. Who smashed this glass?
- 24.1. There are a lot of foreigners who have blond hair.
- 25.1. Comb your hair.
- 25.2. This comb was sent to me by a friend.
- 26.1. Some Chinese think heavy eyebrows (mean a person) is intelligent.
- 27.1. Although my mother is very old she's very healthy.
- 28.1. I'm a little near-sighted.
- 28.2. People who are far-sighted can see far but not close.

- 29.1. (People who are) far-sighted or near-sighted all have to wear glasses.
- 30.1. My feet are uncomfortable when I wear this kind of shoes.
- 31.1. To see the movie today you must first reserve tickets. Otherwise you can't buy them.
- 31.2. I want to subscribe to a Chinese newspaper for one month.
- 31.3. Let's first call him and fix a time when to go see him.
- 31.4. When shall we make the trip? Let's decide on a day now.
- 31.5. I'm going to have a suit [of clothes] made. Tell me what store will do the best job.
- 32.1. What size are your shoes? . . . I wear ten and a half.
- 33.1. Let's see [lit. compare] which of us two has the longer arms.
- 34.1. The paper they're using now is all very coarse.
- 35.1. There's something wrong with his left leg, so walking is difficult [lit. inconvenient].
- 35.2. He has one long leg and one short one.
- 36.1. Guess what I have in my left hand?
- 37.1. His fingers are thick and stubby.
- 37.2. How did you damage that toe?
- 38.1. Your dog's hair is really beautiful.
- 39.1. My younger brother is always playing jokes on me.
- 40.1. I wish you a happy birthday.
- 40.2. Tomorrow Professor Wang is celebrating his birthday.
- 41.1. Don't cry. Crying's no use.
- 41.2. I don't know why that child suddenly began to cry.
- 42.1. He cried for a long time. No matter how I tried I couldn't comfort him.
- 42.2. Urge him to study harder hereafter.
- 43.1. [In temperament] he's very impatient.
- 43.2. Do it slowly. What's your rush?
- 43.3. He doesn't like people to kid him. As soon as you start kidding him he gets sore.
- 44.1. By nature he's very impatient.
- 44.2. No matter what [matter] it is he wants to finish it quickly. He's impatient by nature.
- 44.3. Older and younger brother are unlike in temperament. The older brother is impatient [in nature], the younger brother easy-going [in nature].
- 45.1. I get along very well with him.

- 45.2. The two of us get along pretty well together.
- 45.3. His temperament is pretty odd. I can't get along with him.
- 45.4. The two of us don't get along with each other.
- 46.1. My suitcase is very expensive as it's made of leather.
- 46.2. I like to swim in the summer, so my skin gets quite tan [lit. dark].
- 46.3. If you eat fruit here it would be best to peel (it).
- 47.1. The paper in this book is very thin.
- 47.2. I didn't get (what you said). Say it once more.
- 47.3. You've read that character wrong. Look at it again carefully.
- 48.1. What does that child have in his mouth?
- 48.2. His daughter has a little mouth and big eyes, really pretty.
- 49.1. What's happened to his nose? . . . It's broken.
- 50.1. Have you ridden in a ricksha?
- 50.2. Westerners are very fond of traveling.
- 50.3. East of the United States is the Atlantic Ocean.
- 50.4. Now planes can go straight from England to China via the Arctic Ocean.
- 51.1. Do you believe that there are evil spirits?
- 51.2. Chinese call foreigners foreign devils.
- 52.1. According to what you say (I gather that) the two of them get along very badly together.
- 52.2. In your opinion how (do you think) this matter should be handled?
- 52.3. I [went and] handled that matter entirely in accordance with his ideas.
- 52.4. They pay me by the hour for my work.
- 53.1. Your viewpoint is about the same as his.
- 53.2. In my opinion, his illness cannot be cured.
- 54.1. I believe I can never master Chinese characters [in my lifetime].
- 55.1. The houses built by [Engineer] Wang are substandard [lit. not in accordance with the standard].
- 55.2. Pekingese is the standard language of China [lit. of Chinese].
- 55.3. His speech is the standard pronunciation, though.
- 55.4. What did Mr. Wang have as the model in putting up that building?
- 56.1. Time has passed quickly. Before we know it, it's summer again.
- 56.2. Mr. Wang is very capable [in doing things]. Before you know it, he's completed the job.



Review Sentences

1. Are the leather shoes you're wearing [on your feet] American [goods]?
2. I'd like to invite you to have some Chinese food. Do you like it?
3. This road is only half a mile long.
4. It would be embarrassing for me to kid around with him.
5. I must prepare my lessons as we will soon have exams.
6. Anyway you don't have anything to do. Let's go take a walk.
7. He said he would fix a time with you. Did he do so after all or not?
8. The shoes I ordered are the wrong size. I must go exchange them.
9. I'm opposed to this suggestion of yours.
10. I'm of the opinion that his [this] way of doing things is incorrect.
11. My eyes are a little near-sighted and I need to wear glasses.
12. What they do is all in accordance with the standard, since they're specialists.
13. I've come to China to study for my Ph.D.
14. When I buy shoes they don't have my size. I absolutely have to have them made to order.
15. Yesterday I sent my younger brother a very nice story book.
16. He handled all my affairs for me very well [lit. clearly].
17. I must sit in front or I won't hear clearly.
18. I [already] spoke with him on the phone yesterday.

19. I've [already] made an appointment with Mr. Wang for us to go together in the afternoon to arrange to have some clothes made.
20. I suppose you still remember how many centimeters there are in a meter?

Notes

1. The expression bù zhīdào '(I) don't know' introducing a question makes it less blunt and more polite:

Bù zhīdào nǐ shénmo shíhou yǒu gōngfu bǎ zhèige zuòyìzuò. 'When will you have time to do this?'

2. The Chinese system of linear measurement includes cùn 'inch,' chǐ 'foot,' and lǐ 'mile,' equal respectively to about 1.41 English inches, 1.41 English feet, and 1/3 of an English mile. To specify that the Chinese system of measurement is being used, one can say Zhōngguocùn 'Chinese inch,' Zhōngguochǐ 'Chinese foot,' and Zhōngguolǐ 'Chinese mile.' The forms for specifying the English system are Yīngcùn 'English inch,' Yīngchǐ 'English foot,' and Yīnglǐ 'English mile.' The metric system is widely used for scientific purposes: the forms include gōngfēn 'centimeter,' gōngchǐ 'meter,' and gōnglǐ 'kilometer.'

3. To specify how long (cháng), wide (kuān), high (gāo), or big (dà) something is, one uses the pattern [noun] yǒu [dimension] (nènmò) SV: Or, if the stative verb is specified elsewhere in the context, it is sufficient to say [noun] yǒu [dimension]:

Zhèige zhuōzi yǒu bā chǐ nènmò cháng. 'This table is eight feet(long).'

4. In China, where old age is traditionally much respected, the term shòu 'long life' or 'birthday (of an older person)' is widely used. In speaking of a person of forty years or more one might say:

Tā míngtiān zuò shòu. 'He is celebrating his birthday tomorrow.'

In speaking of a younger person the corresponding form would be:

Tā míngtiān guò shēngri. 'He is celebrating [lit. passing] his birthday tomorrow.'

One can say to an older person:

Zhù nín wàn shòu. 'I wish you a long life [of 10,000 years].'

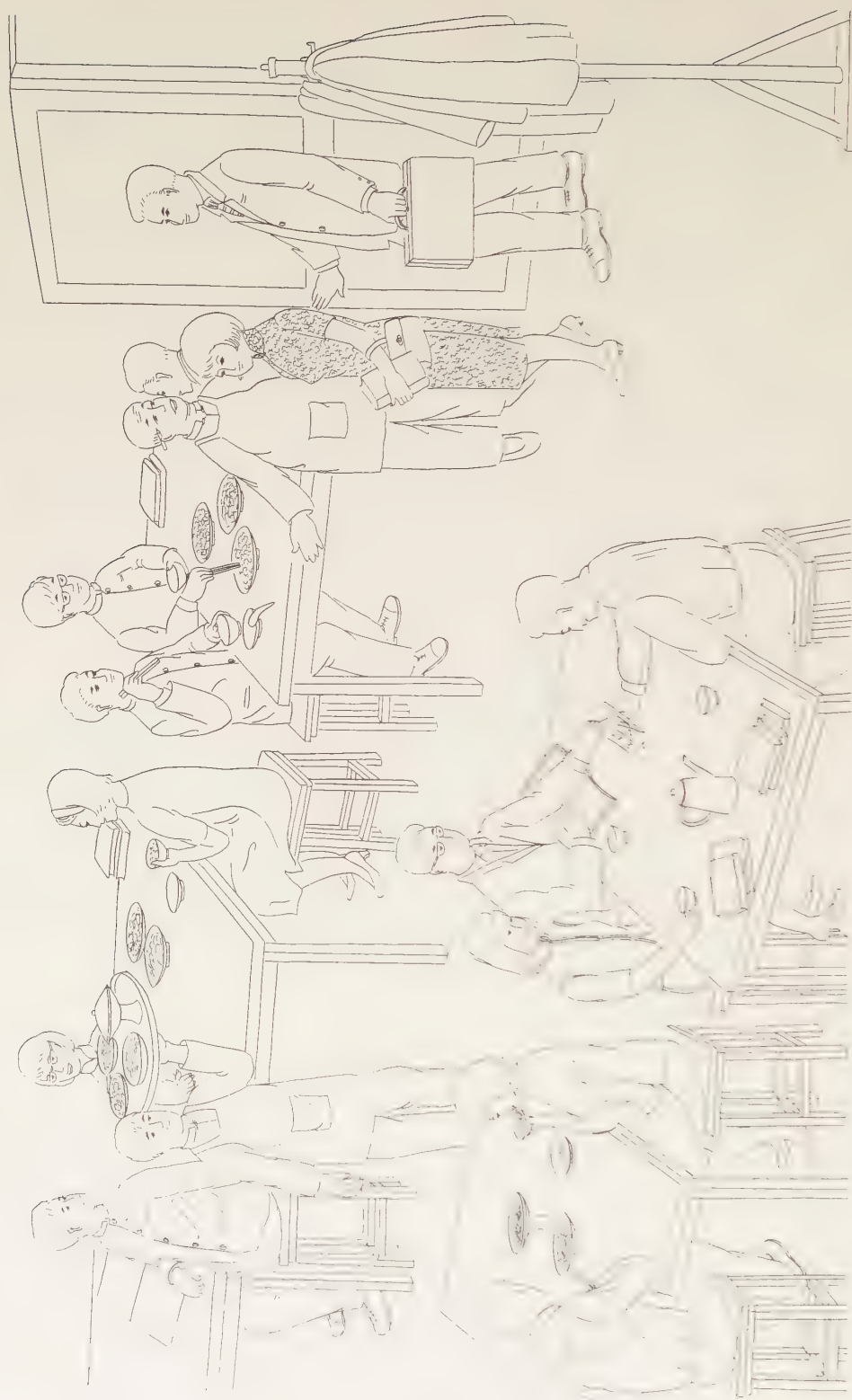
The character for shòu is frequently displayed as a sort of good-luck charm. The word also appears in a popular saying:

Hǎo rén bù cháng shòu. 'Good people don't live long (but the unworthy do).'

5. Meiying's description of Mrs. Hua presents a widely held Chinese concept of female beauty. Note particularly the reference to gāo bízi 'high nose.' Such a nose, in contrast to a flat one, was considered beautiful even before the advent of Westerners with their prominent noses.

6. The word guǐ 'evil spirit, devil' is included in a derived form, guǐzi, which refers in a derogatory fashion to an outsider, not only from abroad but also from outside one's own locality. Yáng guǐzi specifically refers to a 'foreign devil' (i.e., non-Chinese). It has been taken up by Westerners as a humorous designation for themselves, as in the sentence:

Tiān bú pà, dì bú pà, jiù pà yáng guǐzi shuō Zhōngguó huà. 'I'm not afraid of heaven or earth, but just of foreign devils speaking Chinese.'



“Nǐmen zhède shēngyì hěn hǎo wa.”

Dì Shíkè. Chī Fànguǎr

Huìhuà: Bái Wénshān gēn Gāo Měiyīng zài yíge Guǎngdong fànguǎr
chī zhōngfàn.

Huǒ: Liǎngwèi lái le!

Bái: Yǒu zuòr ma?

5 Huǒ: Nín jǐwèi?

Bái: Jiù liǎngge rén.

Huǒ: Yǒu. Nín qǐng, nín qǐng.

Bái: Wǒmen jiù zài zhèr zuò ba?

Měi: Hěn hǎo.

10 Huǒ: Nín kàn càidār. Wǒ gěi nín qī chá qu.

Bái: Hǎo. . . .

Huǒ: Nín yào dāo chā ma?

Bái: Xièxie nǐ, wǒ yòng kuàizi. Nǐmen zhèrde shēngyì hěn hǎo wa.

Huǒ: Kě bu shì ma! Yí dào zhōumò jiù zènmo mángde bùdéliǎo.

15 Bái: Měiyīng, qǐng nǐ diǎn cài. Guǎngdong cài wǒ bú dà dòng, wǒ bú
huì diǎn.

Měi: Nǐ kànzhe càidār suībiàn diǎn yíge.

Bái: Láojià. Wánquán nǐ diǎn déle.

20 Měi: Wǒmen yào yíge zhá dà xiā, yíge chǎo qīngcài. Yào shénmo chǎo
qīngcài ne? Nǐ chī kǔ guā bu chī?

Bái: Wǒ bú dà xǐhuan chī. Nǐ ne?

Měi: Wǒ yě bù zènmo xǐhuan. Tài kǔ le. Nènmo wǒmen yào yíge niú
ròu chǎo làjiāo. Tāng ne, lái yíge huótuǐ dōnggua tāng. Chī fàn.

Bái: Huǒji, gěi wǒmen lái zhèi liǎngge cài. Zài lái yìdiǎr kāishuǐ.

25 Huǒ: Shì, xiānsheng.

Měi: Wǒmen xiān chī yìdiǎr diǎnxīn. Huǒji, xiān lái yìdiér páigu yìdiér
qiāncéng gāo. Zài bǎ yán gēn hújiāomiàn ná lai.

Huǒ: Shì, xiǎojié.

Bái: Zènmo, xiān chī diǎnxīn?

- 30 Měi: Guǎngdong fànguǎr suǐshí dōu yǒu diǎnxīn. Nǐ chángcháng zhèige páigu hěn hǎo chī.
 Bái: Páigu hěn hǎo chī a.
 Měi: Guǎngdong chīde yǒu míng. Nǐ zhīdao ma? “Chīzai Guǎngzhōu.”
 Bái: Zhōngguo fàn gè yǒu gè de hǎo.
- 35 Měi: Yě kéyi zènmō shuō.
 Bái: Zhōngguo rén dōng nán xī běi de kǒuwèi dōu bù yíyàng.
 Měi: Sù yǔ shuō: “Nán tián, běi xián, dōng là, xī suān.”
 Bái: Yìsi jiù shì shuō nánfāng rén xǐhuan chī tiánde, běifāng rén xǐhuan chī xiánde, dōngbiar rén xǐhuan chī làde, xībiar rén xǐhuan chī suānde, shì bu shì?
- 40 Měi: Qíshí yě bù yídìng. Xiàng Húnán Sìchuān bìng bú shì Zhōngguode dōngbù. Rén dōu xǐhuan chī làde. Dōu chī làjiāo chīde hěn lihai.
 Bái: Wǒ yě shì xǐhuan chī làde.
 Měi: Nǐ shì Húnán rén shì Sìchuān rén?
- 45 Bái: Nǐ bù zhīdao ma, wǒ fùqīn mǔqīn, yíwèi shì Húnán rén, yíwèi shì Sìchuān rén.
 Měi: Guàibude nǐ ài chī làde ne!
 Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ rènwei nǎrde cài hǎo chī?
 Měi: Bú shì hǎo chī bù hǎo chī de wèntí, shì gè rén kǒuweide wèntí.
- 50 Bái: Zhōngguo rén duìyú chī kě zhēn jiǎngjiu.
 Měi: Zuò Zhōngguo cài kéyi shuō shì yìzhōng yìshu.
 Bái: Zhēn shì yìzhōng yìshu. Nǎrde cài yě bǐbuliǎo.
 Měi: Hái yǒu. Zuò Zhōngguo cài bú xiàng Xī cài zuóliáo dōu yídìng de, fènliang dōu děi liángchulai. Zhōngguo cài quán píng jīngyan.
- 55 Dàshifu zuò cài yòng zuóliáo méi yǒu liáng fènliang de.
 Bái: Kěshì hěn zhǔn.
 Měi: Zuò Zhōngguo cài zuì yào jīnde shì shíhoude chángduǎn. Yàoshi chúzi zuò cài dōu děi liáng fènliang nǎr lái de jī ya?
 Bái: Zènmō lái bujī ne?
- 60 Měi: Bǐrú shuō cháo cài yào huǒ dà, chǎode kuài. Yǒude dōngxī shǎowēi duō cháo yíxià jiù bù hǎo chī le.
 Bái: Zuò Zhōngguo fàn kě 'zhēn bù róngyi.
 Měi: Qíshí yě bújiànde nán.
 Bái: Zènmō yì shuō nǐ xiànzài hěn huì zuò fàn le?
- 65 Měi: Yě méi you. Búguò cháng kàn mǔqīn zuò, shǎowēi zhīdao yìdiǎn jiù shì le.
 Bái: Nǐ duì zuò fàn yǒu xìngqù ma?

Měi: Wǒ dào shì bù tāoyàn zuò fàn.

Bái: Zhōngguó rén chī fàn de xíguān shì bu shì dōu yíyàng?

- 70 Měi: Xiān chī fàn hòu hē tāng dōu shì yíyàng de. Bù yíyàngde shì běifāng rén xīhuan chī miàn. Tāmen ná jiǎozi miàn dàng fàn chī. Nánfāng rén ná jiǎozi miàn zuò diǎnxin, zhèngshì chī fàn shì chī mǐ fàn.

Bái: Jīntiān de cài bú cuò. Wǒmen lái diǎr shénmo tián diǎnxian ne?

Měi: Wèn huǒji dōu yǒu shénmo.

- 75 Bái: Huǒji, nǐmen dōu yǒu shénmo tián diǎnxin?

Huǒ: Yǒu liánzǐ gēng, júzi gēng.

Bái: Lái liángge júzi gēng. Měiyīng, júzi gēng kéyi ba?

Měi: Kéyi.

Bái: Fàn chīwánle wǒmen dào nǎr qu wárwar qu?

- 80 Měi: Yǐjīng sàndiǎn le. Wǒmen huíqu ba. Nǐ míngtiān zǎochen jiù bānzǒu le. Huíqu gēn fùqīn liáoliao tiār. Wǎnshàng bú shì hái yǒu kèren ma?

Bái: Zǎo yìdiǎr huíqu yě hǎo. Wǒmen gǎi tiān zài wár qu.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (4) zuòr place (i.e., seat, table, etc.) (N)
dìng zuòr reserve a place (seat, table, etc.), make reservations
- 1.1. Jīntiān wǎnshàng qu chī fàn wǒmen děi xiān dìng ge zuòr.
- 2.0. (12) dāo, dāor, dāozi knife (N) (measure: bǎ)
- 2.1. Zhèibǎ dāo bù gānjīng.
- 2.2. Chī shuǐguǒr yòng xiǎo dāor dǎ pí.
- 2.3. Zhōngguó rén zuò fàn yòng dāozi. Chī fàn bú yòng dāozi.
- 3.0. (12) chā(zi) fork (N)
dāo chā knife and fork

- 3.1. Zhōngguo rén chī diǎnxin yǒude shíhou yòng chāzi.
 3.2. Yòng dāo chā róngyi hái shì yòng kuàizi róngyi?
- 4.0. (13) shēngyì (commercial) business [lit. life meaning]
 4.1. Qǐng wèn, nín shì zuò shénmo shēngyì de?
- 5.0. (14) zhōumò week end (N)
 běn zhōumò this week end
 shàng, xià (yíge) zhōumò last, next week end
 5.1. Běn zhōumò wǒmen qù lǚxíng.
 5.2. Shàng yíge zhōumò wǒmen jiā qǐng kè.
 5.3. Xià liǎngge zhōumò wǒ kěnéng dōu bú zài jiā.
- 6.0. (15) diǎn read or select from a list, count off (TV)
 diǎn míng call a roll
 diǎn cài select courses from a menu
 diǎndào A de míngzi call A's name
 6.1. Bié shuō huà. Lǎoshī diǎn míng le.
 6.2. Zhāng Xiānsheng, qǐng nín diǎn cài.
 6.3. Xiānsheng diǎndào nǐde míngzi le. Nǐ méi tīngjian ma?
- 7.0. (19) zhá fry (usually in deep fat) (TV)
 7.1. Yóu duō shì zhá de, yóu shǎo shì jiān de.
- 8.0. (19) qīngcài fresh vegetables (N) [lit. green vegetable]
 8.1. Duō chī qīngcài duì rén hěn yǒu hǎochu.
- 9.0. (20) kǔ bitter (literal and figurative), hard (SV)
 kǔgōng hard physical labor
 zuò kǔgōng do hard physical labor
 chī kǔ suffer [lit. eat bitter]
 kǔ wèr bitter taste
 9.1. Zěnmó zhèige cài shì kǔ wèr de?
 9.2. Tā zuò de shì kǔgōng. Yì tiān zuòdao wǎn.
 9.3. Tā hěn néng chī kǔ.
- 10.0. (20) guā melon (N)
 dōngguā winter melon
 xīguā watermelon [lit. Western melon]
 huángguā cucumber [lit. yellow melon]
 10.1. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan hē dōngguā tāng.

- 10.2. Xīgua shì xiàtiande shuǐguǒ.
- 10.3. Zhū ròu chǎo huángguā shì fēicháng hǎo chī de cài.
- 11.0. (23) làjiāo peppers (N) [lit. hot pepper]
- 11.1. Làjiāo chǎo jī fēicháng hǎo chī.
- 12.0. (23) huótuǐ ham (N) [lit. fire leg]
- 12.1. Zhōngguó huótuǐ gēn Měiguó huótuǐ wèr bù yíyàng.
- 13.0. (24) kāishuǐ boiled [lit. opened] water
shāo kāishuǐ boil [lit. roast] water
shuǐ kāi le water has boiled
- 13.1. Wǒmen yào hē chá. . . . Hǎo, wǒ qu shāo kāishuǐ qu.
- 13.2. Shuǐ kāi le méi you? . . . Hái méi you ne.
- 14.0. (26) diér plate, dish (M, N)
diézi plate, dish (N)
- 14.1. Wǒ yào yìdiér tián diǎnxin.
- 14.2. Zuótian wǒ péngyou sòng wǒ liǎngge diézi. Hěn piàoliang.
- 15.0. (26) páigu spareribs (N) [lit. lined-up bones] (Note 1)
- 15.1. Zhá páigu hóng shāo páigu dōu shì cài, bú shì diǎnxin.
- 16.0. (27) gāo cake
qiāncéng gāo thousand-layer cake (Note 1)
jīdàn gāo cake made with eggs
- 16.1. Nǐ chīguo qiāncéng gāo ma?
- 16.2. Jīdàn gāo yǒu liǎngzhǒng. Yìzhǒng shì diǎnxin, yìzhǒng shì cài.
- 17.0. (27) yán salt (N)
- 17.1. Zuò jī tāng bú fàng jiàngyóu, jiù fàng yán.
- 18.0. (27) hújiāomiàn, hújiāomiànr (ground) pepper (N)
- 18.1. Nǐ zài fàng yìdiǎr hújiāomiànr jiù hǎo chīde duō le.
- 19.0. (30) suíshí at any time desired (MA) [lit. follow time]
- 19.1. Zhèrde gōnggòng qìchē hěn fāngbian. Suíshí dōu yǒu.
- 20.0. (30) cháng taste (TV)
- 20.1. Qǐng nǐ chángchang zhèige càide wèr zěnmoyàng?
- 20.2. Wǒ chángbuchūlái nèige càide wèr hǎo bu hǎo.
- 21.0. (33) Guǎngzhōu Canton (PW) (Note 2)
- 21.1. Guǎngzhōu fànguǎr yǒu hěn duō tèbiéde diǎnxin.
- 22.0. (34) gè each, every (Note 3)

gèzhǒng gèyàng(r)de all kinds (of)

gèshì gèyàng(r)de all sorts (of)

gè rén each person

gègè(r) each, every

- 22.1. Gè rénde xìngqu bù yíyàng.
- 22.2. Gètào yīfude yàngzi dōu bù yíyàng.
- 22.3. Nèige dà gōngsī lǐtōu mài gèshì gèyàng(r)de nǚrén yīfu.
- 22.4. Wáng Xiǎojie xīhuan dài shǒushi. Tā gèzhǒng gèyàng(r)de shǒushi dōu yǒu.
- 22.5. Tāmen jǐge rén gègède kànfǎ bù yíyàng.
- 23.0. (34) gè V gè de each V's his own (Note 3)
gè yǒu gè de N each has his own N
- 23.1. Jīntian wǒmen shéi yě bié qǐng kè. Gè chī gè de.
- 23.2. Tāmen liǎngge rén gè yǒu gède chángchū.
- 24.0. (37) súyǔ proverb (N) [lit. common saying] (Note 4)
- 24.1. Gè guó dōu yǒu gè guóde súyǔ.
- 25.0. (37) xián salty (SV)
- 25.1. Cài bú yào zuòde tài xián le.
- 26.0. (37) là (peppery) hot (SV)
- 26.1. Wǒ zuì xīhuan chī làde.
- 27.0. (41) Sìchuān Szuchwan (province) [lit. four streams]
- 27.1. Wǒ zài Sìchuān zhùguo bānián.
- 28.0. (42) -bù section (Note 4)
dōngbù, xībù, nánbù, běibù, zhōngbù eastern, western, southern, northern, central section
- 28.1. Zhōngguo zhōngbùde tiānqì méi yǒu běibù nènmo lěng.
- 29.0. (42) lìhai severe, serious, extreme, powerful (SV) [lit. severe harm]
- 29.1. Zhèrde dōngxi guìde lìhai.
- 30.0. (47) guài blame (TV)
bú guài don't blame; no wonder (that)
guàibude no wonder (that)
nán guài hard to blame; no wonder (that)
- 30.1. Tā chē huài le. Bú guài tā lái wǎn le.
- 30.2. Oh, Wáng Xiānsheng bìng le. Guàibude zuótiān tā méi lái ne.
- 30.3. Tā kǎode bù hǎo. . . . Nán guài tā. Tā bìng le.

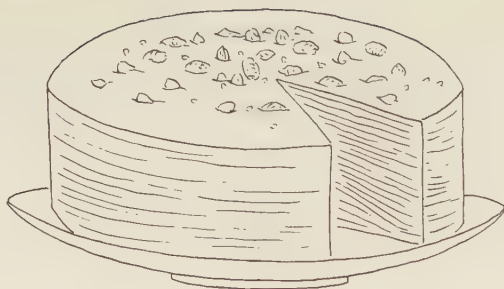
- 31.0. (51) yìshu art (N) [lit. art skill]
yìshujiā artist
- 31.1. Tā shì yíwèi hěn yǒu míng de dà yìshujiā.
- 32.0. (53) zuóliào(r) ingredients; spices [lit. make materials]
- 32.1. Zhèige cài dōu fàng shénmo zuóliào?
- 33.0. (54) fèiliang quantity (N) [lit. portion measure]
- 33.1. Zhèige fèiliang gòu bu gòu?
- 34.0. (54) liáng measure (out) (TV)
- 34.1. Nǐ liángyiliáng zhèizhāng zhuōzi yǒu duó cháng?
- 35.0. (54) píng be due to, because of (V)
- 35.1. Tā shū niàn de nènmo hǎo bǐng bú shì ta cōngmíng shì píng ta yònggōng.
- 36.0. (55) dàshifu chef, cook (N) [lit. great master person]
- 36.1. Wǒ jiāde dàshifu jiù huì zuò Guǎngdong cài.
- 37.0. (57) chángduǎn length (N) [lit. long short] (Note 5)
kuānzhǎi width (N) [lit. wide narrow]
kuàimàn speed (N) [lit. fast slow]
dàxiǎo size (N) [lit. big little]
gāo'ǎi height (N) [lit. tall short]
lěngrè temperature (N) [lit. hot cold]
yuǎnjìn distance (N) [lit. far near]
qīngzhòng weight (N) [lit. light heavy]
pàngshòu weight (N) [lit. fat thin]
- 37.1. Nǐ liángliang zhèizhāng shūzhuōde chángduǎn.
- 37.2. Zhèige zhuōzide kuānzhǎi bú gòu.
- 37.3. Tāmen liǎngge rén zuò shìde kuàimàn chàbuduō.
- 37.4. Wǒmen liǎngge rén jiǎode dàxiǎo dōu yíyàng.
- 37.5. Nèige xiǎojie hěn piàoliang, jiù shì gāo'ǎi bù hé biāozhǔn.
- 37.6. Nǐ juéde zhèige wūzide lěngrè zěnmoyàng?
- 37.7. Wǒ zhǎo fángzi zuì yào jǐnde shì zhùyì tāde yuǎnjìn.
- 37.8. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèi liǎngge lùyīnjīde qīngzhòng bǐyí.
- 37.9. Tāde pàngshòu zhèng hé biāozhǔn.
- 38.0. (58) chúzi chef, cook (N)
- 38.1. Nǐmen jiā chúzi cài zuòde zhēn bu cuò.
- 39.0. (58) láidejí be able to do something within an indicated period [lit. come able attain]

- láibují be unable to do something within an indicated period [lit. come unable attain]
- 39.1. Nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng dào chē zhàn yídìng láidejí.
 39.2. Nèige fànguǎrde shēngyì zhēn hǎo. Sānge dàshífu chǎo cài dōu láibují.
- 40.0. (60) huǒ fire (N)
 diǎn huǒ light a fire
- 40.1. Jiān jīdàn bú yào tài dàde huǒ.
 40.2. Bié ràng xiǎo háizi diǎn huǒ.
- 41.0. (60) shǎowēi, shāowēi slightly (AD) [lit. slight minute]
 41.1. Ta hěn cōngmíng, jiù shì bú yònggōng. Yàoshì shǎowēi yònggōng yídìng kǎode hěn hǎo.
- 42.0. (61) xià(r) time, times (M) (Note 6)
 yíxià once; a moment
- 42.1. Wǒ dǎle shíjíxià mén yě méi rén kāi.
 42.2. Nǐ gēn ta shuō yíxià, wǒ zǒu le.
 42.3. Bú yào gěi wǒ qī chá. Wǒ zuò yíxià jiù zǒu.
- 43.0. (63) bújiànde by no means certain, not necessarily [lit. not see get]
 43.1. Jīntian yào xià yǔ. . . . Bújiànde ba.
- 44.0. (65) bú guò not exceed
 búguò only, it's just that (MA)
- 44.1. Tāde gèzi bú guò wúchǐ sìcùn.
 44.2. Nǐ Zhōngguo huà shuōde hěn hǎo wa. . . . Bù hǎo, búguò wǒ cháng shuō jiù shì le.
 44.3. Kàn tāde yàngzi tā búguò yǒu èrshíjǐsuì.
- 45.0. (68) tǎoyàn annoying, boring, distasteful; be annoyed (with), be bored with (SV)
- 45.1. Wǒ zuì tǎoyàn nèige háizi le. Tā lǎo kū.
 45.2. Tā shuō huà wǒ hěn tǎoyàn.
 45.3. Tā shuō de huà hěn tǎoyàn. Yìdiǎr yìsì dōu méi yǒu.
- 46.0. (71) dàng (take) as or for (V)
 A ná ba B dàng(zuò) C A (mis)takes B as C
- 46.1. Tā duì wǒ tài hǎo. Tā bǎ wǒ dàng tāde dìdì yíyàng.
 46.2. Wǒ ná yán dàng táng le.
 46.3. Wǒ bǎ tā dàngzuò tā dìdì le.
- 47.0. (72) zhèngshì formally, officially, properly (AD)

- 47.1. Wǒmen xuéxiào sānhào cái zhèngshì shàng kè ne.
- 48.0. (72) mǐ rice (grain) (N) (Note 7)
- 48.1. Zhōngguo rén nánfāng rén chī mǐ, běifāng rén chī miàn.
- 49.0. (76) liánzǐ lotus seeds (N)
- 49.1. Zài Měiguó liánzǐ hěn shǎo chīdezáo.
- 50.0. (76) gēng soup (usually sweet) (N)
- 50.1. Liánzǐ gēng shì táng gēn liánzǐ zuòde.
- 51.0. (76) júzi orange, tangerine (N)
- júzi shuǐ orange juice
- 51.1. Wǒ měitiān zǎoshang hē yìbēi júzi shuǐ.
- 52.0. (81) tiān weather (N)
- tán tiān chat
- 52.1. Tiān hěn hǎo. Wǒmen chūqu wárwar.
- 52.2. Méi shì. Wǒmen tán tiān ne.
- 53.0. (81) liáo chat
- liáo tiān chat
- 53.1. Nǐ yǒu gōngfu ma? Wǒmen liǎngge rén liáoliao.
- 53.2. Nǐmen liǎngge rén zěnmó lǎo liáo tiān bú niàn shū wa?
- 54.0. (83) gǎi shíhou change the time (VO)
- gǎi (yíge) shíhou some other time (MA)
- gǎi rìzi change the day or date (VO)
- gǎi (yì)tiān some other day (MA)
- 54.1. Jīntian wǎnshang nèige huì gǎile shíhou le, gǎi bādiǎn zhōng kāi le.
- 54.2. Wǔdiǎn zhōng wǒ yǒu shì. Gǎi yíge shíhou dào nín nèr qù hǎo bu hǎo?
- 54.3. Wǒmen dīng de shì jīntian qu lǔxíng. Yīnwei tiānqì bù hǎo gǎi rìzi le.
- 54.4. Zhèige gǎi tiān zài shuō. Wǒmen xiān zuò biéde.

Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Zhèige zhōumò wǒmen xuéxiào kāi yùndong huì.
2. Yīnwei míngdārshang méi yǒu wǒde míngzi, suóyì lǎoshī méi diǎn wǒde míng.
3. Ta hěn néng chī kǔ. Suírán méi qián ta háishi hěn gāoxìng.



Huǒji bǎ càidār nágualai yǐhòu wǒ yíkàn shàngbiar dōu shì tèbiéde
cài míngzi. Wǒ jiù qǐng Měiyīng diǎn cài. Měiyīng diǎn liǎngge cài yíge
tāng. Tā diǎn de shì niú ròu chǎo làjiāo, zhá dà xiā, huótuǐ dōnggua tāng.
Ta diǎnwánle yǐhòu jiù jiào huǒji xiān ná diǎnxin lai chī. Guǎngdong
10 fànguar suǐshí dōu yǒu diǎnxin. Wǒmen chī fàn yǐqián chī de shì páigu
gēn qiāncéng gāo. Chī fàn yǐhòu yòu chīle yíge tián diǎnxin júzi gēng.

Huǒji kàn wo shì ge wàiguo rén wèn wo yào dāo chā bú yào. Qíshí
wǒ kāishǐ chī Zhōngguo fàn de shíhou xiān xué yòng kuàizi. Yàoshi chī
Zhōngguo fàn yòng dāo chā búdan bu hǎo chī érqǐè bù hǎo kàn. Rúguǒ
15 chī wàiguo fàn yòng kuàizi chī nǐ shuō hǎo kàn bu hǎo kàn?

Chīzhe fàn de shíhou Měiyīng jiù gēn wǒ tánqilai Zhōngguo rén chī
fàn de xíguan gēn gè dìfang rénde kǒuwei bù yíyàng shénmode. Měiyīng
shuō Guǎngdong chīde jiǎngjiu. Tā shuō sùyǔ shuō: "Chīzai Guǎngzhōu."

Wǒ háishi xīhuan chī běifāng cài. Wǒ chī Guǎngdong cài lǎo juéde
20 tāmen fàngde zuóliar bú gòu. Yǒu rén shuō zuò Guǎngdong cài zhùyì
cài yuánlai de wèr, běifāng cài chī de dōu shì zuóliar de wèr. Nǎrde
cài hǎo chī shì gè rén kǒuwei de guānxi.

Wǒ hěn xīhuan chī làde. Měiyīng gēn wǒ kāi wánxiào shuō nǐ shì
nǎrde rén zènmo ài chī làde? Wǒ gēn ta shuō wǒ fùmǔ shì Húnán rén
25 gēn Sìchuān rén. Wǒ hěn xīhuan chī miàn fàn, xiàng mántou, jiǎozi, miàn,
shénmode.

Zhōngguo rén chī fàn hòu hē tāng. Měiguó rén chī fàn xiān hē tāng.
Zhè shì Zhōngguo rén gēn wàiguo rén chī fàn de xíguanshang bù yíyàng.
Zhōngguo fàn hǎo chī shì hǎo chī, kěshi zuòqilai fèi de shíhou tài duō le.
30 Měiyīng zhèi sānnián lǐtōu duìyú zuò fàn tā dǒngde hěn duō le.

Wǒ hěn xīwang gēn Měiyīng zài yíkuài duō tántan, suóyi wǒ xiǎng gēn
Měiyīng dào nǎr qu wárwar qu. Kěshi Měiyīng shuō shíhou yǐjīng bù zǎo

le, ràng wǒ huíqù gēn Gāo Xiānsheng duō tántan. Wǒ xiǎng yě duì.
Bìngqiě jīntiān wǎnshàng Gāo Xiānsheng hái wèi wǒ qīnglě jīwèi kèren.

35 Suóyì wǒmen jiù cóng fànguǎr huí jiā le.



Wèntí

1. Bái Wénshān gēn Gāo Měiyīng tāmen liǎngge rén zài nǎr chī de fàn?
2. Bái Wénshān juéde zhèige fànguǎrde càidār zěnmoyàng?
3. Chī Guǎngdong fànguǎr gēn běifāng fànguǎr yǒu shénmo bù yíyàng?
4. Quán Zhōngguó rénde kǒuwei dōu yíyàng ma? Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Zhōngguó dōng xī nán běi gè dìfangde rén tāmen dōu xǐhuan chī shénmo wèr?
5. Guānyu chī, Zhōngguó yǒu jù sù yǔ zěnmō shuō?
6. Měiyīng gēn Wénshān tāmen liǎngge rén chī de shénmo diǎnxīn?
7. Zhèige fànguǎrde huǒji shuō tāmen shénmo shíhòu zuì máng?
8. Měiyīng duì zuò fàn yǒu xìngqù ma?
9. Nánfāng rén běifāng rén chī fàn bù yíyàngde shì shénmo?
10. Nánfāng rén ná shénmo dàng fàn chī?
11. Zuò Zhōngguó fàn zuóliǎor yǒu yídìngde fènliang ma?
12. Zhōngguó dàshifu zuò cài tāmen méi you yídìngde fènliang. Tāmen zěnmō zhīdao fàng duōshao zuóliǎor ne?
13. Měiyīng diǎnde shénmo cài?
14. Bái Xiānsheng wèn Měiyīng nǎrde cài hǎo chī Měiyīng zěnmō huídá ta?
15. Měiyīng duì zuò Zhōngguó fàn tā zěnmō dǒng nènmo duō?
16. Nǐ xǐhuan chī Zhōngguó cài ma? Nǐ xǐhuan chī nǎrde cài?
17. Wénshān gēn Měiyīng chīwánle fàn yǐhòu yào tián diǎnxīn. Huǒji shuō tāmen zhèr dōu yǒu shénmo tián diǎnxīn?
18. Tāmen liǎngge rén chīde shénmo tián diǎnxīn?
19. Měiyīng gēn Wénshān chīwánle fàn yòu dào biéde dìfang qù le méi you? Tāmen wèi shénmo bú dào biéde dìfang qù le?

20. Měiyīng shuō huí jiā qu zuò shénmo?
21. Yàoshi nǐ qu chī fànguǎr tāmen hěn máng nǐ shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi huǒji kàn nǐ shì ge wàiguo rén tā wèn nǐ yào bu yào dǎo chā nǐ zěnmō huídá ta?
23. Zhōngguo dōng xī nán běi chī de kǒuwei bù yíyàng tāmen yǒu yíge sùyǔ. Nǐ huì shuō ma?
24. Yàoshi nǐ péngyou tā hěn dǒng zuò fàn de fázi nǐ yīngdāng gēn ta shuō shénmo?
25. Chīwánle fàn gēn huǒji yào tián diǎnxin nǐ zěnmō yào?
26. Yàoshi nǐ chī fànguǎr qu, chá dōu hēwánle nǐ hái xiǎng hē, nǐ gēn huǒji shuō shénmo?
27. Yàoshi nǐ gēn péngyǒu yíkuài qu chī fàn chīwánle yǐhòu tā shuō dào biéde dìfang qu kěshi nǐ bù xiǎng qù le nǐ zěnmō shuō?
28. Nǐ xǐhuan chī làjiāo ma? Làjiāo shì qīngcài hái shì shuǐguǒr ne?
29. Nǐ zhīdao shénmo shì zuóliar ma?
30. Zhōngguo rén gēn wàiguo rén chī fàn de xíguān yǒu shénmo bù yíyàng?

Dialogue: Vincent White and Gao Meiyang have lunch in a Cantonese restaurant.

Huo : How do you do [lit. you two have come].

White: Do you have room [lit. seats]?

Huo : How many (are) you?

White: Just two.

Huo : Yes. This way, please [lit. you please, you please].

White: (to Meiyang) Shall we sit here?

Mei : Fine.

Huo : Here's [lit. look at] the menu. I'll go get [lit. steep] some tea.

White: Fine. . . .

Huo : Would you like a knife and fork?

White: Thanks, I'll use chopsticks. Your business [here] is really good.

Huo : Isn't that so! We're rushed like this on week ends.

White: Meiyang, please choose [lit. read off] the dishes. I don't know [lit. understand] much about Cantonese food, so I can't choose.

Mei : (Just) choose anything you like from the menu.

White: Excuse me. You do all the choosing [and have done with it].

Mei : Let's have a fried [big] shrimp and a fried [fresh] vegetable. What [fried fresh] vegetable shall we have? Do you eat bitter melon?

White: I don't much care for it. How about you?

Mei : I'm not so crazy about it either. It's too bitter. Then let's have beef with fried peppers. As to soup, let's have a ham-and-winter-melon soup, and rice.

White: Waiter, bring us these two dishes. And bring us some more [boiled] water (to add to the teapot).

Huo : Yes sir.

Mei : Let's have a little appetizer first. Waiter, first bring a plate of spare-ribs and a plate of thousand-layer cake. Also bring salt and pepper.

Huo : Yes, Miss.

White: What, do we have dessert first?

Mei : In Cantonese restaurants you eat it any time. See how good these spare-ribs are.

White: They [lit. the spareribs] are delicious.

Mei : Cantonese food is famous. You know: "Eat in Canton."

White: With Chinese food, each (area) has its good (points).

Mei : That's true too [lit. also can say so].

White: The tastes of Chinese in north and south, east and west, are not the same.

Mei : The proverb says, "South—sweet, north—salty, east—peppery, west—sour."

White: This means that Southerners like to eat sweet things, Northerners like to eat salty things, Easterners like to eat peppery things, and Westerners like to eat sour things, doesn't it?

Mei : Actually it's not necessarily so. (Places) like Hunan and Szuchuan are not in the eastern part of China, (but) everyone (there) likes to eat hot (things). When they eat peppers they eat them terrifically hot.

White: I also like to eat hot (things).

Mei : Are you Hunanese or Szuchuanese?

White: Didn't you know, one of my parents was Hunanese and the other Szuchuanese.

Mei : No wonder you like your food hot!

White: Meiying, what [lit. where] food do you think is the most delicious?

Mei : It's not a question of delicious or not delicious but a matter of individual taste.

White: Chinese are really particular in their eating.

Mei : Cooking Chinese food [you can say] is an art.

White: It really is an art. No other food can compete with it.

Mei : And Chinese food is not like Western food with fixed ingredients and amounts that have to be measured out. Chinese food depends entirely on experience. None of the cooks measure out quantities for the ingredients they use in cooking.

White: But they're very precise.

Mei : The most important thing in cooking Chinese food is the length of time. If cooks [in cooking] had to measure out quantities how could they get (things ready) on time?

White: Why couldn't they?

Mei : Fried things, for example, require that the fire be hot and that the frying be done fast. Some things if [slightly] fried a moment too long would no longer taste good.

White: Cooking Chinese food is really not easy.

Mei : Actually it's not necessarily hard.

White: From what you say, you must be very good at cooking by now.

Mei : I'm not though. It's just that I often watch my mother cook and have learned a bit, that's all.

White: Are you interested in cooking?

Mei : In any case I'm not bored with it.

White: Aren't Chinese all more or less alike in their eating habits?

Mei : They're all the same in eating the main course [lit. rice] first and then having soup. What's different is that Northerners like to eat wheat products. Dumplings and noodles they take as the main course. Southerners take dumplings and noodles as appetizers. As a main course they eat rice.

White: This food isn't bad. What [sweet] dessert shall we have?

Mei : Ask the waiter what there is.

White: Waiter, what [sweet] desserts do you have?

Huo : We have lotus soup and orange soup.

White: Bring two orange soups. Meiying, will orange soup do?

Mei : Yes.

White: After we've finished eating where shall we go [to have fun]?

Mei : It's already three o'clock. Let's go back. You're moving away tomorrow morning. (You might) go back and chat with my father. And there are going to be guests tonight, aren't there?

White: I don't mind [lit. it's also all right] going back a little sooner. We'll go have fun some other day.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. (When we) go out to dinner tonight we have to make a reservation [first].
- 2.1. This knife isn't clean.
- 2.2. When you eat fruit, peel it with a little knife.
- 2.3. Chinese use knives in cooking but not in eating.
- 3.1. Chinese sometimes use forks for eating desserts.
- 3.2. Is it easier to use knife and fork or chopsticks?
- 4.1. May I ask, what business are you in?
- 5.1. This week end we're going on a trip.
- 5.2. Last week end we had guests at our home.
- 5.3. It's possible that I won't be home for either of the next two week ends.
- 6.1. Don't talk. The teacher is calling the roll.
- 6.2. Mr. Zhang, won't you please select the dishes [from the menu]?
- 6.3. The teacher called your name. Didn't you hear (him)?
- 7.1. (Something cooked with) lots of oil is zhá-fried, with little oil is jiān-fried.
- 8.1. Eating lots of vegetables is very good for [lit. has benefits for] people.
- 9.1. How come this dish has a bitter taste?
- 9.2. What he does is hard physical labor. He works all day until late.
- 9.3. He can endure a lot.
- 10.1. I'm very fond of [drinking] winter-melon soup.
- 10.2. Watermelons are a summer fruit.
- 10.3. Pork and fried cucumbers are an unusually savory dish.
- 11.1. Peppers and fried chicken are [exceptionally] delicious.
- 12.1. Chinese ham and American ham don't taste alike.
- 13.1. Let's have some tea. . . . O.K., I'll go boil some water.
- 13.2. Has the water boiled? . . . Not yet.
- 14.1. I'd like a [plate of sweet] dessert.
- 14.2. Yesterday my friend sent me two plates. (They're) very attractive.
- 15.1. Fried spareribs and red-cooked spareribs are both main dishes, not appetizers.
- 16.1. Have you ever eaten thousand-layer cake?
- 16.2. There are two kinds of cake made with eggs. One kind is a dessert, one is a main dish.
- 17.1. In making chicken soup you don't use [lit. put down] soy sauce. You just use salt.

- 18.1. It'll be a lot tastier if you put in a little more pepper.
- 19.1. The buses here are very convenient. There's one any time you want.
- 20.1. Please see [lit. taste] how this [flavor] is.
- 20.2. I can't judge [lit. taste out] whether that dish tastes good or not.
- 21.1. Cantonese restaurants have a lot of special desserts.
- 22.1. Every person's interests are different.
- 22.2. Every suit is different in style.
- 22.3. That big store sells all styles and varieties of women's clothes.
- 22.4. Miss Wang likes to wear jewelry. She has all sorts and varieties.
- 22.5. Each of them [lit. of them few persons] has a different viewpoint.
- 23.1. Today let's none of us be host. Let's go Dutch [lit. each eat each's].
- 23.2. Each [of the two men] has his good [lit. long] points.
- 24.1. Each country has its own proverbs.
- 25.1. The food should not be made too salty.
- 26.1. I like to eat hot (things) best.
- 27.1. I lived in Szuchuan for eight years.
- 28.1. The weather in central China is not as cold as that in the north.
- 29.1. Things here are frightfully expensive.
- 30.1. His car broke down. No wonder he was late.
- 30.2. Oh, Mr. Wang got sick. No wonder he didn't come yesterday.
- 30.3. He did badly on the exams. . . . No wonder. He was sick.
- 31.1. He's a very famous [great] artist.
- 32.1. What [ingredients] do you put into this dish?
- 33.1. Is this [quantity] enough?
- 34.1. Measure how long this table is.
- 35.1. The reason why he does so well in his studies is by no means that he's bright but that he works hard.
- 36.1. Our cook can only cook Cantonese dishes.
- 37.1. Measure the length of this desk.
- 37.2. This table isn't wide enough.
- 37.3. Those two men work at about the same speed.
- 37.4. Our feet are the same size.
- 37.5. That girl is very attractive. The only thing is, her height is below average [lit. not up to standard].
- 37.6. What do you think of the temperature of this room?
- 37.7. In looking for a house the most important thing I consider is its distance (from school, stores, etc.).

- 37.8. Please compare the weight of these two tape recorders.
- 37.9. His weight is exactly normal.
- 38.1. Your cook is really not bad [lit. dishes cooks really not bad].
- 39.1. You can certainly make it to the station by three o'clock.
- 39.2. That restaurant's business is really good. They can't keep up even with three chefs cooking [lit. frying the dishes].
- 40.1. In frying eggs you don't want too hot a fire.
- 40.2. Don't let the children light a fire.
- 41.1. He's very bright. It's just that he's not studious. If he'd work a bit he'd certainly do well on the exams.
- 42.1. I banged on the door a dozen [lit. ten-odd] times but still no one opened it.
- 42.2. Tell him [lit. say to him once] that I'm leaving.
- 42.3. Don't make any tea for me. I'll (just) sit a moment [and then leave].
- 43.1. (It looks as if) it's going to rain today. . . . I don't know about that.
- 44.1. He's not more than five feet four inches tall.
- 44.2. You speak Chinese well. . . . No, it's just that I talk all the time [lit. often], that's all.
- 44.3. From his appearance he's only twenty-odd.
- 45.1. I'm most annoyed with that child. He's always bawling.
- 45.2. When he talks I get very bored.
- 45.3. What he says is very boring. It's of no interest at all.
- 46.1. He's awfully nice to me. He treats [lit. takes] me as if I were his younger brother.
- 46.2. I mistook the salt for the sugar.
- 46.3. I mistook him for his younger brother.
- 47.1. Our school formally starts classes on the third of the month.
- 48.1. (Among) the Chinese, the southerners eat rice and the northerners eat (things made of) flour.
- 49.1. In America one can rarely get to eat lotus seeds.
- 50.1. Lotus-seed soup is made with sugar and lotus seeds.
- 51.1. I drink a glass of orange juice every morning.
- 52.1. The weather's very nice. Let's go and have some fun.
- 52.2. We don't have anything to do. We're just talking.
- 53.1. Do you have time? Let's the two of us have a chat.
- 53.2. How come you two are always talking and not studying?

- 54.1. The time of that meeting this evening has been [changed. It has been] changed to eight o'clock.
- 54.2. I'll be busy at five o'clock. How about my going to your place at some other time?
- 54.3. The trip had been set for today. Since the weather's bad the date has been changed. We'll go on Saturday.
- 54.4. We'll take care of [lit. speak of] this some other day. Let's do something else first.

Review Sentences

1. This week end our school is having an athletic meet.
2. My name wasn't on the list, so the teacher didn't call my name.
3. He can take a lot [lit. quite can eat bitterness]. Although he doesn't have any money he's still quite content.
4. Bring me a plate of peppers and fried pork.
5. In America after you've bought your ticket at the [movie] theater you can go in any time and see (the movie).
6. [Taste and] see if this lion's head is too salty.
7. Let's each go on his own. We won't wait for each other [lit. who will not wait for whom].
8. The weather in the northeastern section of China is terribly cold.
9. China's population is now tremendous.
10. Oh, (so) he's gone skating. No wonder he didn't come.
11. Come, let's measure the length and width [in feet] of this room.
12. My moving recently depended entirely on Mr. Wang's help.
13. The plane's about to leave. If you go quickly you can still make it.
14. Please wait a moment. He'll be right in.
15. Mr. Wang came, sat for a while, and then left.
16. From the Three Friends' Bookstore to my home is not more than three miles.
17. You all are annoyed with him, but I don't think he's so bad.
18. Yesterday I took the wrong book. I took the history book by mistake in place of the English book.
19. He invited some guests this evening in my behalf. The idea is for all of us to get together and talk.
20. Tomorrow our school will have a formal meeting [lit. formally open a meeting].

Notes

1. The word diǎnxin is often used to mean 'dessert,' but it actually refers to any light snack. It includes appetizers eaten before a meal (such as páigu 'spareribs,' which are most often steamed in Cantonese cooking and fried, in one way or another, in Northern cooking); it also includes qiāncéng gāo 'thousand-layer cake' (made from suet and eight or ten thin layers of dough, the whole being steamed). The word tián 'sweet' is used before diǎnxin to specify a dessert.

2. Guǎngzhōu 'Canton' is a more specific designation for the city than is Gwǎngdong, which is properly the name of Kwangtung Province as a whole but is loosely applied to Canton also as the chief city of the province. Chīzài Guǎnzhōu 'Eat in Canton' is part of a popular saying that goes as follows:

Shēngzài Hángzhōu. 'Be born in Hangchow' (because it is so beautiful).
 Chuānzai Sūzhōu. 'Get your clothes in Soochow' (because of its outstanding silk goods).

Chīzai Guǎngzhōu. 'Eat in Canton' (because of its fine food).

Sízai Liǔzhōu. 'Die in Liuchow (in Kwangsi)' (because it produces excellent wood for coffins).

3. The syllable gè 'each, every' is used before measures:

gèzhǒng(de) 'every kind (of)'

gèyàng(de) 'every sort (of)'

gèzhǒng gèyàng(de) 'all kinds and varieties (of)'

It also occurs before nouns:

gè dì(fāng) 'every place'

gè rén 'every person'

Gè is also used as a pronoun:

Gè yǒu hǎochu. 'Each has (its) advantage.'

Gè is reduplicated to form gègè 'each, every,' as in the phrase gègè rén 'every person, each person.'

Gè 'each' and gède 'of each' (or gè rén 'each person' and gè rénde 'each person's') occur in the pattern gè V gède, as in

Gè mǎi gède. 'Each buys his own.'

Gè qù gède. 'Each goes on his own.'

4. Proverbs and popular sayings in Chinese generally have a fixed form which often does not conform to ordinary grammatical patterns and vocabulary usage. This is illustrated by the contrast between Meiying's citation of the proverb pertaining to Chinese regional food preferences and Vincent's amplification. Note also in the latter that 'south' and 'north' are respectively nánfāng and běifāng, whereas 'east' and 'west' are respectively dōngbiān and xībiān. Xīfāng is conventionally the Occident, the West, and Xīfāng rén is a Westerner. Dōngfāng 'the East' is applied to the Orient as a whole, and Dōngfāng rén to an Oriental. Regions of a country can also be specified with the syllable bù 'region,' as in nánbù 'southern region,' xībù 'western region,' zhōngbù 'central region.'

5. Abstract nouns expressing measurements (size, weight, etc.) are formed by joining stative verbs of opposite meaning, e.g.:

chángduǎn 'length' [lit. long short]

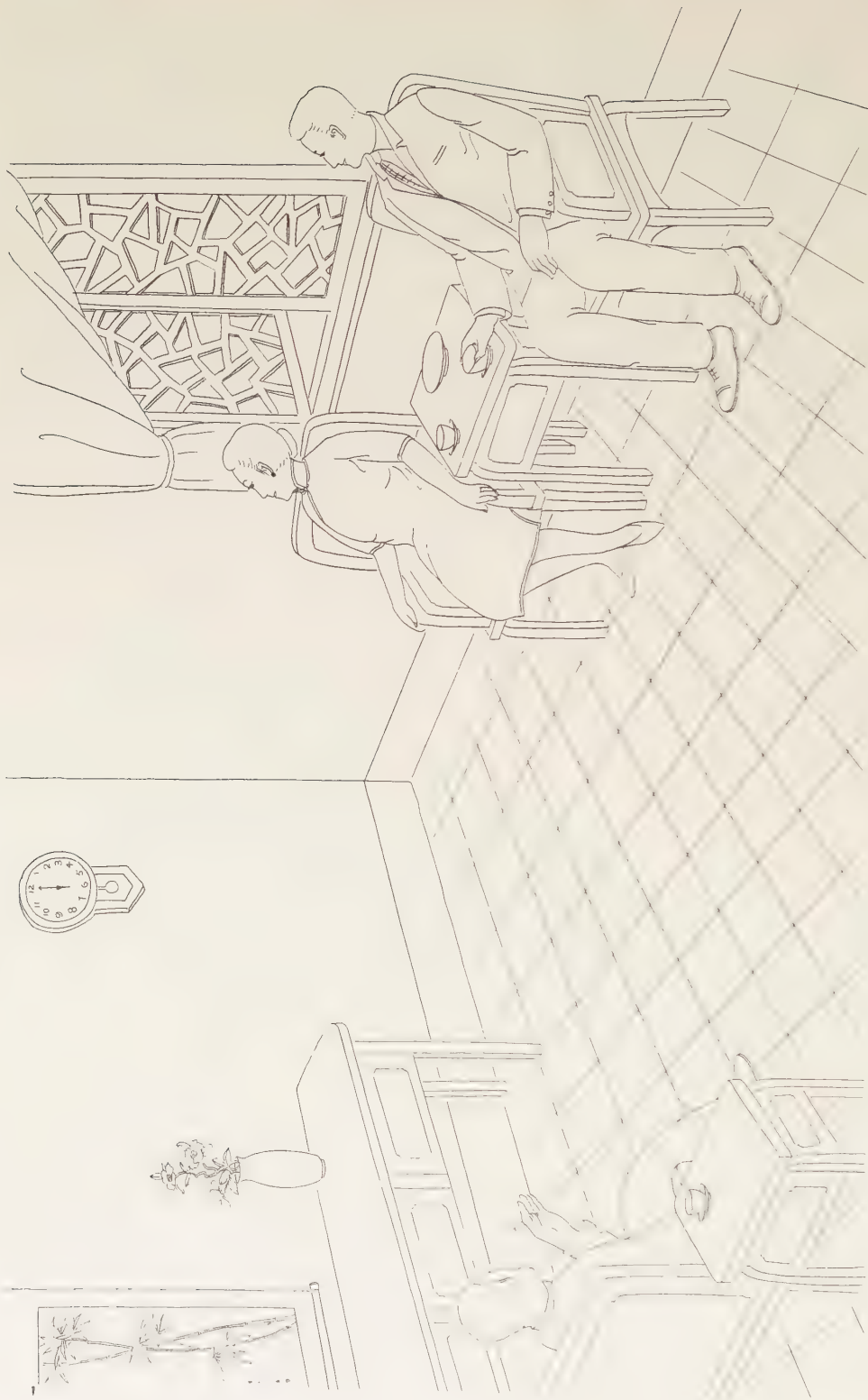
6. The measure xià or xià 'time, times' is used after verbs:

Dǎ ta liǎngxià. 'Hit him a couple of times.'

Yíxià also means 'for a while':

Nǐ děng yíxià. 'Wait a moment.'

7. The word mǐ refers to uncooked rice. Mǐ fàn, or simple fàn, is cooked rice. Thus according to context fàn is either food in general, the staples or main course of a meal, or specifically cooked rice, the chief food for many Chinese. Similarly, miàn is either wheat products in general or specifically noodles. The expression Nǐ chī fàn chī miàn asks whether one wants to eat rice or something made of wheat flour.



“Aiyou, shíhòu bù zǎo le.”

Dì Shíyīkè. Tán Jiā Shì

Huìhuà: Bái Xiānsheng huídao Gāo jia yǐhòu gēn Gāo Xiānsheng
Gāo Tàitai xián tán.

Gāo: Wénshān, huílai le.

Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng, huílai le.

5 Gāo: Zěnmoyàng, fángzi mǎnyì ba?

Bái: Fángzi hěn hǎo. Dìdiǎn hěn ānjing, érqǐ nèijiān wūzi xiàtiān
yíding hěn liángkuai. Huá Tàitai rén yě hǎo. Tā hěn yuànyì wǒ
qu zhù.

Gāo: Shǒuxu dōu bànhǎo le ma?

10 Bái: Méi shénmo shǒuxu. Wǒ bǎ fángzū yǐjīng jiāogei Huá Tàitai le.
Wǒ gēn Huá Tàitai shuōhǎole míngtiān jiù bānguoqu.

Gāo: Máng shénmo? Zài zhèr duō zhù jǐtiān me.

Bái: Xièxie nín. Zǎo diār bānguoqu zhǔnbèi zhǔnbèi guānyu xuéxiào de
gōngke yíquè wèntí.

15 Gāo: Lí shàng xué hái zǎozhe ne.

Bái: Yě bù zǎo le. Wǒ xiǎng háiishi zǎo diār bān. Lǎo zài fǔshang máfan
Gāo Tàitai xīn lǐtou yěshi bù ān.

20 Gāo: Na dào méi shénmo. Wǒ nèiren tā shì hěn huānyíng nǐ zài zhèr zhù
de. Xiāngxìn nǐ zhùzai Huá jia nǐmen néng xiāngchùde hěn hǎo. Nǐ
zhùzai nèr wǒmen yě fàng xīn.

Bái: Huá Tàitai duì wǒ kèqì yě shì chòng nín liǎngwèide miànzi.

Gāo: Yě bú shì. Tā rén 'shì nènmo hǎo. Huá Xiānsheng gēn wǒ shì
tóngxiāng. Wǒmen cóng xiǎo zài yíkuàr zhǎngdà de. Wǒmen hái
yǒu diār qīnqì de guānxi ne.

25 Bái: Huá Xiānsheng yě shì Hángzhou rén ne?

Gāo: Shìde. Huá jia shì ge dà jiāting, jǐbèi rén dōu zhùzai yíkuàr.

Bái: Wǒ zhīdao Zhōngguo yǐqián shì dà jiāting zhìdu. Xiànzài ne?

30 Gāo: Xiànzài chàbuduō dōu zǔzhi xiǎo jiāting le. Wǒ xiǎo de shíhou Huá
Xiānshengde zǔfù zǔmǔ dōu hěn xǐhuan wǒ, dài wǒ gēn tāde sūnzi
sūnnüer yíyàng.

Bái: Nín shuō de shì hěn duō nián yǐqián de shìqing le.

- Gāo: Kě bu shì ma, jǐshì nián le. Rìzi guòde zhēn kuài. Wǒmen zhèi yíběi dōu chéngle lǎotóu le!
- Bái: Huá Tàitai shì nǎrde rén ne?
- 35 Gāo: Ta yě shì Hángzhou rén. Huá Xiānsheng yǒu yíge gēge liǎngge jiějie. Tāmen dìxiong jiěmèi dōu hěn yǒu běnshi.
- Tài: Wénshān huílai le. Fángzi shuōtuō le ma?
- Bái: Jiāngtuō le. Hěn yùnnqī. Fángzi hěn hǎo.
- Tài: Chī diār diǎnxin ba.
- 40 Bái: Xièxie nín. Wǒmen cái chīwán fàn.
- Tài: Nènmo wǒ gěi nǐmen qī diār chá lai.
- Bái: Gāo Tàitai, jīntian wǎnshang dōu shì shéi lái ya?
- Tài: Dōu shì nǐ rènshi de jǐge péngyou—Qián Xiānsheng fūqī, Máo Xiānsheng fūqī, hái yǒu Máo jia de sānge xiǎo háizi.
- 45 Bái: Wǒ jǐde tāmen yuánlái yǒu liǎngge háizi.
- Tài: Qùnian yǒu shēngle yíge nán háizi. Oh, hái yǒu Qián jiade qīnqī Wáng 'dà gūniang. Tā cái cóng xiāngxia lái.
- Bái: Jīntian wǎnshang rén hěn duō, yòu gòu nín mángde le.
- Tài: Méi shénmo. Měiyīng a, xiànzài hěn néng bāng wǒde máng le.
- 50 Bái: Aiyōu, shíhour bù zǎo le. Nǐ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng hē chá liáoliao. Wǒ gēn Měiyīng dào chūfáng qu yùbei fàn.
- Bái: Zhēnshi máfan nín.
- Gāo: Wénshān, nǐ dìdi mèimei dōu hěn dà le ba?
- Bái: Kě bu shì ma. Dìdi gèzi gēn wǒ yíyàng gāo le. Bǐ wǒ pàng yìdiǎr.
- 55 Gāo: Niàn dàxué le méi you?
- Bái: Jīnnian gāozhōng bìyè le, kěshi hái méi juéding ne. Tíqī wǒ zhèige dìdi lai, wǒmen liǎngge rénde píqī wánquan xiāngfǎn. Tā duì niàn shū wa, yìdiǎr xìngqu yě méi yǒu. Chéngji hěn bù hǎo.
- Gāo: Na jiānglái zěnmō bàn ne?
- 60 Bái: Kěshi ta lìngwài yǒu yìzhōng běnshi. Jiā lǐtōu rènhe dōngxī huài le—bǐrú shuō diànshì, diàndēng, bīngxiāng, huòzhě jiāju shénmode huàile—tā dōu néng xiūli.
- Gāo: Tā jìrán duì zhèi fāngmian yǒu xìngqu ràng ta xué zhuānkē me.
- Bái: Tā kěnéng shàng zhuānkē xuéxiào.
- 65 Gāo: Mèimei niàn zhōngxué le ma?
- Bái: Mèimei chūzhōng jīnnián bìyè le. Zhèi xuéqī niàn gāo zhōng-yī le. Mèimei xīhuan yīnyuè chàng gē.
- Gāo: Nǚ háizi xué yīnyuè bú cuò.
- Bái: Mèimei yǒu yīnyuè tiāncái. Jiānglái yéxǔ xué yīnyuè.

70 Gāo: Nǐ fùmǔ hěn yǒu fúqi.

Bái: Tíqi fùmǔ, jiàoyang wǒmen yě hěn xīnkǔ. Yóuqíshi mǔqin. Búdàn yào guǎn jiā érqǐě hái jiāo shū.

Gāo: Nǐ fùqin yě shì jiàoyuán, shì bu shì?

75 Bái: Fùmǔ yuánlái 'dōu shì jiàoyuán. Mǔqin shēngle wǒmen dìxiong jiěmèi yǐhòu, jiù bú zuò jiàoyuán le. Kěshì yǒu yìnián wǒ fùqin bìngde hěn lihai, bìngle hěn jiǔ. Qǐngle háojǐge yīsheng, chīle hěn duō yào, suóyì yīyào fèi huāle hěn duō. Wǒmende shēnghuó hěn kǔ. Méi fázi. Mǔqin yòu qu jiāo shū, zēngjiā yìdiǎr shōurù.

Gāo: Zènmo yì shuō nǐ mǔqin 'shì hěn xīnkǔ.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (5) mǎnyì be satisfied (with or about) (TV) [lit. full idea]
 - 1.1. Wǒ zuò de shìqing tā hěn mǎnyì.
 - 1.2. Wǒ duì nèige fángzi hěn mǎnyì, duì nèixiē jiāju bù mǎnyì.
- 2.0. (6) dìdiǎn location, site, place, address (N) [lit. place dot]
 - 2.1. Zhèige dìdiǎn bú cuò. Mǎi dōngxì shàng xuéxiào dōu fāngbian.
 - 2.2. Fǔshangde dìdiǎn zhēn hǎo. Gōnggòng qìchē diànchē dōu cóng nèr jīngguò.
- 3.0. (6) ānjing quiet, calm, silent, peaceful (SV) [lit. peace quiet]
 - 3.1. Yǐjing shàng kè le. Qǐng nǐmen ānjing yìdiǎr.
 - 3.2. Zhèr hěn ānjing. Dōu shì zhùzhái.
- 4.0. (7) liáng (uncomfortably) cool, chilly, cold (SV)

liángkuai (comfortably) cool (SV)

 - 4.1. Tā xǐhuan yòng liáng shuǐ xǐ zǎo.
 - 4.2. Zhèrde tiānqì xiàtiān hěn liángkuai.
- 5.0. (7) yuànyì be willing (that), like to (AV) [lit. willing idea]
 - 5.1. Wǒ bú yuànyì dāndú yíge rén qu chī fànguǎr.
 - 5.2. Nǐ fùmǔ yuànyì ràng nǐ dào Zhōngguo qu niàn shū ma?

Dialogue: After Mr. White returns to the Gao home he chats with Mr. and Mrs. Gao.

Gao : You're back, Vincent.

White: Yes, Mr. Gao.

Gao : Well, are you satisfied with the room?

White: The room is fine. It's a very quiet location, and the room is sure to be quite cool in the summer. And Mrs. Hua is a very nice person. She's quite willing for me to go live (there).

Gao : Have you taken care of all the formalities?

White: There weren't any formalities. I've already paid the rent to Mrs. Hua. She and I have agreed that I'm to move tomorrow.

Gao : What's your hurry? Stay here a few more days.

White: Thank you, (but I think) I'll move over early and get everything ready for classes at school.

Gao : It's still quite a while before classes start.

White: It's not so early. I still think it would be better to move in soon. And I don't feel right [lit. in (my) mind I'm not at rest] to be causing Mrs. Gao (so much) trouble by staying on and on.

Gao : But that's nothing. My wife is delighted to have you stay here. I'm convinced when you live at the Huas' you will get along very well together. And we'll be easier in our minds (to know that) you'll be living there.

White: Mrs. Hua is nice to me because of you. [lit. Mrs. Hua's being polite to me is due to your face.]

Gao : Actually that's not so. She is such a nice person. Mr. Hua and I come from the same region. We grew up together (from childhood). Also we're distantly related.

White: So Mr. Hua is also from Hangchow?

Gao : Yes. The Huas were a big family, with several generations living together.

White: I know China used to have the big-family system. What about now?

Gao : Now almost everyone has taken to [lit. organized] the small family. When I was young Mr. Hua's grandfather and grandmother were both quite fond of me and treated me the same as their grandchildren.

White: You're speaking of things of a good many years ago.

Gao : Yes indeed, of several decades ago. Time certainly goes fast. We of my generation have all become graybeards.

White: Where does Mrs. Hua come from?

Gao : She's also from Hangchow. Mr. Hua has one older brother and two older sisters. They [lit. brothers and sisters] are all very talented.

Tai : Vincent, you're back. Is it all fixed up about the room?

White: Yes. I'm very lucky. The room is very nice.

Tai : Will you have a bite?

White: (No,) thanks. We've just finished eating.

Tai : Then I'll make some tea for you.

White: Mrs. Gao, who's coming this evening?

Tai : They're all people [lit. friends] you know—Mr. and Mrs. Qian [lit. Qian husband and wife], Mr. and Mrs. Mao, and the Maos' three children.

White: I remember them as having only [lit. originally] two children.

Tai : Last year they had another son. Oh, and there's also a relative of the Qians, the eldest of the unmarried Wang girls. She's just come from the country.

White: You'll have too much to do with so many people coming this evening.

Tai : It's nothing. Meiying is a great help by now. Oh dear, it's getting late. You and Mr. Gao have some tea and talk. Meiying and I are going to the kitchen to prepare dinner.

White: This really is an imposition for you.

Gao : Vincent, I take it your younger brother and sister are [lit. have become] quite big?

White: Yes indeed. My [younger] brother is as tall as I. He's a little heavier [lit. fatter] than I.

Gao : Has he gone to college?

White: He graduated from high school this year, but he hasn't made up his mind yet (as to what to do). Speaking of my younger brother, we're completely opposite in temperament. He hasn't the slightest interest in [studying] books. His (school) record is pretty bad.

Gao : So how's he going to manage?

White: [But] he has a different sort of ability. Anything that breaks down at home—for example, the television, the electric lights, the refrigerator, the furniture, and so on—[when they break down] he can fix them all.

Gao : Since he's interested in this sort of thing, have him take a special course.

White: It's possible that he'll attend a special school.

Gao : Does your younger sister go to middle school?

White: Sis graduated from junior high and this semester will be in the first year of senior high. She likes music and singing.

Gao : It's a good idea for girls to study music.

White: Sis is musically inclined. Perhaps she'll study music [in the future].

Gao : Your parents are fortunate.

- jiǎngdao reach (a point) in discussion (V)
 jiǎng huà speak, lecture (VO)
 jiǎnghuà lecture (N)
 jiāngtuǒ reach agreement by talking (RV)
- 24.1. Wǒmen zhèng jiǎngdao nǐ nǐ jiù lái le.
 24.2. Xiànzài qǐng Wáng Jiàoshòu jiǎng huà.
 24.3. Nèige diànshì jiāngtuǒ le. Yìbǎikuài qián tā mài le.
 24.4. Tāde lǐshǐ jiǎnghuà hěn shòu huānying.
- 25.0. (38) yùnlǜ luck (good or bad) (N), lucky (SV)
 25.1. Wǒde yùnlǜ zhēn hǎo. Yí dào zhèr mǎshàng jiù yǒu shì zuò.
 25.2. Wǒ hěn yùnlǜ néng yùjian nín.
- 26.0. (46) shēng bear (offspring), give rise to, produce, make (TV) (Note 4)
 shēng bìng get sick
 26.1. Zuótiān wǎnshàng Wáng Tàitai shēngle ge nán hái.zi.
 26.2. Zhōngguó rén shēng xiǎo hái.zi péngyou dōu shì sòng jī gēn jīdàn shénme.
 26.3. Qián jǐtiān tā shēng bìng le.
- 27.1. (47) gūniang unmarried girl or woman (this term is especially used in the North) (N)
 27.1. Wáng èr gūniang sānshíjiǔsuì le hái méi jiēhūn ne.
- 28.0. (47) xiāngxia country (vs. city) (N)
 xiāngxia rén country people
 28.1. Zhùzai xiāngxia bǐ zhù chéng lǐtōu ānjìng.
 28.2. Xiāngxia rénde shēnghuó bǐ chéng lǐtōu rénde shēnghuó jiǎndān.
- 29.0. (48) A gòu V (de) there's enough A to V
 A gòu SV (de) A is sufficiently SV
 A gòu B V (de) (le) A is enough for B to V
 A gòu B SV (de) (le) A is so much that B is SV
 29.1. Fàn gòu chīde ma?
 29.2. Fàn gòu rède ma?
 29.3. Zhèixiē shìqíng tài duō. Zhēn gòu wǒ zuòde.
 29.4. Zènmo duō de cài hái bú gòu nǐ chīde ma?
 29.5. Zènmo duō de shìqíng zhēn gòu nín lèi le.
 29.6. Wǒmen lái le gòu nín máng de.
- 30.0. (50) aiyōu! My! Oh dear! Gosh! (Note 5)

- 30.1. Aiyou! Qídiǎn duō le. Wǒ hái méi zuò wǎnfàn ne.
- 31.0. (56) tíqí A (lai) speaking of A, if one mentions A
- 31.1. Tíqí nèijiàn shì lai tā jiù bu gāoxìng.
- 32.0. (57) xiāngfǎn be opposites (V) [lit. mutually oppose]
- A gēn B xiāngfǎn A and B are opposites, A is the opposite of B
- 32.1. Zhèige wèntí nǐ kàncuò le. Nǐ dáde gēn wèntí wánquán xiāngfǎn.
- 32.2. Wáng Xiānsheng gēn Wáng Tàitai tāmen liǎngge rénde píqí xiāngfǎn.
- 33.0. (58) chéngjì achievement, record, grade (N) [lit. accomplished work]
- 33.1. Wǒ zhèicì kǎoshì de chéngjì bù zěnmó hǎo.
- 34.0. (60) rènhe any whatever
- 34.1. Tā duì rènhe rén cónglái bù fā píqí.
- 34.2. Zhāng Xiānsheng hěn xǐhuan zuò shì. Rènhe shìqing tā dōu zìjǐ qu zuò.
- 35.0. (61) bǐrú (shuō) if, even if, for example [lit. compare like]
- 35.1. Nèiběn shū zhēn hǎo. Bǐrú nǐ bù mǎi wǒ yě mǎi.
- 35.2. Míngtiānde yùndong huì bǐrú shuō xià yǔ wǒ kě jiù bú qù le.
- 35.3. Tā xué Zhōngwén xuéde gè fāngmian dōu hǎo, bǐrú sùshēng, qīngzhōngyīn, fāyīn, shénmode.
- 35.4. Bǐrú nǐ bú qù wǒ yě yào qù.
- 36.0. (61) dēng light, lamp (N)
- diàndēng electric light
- kāi dēng light or turn on a light
- 36.1. Diàndēng huài le. Děi zhǎo rén xiūli.
- 36.2. Wèi shénmo zènmó hēi le hái bu kāi dēng?
- 37.0. (61) bīngxiāng refrigerator, icebox (N)
- 37.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ shuǐguǒr fàngzài bīngxiānglǐ.
- 38.0. (63) jìrán since, because (MA) [lit. since so]
- 38.1. Jìrán méi qián wèi shénmo yào mǎi hǎo jiāju?
- 39.0. (63) zhuānkē special course of study; specialized or technical school (N)
- 39.1. Wǒ zhōngxué bìyè yǐhòu dǎsuan xué zhuānkē.
- 39.2. Zhè yídài yǒu hěn duō zhuānkē xuéxiào.
- 40.0. (66) chūzhōng lower middle school (corresponding to junior high school) (N) [lit. beginning middle (school)]
- 40.1. Yīnwei tāmen jiā méi qián ta chūzhōng bìyè jiù bú niàn shū le.
- 40.2. Wǒ dìdi jīnnian cái niàn chūzhōng-yī.

- 41.0. (66) xuéqī semester (N) [lit. study period]
 shàng xuéqī first semester
 xià xuéqī second semester
- 41.1. Yīnwei wǒ bǐnglè shàng xuéqī wǒ méi niàn shū.
 41.2. Xià xuéqī wǒ dǎsuan niàn zhuānkē xuéxiào.
- 42.0. (67) yīnyuè music (N) [lit. sound, music]
 yīnyuè huì concert
 yīnyuèjiā musician
- 42.1. Jīntiān wǎnshàng jiǔdiǎn zhōng Yuǎn-Dà yǒu yīnyuè huì.
 42.2. Wǒ zài diànshìshàng kànjiànguó nèiwèi yīnyuèjiā.
- 43.0. (67) chàng sing (V)
 43.1. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan tīng tā chàng.
- 44.0. (67) gē, gēr song (N)
 44.1. Nèige gūniang chàng gēr chàngde zhēn hǎo.
- 45.0. (69) tiāncái talent, genius (N) [lit. heaven talent]
 A yǒu B tiāncái A has a talent for B, A is talented in B
 A (duì) B yǒu tiāncái A has a talent for B, A is talented in B
- 45.1. Tā hěn yǒu yǔyán tiāncái.
 45.2. Wǒ mèimei chàng gēr zhēn yǒu tiāncái.
- 46.0. (70) fùmǔ parents (N) [lit. father mother]
 46.1. Wǒde fùmǔ dōu zài nèige fànguǎr lǐtōu zuò shì.
- 47.0. (70) fúqi blessings, good fortune, happiness (N)
 47.1. Nèige lǎotóu zhēn yǒu fúqi. Sūnzi sūnnüer dōu duì tā fēicháng hǎo.
- 48.0. (71) yǎng raise (family, animals, flowers) (TV)
 yǎng jī raise chickens
 yǎng jiā support a family
 jiàoyǎng raise and educate
- 48.1. Wǒmen zài xiāngxia zhù de shíhòu yǎngle hěn duō jī.
 48.2. Nǐ zhuàn nènmo duō qián gàn má bù qu lǚxíng? . . . Wǒde qián děi yǎng jiā.
 48.3. Jiàoyǎng hái zi bú shì róngyì shì.
- 49.0. (71) xīnkǔ wearying, toilsome, wearied by hard toil (SV) [lit. toil bit-ter]
 xīnkǔ, xīnkǔ thanks (for putting yourself to so much trouble)

- N hěn xīnkǔ N is wearied from hard toil
 V hěn xīnkǔ doing V is bitterly hard
- 49.1. Tā jiàoyǎng tāde háiizi hěn xīnkǔ.
 49.2. Tāmende yòngrén hěn xīnkǔ.
- 50.0. (75) zuò be (in the role of) (TV) [lit. make]
 50.1. Tā méi yǒu zuò jiàoyuán de běnshi.
- 51.0. (76) háojǐ a good many (M) [lit. good few]
 51.1. Wǒ háojǐ nián méi chī Zhōngguó fàn le.
 51.2. Tā jiā wǒ qùguó háojǐ cì le.
- 52.0. (76) yīsheng physician, doctor; Dr., M.D.; (also, a title) (N)
 52.1. Wǒ zǔfù bìngde hěn lìhai. Qǐngle liǎngwèi yīsheng lái kàn bìng.
 52.2. Wáng Yīsheng shì zài Yīngguó niàn shū de.
- 53.0. (77) yào medicine (N)
 chī yào take [lit. eat] medicine
 53.1. Tāde bìng méi guānxi. Yì chī yào jiù hǎo le.
 53.2. Zhèige yào měi sìge zhōngtóu chī yíci.
- 54.0. (77) huā spend (V)
 huā qián spend money
 huāguāng spend all one's money
 54.1. Zhèi xuéqī mǎi shū dàgài yào huā duōshao qián?
 54.2. Tā jīntiān dào bǎi huò gōngsī mǎi dōngxī bǎ wùshikuài qián dōu huāguāng le.
- 55.0. (77) fèi expenses, bills
 xuéfèi tuition
 diànfèi electric bill
 xiūlǐ-fèi repair bills
 yīyào-fèi medical expenses
 huā . . . fèi pay . . . bill, spend money on . . . expenses
 55.1. Wǒ jīnnián jiāole liǎngqiāнкуài qián de xuéfèi.
 55.2. Wǒmen měiyuè jiāo yíci diànfèi.
 55.3. Tā gēge huì xiūlǐ jiāju. Tāmen jiā bú bì huā xiūlǐ-fèi.
 55.4. Tāmen jiāde rén cháng bìng, suóyì měinián yīyào-fèi huāde bù shǎo.
- 56.0. (77) shēnghuó living conditions, existence, life (N), live (V) [lit. born live]

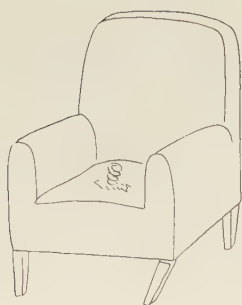
shēnghuó-fèi living expenses

- 56.1. Tā zuì jìn de shēnghuó bú tài hǎo yīnwei tā méi zuò shì.
 56.2. Wǒmende shēnghuó-fèi yuè lái yuè yǒngde duō.
 56.3. Wǒ yíge yuè liǎngbǎikuài qián bú gòu shēnghuó.
 57.0. (78) shōurù take in income (TV), income (N) [lit. receive enter]
 57.1. Wǒ měi yuè de shōurù bú gòu wǒ jiā de shēnghuó-fèi.

Robert	White
English	A
Math.	C
History	D
French	F
Shop	:

Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Zhèige zhíwù wǒ hěn mǎnyì.
2. Wǒ yuànyì zhù ānjīng yìdiǎr de dìfāng.
3. Nèijiàn shìqīng shuōtuō le méi yǒu?
4. Jīntiān Zhāng Jiāoshòu de jiǎnghuà jiǎngde fēicháng hǎo.
5. Wǒ měiyuè wǔshíkuài qián bú gòu yòng de.
6. Rènhe zázhi wǒ dōu xǐhuan kàn.
7. Wǒ zhēn bù hǎo yìsi ràng nǐ huā hěn duō qián.
8. Láidejī. Shíhou zǎode hěn.
9. Duìbuqǐ. Qǐng nín shǎowēi dēngyidēng.
10. Wáng jiade zǔfùmǔ ba wǒ dàngzuò tāmen zìjǐ de sūnzi yíyàng.
11. Ānzhe nǐde yìsi zhèijiàn shìqīng nǐ shuō zěnmó bàn?
12. Tā hái zài niàn xiǎoxué ne. Wǒ rènwei tā yǐjīng chūzhōng bìyè le ne.
13. Wúlùn nǐ zěnmó shuō wǒ yě bú yuànyì qù.
14. Wǒ cónglái yě méi zhùguo xiāngxia.
15. Tā suǐrán bú yuànyì lái kěshi bù hǎo yìsi bù lái.
16. Nèijiàn shìqīng hěn nán bàn. Fēiděi nǐ qù bàn bù kě.
17. Tāmen bù zàncheng dà jiātíng zhīdù.
18. Wǒ duì chàng gēr méi shénmo tiāncái. Búguò wǒ hěn xǐhuan chàng jiù shì le.
19. Wǒ bingle, dānwule yíge xuéqī.
20. Wǒ hěn máng. Wǒ xiànzài zhǔnbèi kǎoshì ne.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Měiyīng huí jiā yǐhòu, Gāo Xiānsheng hěn guānxīnde wèn wǒ fángzi mǎnyì ma. Wǒ bǎ fángzi yǐjīng zūtuǒ de yíqiè qíngxíng dōu gào sù le Gāo Xiānsheng. Wǒ gēn Gāo Xiānsheng shuō míngtiān jiù bānguoqu. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō ràng wǒ zài tā fǔshang duō zhù xie rìzi. Wǒ yào zǎo 5 bān de yuányīn yǒu liǎngge. Dì yī, wǒ bú yuànyì lǎo zài Gāo jiā máfan Gāo Tàitai. Dì èr, lí shàng kè méi yǒu jǐtiān le. Wǒ děi zhǔnbèi zhǔnbèi gōngkè bìngqiě yě děi dào dàxué qu kànkàn jiānglái shàng kè de yíxiē shìqíng.

Wǒde fángdōng Huá Tàitai tā yě shì Hángzhou rén. Yuánlái Huá 10 Xiānsheng gēn Gāo Xiānsheng shì tóngxiāng, yě shì qīnqī. Guàibude duì wǒ nènmo kèqī ne. Shì chòngzhe Gāo Xiānsheng Gāo Tàitai liǎngge rénde miànzi. Wǒ yùnnqī bú cuò. Nèijiān fángzi hěn hǎo. Wǒ yí kàn jiù hěn mǎnyì. Hěn róngyì jiù bǎ fángzi zūtuǒ le.

Gāo Xiānsheng shuō Huá jiā shì ge dà jiāting, jǐbèi rén dōu zhùzai 15 yíkuàr. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō ta xiǎode shíhou Huá Xiānshengde zǔfùmǔ dōu hěn xīhuan ta, dài ta xiàng tāmende sūnzi sūnnüer yíyàng hǎo. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō dào zhèr, yòu shuō cóngqián shì hái zi, xiànzài chéngle lǎotóu le.

Dà jiāting yǒu hǎochu yǒu duǎnchu. Hǎochu shì kéyì bícǐ bāngzhu. 20 Duǎnchu shì—bǐrú shuō yíge jiātingli niánqīngde rén gēn lǎo rén dàjiā dōu zhùzai yíkuàr—niánqīngde rén gēn lǎo rén kànfǎ bù yíyàng. Rìzi jiǔ le hěn róngyì dàjiā xīnli bú tòngkuai.

Gāo Tàitai tīngjian wǒ huílai cóng chufáng yě dào kètīng lái le, yào gěi wǒmen zuò diǎnxin. Wǒ shuō wǒmen cái chīwán fàn.

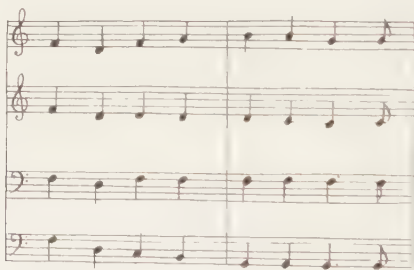
25 Gāo Xiānsheng jīntian wǎnshang wèi wǒ qǐnglè jǐwèi péngyou. Wǒ bù
zhīdào dōu yǒu shéi. Wǒ wèn Gāo Tàitai dōu shì shéi lái. Gāo Tàitai
shuō jiù shì Qián Xiānsheng, Qián Tàitai, Máo Xiānsheng, Máo Tàitai, hái
yǒu Máo jiade sāngē hái. Lìngwài hái yǒu yíwèi cái cóng xiāngxiá lái
de Wáng 'dà gūniang. Zhèi jǐwèi kèren lǐtōu chūle Wáng 'dà gūniang yǐwài
30 wǒ dōu rènshi, kéyì shuō yě dōu shì wǒde hǎo péngyou.

Máo jiā yuánlái yǒu liǎnggè hái. Wǒ huí guó yǐhòu tāmen yòu
shēngle yíge hái. Tāmen nài liǎnggè dà hái zhǎngde hěn kě ài. Zhèigè
xiǎo hái yíding zhǎngde yě bú cuò.

Wǒ jìde cóngqián yǒu yíci wǒmen qù lǚxíng qū yùjian Máo jiā yí
35 jiā rén yě qù le. Nài liǎnggè hái hěn pàng, pífū hěn bái, dà yǎnjīng,
hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan nài liǎnggè hái. Liǎnggè hái xiànzài
kànjian wǒ dàgài bú rènshi wǒ le.

Gāo Xiānsheng wèn wǒ dìdì mèimei tāmen niàn shū de qíngxíng. Wǒ
gàosu Gāo Xiānsheng dìdìde běnshì shì xiūlì gèzhǒng dōngxi. Wǒmen
40 jiāde dōngxi huàile bú bì huā qián zhǎo rén xiūlì. Kěshì niàn shū de
chéngjì tài huài le. Duìyú niàn shū yìdiǎr xìngqù yě méi yǒu. Mèimei
shū niàn de bú cuò érqǐě duì yīnyuè cháng gē zhèi fāngmian yě yǒu
tiāncái.

Gāo Xiānsheng shuō wǒ fùmǔ yǒu fúqī. Bié rén yě zhènmò shuō,
45 kěshì wǒ xiǎng wǒde fùmǔ shì tài xīnkǔ le.



Wèntí

1. Bái Xiānsheng tā mǎnyì Huá jiade nàijiān fángzi ma?
2. Tā gēn Gāo Xiānsheng shuō nàijiān fángzi zěnmò hǎo?
3. Bái Wénshān shuō míngtiān jiù bān, Gāo Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
4. Wénshān wèi shénmo yào zǎo diār bān?

5. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō Wénshān zhùzai Huá jia zěnmoyàng?
6. Wénshān shuō Huá Tàitai wèi shénmo duì ta kèqi?
7. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō ta gēn Huá jia dōu yǒu shénmo guānxi?
8. Zhōngguo cóngqiánde jiāting shi shénmo zhìdu? Huá jia yǐqián shi shénmo yàngde jiāting?
9. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō tā xiǎode shíhou Huá jia shéi dài ta zuì hǎo? Dài tā xiàng shéi yíyàng?
10. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō ta zìjǐ xiànzài chéngle shénmo le? Nǐ xiǎng tā shuōde duì ma?
11. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō Huá jiade dìxiong jiěmèi jǐge dōu zěnmoyàng?
12. Máo jia bú shi yǒu liǎngge hái zi ma? Wèi shénmo Gāo Tàitai gàosong Bái Wénshān tāmen yǒu sānge hái zi ne?
13. Gāo jia jīntian wǎnshang hái qǐngle Qián jia de qīnqi. Shi shéi? Ta cóng nǎr lái?
14. Wénshān shuō ta dìdi xiànzài gāo bu gāo?
15. Bái Xiānsheng shuō ta dìdide píqi gēn tā xiāngfǎn. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zěnmō gēn ta xiāngfǎn.
16. Bái Xiānsheng shuō ta dìdi yǒu shénmo běnshi?
17. Wénshān shuō dāsuan ràng ta dìdi niàn shénmo xuéxiào?
18. Bái Xiānshengde mèimei chúle niàn shū yǐwài hái xǐhuan shénmo? Tā yǒu shénmo tiāncái?
19. Gāo Xiānsheng shuō Wénshānde fùmǔ zěnmoyàng?
20. Bái Xiānshengde mǔqīn shēngle tāmen dìxiong jiěmèi yǐhòu jiù bú zuò jiàoyuán le. Wèi shénmo yòu qu zuò jiàoyuán?
21. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou qu kàn fángzi huílai nǐ yīngdāng wèn tā shénmo?
22. Rúguǒ nǐ zhǎo fángzi nǐ xīwang dìdiǎn zěnmoyàng, fángzi zěnmoyàng?
23. Bǐrú péngyou jiā lǐtou yǒu hěn duō kèren hěn máng nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo?
24. Yàoshi nǐ dìdi bù hǎohāor niàn shū, péngyou wèn nǐ nǐ zěnmō shuō ne?
25. Rúguǒ péngyou gàosu nǐ tāmen dìxiong jiěmèide qíngxing, tā yě yǒu fùmǔ, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
26. Bǐrú yǒu rén shuō nǐ fùmǔ yǒu fúqi nǐ zěnmō huídá?
27. Nǐde péngyou zhùzai nǐ jiā chūqu, xiàwǔ huílai le nǐ yīnggāi zuò shénmo?
28. Nǐ shuōyishuō yàoshi sānbèi rén zài yíkuàr zhù dōu shi shénmo rén?
29. Yàoshi péngyoude péngyou dài nǐ hěn hǎo nǐ gēn zhèige péngyou zěnmō shuō?
30. Bǐrú péngyou zhùzai nǐ jiā shuō ta yào bānzǒu le nǐ shuō shénmo?

Dialogue: After Mr. White returns to the Gao home he chats with Mr. and Mrs. Gao.

Gao : You're back, Vincent.

White: Yes, Mr. Gao.

Gao : Well, are you satisfied with the room?

White: The room is fine. It's a very quiet location, and the room is sure to be quite cool in the summer. And Mrs. Hua is a very nice person. She's quite willing for me to go live (there).

Gao : Have you taken care of all the formalities?

White: There weren't any formalities. I've already paid the rent to Mrs. Hua. She and I have agreed that I'm to move tomorrow.

Gao : What's your hurry? Stay here a few more days.

White: Thank you, (but I think) I'll move over early and get everything ready for classes at school.

Gao : It's still quite a while before classes start.

White: It's not so early. I still think it would be better to move in soon. And I don't feel right [lit. in (my) mind I'm not at rest] to be causing Mrs. Gao (so much) trouble by staying on and on.

Gao : But that's nothing. My wife is delighted to have you stay here. I'm convinced when you live at the Huas' you will get along very well together. And we'll be easier in our minds (to know that) you'll be living there.

White: Mrs. Hua is nice to me because of you. [lit. Mrs. Hua's being polite to me is due to your face.]

Gao : Actually that's not so. She is such a nice person. Mr. Hua and I come from the same region. We grew up together (from childhood). Also we're distantly related.

White: So Mr. Hua is also from Hangchow?

Gao : Yes. The Huas were a big family, with several generations living together.

White: I know China used to have the big-family system. What about now?

Gao : Now almost everyone has taken to [lit. organized] the small family. When I was young Mr. Hua's grandfather and grandmother were both quite fond of me and treated me the same as their grandchildren.

White: You're speaking of things of a good many years ago.

Gao : Yes indeed, of several decades ago. Time certainly goes fast. We of my generation have all become graybeards.

White: Where does Mrs. Hua come from?

Gao : She's also from Hangchow. Mr. Hua has one older brother and two older sisters. They [lit. brothers and sisters] are all very talented.

Tai : Vincent, you're back. Is it all fixed up about the room?

White: Yes. I'm very lucky. The room is very nice.

Tai : Will you have a bite?

White: (No,) thanks. We've just finished eating.

Tai : Then I'll make some tea for you.

White: Mrs. Gao, who's coming this evening?

Tai : They're all people [lit. friends] you know—Mr. and Mrs. Qian [lit. Qian husband and wife], Mr. and Mrs. Mao, and the Maos' three children.

White: I remember them as having only [lit. originally] two children.

Tai : Last year they had another son. Oh, and there's also a relative of the Qians, the eldest of the unmarried Wang girls. She's just come from the country.

White: You'll have too much to do with so many people coming this evening.

Tai : It's nothing. Meiying is a great help by now. Oh dear, it's getting late. You and Mr. Gao have some tea and talk. Meiying and I are going to the kitchen to prepare dinner.

White: This really is an imposition for you.

Gao : Vincent, I take it your younger brother and sister are [lit. have become] quite big?

White: Yes indeed. My [younger] brother is as tall as I. He's a little heavier [lit. fatter] than I.

Gao : Has he gone to college?

White: He graduated from high school this year, but he hasn't made up his mind yet (as to what to do). Speaking of my younger brother, we're completely opposite in temperament. He hasn't the slightest interest in [studying] books. His (school) record is pretty bad.

Gao : So how's he going to manage?

White: [But] he has a different sort of ability. Anything that breaks down at home—for example, the television, the electric lights, the refrigerator, the furniture, and so on—[when they break down] he can fix them all.

Gao : Since he's interested in this sort of thing, have him take a special course.

White: It's possible that he'll attend a special school.

Gao : Does your younger sister go to middle school?

White: Sis graduated from junior high and this semester will be in the first year of senior high. She likes music and singing.

Gao : It's a good idea for girls to study music.

White: Sis is musically inclined. Perhaps she'll study music [in the future].

Gao : Your parents are fortunate.

White: Speaking of my parents, raising and educating us has been pretty hard. Especially for Mother. Not only does she have to run the house, but she also teaches.

Gao : Your father's also a teacher, isn't he?

White: My parents were both teachers to begin with. After we children were born [lit. after mother bore us brothers and sisters], she stopped teaching. But one year my father became desperately ill and was sick for a long time. He had a number of doctors and took a lot of medicine, so that we spent a tremendous amount on medical expenses. [Our] life became pretty hard. There was nothing to do but for Mother to take up teaching again so as to add to our income.

Gao : From what you say, it certainly was hard for your mother.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. He's very satisfied with my work.
- 1.2. I'm quite satisfied with the house, but not with the furniture.
- 2.1. This locality isn't bad. It's convenient for shopping and going to school.
- 2.2. The location of your home is really nice. Buses and streetcars pass by there.
- 3.1. Class has begun. Please be quieter.
- 3.2. It's very quiet here. It's all residences.
- 4.1. He likes to bathe in cold water.
- 4.2. The weather here is very cool in summer.
- 5.1. I don't like to go eat in a restaurant all by myself.
- 5.2. Are your parents willing to let you go to China to study?
- 6.1. Exams are coming soon. I must get ready for my most important courses.
- 6.2. Everything's ready for the meeting.
- 6.3. I'm getting ready to leave here.
- 7.1. How much time is there still before class?
- 7.2. Let's hurry. It's just ten minutes before the plane takes off.
- 7.3. It's still quite a while before winter. Why are you buying winter clothes now?
- 7.4. You're hungry now! It's still quite a while before dinner.
- 8.1. He drives too fast. I'm uneasy whenever he drives.
- 9.1. I trust Mr. Wang completely.
- 9.2. I'm convinced the educational level here is certainly quite high.
- 10.1. Chinese think that it's best for a building [lit. big door] to face south.

- 10.2. His house was built facing west.
- 10.3. The fact that they're nice to me is all due to you.
- 11.1. Mr. Wang and I are from the same region.
- 12.1. I'm not a native of this place so I don't have any relatives here, just friends.
- 12.2. Mr. Zhang and Mr. Wang are relatives.
- 13.1. He has a very nice family.
- 14.1. The system in that school is different from other schools.
- 15.1. We're organizing a student association.
- 15.2. Who's in charge of this organization?
- 16.1. My [paternal] grandfather has long since passed away.
- 16.2. His [maternal] grandmother is very advanced in age.
- 17.1. My [paternal] grandparents treat me awfully nicely.
- 18.1. My [paternal] grandmother has seven grandsons and nine granddaughters in all.
- 19.1. That old man is very pleasant.
- 20.1. Those two Mr. Wangs are brothers.
- 20.2. How many brothers are there in your family?
- 20.3. My younger brother is fourteen years old.
- 21.1. The two sisters have grown to be alike.
- 22.1. But I don't have as much ability as you do. You can do anything.
- 23.1. I've already finished up that matter.
- 23.2. Have you reached agreement on how much it is to sell for?
- 23.3. The clothes are finished. You can go get them any time.
- 23.4. I didn't succeed in renting that house (as a tenant). It was rented by someone else.
- 24.1. You came just as we were talking about you.
- 24.2. Now let's ask Professor Wang to speak.
- 24.3. We've reached agreement on that television set. He'll sell it for \$100.
- 24.4. His history lectures were very well received [lit. received welcome].
- 25.1. My luck's really good. I no sooner get here than I get a job (immediately).
- 25.2. I'm very lucky to have (been able to) run into you.
- 26.1. Yesterday evening Mrs. Wang gave birth to a boy.
- 26.2. When Chinese have children, friends send them chickens, eggs, and so on.

- 26.3. He fell sick a few days ago.
- 27.1. The second Wang girl is thirty-nine years old and still hasn't married.
- 28.1. Living in the country is quieter than living in the city.
- 28.2. The life of country people is simpler than that of people in the city.
- 29.1. Is there enough food to eat?
- 29.2. Is the food hot enough?
- 29.3. There are too many [of these] things to be done. I certainly have plenty to do.
- 29.4. So much food and it still isn't enough for you?
- 29.5. Having so many things to do is enough to tire you out.
- 29.6. Our coming makes too much work for you.
- 30.1. Oh my gosh! It's after seven and I still haven't fixed dinner.
- 31.1. If (you) mention that matter he becomes unhappy.
- 32.1. You read this question wrong. What you answered is the complete opposite of the question.
- 32.2. Mr. and Mrs. Wang are opposites in temperament.
- 33.1. My grades on this exam weren't so good.
- 34.1. He never loses his temper with anyone.
- 34.2. Mr. Zhang likes to do things. Any sort of job he does himself.
- 35.1. That book is excellent. If you don't buy it, then I will.
- 35.2. (As for) tomorrow's athletic meet, if it rains I certainly am not going.
- 35.3. In studying Chinese he does well in all aspects: (as for example) tones, stress, pronunciation, etc.
- 35.4. Even if you don't go, I'm going.
- 36.1. The light won't work [lit. has gone bad]. (We) have to find a person to fix it.
- 36.2. Since it's so dark, why haven't you turned on the light?
- 37.1. Please put the fruit in the refrigerator.
- 38.1. Since you don't have any money, why do you insist on buying good furnishings?
- 39.1. After graduating from middle school I plan to take a special course.
- 39.2. In this area there are a lot of specialized schools.
- 40.1. Because their family doesn't have any money, after graduating from lower middle school he'll stop school.
- 40.2. My younger brother has started first year of lower middle school just this year.
- 41.1. Because I was sick I didn't study last semester.

- 41.2. Next semester I plan to study in a specialized school.
- 42.1. This evening at nine there's a concert at Far Eastern.
- 42.2. I saw that musician on television.
- 43.1. I love to listen to him sing.
- 44.1. That girl sings very nicely.
- 45.1. He has considerable talent for languages.
- 45.2. My younger sister has real talent for singing [songs].
- 46.1. My parents both work in that restaurant.
- 47.1. That old man is really blessed. His grandsons and granddaughters are extraordinarily good to him.
- 48.1. When we lived in the country we raised a lot of chickens.
- 48.2. (Since) you earn so much why don't you go on a trip? . . . My money has to support the family.
- 48.3. Educating and raising children is no easy task.
- 49.1. He had a very hard time raising and educating his children.
- 49.2. Their workers are worn out from hard toil.
- 50.1. He doesn't have the ability to be a teacher.
- 51.1. I haven't had Chinese food for a good many years.
- 51.2. I've been to his home a good many times.
- 52.1. My [paternal] grandfather was seriously ill. Two doctors were asked to attend him.
- 52.2. Dr. Wang studied in England.
- 53.1. His sickness is nothing. As soon as he has some medicine he'll recover.
- 53.2. Take this medicine once every four hours.
- 54.1. About how much will I have to spend on books this semester?
- 54.2. Today in shopping at the department store he spent all his \$50.
- 55.1. This year I paid out \$2,000 in tuition.
- 55.2. We pay the electricity bill once a month.
- 55.3. His older brother knows how to fix furniture. Their family doesn't have to spend any money on repair bills.
- 55.4. The people in that family often get sick so they spend a lot on medical expenses each year.
- 56.1. Life hasn't been too good for him recently, as he hasn't been working.
- 56.2. We have to spend [lit. use] more and more on living expenses.
- 56.3. Two hundred dollars a month isn't enough for me to live on.
- 57.1. My monthly income is inadequate for my family's living expenses.

Review Sentences

1. I'm very satisfied with this job.
2. I'd like to live in a quieter place.
3. Did you reach agreement on that business?
4. Professor Zhang lectured unusually well today.
5. Fifty dollars a month isn't enough for me [to use].
6. I like to read all sorts of magazines.
7. I'm very embarrassed to have you spend a lot of money (on me).
8. We'll make it. There's lots of time [lit. time is quite early].
9. I'm sorry. Please wait just a little.
10. The grandparents in the Wang family regard me as their grandson.
11. In your opinion how should this matter be handled?
12. He's still in elementary school. I thought he had graduated from lower middle school.
13. No matter what you say, I'm not willing to go.
14. I've never lived in the country.
15. Although he doesn't like to come he would be embarrassed not to [come].
16. That business is very hard to handle. It's absolutely necessary that you go take care of it.
17. They don't approve of the big-family system.
18. I have no talent for singing. I just like to sing, that's all.
19. I was sick and lost a semester.
20. I'm very busy. I'm getting ready for my exams now.

Notes

1. The word ān 'peaceful' is not used as an independent verb in the affirmative, but only in the negative expression bù ān 'uneasy, restless.'
2. The expression tóngxiāng (lit. same district) depending on the context refers to people either of the same province or, more narrowly, of the same town or village.
3. The expression lǎotóu or lǎotóuzi (lit. old head) has somewhat the same range of use as 'old man' in English. It can refer literally to an elderly man, and may also be used by a wife to refer to her husband or by a son to refer to his father ('my old man') regardless of the man's actual age. The second usage is informal but lacks the slangy or disrespectful connotation of the corresponding English.

4. The verb shēng means 'be born,' as:

Tā shēngzai Shànghǎi. 'He was born in Shanghai.'

It also means 'bear' or 'have (a child)':

Tā tàitai yòu shēngle yíge hái. 'His wife bore another child.'

Tāmen yòu shēngle yíge hái. 'They had another child.'

5. The exclamation aiyou expresses dismay. It is more restricted in scope than aiya (see page 63), which is an expression of either surprise or dismay.

Dì Shí'èrkè. Wēnxi

Lesson Contents

- A. Substitution Frames (pp. 246-248)
 - I. Nǐ zěnmō zhīdao . . . ? (pp. 246-247)
 - II. Nǐ wèi shénmō . . . ? (pp. 247-248)
- B. Exercise in Tonal Distinctions (p. 248)
- C. Exercise in Homonyms (p. 249)
- D. Synonyms and Antonyms (p. 250)
 - I. Synonyms (p. 250)
 - II. Antonyms (p. 250)
- E. What's the Connection? (p. 251)
- F. Narratives and Dialogues (pp. 251-255)

A. Substitution Frames

(For an explanation of these Frames see Lesson 6, p. 123)

I. Nǐ zěnmō zhīdao . . . ?

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| (7) 1. yǒu rén èn líng | 6. nèr rénkǒu hěn duō |
| 2. tā liūchuqu le | 7. tā xūyào zhèiběi shù |
| 3. shùlínzi dōu kǎnwán le | 8. nǐ qíngxíng bù hǎo |
| 4. tā zhùzai wǒ duìmiàn | 9. tā bù nǚlì zuò shì |
| 5. zhèitiáo lù xī tóu méi fángzi | 10. zhuōzi dīxia yǒu dōngxi |
| (8) 1. fàn hai méi yùbeihǎo ne | 6. tā yǐjīng bān jiā le |
| 2. chuáng dānzi shì xīn mǎi de | 7. wǒ gōngkè tài máng |
| 3. nàige xuéxiàode shǒuxu hěn máfan | 8. tā shì qīngnián rén |
| 4. tā nián dǐ chū guó | 9. tā shì wǒde wǎnbèi |
| 5. tāmen lǎomāzi hěn gānjīng | |
| (9) 1. tā yǒu liùchǐ gāo | 3. tā zuǒ shǒu yǒu liùge zhítou |
| 2. tā tiāntian zài shùlínzi lǐtōu liūda | 4. tā duì wǒ tàidu bù hǎo |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 5. tāmen xiāngchùde bù hǎo | 8. wǒ qìchē chūle maóbing |
| 6. tā shì ge lóngzi | 9. tā cónglái bù fā píqi |
| 7. tā jìnshiyǎn | |
| (10) 1. tā wàngle dìng zuòr | 6. tā xǐhuan chī làde |
| 2. tā bù liáng fènliang | 7. dōngbu bǐ xību hǎo |
| 3. hújiāomiār méi le | 8. tā néng chī kǔ |
| 4. tā bù xǐhuan chī xīgua | 9. tā búguò yǒu wǔkuài qián |
| 5. nèige cài bú gòu xián | |
| (11) 1. nèisuǒr fángzi méi diàndēng | 7. tā xià xuéqī bú niàn shū |
| 2. bīngxiāngli méi bīngkuàr | 8. tā niàn chūzhōng-èr |
| 3. tā niàn zhuānkē | 9. tā yǒu shùxué tiāncái |
| 4. tāde chéngji tài huài | 10. tāde yùnnqì bù hǎo |
| 5. tā bù mǎnyì nèige dìdiǎn | 11. tā yǒu nèizhōng běnshi |
| 6. tā bù néng zuò shùxuéjiā | |

II. Nǐ wèi shénmo . . . ?

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (7) 1. huàn yīfu | 5. jìgei ta nǐde xiàngpiān |
| 2. dānwu nènmo duō shíhou | 6. bù xǐhuan yóuyǒng |
| 3. xūyào nènmo duō qián | 7. cháng yòng zìláishuǐ bǐ |
| 4. bù nǚlì niàn shū | |
| (8) 1. bù hǎo yìsī wèn ta | 5. yìtiān jiù chī liǎngdùn fàn |
| 2. bú zhù Nǚ Qīngnián Huì | 6. bú yuè dǐ jiāo zū |
| 3. bú yùbei gōngke | 7. bú ànzhe guīju zuò |
| 4. bú ràng lǎomāzi mǎi pūgai | 8. yìtiān dásao jǐcì wūzi |
| (9) 1. mǎi sāndēng piào | 4. lǎo gēn ta fā píqi |
| 2. jìnshiyǎn bú dài yǎnjìngr | 5. cónglái bù shū tóufa |
| 3. shuō tāde bízi bù hǎo kàn | 6. gēn ta xiāngchùde bù hǎo |
| (10) 1. měi zhōumò qu lǚxíng | 4. bú fàng zuóliāor |
| 2. bù dǎ ta yíxiār | 5. bú qù shāo shuǐ |
| 3. shuō tāmen shēngyì bù hǎo | 6. bù xǐhuan qù Guǎngzhōu |
| (11) 1. bù xiāngxìn ta | 3. chòng běi gài fángzi |
| 2. gēn nǐ qīnqì chùde bù hǎo | 4. bù gěi fùmǔ xiě xìn |

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5. bú yuànyì zhù nèige dìdiǎn | 10. bù gēn jiěmèi yíkuàr qū |
| 6. shuō tāmen píqì xiāngfǎn | 11. bù qǐng Wáng Bóshi jiǎng huà |
| 7. háojǐtiān méi lái | 12. bù yuànyì mǎi zhèige xiězìtái |
| 8. shuō tāde chéngjì bù hǎo | 13. shuō 'Aiyóu' |
| 9. bù zhǎo ānjīng yìdiǎr de fángzi | 14. shuō hē liáng shuǐ bù hǎo |

B. Exercise in Tonal Distinctions

The following pairs of expressions are distinguished solely by differences in tone. Sometimes an expression has more than one meaning: thus in the first pair, xì means both 'drama' and 'department of instruction.' Identify the expressions in each pair and use them in sentences to illustrate their differences in meaning. If you have difficulty identifying an expression, look it up in the Glossary and Index of this volume or of Beginning Chinese (BC).

(Numbers in parentheses indicate the lesson in this volume in which the expression occurred as a new term. This information is added so that the material can be reviewed after the appropriate lesson, if desired, rather than waiting until this review lesson.)

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. xì (7), xī (BC) | 20. jiǎo (9), jiào (BC) |
| 2. shù (7), shū (BC) | 21. jí (9), jī (BC) |
| 3. kǎn (7), kàn (BC) | 22. yáng (9), yàng (BC) |
| 4. kē (7), kè (BC) | 23. dāo (10), dào (BC) |
| 5. zhuān (7), zhuàn (7) | 24. chā (10), chá (BC) |
| 6. bīng (7), bìng (BC) | 25. kǔ (10), kū (9) |
| 7. hǎi (7), hái (BC) | 26. guā (10), guà (BC) |
| 8. bèizi (7), bēizi (BC) | 27. yán (10), yān (4) |
| 9. niánji (8), niánjí (BC) | 28. liáng (10), liǎng (BC) |
| 10. bān (8), bàn (BC) | 29. huǒ (10), huó (BC) |
| 11. hé (8), hē (BC) | 30. gēng (10), gèng (BC) |
| 12. jiān (8), jiàn (BC) | 31. júzi (10), jùzi (BC) |
| 13. ǎi (9), ài (4) | 32. ān (11), àn (9) |
| 14. xié (9), xiě (BC) | 33. dēng (11), děng (BC) |
| 15. cū (9), cù (BC) | 34. chàng (11), cháng (BC) |
| 16. shǒu (9), shóu (5) | 35. gē (11), gè (10) |
| 17. xì (9), xī (BC) | 36. yǎng (11), yàng (BC) |
| 18. tǐng (9), tīng (BC) | 37. huā (11), huà (BC) |
| 19. dǐng (9), dìng (9) | 38. fèi (11), fēi (1) |

39. shēng (11), shèng (BC)

40. fúqì (11), fūqī (5)

41. gēr (11), gèr (1)

42. liáng (11), liàng (5)

C. Exercise in Homonyms

Use each of the following homonyms (expressions having the same sound but different meanings) to compose sentences which clarify the differences in meaning. (Numbers in parentheses indicate the lesson in this volume where the expression first occurred in the given meaning.)

- | | | | |
|-----------|---|-----------|---|
| 1. zì | (a) self (7)
(b) character (BC) | 13. diǎn | (a) read from a list (10)
(b) to light (4) |
| 2. chéng | (a) O.K. (8)
(b) city (BC) | 14. gāo | (a) cake (10)
(b) tall (BC) |
| 3. tiān | (a) add (8)
(b) day (BC) | 15. píng | (a) due to (10)
(b) level (3) |
| 4. jiān | (a) fry (8)
(b) room (4) | 16. xián | (a) salty (10)
(b) idle (3) |
| 5. děng | (a) class (9)
(b) wait (for) (BC) | 17. xià | (a) time(s) (10)
(b) below; descend (BC) |
| 6. dān | (a) alone (8)
(b) bill (BC) | 18. liáng | (a) cool (11)
(b) measure (10) |
| 7. qī | (a) to steep (8)
(b) seven (BC) | 19. dài | (a) treat (11)
(b) section (3) |
| 8. shū | (a) to comb (9)
(b) book (BC) | 20. yào | (a) medicine (11)
(b) want (BC) |
| 9. máo | (a) hair (9)
(b) dime (BC) | 21. shēng | (a) bear (11)
(b) tone (BC) |
| 10. shòu | (a) long life (9)
(b) thin (1)
(c) endure (5) | | |
| 11. xì | (a) fine (9)
(b) drama (7)
(c) department (7) | | |
| 12. cháng | (a) taste (9)
(b) often (BC) | | |

D. Synonyms and Antonyms

The following exercise reviews expressions which have either similar meanings or opposite meanings (in at least one but not always in all meanings of each expression). In most cases the expressions belong to the same part of speech and have the same grammatical function. Occasionally they do not, and therefore cannot be used interchangeably in the same position in a sentence. Compose sentences for each pair of expressions that will demonstrate their meanings. (Numbers in parentheses indicate the lesson in this Unit in which one or both expressions occurred for the first time.)

I. Synonyms

- | | |
|---|--|
| (7) bànfa, fázi
fēi . . . bùkě, yídìng yào | (10) liáo tiār, tán tiār
dàshifu, chúzi
diér, diézi
nán guài, guàibude |
| (8) xiězìtái, xiězìzhuō
wúsuǒwèi, suǐbiàn
chéng, kéyi
zuǒyòu, chàbuduō | (11) gūniang, xiáojie
zhǔnbèi, yùbei
yīsheng, dàifu
shuōtuǒ, jiángtuǒ
dìxiong, xiōngdì
bǐrú shuō, bǐfang shuō
bǐrú, yàoshi |
| (9) tǐng, dǐng
suǐshu, niánji
búlùn, wúlùn | |

II. Antonyms

- | | |
|--|--|
| (7) fǎnduì, zàncheng
yǒu bànfa, méi fázi
fēi . . . bù kě, bú bì
xìng'er, kěxi
chūntian, qiūtian
dōngtian, xiàtian | (10) tāoyàn, yǒu yìsi
zhèngshì, suǐbiàn
láidejí, láibují
jīntian, gǎi tiān
xiànzài, gǎi shíhou |
| (8) zhǎngbèi, wǎnbèi
dān, yíkuànr | (11) lǎotóur, qīngnián rén
xiāngxia, chéng lǐtou
huā qián, zhuàn qián |
| (9) cū, xì
gāo, āi
kū. xiào
zǎoshang, wǎnshang
jí xìngzi, màn xìngzi | |

E. What's the Connection?

In a Chinese sentence or two, describe the actual or possible relationship between the people or things named by the following pairs of words. (Numbers in parentheses refer to the lessons where the expressions first appeared.)

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>(7) páizi, gǒu
dàlǐtáng, xīju
shù, yèzi
yóuxichǎng, háizimen
bùjǐng, xīju
jiàoyu, xuéxiào
liū bīng, liūbīngchǎng
cǎisè xiàngpiār, zhào xiàng</p> <p>(8) língr, shēngyin
bóbo, bómǔ
zhǎngbèi, wǎnbèi
xiězìtái, shūfáng
pūgai, shuì jiào
lǎomāzi, yòngren
zhōngfàn, jīdàn</p> <p>(9) gōngchǐ, gōngfēn
lóngzi, ěrduo
xié, jiǎo
shūzi, tóufa
yǎnjīng, yǎnjìng
zhítou, shǒu
bízǐ, wèi
yáng guǐzi, wàiguo rén</p> | <p>(10) liánzǐ, júzi
mǐ, miàn
páigu, qiāncéng gāo
dāozi, chāzi
yìshujiā, huà
dàshifu, chufáng
huótuǐ, zhū
diézi, diǎnxīn
qīngcài, làjiāo
yán, zuóliào
hújiāomiàn, jiàngyóu
kāishuǐ, huǒ</p> <p>(11) zǔfù, zúmǔ
sūnzi, sūnnǚ
dìxiong, xiōngdì
jiějie, mèimei
dìxiong, jiějie
gūniang, xiáojie
bīngxiāng, niú nǎi
fùmǔ, háizi
yīsheng, yào
shōurù, jīngtiē
yīnyuè, shēngyin
fūqī, péngyou</p> |
|--|---|

F. Narratives and Dialogues

I

Wǒde zǔfù rénjiā dōu jiào ta shì Zhāng Lǎotóu. Jīnnian yǐjīng bāshíyīsuì le. Kěshì ta hěn jiànkāng. Tāde tóufa méimao dōu shì báide. Wúlùn shénmo tā dōu néng chī. Zhuānmén xīhuan chī zhá de dōngxī.

Suírán tāde niánji nènmo lǎo le, hái shì xīhuan gēn rénjiā kāi wánxiào
5 shuō xiàohuà shénmode.

Wǒ fùqīn tāmen yígòng dìxiong sìge rén, suóyì wǒ zǔfù yǒu shíjǐge
sūnzi sūnnüer.

Yǒu yìtiān tā tíyì shuō yào gēn wǒmen yíkuài qù lǚxíng. Wǒmen
dàjiā dōu rènwei tā tài lǎo le, zǒubuliǎo hěn duō de lù. Nǐ cāi zěnmózhè?
10 Tā bǐ wǒmen niánqīng rén zǒude hái kuài ne.

Bùzhībùjuéde zǒuchu sānlǐ lù le. Wǒmen shuō: “Zǔfù wa. Nín yídìng
tài lèi le ba? Yào bu yào xiūxi yìhuǐr?” Nǐ cāi tā shuō shénmo? “Suí
nǐmende yìsi. Wǒ wúsuǒwèi. Wǒ zhèi bèizi yě bù dòng shénmo jiào lèi.”
Ràng tā zènmo yì shuō wǒmen niánqīng rén dōu bù hǎo yìsi le. Wǒmen
15 hái shì wàng qián liūda. Zǒudào yíge shùlínzi lǐtòu, tā yìshí gāoxíng le
chàngqǐ gē lai le. Tā chàngde gē hěn hǎo tīng. Wǒmen pà tā tài lèi
le, suóyì zài shùlínzi lǐtòu shǎowēi zuòle yìhuǐr. Yīnwei shì xiàtiān tiānqì
hěn rè. Shùlínzi lǐtòu hěn liángkuai.

Tā yòu gěi wǒmen shuō gùshi. Tā shuōle hěn duō ta xiǎo de shíhour
20 de shìqing.

Zǔfù shuō tā fùmǔ zhǐ shēng ta yíge rén, xiànzài tā yǒu zènmo duō
de sūnzi sūnnüer. Tā shuō: “Jiānglái nǐmen dōu jiēhūn yǐhòu, zǔzhīle
jiāting, dōu shēngle hái zi nǐ qiáo wǒmen xìng Zhāng de gāi yǒu duōshao
rén!”

II

Wǒmen jiāde lǎomāzi liùshíjǐ suì le. Shì yíge xiāngxia rén. Méi
niànguó shū, yíge zì yě bú rènshi. Tāde jìxing hěn bù hǎo. Yàoshi wǒmen
bú zài jiā, yǒu rén dǎ diànhuà zhǎo wǒmen, tā yídìng bǎ rénjiā xìng shénmo
gěi jìcuò le. Tā jiù yǒu yìzhǒng běnshì—zuò mántou zuòde fēicháng hǎo.
5 Kěshì zuòde cài dōu bù hé wǒmende kǒuwei, suóyì chàbuduō dōu shì mǔqīn
zuò fàn. Yàoshi mǔqīn yǒude shíhou chūqule óu'ěrde jiào ta zuò yíci fàn
wǒmen shéi dōu bù chī. Kěshì tā yǒu tāde chángchū—mǔqīn fēnfu tāde
shìqing tā dōu ànzhe mǔqīnde yìsi qù zuò, bìngqiě tā yě hěn xīhuan wǒmen.
Wǒmen wúlùn zěnmó máfan ta, tā yě bù fā píqi. Suírán tā zuò shì bù zěnmó
10 hěn hǎo, kěshì huà yǒu shuōhuí lai le, wǒmen jiā rén hěn duō, měitiān shōushi
wūzi xǐ yīfu hái yǒu hěn duō línglingsuǐsuǐde shìqing yě gòu tā mángde le.

Tā gāng cóng xiāngxia lái de shíhou yǒu yíge xiàohuār: Yǒu yíci
 wǒ fùqīn chōu yān zhǎobuzhǎo yánguǒ le. Wǒmen lǎomāzi shuō: “Nín
 zěnmó bú zài dēngshàng diǎn ne?” Wǒmen xiāngxia rén diǎn huǒ dōu
 15 shì zài dēngshàng. Fùqīn pà ta zài diàndēngshàng diǎn huǒ, gàosu ta
 diàndēngshàng bù néng diǎn huǒ.

III

Shíhou guòde hěn kuài. Bùzhībùjuéde yǐjīng yòu shì dōngtiān le.

Wǒ hěn xīhuan liū bīng. Yí dào le dōngtiān, wǒ jiù gēn péngyou men
 yíkuài chángchang dào liūbīngchǎng qù liū bīng. Yǒu yíci yǒu jǐge tóngxiāng
 tāmen xuéxiào fàngjià de shíhou, dào wǒmen jiā lái le. Wǒ qǐng tāmen
 5 qù kàn liūbīng de. Yīnwèi wǒde lǎo jiā shì nánfāng dōngtiān bú tài lěng
 méi yǒu bīng, suǒyǐ tāmen méi kànjiànguó bīng. Tāmen kànle yǐhòu juéde
 hěn yǒu yìsi.

Tāmen yě xiǎng liū. Tāmen jìrán xiǎng liū zhǐ hǎo ràng tāmen liū
 le. Kěshì liū bīng bú shì yìhuěr jiù xuéhuì le de. Wǒmen liú le liǎngge
 10 duō zhōngtóu tāmen hěn xīhuan. Wǒ xiǎng fǎnzhèng jīntiān shì xīngqītiān,
 wǒ yě méi shì, duō wǎ yìhuěr méi guānxi.

Tóngxiāng wèn wǒ shénmo shíhou kéyǐ zǒu? Wǒ gàosu tāmen suíshí
 dōu kéyǐ zǒu. Zǒu de shíhou tóngxuéde chòngzhe wǒde miànzi yào qǐng
 wǒde tóngxiāng qù chī wǎnfàn. Wǒ shuō bù hǎo yìsi; wǒmen yíkuài qù
 15 chī fàn kěshì gè chī gède, shéi yě bié qǐng kè. Wǒmen chīwánle bǎ zhàng
 dān ná lai dàjiā fēntān.

IV

Wǒ dìdi shì hěn xīhuan yùndòng de nán hái zi, suǒyǐ hěn jiànkāng—
 gēbo hěn cū, tuǐ hěn cháng, pífū hěn hēi.

Liū bīng yóuyǒng rèn hé yùndòng tā dōu xīhuan. Duìyú gōngke shì
 māmāhūhū. Tā zuì tǎoyàn niàn shū le. Jiānglái yéxǔ shì yíge zuì yǒu
 5 míng de yùndòngyuán. Suǐrán wǒ gēn ta píqǐ xiāngfǎn, kěshì wǒmen dìxiong
 liǎngge bícǐ xiāngchùde hěn hǎo.

Yǒu shíhou wǒ quàn ta shǎo yùndòng duō yònggōng. Tā zuǐ lǐtou
 zhǐguǎn shuōzhe: “Hǎode, hǎode,” kěshì tā hái shì bú niàn shū.

Tā cháng gēn wǒ shuō: “Gēge, wǒ zàncheng gè xuéxiào guānyu yùndong
 10 de shuǐzhǔn yào tígāo. Xuéxiàode zhīdù yào gǎibiàn, shǎo niàn shū duō
 yùndong.” Nǐ shuō wǒ dìdi shuō de huà kě xiào bu kě xiào?

V

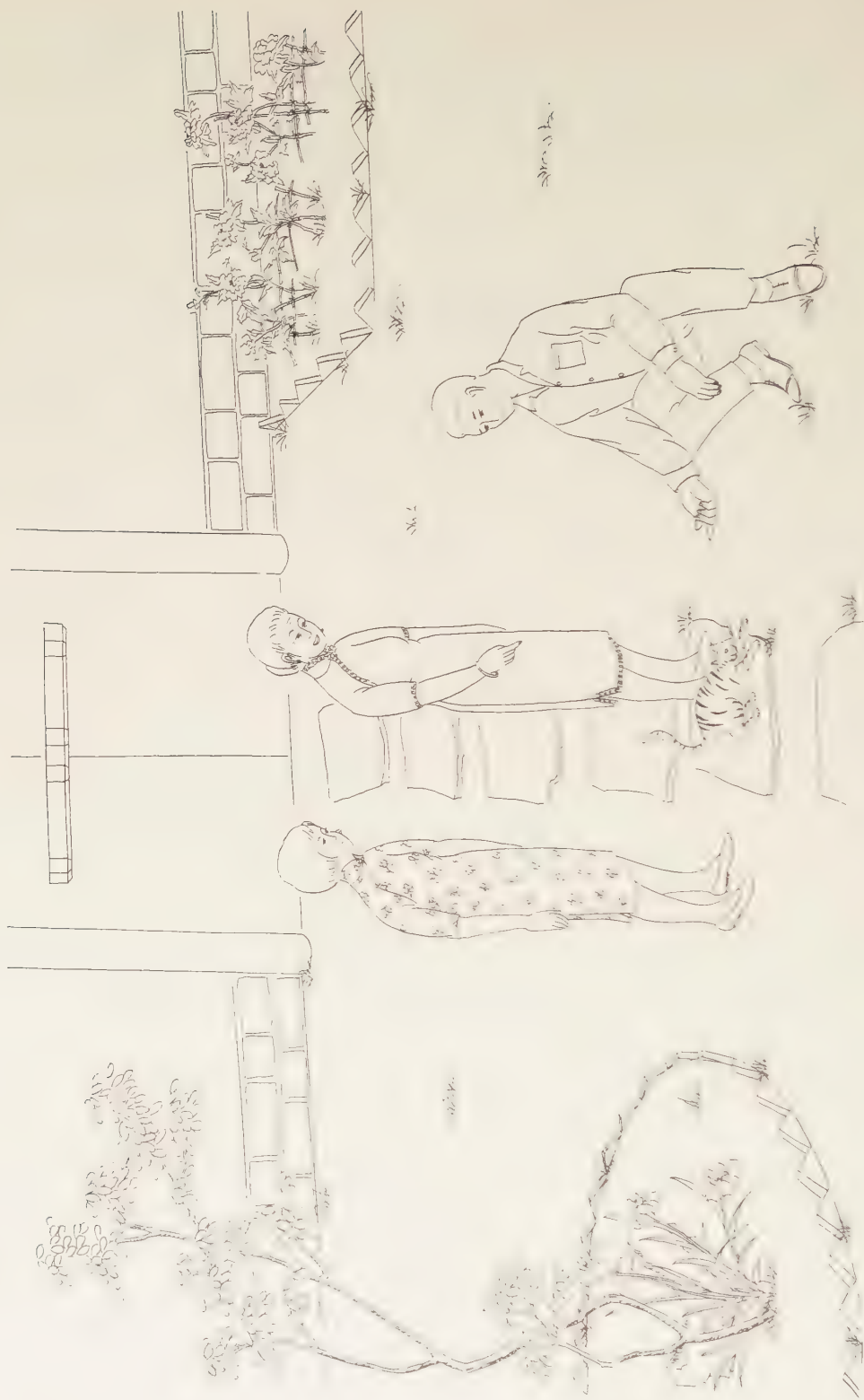
Zhāng: Oh, Lǎo Wáng lái le, qǐng zuò.
 Wáng: Nǐ zuótiān shàng nǎr qu le? Wǒ lái liǎngcì nǐ dōu bú zài jiā.
 Zhāng: Duìbuqǐ, wǒ qu kàn fángzi.
 Wáng: Kàntuǒ le ma?
 5 Zhāng: Méi you. Wǒ rènwei nèige fángzide chángduǎn, kuānzhǎi dōu bú
 héshì, dìdiǎn yě bù hǎo.
 Wáng: Zhèrde fángzi hěn nán zhǎo.
 Zhāng: Yǒude shíhou wǒ yě hěn máodùn. Yǒude shíhou xiǎng zhǎo hǎo
 yìdiǎr de fángzi, ānjīng yìdiǎr de dìdiǎn. Yǒude shíhou yòu xiǎng
 10 zhǎo piányi yìdiǎr de.
 Wáng: Zhǎo fángzi bú shì yíjiàn róngyìde shìqíng.
 Zhāng: Zhèi jǐtiān zhǎo fángzi zhǎode wǒ zhēn xīnkǔ.
 Wáng: Mǎnmǎrde zhǎo me.
 Zhāng: Shìde.
 15 Wáng: Zài jiàn le. Wǒ yào zǒu le.
 Zhāng: Máng shénmo?
 Wáng: Wǒ dájiǎo nǐ bàntiān le. Bìngqiě yě gāi chī fàn le.
 Zhāng: Xiànzài cái wǔdiǎn zhōng, lí chī fàn hái zǎozhe ne.

VI

Huá: Nǐ shàng nǎr qu?
 Wàn: Wǒ kàn wǒ nǚ péngyou qu.
 Huá: Nǐ zhèi jǐtiān zěnmo tiāntiān kàn nǚ péngyou qu?
 Wàn: Tā zhèi jǐtiān bìngle.
 5 Huá: Lǎo tīng nǐ tídao nǐde nǚ péngyou. Yǒu jīhuì nǐ gěi wǒ jièshao
 jièshao wǒ qiáoqiao.
 Wàn: Hàode. Shuō shízàide wǒde nǚ péngyou zhēn bú cuò.
 Huá: Zěnmo bu cuò? Nǐ shuō gei wǒ tīngting.
 Wàn: Hǎo. Tā shì yíge hěn cōngmíngde nǚ hái zi.
 10 Huá: Zhǎngde piàoliang bú piàoliang ne?

- Wàn: Wǒ kàn shì hěn piàoliang. Búdàn piàoliang érqǐě rén hǎo jīle.
Píqí tèbié hǎo. Wǒ bǎ ta yíqíède qíngxíng gàosu nǐ.
- Huá: Nǐ shuō ba.
- 15 Wàn: Wǒ xiān gàosu nǐ tā zhǎngde yàngzi—gāo bízi, dà yǎnjīng, huáng
tóufa. Wúchǐ wúcùn gāo, bú pàng yě bú shòu. Rúguǒ zài pàng
yìdiǎr jiù juéde tài pàng le, yàoshi shòu yìdiǎr yòu juéde tài shòu
le.
- Huá: Zènmo yì shuō nǐde nǚ péngyou gāo'ǎi pàngshòu zhèng hé biāozhēn.
- Wàn: Kéyi nènmo shuō. Wǒ zài gàosu nǐ tā shì zěnmoyàngr yíge rén.
- 20 Huá: Hǎo.
- Wàn: Tāde dìxiong jiěmèi hěn duō. Tāde fùmǔ wèile shēnghuó hěn xīnkǔ.
Wǒde nǚ péngyou yí xiàle kè jiù bāngzhe tā mǔqīn zuò língsuide
shì.
- Huá: Shénmo jiào língsui shì?
- 25 Wàn: Bǐrú shuō shōushi wūzi, bāngzhe ta mǔqīn shōushi jiāhuo, shénmode.
- Huá: Yàoshi hái yǒu zhèiyàngde nǚ hái zi nǐ yě gěi wǒ jièshao yíwèi.
- Wàn: Wǒ tīngshuo nǐ yǒu nǚ péngyou.
- Huá: Nǎr yǒu a? Tāmen xiā shuō.
- Wàn: Bújiànde ba?
- 30 Huá: Zhēnde méi yǒu. Nǐ zhíguǎn gěi wǒ jièshao jiù shì le.

UNIT III



“Měiyīng, nǐ kàn xiǎo māor—mī, mī, mī.”

Dì Shísānkè. Bān Jiā

Huìhuà: Bái Xiānsheng bāndào Huá jia yǐhòu, Huá Tàitai dài ta kànkàn fángzi.

Měi : Zěnmò jiàole zěnmò bàntiān méi rén kāi mén ne?

Bái : Dàgài méi tīngjian, yàoburán jiù shì mén líng huài le.

5 Měi : Nǐ zài èn liǎngxiār shìshì kàn.

Wáng: Lái le, lái le. Shéi ya?

Měi : Wáng Mā, wǒ.

10 Wáng: Oh, Gāo Xiǎojie Bái Xiānsheng lái le. Shì bu shì ènle bàntiān mén líng le? Yīnwei wǒ zài chufáng xǐ jiāhuo zìláishuǐ xiǎng de shēngyīn tīng dà.

Měi : Méi you, ènle yìhuěr.

Wáng: Wǒ bāng nín dīlou xiāngzi.

Bái : Xièxie nǐ bāng wǒ ná biéde. Xiāngzi tài zhòng le. Wǒ zìjǐ ná.

15 Wáng: Bái Xiānsheng zhēn kèqì. Xiǎojie, jīntiān zǎochen wǒ qīdiǎn zhōng jiù qu mǎi cài qu le.

Měi : Gànma nènmo zǎo wa?

Wáng: Wèizhe zǎo diār huílai děngzhe Bái Xiānsheng a.

Měi : Nǐ qiáo Wáng Mā duó huānying nǐ. Tàitai zài jiā ma?

20 Wáng: Zài jiā, Xiānsheng gēn dà shàoye chūqu le. Shuō yìhuěr jiù huílai.

Tài : Bái Xiānsheng Měiyīng lái le.

Měi : Lái le. Bómu zǎo.

Bái : Nín zǎo.

25 Tài : Bái Xiānsheng, Huá Xiānsheng yīnwei yǒu yíge yuēhuì, chīle záodiǎn jiù chūqu le. Tā ràng wǒ gēn nǐ shuō yìshēngr, tā shīyíng duìbuqǐ. Tā shuō tā yìhuěr jiù huílai.

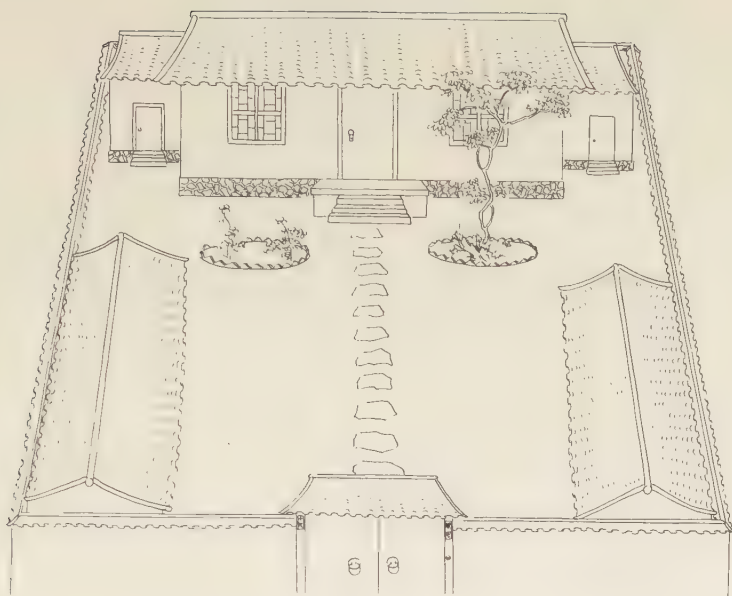
Bái : Huá Xiānsheng tài kèqì.

30 Tài : Xuéxīn ne, qù qí mǎ qu le. Tā zǒu de shíhou shuō nǐ lái yǐqián tā yídìng huílai. Bù zhīdào wèi shénmo hái méi huílai ne. Dàgài tā yě kuài huílai le. Wǒ zuótian gàosu ta Bái Xiānsheng zhùzai wǒmen zhèr, gēn tā zhùzai xiāngfáng, tā gāoxìngde bùdéliǎo.

Bái : Huá Tàitai, nín jiào wǒ Wénshān déle. Bié jiào wǒ Bái Xiānsheng.

Tài : Yǐhòu wǒ zhēnde jiào nǐ míngzi le?

- Bái : Nín yīnggāi jiào wǒ míngzi.
- 35 Wáng: Bái Xiānsheng Gāo Xiáojie hē chá. Liǎngwèi chí diǎnxin le ma?
 Měi : Chīguo le, Wáng Mā.
- Bái : Jiānglái máfan Wáng Mā de dìfang duōzhe ne.
 Wáng: Nín yǒu shénmo shì zhíguǎn fēnfu wo.
- Bái : Huá Tàitai, zhe fángzi shèjì de zhēn hǎo wa.
- 40 Tàì : Zhe dōu shì Huá Xiānsheng zìjǐ shèjì de. Wǒmen zhèige fángzi wàibiǎo wánquán shì Zhōng shì de. Huá Xiānsheng gěi rénjiā gài de fángzi shífēnzhī jiǔ dōu shì Xī shì de, kěshi zìjǐ zhù ne, tā xǐhuan Zhōng shìde fángzi.
- Bái : Wǒ yě xǐhuan Zhōngguo fángzi.
- 45 Tàì : Zhe fángzi wàibiǎo shì Zhōng shìde, kěshi lǐtou ne—bǐfang shuō chufáng, cèsuǒ, xízǎofáng—dōu shì Xī shìde. Nǐ kàn yuánzi tǐng dà. Kěshi fángzi bù duō. Yīnwei wǒmen rénkǒu shǎo, bù xūyào hěn duō de fángzi. Wǒ gēn Huá Xiānsheng zhù de zhèi sānjiān shì zhèngfáng.
- 50 Bái : Nín zhèi shì běi fáng ba.
 Tàì : Shìde. Nǐ gēn Xuéxīn zhù de shì xī xiāngfáng. Dōng xiāngfáng shì chufáng gēn Wáng Māde wūzi. Wǒmen zhèi shì sānhér fáng.
- Bái : Shèjìde zhēn hǎo.
- Tàì : Huá Xiānsheng ta xǐhuan zhòng huār. Yì yǒu kònggr huòshi xiūxi
 55 de rìzi jiù zài yuánzi lǐtou zhòng huār.
- Bái : Huār zhēn bù shǎo.
- Tàì : Wǒ lǎo shuō ta: “Yǒu gōngfu xiūxi xiūxi, hǎo bu hǎo?”
- Bái : Zhòng huār shì yìzhǒng xiāoqiǎn, yě kéyì shuō shì yùndong.
- Tàì : Wénshān, nǐ kànkān wǒmende fángzi.
- 60 Bái : Hǎo.
 Tàì : Zhèijiān shì wǒ gēn Huá Xiānshengde wòfáng.
- Bái : Nín bùzhīde zhēn hǎo.
- Tàì : Nǎ a, luànqibāzāo. Wǒ yě méi gōngfu shōushi wūzi. . . . Zhèijiān shì Huá Xiānshengde shūfáng.
- 65 Bái : Huá Xiānsheng shū zhēn duō.
 Tàì : Shì a. Xiànzàide jiànzhū fāngfǎ chángchang gǎibiàn, suóyì děi cháng kàn xīn shū. Tāde shū dà bùfen shì guānyu jiànzhū de shū. Zhèxiē shū dōu shì jǐwèi zài wàiguó de péngyou cóng wàiguó jìlái de.
- 70 Bái : Nín zhè fángzi pū de dōu shì dìbǎn. Zhōngguo fángzi chàbuduō dōu shì yòng zhuān pū dì.
- Tàì : Huá Xiānsheng shuō zhuān pū dì cháoshī, suóyì pū de dìbǎn.



Huá jiā

Bái : Měiyīng, nǐ kàn xiǎo māor—mī, mī, mī. Zhèizhī mǎo hěn féi.

75 Tàì : Zhèizhī mǎo zhěng shí'èrbàng zhòng. Wǒmen yǎng le wūnián duō le. Nǐ yě xǐhuan mǎo ma?

Bái : Wǒ zuì xǐhuan mǎo le. Wǒmen jiā yě yǒu xiǎo māor.

Tàì : Zhèr láoshu hěn duō, suóyì bǐdèi yǎng mǎo. Nǐ kàn zhèige shì xǐzǎofáng.

80 Bái : Bùzhīde zhēn hǎo. Yì kāi mén duìmiàn qiángshang jiù shì yíge dà jǐngzi.

Tàì : Wǒmen měijiān wūzide mén dōu néng zìdòng guānshang. . . . Nèijiān shì Xuéxīnde wūzi. Zhèijiān shì nǚ zhù de.

Bái : Zhèijiān wǒ zuótian kànguo le.

85 Tàì : Chufáng yě shì Xī shì de. Zhōngguó zào shì yòng zhuān zào de, shāo méi. Wǒmen yòng diànzào. Huá Xiānsheng shuō yòu gānjīng yòu fāngbian. Zhèige xiǎo wūzi shì duī dōngxì de.

Bái : Zhèr yǒu yíliàng zìxíngchē.

90 Tàì : Zhè shì wǒ èr érzi de. Dìxiong liǎngge yí rén yí liàng zìxíngchē. Xuéxīnde qíchūqu le. Zhèliàng jiānglái nǐ qí ba. Fǎnzhèng gēzhe yě méi yòng.

Bái : Hǎo jí le.

Tàì : Nǐ shàng xuéxiào láihuí bu shì fāngbian diar?

Bái : Xièxie nín.

- 95 Tàì : Měiyīng a, wǒ zhǐ gùzhe gēn Wénshān shuō huà le. Bómǔ hái méi gēn nǐ tántan ne. Shēng qì le ba.
 Měi : Méi you, Bómǔ.
 Tàì : Nǐ fùqin mǔqin dōu zài jiā ma?
 Měi : Dōu zài jiā.
 100 Tàì : Měiyīng, zài wǒ zhèr chī wǔfàn, ah. Zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng Wénshān chī fàn. Wǒ yě qǐng nǐ.
 Měi : Bómǔ, xièxie nín, wǒ bù zài nín zhèr chī fàn le. Wǒ yīhuěr jiù děi zǒu. Yīnwei fùqinde péngyou jiēhūn wǒmen bìděi qu dào xī.
 Tàì : Nènmō wǒ bù liú nǐ le.
 Měi : Shíhour bù zǎo le. Wǒ yào zǒu le.
 105 Tàì : Zài zuò yīhuěr.
 Měi : Gǎi tiān wǒ zài lái qíáo nín.
 Bái : Měiyīng, wǎnshang wǒmen tōng diànhuà.
 Měi : Hǎo. Bómǔ, nín bié sòng wo.
 Tàì : Hǎo, wǒ bú sòng le. Wénshān sòngsong ba.
 110 Měi : Bómǔ, zài jiàn.
 Tàì : Zài jiàn, Měiyīng. Lái wár, ah.
 Měi : Hǎo.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (3) jiào (mén) call for a door to be opened (by knocking, ringing a bell, etc.) (VO)
 1.1. Kuài kāi mén qu. Yǒu rén jiào mén ne.
 2.0. (5) shì try (V)
 shìshì (kàn) try and see (V)
 2.1. Zhège diǎnxin zhēn hǎo chī. Nǐ chī diār shìshì.
 2.2. Nèige gōngzuò hěn nán. Bù zhīdào wǒ néng bù néng zuò. Wǒ shìshì kàn.

- 3.0. (9) xiǎng sound, make a noise (IV)
- 3.1. Wàibiar shénmo xiǎng? Nǐ tīngjian méi you?
- 3.2. Zhèige língr bù hěn xiǎng.
- 4.0. (12) dīlou lift, carry (in the hand, with the arm hanging down at one's side) (TV)
- 4.1. Nèige lìfū yíge rén néng dīlou liǎngzhī dà xiāngzi.
- 4.2. Zhèige píbào tài dà le. Wǒ ke dīloubuliǎo.
- 4.3. Qǐng nǐ bǎ dǎzìjī dīloudao shūfáng qu.
- 4.4. Gěi wǒ bǎ shǒutíxiāng dīloudao wàitou qu.
- 5.0. (13) xièxie please . . . (Note 1)
- 5.1. Xièxie nǐ bǎ dáhuǒjī dìgei wǒ.
- 6.0. (19) shàoye young gentleman, (someone else's) son (polite form) (N)
- 6.1. Nín yǒu jǐwèi shàoye ya?
- 7.0. (25) shēng(r) occurrence (M) [lit. sound] (Note 2)
- 7.1 Nǐ kànzhe diār. Lǎoshī láile gāosu wǒmen yìshēngr.
- 7.2 Qǐng nín gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō yìshēngr wǒ yào zǒu le.
- 7.3 Duō jiào ta liǎngshēng.
- 8.0. (25) shīyíng be out when someone calls (IV) [lit. lose welcome]
- 8.1. Duìbuqǐ, zuótian nín dào wǒ nèr qù wǒ shīyíng le.
- 9.0. (28) mǎ horse (N) (also a surname)
- mǎchē horse-drawn vehicle
- 9.1. Mǎ Xiānshengde èr shàoye yě shì yīsheng ma?
- 9.2. Cóngqiánde rén dōu shì zuò mǎchē.
- 10.0. (28) qí ride (astride) (TV, CV)
- 10.1. Wǒ xiǎode shíhou hěn xǐhuan qí mǎ.
- 10.2. Tā shì qí mǎ dào nèr qù de.
- 11.0. (31) xiāngfáng side unit of a house (N) (Note 3)
- 11.1. Tā zhù dōng xiāngfáng, wǒ zhù xī xiāngfáng.
- 12.0. (39) shèjì design, plan (N, V) [lit. establish plan]
- shèjì A de yàngzi to design A
- shèjì V A plan or design [the V-ing of] A
- 12.1. Zhèige xiězìhuōde yàngzi shì wǒ shèjì de.
- 12.2. Nèige fángzide shèjì duì wǒmen bù héyòng.
- 12.3. Tāde zhíwu shì shèjì qìchēde yàngzi.
- 12.4. Tā zuì xǐhuan shèjì gài fángzi.

- 13.0. (41) wàibiǎo surface, outside (N) [lit. outside form]
 wàibiǎo(shang) on the surface, superficially
- 13.1. Zhèisuǒ fángzi wàibiǎo kànzhe hěn bù cuò.
- 13.2. Nǐ kàn tā wàibiǎoshang zhǎngde hěn cōngming, qíshí ta hěn bèn.
- 14.0. (42) zhī of (Note 4)
 A fēnzhī B B of A parts, B/A (Note 4)
- 14.1. Tāde bīng hěn zhòng. Tā huó de xīwang zhǐ yǒu bǎifēnzhī yī.
- 15.0. (46) cèsuǒ toilet, rest room (N) [lit. toilet room]
 nán cèsuǒ men's room
 nǚ cèsuǒ ladies' room
- 15.1. Nán cèsuǒ zài lóuxià, nǚ cèsuǒ zài lóushàng.
- 16.0. (46) yuànzi courtyard (N)
- 16.1. Tāmen yuànzili yǒu hěn duō dà shù.
- 16.2. Zhèisuǒr fángzi dào bú cuò. Kěxī yuànzi tài xiǎo le.
- 17.0. (49) zhèngfáng main unit in a house (N) (Note 3)
- 17.1. Chòngzhe dà mén de fángzi jiào zhèngfáng.
- 18.0. (52) hé(r) (measure for detached parts of a dwelling) (Note 3)
 sānhé(r) fáng three-unit house
 sìhé(r) fáng four-unit house
- 18.1. Wǒmen jiā zhù de shì sìhé fáng. Nánfáng, běifáng, dōngfáng, xīfáng dōu yǒu.
- 19.0. (54) zhòng plant, grow, raise (TV)
 zhòng cài raise vegetables
- 19.1. Nèige dà gōngyuánli zuì jìn zhòngle hěn duōde méiguì.
- 19.2. Wǒ zǔfù zài yuànzili zhòngle hěn duōde cài.
- 20.0. (54) huā(r) flower (N)
- 20.1. Wǒmen yuànzide huār zhēn hǎo kàn. Yǒu hóng huār, huáng huār, bái huār.
- 21.0. (54) kòngr free time, leisure time (N)
- 21.1. Tā hěn xǐhuan kàn diànshì. Yī yǒu kòngr tā jiù kàn.
- 22.0. (57) shuō admonish, reprove (V)
 A shuō, ràng B V A admonishes B to V
- 22.1. Bié lǎo shuō ta.
- 22.2. Lǎoshī cháng shuō, ràng wǒmen duō yònggōng.
- 23.0. (58) xiāoqiǎn pastime, hobby, pleasurable activity (N)

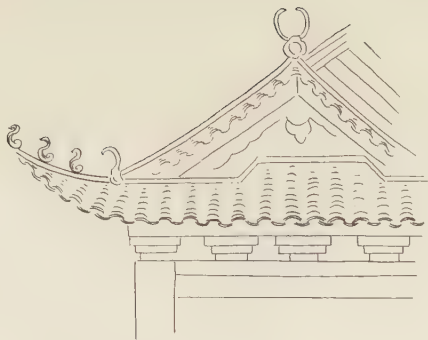
- 23.1. Wǒmen zhèige zhōumò zuò shénmo xiāoqiǎn ne?
- 23.2. Wǒde xiāoqiǎn jiù shì tīngtīng yīnyuè kànkàn diànshì shénmode.
- 24.0. (61) wòfáng bedroom (N) [lit. lie room]
- 24.1. Zuótian wǒ kàn de nèisuǒ fángzi zhēn bú cuò. Shì Xī shìde, yǒu ge dà yuǎnzi, yǒu kètīng fàntīng, hái yǒu liǎngge dà wòfáng.
- 25.0. (62) bùzhi arrange, fix up, set up (TV) [lit. spread arrange]
- 25.1. Xuéxiào yào kāi huì le. Wǒmen děi bǎ dàlǐtáng bùzhi bùzhi.
- 25.2. Ta hěn huì bùzhi fángzi. Nǐ kàn tā jiā lǐtou bùzhìde duómo piàoliang.
- 26.0. (66) jiànzhū erect, build, construct (TV) [lit. construct build]
jiànzhushī architect (also used as title)
jiànzhuxué architecture
- 26.1. Zhèige dà lóu cái jiànzhule yìnián.
- 26.2. Ta fùqīn shì ge jiànzhushī.
- 26.3. Xué jiànzhuxué bìděi shùxué hǎo.
- 27.0. (67) dà bùfen greater part, majority
- 27.1. Zhèi shì wǒ shūde yībùfen. Dà bùfen dōu zài jiā lǐtou ne.
- 28.0. (70) pū spread out over (something), lay down; cover (V) (Note 5)
pū chuáng make a bed
bǎ A pūzai B spread A over B
yòng A pū B put A on B, cover B with A
- 28.1. Wǒmen jiā suírán yǒu lǎomāzi, kěshì měitiān dōu shì wǒ zìjǐ pū chuáng.
- 28.2. Wáng Mā, qǐng nǐ bǎ nège xīn dānzi pūzai chuángshang.
- 28.3. Bié yòng jiù dānzi pū chuáng.
- 28.4. Nǐ yào bu yào pū xīn dānzi?
- 29.0. (70) dìbǎn (wooden) floor (N) [lit. floor wood]
pū dìbǎn lay down a wooden floor
- 29.1. Zhōngguó fángzi pū dìbǎn de hěn shǎo.
- 30.0. (71) zhuān brick (N) (measure: kuài)
pū zhuān lay bricks
- 30.1. Jiànzhū Zhōng shì fángzi yòng zhuān de duō.
- 30.2. Tā yíge zhōngtóu néng pū jǐshikuài zhuān.
- 31.0. (71) dì ground, soil, land, floor (N)
zhòng dì till the soil, farm

- pū dì cover the floor
yíkuài dì a plot of land
- 31.1. Wǒmen shì xiāngxià rén. Wǒ fùqīn zhòng dì.
31.2. Wǒde gōngzuò shì gěi rénjiā yòng zhuān pū dì.
31.3. Nèi yíkuài dì kéyǐ zhòng hěn duō qīngcài.
- 32.0. (72) cháoshī damp (SV)
32.1. Wǒ bù xǐhuan zhèige dìfang. Tiānqì cháoshīde lìhai.
- 33.0. (73) (xiǎo) māo(r) cat (N) (measure: zhī)
33.1. Wǒ mèimei hěn xǐhuan māo. Wǒmen jiā yǎngle sānzhī xiǎo māor.
- 34.0. (73) mī, mī, mī here kitty, kitty, kitty! (Note 6)
34.1. Zhōngguó rén jiào xiǎo māo lái jiào mī, mī, mī.
- 35.0. (73) féi fat (of animals), rich (of soil) (SV)
35.1. Wǒ bù xǐhuan chī féi ròu.
35.2. Nǐmen zhèrde dì hěn féi.
- 36.0. (74) zhěng all, whole, entire; precisely, exactly
36.1. Wǒ zhěng yìnián méi kànjian tā le.
36.2. Xiànzài zhěng shí'èrdiǎn zhōng.
36.3. Jīnnián tā zhěng èrshisuì.
- 37.0. (74) bàng pound (M)
37.1. Zuótiān wǒ mǎi liǎngbàng zhū ròu, dǎsuan zuò shízi tóu.
- 38.0. (77) láoshu mouse, rat (N) (measure: zhī)
38.1. Zhōngguóde xīnánbù láoshu zuì duō.
- 39.0. (80) jìngzi mirror (N)
39.1. Wǒ wūzide qiángshàng guàzhe yíge dà jìngzi.
- 40.0. (81) zìdòng automatic (SV) [lit. self move]
40.1. Xiànzài hěn duōde dōngxī dōu shì zìdòngde.
- 41.0. (81) guān close [something]; be closed
guānshàng close (up)
guān dēng turn off a light
41.1. Nèige bǎi huò gōngsī yīnwei bú zhuàn qián guān mén le.
41.2. Xièxie nǐ bǎ chē mén guānshàng.
41.3. Nǐ zěnmó nǎwǎnle chīde bù bǎ bīngxiāng mén guānshàng ne?
41.4. Nǐ cóng wūzili chūlai de shíhòu bié wàngle guān dēng.
- 42.0. (84) zào stove (N)

diànzào electric stove

- 42.1. Wǒmen jiāde zào shì Zhōng shì de.
- 42.2. Diànzào yòu fāngbian yòu bu zāng, kěshi zuò Zhōngguo fàn bú zěnmō hǎo yòng.
- 43.0. (84) zào make, build, construct (TV)
- 43.1. Nèisuǒ fángzi zàode hěn hé biāozhǔn.
- 43.2. Suóyǒu Wáng Jiànzhushī shèjì zàode fángzi dōu hěn piǎoliang.
- 43.3. Tāmen jiā rén duō, suóyì zàole yìsuǒr hěn dàde fángzi.
- 44.0. (85) méi coal (N)
- méi zào coal-burning stove
- shāo méi burn coal
- 44.1. Yòng méi zào hěn zāng. Chúfángde qiáng shénmode dōu shì hēi de.
- 44.2. Wǒmen jiā měi yíge yuè shāo méi shāode hěn duō. Yíge yuè yào shāo wúbǎibàng méi.
- 45.0. (86) duī accumulate, pile up, store (V); pile, heap, group (N)
- 45.1. Zhuōzishang nèiduī dōngxì shì shéide?
- 45.2. Dōngtian le. Shù yèzi dōu luòxiālai le. Yuànzili duīle yìduī shù yèzi.
- 45.3. Nǐ qiáo nèiduī rén zuò shénmo ne?
- 45.4. Bǎ zhèixiē dōngxì duīzai bíchúli.
- 46.0. (87) liàng (measure for vehicles)
- 46.1. Nèige tíngchēchǎng tíngle wúbǎi duō liàng qìchē.
- 47.0. (87) zìxíngchē(r) bicycle (N) (measure: liàng) [lit. self travel vehicle]
- 47.1. Wǒ fùqīn shuō yàoshi dìdì kǎo dì-yī tā sòng ta yíliàng zìxíngchē.
- 48.0. (88) yí(ge)rén yí . . . one . . . per person
- 48.1. Wǒmen dìxiong jiěmèi wǔge rén. Wǒ fùqīn yíge rén sòng wǒmen yìzhī xīn gāngbǐ.
- 49.0. (89) gē put, place (TV)
- 49.1. Mā, wǒ bǎ dǎzìjī gēzai nǎr a?
- 49.2. Zhèige cài bú gòu xián. Zài gē diār yán.
- 49.3. Wǒ jīntiān è le. Dào jiā yǐhòu gēxia shū mǎshàng jiù chī fàn le.
- 50.0. (92) láihuí going and coming, round trip [lit. come return]
- láihuí piào round-trip ticket
- 50.1. Qǐng wèn, dào Niǔyue zuò qìchē láihuí yào duōshao shíhou?
- 50.2. Dào Shànghǎi de fēijī piào láihuí duōshǎo qián?

- 50.3. Wǒ mǎi liǎngzhāng dào Niǔyuē qù de láihuí piào.
- 51.0. (94) (zhǐ) gù, gùde, gùzhe think of, consider, be preoccupied with (V)
gùbude unable to consider, can't manage
- 51.1. Wǒ zhǐ gùle niàn shū le. Tā lái le wǒ dōu bù zhīdào.
- 51.2. Kuài yào kǎoshì le. Mángde lián fàn wǒ dōu gùbude chī le.
- 51.3. Tā zhǐ gùzhe gēn nèiwèi piàoliang xiǎojie shuō huà le. Wǒ jiàole tā bàntiān tā dōu méi tīngjiàn.
- 51.4. Wǒ máng jí. Nǎr gùde kàn xǐ?
- 52.0. (95) qī angry (SV); anger, bad temper (N)
qīsī be terribly angry [lit. die of anger]
shēng qī become angry
- 52.1. Jīntiān kǎoshì kě zhēn bǎ wǒ gěi qīsī le. Yǒu yíge wèntí wǒ zěnmó xiǎng yě xiǎngbuqǐlái le.
- 52.2. Tāde qī zhēn hǎo. Wúlùn zěnmó shuō tā yě bù shēng qī.
- 52.3. Wǒ kàncuòle tímu. Wǒ qīde yào sǐ.
- 53.0. (99) ah (exclamation) (Note 7)
- 53.1. Wǒ chūqu le. Nǐmen hǎohǎo niàn shū, ah.
- 53.2. Míngtiān xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng wǒ qǐng nǐ hē chá, ah.
- 54.0. (102) dào xǐ congratulate (V)
A gěi B dào xǐ A congratulates B
- 54.1. Zhāng Xiānshengde érzi jīntiān jiēhūn. Wǒmen děi gěi tā dào xǐ qu.
- 55.0. (103) liú keep, reserve, hold on to; detain, keep behind, leave behind (V)
liúbuzhù unable to detain
- 55.1. Wǒ yìhuìr jiù huílai. Yàoshi Wáng Xiǎojie lái le liú tā zài zhèr chī fàn.
- 55.2. Tā yídìng yào zǒu. Zěnmó liú yě liúbuzhù ta.
- 55.3. Yòngbuliǎo shíkuài qián. Nín liú wǔkuài qián jiù gòu le.
- 56.0. (108) sòng see someone off (TV)
- 56.1. Bié sòng wǒ le. Nín qǐng huíqu ba.
- 56.2. Zàijiàn, wǒ bú sòng nín le.
- 56.3. Duìbuqǐ wǒ lái wǎn le yīnwèi sòng yíge péngyou shàng fēijī.
- 56.4. Bié sòng, bié sòng. . . . Na wǒ jiù bú sòng nǐ le. Zàijiàn, zàijiàn.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Lǎoshī, zhèige jùzi wǒ bú huì niàn. . . . Nǐ shìshì kàn me.
2. Zhèige dàlǐtáng shèjìde zhēn hǎo. Suǐbiàn zuòzai nǎr dōu tīngde qīngchu kànde qīngchu.
3. Nǐ qiáo zhèige biǎode wàibiǎo hěn hǎo, kěshi zǒude yìdiǎr yě bù zhǔn.
4. Wǒmen fángzi hòutoude nèikuài dì zhòngle bù shǎode qīngcài.
5. Wǒ yìtiān mángde yào sǐ. Yìdiǎr kòng yě méi yǒu.
6. Tāde běnshì shì zhuānmén huì bùzhi fángzi.
7. Wǒ dà bùfēnde xínglǐ jiāo chuán yùnzǒu le.
8. Tā zhěng nián yě bú kàn yíci diànyǐngr.
9. Chūlai jìnqu qǐng nǐ guān mén.
10. Nèi liǎngge háizi kǔde tǐng lǐhai. Wǒ gěi tāmen yíge rén yíge júzi cái bù kǔ le.
11. Qǐng wèn nǐ zhèizhāng zhuōzi gē nǎr a?
12. Tā mángde bùdéliǎo. Nǎr gùde kàn diànyǐngr a?
13. Tā fēi zǒu bù kě. Zěnmó liú yě liúbuzhù ta.
14. Tā dāsuan jiānglái qízhe zìqīngchē lǔxíng quán guó.
15. Jīnnian zhèrde rénǎi kǒu zēngjiǎle bǎifānzhi shíwǔ.
16. Zhèikuài dì jiānglái yào jiànzhù èrshì duō céngde gāo lóu.
17. Wǒ bàba shì zhòng dìde.
18. Nǐ kàn nèige xiǎo shānshang xīn zàole yìsuǒr Xī shìde xiǎo fángzi.
19. Huǒchē zhàn duīle hěn duō huò. Bù zhīdào shì wǎng nǎr yùn de.
20. Nín qǐng huíqu ba. Bié sòng wǒ le.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ jīntian shídiǎn zhōng jiù cóng Gāo jia dào Huá jia le. Háishi
 Měiyīng kāizhe Sān Yǒu Shūdiǎnde chē sòng wǒ lái de. Dàole Huá jia
 yǐhòu, wǒmen jiàole bàntiānde mén, méi rén lái kāi mén. Wǒ xiǎng shi
 méi tīngjian huòzhě mén língbù xiǎng le. Yòu ènle yīhuēr. Wáng Mā
 5 lái kāi mén le. Tā shuō zìláishuǐde shēngyīn hěn dà. Tā wèn wǒmen
 èn mén língbù hǎo jiǔ le. Wǒmen bù hǎo yìsi shuō ènle bàntiān mén língbù
 le, Měiyīng shuō ènle yīhuēr. Wáng Mā shuō yào gěi wǒ dīlou dà pībāo,
 kěshi wǒ bù néng ràng nǚ yòngrén ná nènmo zhòng de dōngxī.

Wǒmen jiànle Huá Tàitai tā kèkèqīqīde shuō Huá Xiānsheng yīnwèi
 10 yǒu yuēhuì chūqu le, mǎshàng jiù huīlai. Huá Xuéxīn qù qí mǎ qu le.

Huá Tàitai de niánjì bǐ wǒ dàle jǐshísuì, kéyì shuō shì yíwèi zhǎngbèi.
 Lǎo jiào wǒ Bái Xiānsheng zhēn bù hǎo yìsi. Jīntian wǒ yòu gēn ta shuō
 yǐhòu qǐng tā jiào wǒde míngzì.

Jīntian Huá Tàitai dài wǒ kànkàn tāmen de fángzi. Tāmen zhèige
 15 fángzi shèjìde kě zhēn bú cuò. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Huá Xiānsheng de shūfáng.
 Shū jiàzishang fàngzhe hěn duōde shū, qiángshang guàzhe hěn duō fángzi
 xiàngpiān. Bùzhīde hǎojíle.

Huá Tàitai shuō zhèisuo fángzi dōu shì Huá Xiānsheng shèjì de.

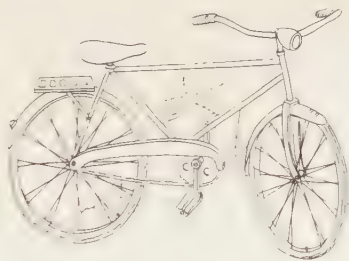
Huá jiade fángzi wàibiāo shì Zhōng shìde, kěshi lǐtou wa, chúfáng,
 20 xízǎofáng, shénmode dōu shì Xī shìde. Zhōngguó fángzi chàbuduō dōu shì
 sānhér fáng sìhé fáng. Huá jiade fángzi shì sānhér fáng. Shénmo jiào
 sānhér fáng ne? Jiù shì yǒu zhèngfáng, dōng xī liǎngbiān yǒu xiāngfáng.
 Qiánmiàn méi yǒu fángzi, shì qiáng. Wǒ gēn Huá Xuéxīn zhù xī xiāngfáng.
 Yuànzì lǐtou zhòngle hěn duōde huā. Tāmen de fángzi hái yǒu yíge

25 hǎochu—dì dōu shì yòng dìbǎn pū de. Chàbuduō Zhōngguó fángzi dōu shì yòng zhuān pū dì.

Zài duī dōngxī de xiǎo fángzi lǐtōu wǒ kànjian yíliàng zìxíngchē. Huá Tàitai shuō shì tā èr érzide. Tā shuō yǐhòu jiào wǒ qí. Huá Tàitai shuō de shíhou wǒ bù zhīdào wǒ yīnggāi zěnmō shuō. Wǒ xiǎng Huá Tàitai yí
30 kànjian zhèiliàng zìxíngchē, yòu xiǎng tāde érzi le. Yàoshi wǒ qí zhèiliàng zìxíngchē zēngjiā tāde nánguò nǐ shuō zěnmō bàn? Yǐhòu wǒ shì qí hǎo ne, hái shì bù qí hǎo ne?

Huá jia yǎngle yíge hěn kě ài de xiǎo māor. Hěn féi hěn dà. Huá Tàitai shuō yīnwei láoshu tài duō suóyì yǎng yìzhī mǎo.

35 Jīntian Gāo Xiānshengde péngyou jiēhūn. Gāo jia quán jiā dōu děi qù dào xǐ qu. Suóyì Huá Tàitai liú Měiyīng zài zhèr chī wǔfàn, Měiyīng bù zài zhèr chī, tā bìděi huíqu gēn tā fùmǔ yíkuài qu dào xǐ. Wǒ xīn lǐtōu hěn xīwang tā bù zǒu, zài zhèr chī fàn, kěshì méi fázi. Wǒ bǎ tā sòng dào mén kǒu.



Wèntí

1. Bái Xiānsheng gēn Gāo Xiǎojie dào le Huá jia, tāmen jiào mén shì zěnmō jiào de?
2. Bái Wénshān shuō shì wèi shénmō méi rén kāi mén?
3. Wáng Mā kāi mén yǐhòu xiān wèn tāmen shénmō?
4. Yīnwei shénmō Wénshān Měiyīng jiào le bàntiān mén Wáng Mā méi tīngjian?
5. Wáng Mā yào bāng Bái Xiānsheng zuò shénmō?
6. Bái Xiānsheng ràng ta zuò le ma? Wèi shénmō?
7. Wáng Mā zǎochen jídiǎn zhōng qu mǎi cài? Tā wèi shénmō nènmo zǎo qu mǎi cài?
8. Wénshān gēn Měiyīng dào le Huá jia de shíhou shéi zài jiā shéi chūqu le?

9. Huá Xiānsheng chūqu zuò shénmo? Tā ràng Huá Tàitai gàosu Bái Wénshān shénmo?
10. Shéi shì dà shàoye? Tā chūqu gàn má qu le?
11. Wénshān bāndào Huá jia yǐhòu, tā zhùzai nǐjiān fángzi lǐtou?
12. Bái Wénshān wèi shénmo bù ràng Huá Tàitai jiào tā Bái Xiānsheng ne?
13. Wénshān shuō Huá jiade fángzi zěnmoyàng? Huá Tàitai shuō tāmen de fángzi shì shénmo yàngde?
14. Huá Tàitai shuō Huá Xiānsheng gěi bié rén zào fángzi dōu shì zào shénmo yàngde?
15. Huá Tàitai shuō tāmen de fángzi wàibiǎo shì Zhōng shìde, lǐtou dōu shì shénmo fángzi shì Xī shì de?
16. Huá Tàitai shuō wèi shénmo tāmen yǒu hěn dà de yíge yuànzi kěshì zhǐ gài jǐjiān fángzi?
17. Huá Tàitai shuō Huá Xiānsheng xǐhuan zuò shénmo xiǎoqiǎn?
18. Huá Xiānshengde shū duō bù duō? Tāde shū dōu shì guānyu nǐ yìfāngmiàn de shū?
19. Zhōng shì fángzi yòng shénmo pǔ dì? Xī shì fángzi yòng shénmo pǔ dì? Zhuān pǔ dì yǒu shénmo duǎnchū?
20. Zhōngguó rén yàoshi kànjian xiǎo māor jiào xiǎo māor zěnmō jiào? Měiguó rén zěnmō jiào?
21. Huá Tàitai dài Bái Wénshān kàn nǐjiān duī dōngxì de xiǎo fángzi de shíhou, Wénshān kànjian shénmo le?
22. Huá Tàitai tā wèi shénmo méi gēn Měiyīng shuō huà?
23. Huá Tàitai liú Měiyīng chí fàn Měiyīng wèi shénmo bú zài nǐr chī?
24. Yàoshi yǒu nǚrén shuō yào bāng nǐ dīlou dōngxì nǐ shuō shénmo?
25. Yàoshi nǐ zhīdao yíge péngyou jīntian dào nǐ jiā lái kěshì nǐ yǒu shì chūqu le, nǐ yīngdāng gàosu jiā lǐtode rén gēn nǐwèi péngyou shuō shénmo?
26. Yàoshi yíwèi bǐ nǐ niánji dà de rén jiào nǐ Xiānsheng nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
27. Yíge péngyou qǐng nǐ kànkàn tā jiāde fángzi nǐ kànwán yǐhòu shuō shénmo?
28. Yàoshi yíge péngyou kànwánle nǐde fángzi shuō nǐ bùzhīde hǎo nǐ yīngdāng shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
29. Rúguǒ nǐ dào péngyou jiā qu nǐ yào zǒu le péngyou liú nǐ zài zuò yìhuěr ní zěnmō shuō?
30. Nǐ dào péngyou jiā qu péngyou chūlai sòng nǐ, nǐ shuō shénmo?

Dialogue: After Mr. White moves to the Huas' home, Mrs. Hua shows him around the house.

Mei : How come we've rung for so long without anyone answering the door?

White: Perhaps they didn't hear. Otherwise the door bell must be out of order.

Mei : Try ringing a couple more times.

Wang: (calling from inside) Coming, coming! Who is it?

Mei : Wang Ma, it's me.

Wang: Oh, Miss Gao, Mr. White, you're here. Did you ring the bell for a long time? I was doing the dishes in the kitchen and the running water made quite a noise.

Mei : No, we rang for just a little while.

Wang: (to Mr. White) I'll help you carry the suitcase.

White: Please help me with something else. The suitcase is too heavy. I'll take it myself.

Wang: You are very kind. Miss, I went shopping for food at seven this morning.

Mei : Why so early?

Wang: So I could come back early and wait for Mr. White.

Mei : (to Mr. White) You see how much Wang Ma welcomes you. (To Wang Ma) Is Mrs. (Hua) home?

Wang: Yes. Mr. (Hua) and the [older] young gentleman have gone out. (They) said they'd be back shortly.

Tai : Mr. White, Meiying, you're here.

Mei : Yes. Good morning, Auntie.

White: Good morning.

Tai : Mr. White, Mr. Hua went out right after breakfast, as he had an appointment. He asked me to tell you that he's sorry to have missed you. He said he'll be back shortly.

White: Mr. Hua is too kind.

Tai : As for Xuexin, he's gone horseback riding. When he left he said he would be back before you came. I don't know why he hasn't returned yet. Most likely he'll be back soon. When I told him yesterday that you [lit. Mr. White] were going to live here at our place, that you would live with him in the side unit, he was awfully pleased.

White: Mrs. Hua, call me Vincent. Don't call me Mr. White.

Tai : Shall I really call you by your given name [hereafter]?

White: You should [call me by my given name].

Wang: Mr. White, Miss Gao, have some tea. Have you had breakfast?

Mei : Yes, Wang Ma.

White: (to Wang Ma) I'll be troubling you quite a bit in the future.

Wang: If you have anything to be done, just tell [lit. command] me.

White: (to Mrs. Hua) Mrs. Hua, this house is quite nicely laid out.

Tai : This was all designed by Mr. Hua. On the outside our house is all Chinese style. Nine-tenths of the houses that Mr. Hua builds for other people are (in the) Western style, but for himself he likes a Chinese-style house.

White: I like Chinese houses too.

Tai : On the outside this house is Chinese style, but the inside—for example, the kitchen, toilet, and bathroom—is all Western style. (As) you see, the garden is quite large, but we don't have many rooms. There are just a few of us, and we don't need many [rooms]. These three rooms that Mr. Hua and I occupy are the main unit.

White: They're northern rooms, aren't they?

Tai : Yes. The ones that you and Xuexin occupy are the western side-unit. The eastern side-unit is the kitchen and Wang Ma's room. Ours is a three-unit house.

White: It's really well laid out.

Tai : Mr. Hua likes to raise flowers. Whenever he has leisure or it's a holiday [lit. day of rest] he's out in the garden tending to his flowers.

White: There certainly are lots of flowers.

Tai : I keep telling him he should rest when he's free.

White: Raising flowers is a pastime, and you can also say it's exercise.

Tai : Vincent, take a look around our house.

White: Fine.

Tai : This room is Mr. Hua's and my bedroom.

White: You've arranged it very nicely.

Tai : No, it's helter-skelter, and I don't have time to fix up the room. . . . This is Mr. Hua's study.

White: Mr. Hua has a lot of books.

Tai : Yes. Building techniques nowadays are always changing, so he has to read new books constantly. The majority of his books are concerned with building. These books were all sent him [from abroad] by several friends who were abroad.

White: Your floors are all of wood. [lit. This house of yours what it's covered with is entirely wooden flooring.] Almost all Chinese houses have brick flooring [lit. use bricks cover ground].

Tai : Mr. Hua says brick [covered] floors are damp, so he has wood flooring.

- White: Meiying, look at the cat. Here, kitty, kitty, kitty! This cat is very fat.
- Tai : This cat weighs exactly twelve pounds. We've had it for over five years. Do you like cats too?
- White: Yes, I do. We also have a cat at home.
- Tai : There are a lot of mice here, so we have to have a cat. [You see] here is the bathroom.
- White: It's nicely arranged. As soon as you open the door there's a big mirror on the wall opposite.
- Tai : The doors in every room all close automatically. . . . That room is Xuexin's. This is the one you'll have.
- White: This one I saw yesterday.
- Tai : The kitchen is also Western style. Chinese stoves are made of brick and burn coal. We use an electric stove. Mr. Hua says it's clean(er) and (more) convenient. This small room is for storing things.
- White: There's a bicycle here.
- Tai : This belonged to my second son. The two brothers each had a bicycle. Xuexin's is [being ridden] out. This one you (can) ride hereafter. Anyhow, there's no use in its (just) lying here.
- White: That's fine.
- Tai : Wouldn't going back and forth to school be more convenient with a bicycle?
- White: Yes. Thank you.
- Tai : Meiying, I've been preoccupied with talking to Vincent. I haven't spoken with you yet. (Jokingly) Are you angry?
- Mei : No, Auntie.
- Tai : Are your father and mother both at home?
- Mei : Yes.
- Tai : Meiying, have lunch here, do. I'm inviting Vincent for lunch, and you, too.
- Mei : Auntie, thanks, but I can't have lunch with you. I'm leaving in a moment. A friend of Father's is getting married, so we have to go offer our congratulations.
- Tai : Then I won't insist [lit. detain you].
- Mei : Time's getting on. I must leave.
- Tai : Sit a while longer.
- Mei : Some other day I'll see you again.
- White: Meiying, I'll call you this evening.
- Mei : Good. Auntie, don't see me off.

- Tai : All right, I won't [see you off]. Vincent, you do so.
Mei : Goodbye, Auntie.
Tai : Goodbye, Meiying. Be sure you come again [lit. come have fun].
Mei : Yes.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. Hurry up and go open the door. There's someone at the door [lit. calling at the door].
- 2.1. This dessert is really delicious. Try some.
- 2.2. That job is pretty hard. I don't know if I can do it. I'll try it and see.
- 3.1. What's making a noise outside? Did you hear it?
- 3.2. This bell doesn't make much noise.
- 4.1. That porter can carry two big suitcases by himself.
- 4.2. This suitcase is too big. I certainly can't carry it.
- 4.3. Please carry the typewriter to the study.
- 4.4. Carry the suitcase outside for me.
- 5.1. Please hand me the lighter.
- 6.1. How many sons do you have?
- 7.1. You watch a while. If the teacher comes, give us a bit of warning.
- 7.2. Please tell Mr. Wang I'm leaving.
- 7.3. Call him a couple more times.
- 8.1. I'm sorry to have missed you when you went to my place yesterday.
- 9.1. Is Mr. Ma's second son also a doctor?
- 9.2. People in the past always rode horse-drawn vehicles.
- 10.1. When I was young I liked to ride horses very much.
- 10.2. He went there on horseback.
- 11.1. He lives in the eastern unit, and I [live] in the western.
- 12.1. [The style of] this writing table was designed by me.
- 12.2. The plan of that house does not suit our needs.
- 12.3. His job is designing cars.
- 12.4. He enjoys designing [the building of] houses most.
- 13.1. This house seems very nice on the outside.
- 13.2. To look at him he seems superficially [to have grown] to be very intelligent. Actually he's quite stupid.

- 14.1. His illness is very serious. I think he has only a one-per-cent chance [lit. hope] of living.
- 15.1. The men's room is downstairs, the ladies' room upstairs.
- 16.1. They have a lot of big trees in their courtyard.
- 16.2. This house isn't bad after all. [But] it's a pity the courtyard is too small.
- 17.1. The rooms facing the main gate are called the main unit.
- 18.1. Our family lives in a four-unit house. There's a southern unit, a northern unit, an eastern unit, and a western unit.
- 19.1. Very recently they planted a lot of roses in the big park.
- 19.2. My grandfather planted a lot of vegetables in the courtyard.
- 20.1. The flowers in our courtyard are really beautiful. There are red flowers, yellow flowers, and white flowers.
- 21.1. He likes watching television very much. Whenever he has time he watches it.
- 22.1. Don't be reproving him all the time.
- 22.2. The teacher is constantly admonishing us to work harder.
- 23.1. What [pleasurable activity] shall we do this week end?
- 23.2. My pastime is to listen to music and watch television.
- 24.1. That house I saw today was not at all bad. It was Western style, had a big courtyard, and had a living room, dining room, and two bedrooms.
- 25.1. School's about to have an assembly. We must fix up the assembly hall.
- 25.2. She is very good in fixing up the house. You see how attractively arranged her house is.
- 26.1. This big building has been up [lit. erected] for just a year.
- 26.2. His father is an architect.
- 26.3. To study architecture you must be good in mathematics.
- 27.1. These are some of my books. The majority of them are in my home.
- 28.1. Although we have a maid at home I make the beds myself every day.
- 28.2. Wang Ma, please put [lit. spread] the new sheet on the bed.
- 28.3. Don't put the old sheets on the bed.
- 28.4. Do you want to use [lit. spread] the new sheets?
- 29.1. Very few Chinese homes have [lit. spread] wooden floors.
- 30.1. For the most part bricks are used in building Chinese-style houses.
- 30.2. He can lay several dozen [lit. several tens of] bricks in one hour.
- 31.1. We're country people. My father farms.
- 31.2. My job is making brick floors [for people].

- 31.3. It's possible to grow a lot of vegetables on that plot of land.
- 32.1. I don't like this place. The weather's terribly damp.
- 33.1. My younger sister likes cats. We have [lit. raise] three cats at home.
- 34.1. In calling cats, Chinese say 'Mi, mi, mi.'
- 35.1. I don't like to eat meat with a lot of fat on it.
- 35.2. Your land here is very fertile.
- 36.1. I haven't seen him for exactly one year.
- 36.2. It's now exactly twelve o'clock.
- 36.3. He's [exactly] twenty years old this year.
- 37.1. Yesterday I bought two pounds of pork with the idea of making lion's head.
- 38.1. Rats are most numerous in the southwestern part of China.
- 39.1. There's a big mirror hanging on the wall in my room.
- 40.1. A lot of things now are automatic.
- 41.1. That department store has closed up because it wasn't making money.
- 41.2. Please close the car door.
- 41.3. Why don't you close the refrigerator door after you've finished taking out food?
- 41.4. When you leave the room don't forget to turn off the light.
- 42.1. The stove in our home is Chinese style.
- 42.2. Electric stoves are convenient and not dirty, but they're not very good [to use] in making Chinese food.
- 43.1. That house was built exactly according to specifications [lit. standard].
- 43.2. All the houses that Architect Wang designs [to be built] are very attractive.
- 43.3. There are a lot of people in their family. They built a huge house.
- 44.1. [Using] a coal stove is very dirty. The kitchen walls and so on are all black.
- 44.2. Our family burns a lot of coal each month: [we burn] five hundred pounds [of coal a month].
- 45.1. Whose is that pile of things on the table?
- 45.2. It's winter. The leaves from the trees have all fallen. There's a pile of leaves heaped up in the courtyard.
- 45.3. Look, what's that group of men doing?
- 45.4. Store these things in the closet.
- 46.1. There are over five hundred cars parked in that parking lot.
- 47.1. My father says that if my younger brother comes out first in the exam he'll present him with a bicycle.

- 48.1. We are five brothers and sisters. My father gave each of us a new pen.
- 49.1. Mom, where shall I put the typewriter?
- 49.2. This dish isn't salty enough. Put in some more salt.
- 49.3. I was hungry today. I had dinner as soon as I put down my books [lit. after I got home I put down my books and immediately had dinner].
- 50.1. Could you tell me how long the round trip to New York is by car?
- 50.2. How much is a plane ticket to Shanghai round trip?
- 50.3. I'd like two round-trip tickets to New York.
- 51.1. I was preoccupied with studying and wasn't aware that he had come.
- 51.2. We're about to have exams. I'm so busy I can't even manage to eat.
- 51.3. The only thing he can think of is talking with that pretty girl. I called to him for a long time but he didn't hear.
- 51.4. I'm terribly busy. How can I think of going to see a play?
- 52.1. We had exams today. I was all burned up. There was one question that I couldn't remember (the answer for) no matter how I tried.
- 52.2. He has a very nice disposition. No matter how you reprimand him he doesn't get angry.
- 52.3. I misread a question on the exam. I'm as angry as can be.
- 53.1. I'm going out. Study hard, mind you.
- 53.2. I'm inviting you to tea tomorrow afternoon at three. Do come.
- 54.1. Mr. Zhang's son is getting married today. We have to go congratulate him (i.e. Mr. Zhang).
- 55.1. I'll be back in a moment. If Miss Wang comes have her stay and eat.
- 55.2. He insists on leaving. No matter how you try you can't get him to stay.
- 55.3. It won't take \$10. Leave \$5 and that will be enough.
- 56.1. Don't see me off. Please go back.
- 56.2. Goodbye. I won't see you off.
- 56.3. I'm sorry to have been late; (as) I was seeing a friend off at the plane.
- 56.4. Please don't see me off. . . . All right [I won't]. Goodbye.

Review Sentences

- 1. Teacher, I can't read this sentence. . . . Try it [and see].
- 2. This auditorium is well planned. No matter where you sit you can hear and see everything.
- 3. [You see] this watch is very nice on the outside, but it is [lit. goes] not at all accurate.

4. We've planted quite a few vegetables in that plot of land behind our house.
5. I'm terribly busy all day long. I don't have any free time at all.
6. His ability lies in [his being especially good at] arranging rooms.
7. Most of my baggage I turned over to the boat for shipment.
8. He never goes to the movies once all year long.
9. Please close the door when you go out and come in.
10. Those two children were crying [terribly] and didn't stop crying until I gave each one an orange.
11. [May I ask] where shall I put this table?
12. He's awfully busy. How can he think of seeing a movie?
13. He insists on leaving. No matter how I try I can't get him to stay.
14. In the future he plans to travel over the whole country by bicycle.
15. This year the population here has increased fifteen per cent.
16. In the future a tall building of over twenty stories will be erected on this plot of land.
17. My father is a farmer.
18. [You see] recently a small Western-style house was built on that little hill.
19. A lot of goods were piled up at the railroad station. I don't know where they're being transported to.
20. Please go back. Don't see me off.

Notes

1. Xièxie 'thank' is used to express thanks before as well as after an action. In the former usage it expresses thanks for an anticipated action:

Xièxie nǐ bǎ zìdiǎn dìgei wǒ. 'Thank you (in advance) for handing me the dictionary,' i.e. 'Please hand me the dictionary.'

2. Shēng(r) 'sound' with a preceding number is used after a verb for 'say' and related meanings to tell how many times the utterance is said:

Wǒ jiào ta liǎng sānshēng, kěshi tā méi tīngjian. 'I called him two or three times, but he didn't hear.'

When the number is yì 'one,' however, the expression most often means something like 'just . . . ' rather than 'once' or 'one time':

Nǐ jiào ta yìshēng. 'Call him.'

Nǐ zǒu yǐqián gàosu wǒ yìshēng. 'Let me know before you go.'

3. The layout of the Hua home as described in the Dialogue and shown on the accompanying chart (p. 261) is typical for a Chinese-style house. The house consists of detached units (hé) around a central courtyard, the whole

being enclosed by high walls. Entrance to the house is through a gate (mén) leading to the central courtyard (yuànzi). At the end of the courtyard, directly opposite the gate, is the main section of the house (zhèngfáng), consisting of three rooms (jiān): the combined living room (kètīng) and dining room (fàntīng), the bedroom (wòfáng) of Mr. and Mrs. Hua, and Mr. Hua's study (shūfáng). To the left and right are side rooms (xiāngfáng). Those on the left as one faces the main apartment comprise a two-bedroom unit, the boys' rooms. The unit on the right contains the kitchen (chúfáng) and the maid's room. As the Huas' home is oriented, the main rooms face south. The boys have the rooms on the western side of the courtyard, so that they get the morning sun and avoid the hot afternoon sun. The northwest corner contains the combined toilet and bathroom. The northeast corner has a storage room.

4. The particle zhī in literary Chinese has many of the same functions as the subordinating particle de in spoken Chinese. In speech, it occurs in a number of fixed usages. One of these is to express fractions in the form A fēnzhī B, lit. 'B (out) of A parts' or 'B/A':

sānfēnzhī yī 'one-third, 1/3'

shífēnzhī sān 'three-tenths, 3/10'

bǎifēnzhī sìshíjiǔ 'forty-nine one-hundredths, 49/100, 49 per cent'

5. Chinese, like other languages, has conventional representations for animal sounds: corresponding to 'bow wow' (or 'arf arf' or the like), for example, is Chinese wāng wāng. A cat's miaowing is represented as mī mī mī; this is also the call used by human beings to summon cats.
6. The verb pū 'spread, cover' takes two kinds of objects—the thing covered, or the covering itself:

pū zhuōzi 'cover the table'

pū dānzi 'spread out the sheets'

7. The exclamation ah at the end of a sentence spoken to friends or inferiors indicates a command, suggestion, or statement with which the hearer is expected to comply or agree:

Hǎohāorde niàn shū, ah. 'Study hard, you.'

Wǒ qu qī chá, ah. 'I'll go make some tea [and no doubt you approve of this].'

Nǐ zhèi shì dì-èrcì lái Zhōngguó le, ah. 'This is your second trip to China, I see.'



“Wǒ shì Héběi Shēng Sānhé Xiàn de rén.”

Dì Shísìkè. Gēn Yòngren Tán Huà

Huìhuà: Bái Xiānsheng gēn Wáng Mā yìbiār shōushi dōngxì yìbiār tán huà.

Wáng: Bái Xiānsheng, lái, nín jiāogei wo. Wǒ lái gěi nín shōushi.

Bái : Xièxie nǐ. Jiānglái měitiān dōu děi máfan nǐ.

5 Wáng: Yīnggāide. Nín yǒu shénmo shì zhíguǎn shuō. Oh, nín yǒu gāi xǐ de yīshang méi yǒu?

Bái : Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn chènshān jǐtiáo shǒujuàn liǎngshuāng wàzi. Wǒ zìjǐ xǐ. Nǐ jiù bǎ wǒ nèijiàn chènshān xǐxi déle.

10 Wáng: Gànma nín zìjǐ xǐ ya? Nín dōu jiāogei wǒ déle. Yìhuěr chīwánle fàn xiàwǔ jiù gěi nín xǐchulai le.

Bái : Wáng Mā, nǐ zài Huá zhái jǐnián le?

Wáng: Wǒ zài zhèr èrshì duō nián le.

Bái : Nǐ jīnnian duó dà suǐshu le?

15 Wáng: Wǒ ya, wǔshíwǔ le. Wǒmen xiāngxia rén chī kǔ, suóyì zhǎngde lǎo. Nín qiáo wǒ hǎoxiang liù-qīshísuì le.

Bái : Bú xiàng liù-qīshí.

Wáng: Wǒde niánji gēn wǒmen tàitai chàbuduō. Nín qiáo wǒmen tàitai zhǎngde duó niánqīng a.

Bái : Nǐ shì nǎr de rén ne?

20 Wáng: Wǒ shì Héběi Shěng Sānhé Xiàn de rén.

Bái : Nǐ jiā lǐtou dōu yǒu shénmo rén ne?

Wáng: Wǒ yǒu liǎ érzi yíge nǚ'er. Érzi qǔle xīfer le dou. Nǚ'er yě chūjià le. Hái yǒu liǎngge sūnzi liǎngge sūnnüer.

Bái : Nǐ hěn yǒu fúqi de. Nǐ zhàngfu ne?

25 Wáng: Wǒ zhàngfu zǎo sǐ le.

Bái : Nǐ érzi gēn nǐ nǚxù dōu zuò shénmo shì a?

30 Wáng: Wǒ dà érzi zài gōngchǎng zuò gōng. Èr érzi zài tiělùshang dāng gōngren, xiūli tiělù de. Wǒ nǚxù yuánlái shì lā chē de. Xiànzài zài zhe chéng lǐtou dēng sānlúnchē. Wǒ nǚ'er zhùde lí zhèr bù yuǎn.

Bái : Nǐ érzi tāmen bú zài zhèr ma?

Wáng: Tāmen bú zài zhèr. Hai, Bái Xiānsheng, tíqì cóngqián wǒ yǎnghuò wǒ zhèi jǐge érnǚ ya, kě zhēn bù róngyì.

Bái : Nǐ zhàngfu běnlái shì zuò shénmo de?

35 Wáng: Wǒ zhàngfu běnlái shì nónggrén, shì zhòng dì de. Gēn Rìběn rén dǎ zhàng de shíhòu tā dāng bīng dǎ zhàng qule. Dì yīcì shòu shāng le. Hǎole yǐhòu yòu qu dǎ zhàng, ràng díren gēi shā le.

Bái : Wǒ fùqin zài Dì Èrcì Shìjiè Dàzhàn de shíhòu yě qù dāng bīng qu le. Tā suírán dǎle bù shǎo cǐde zhàng, kěshì tā méi shòu shāng.

Wáng: Nèige shíhòu nín fùqin yídìng hěn niánqīng ba.

Bái : Xiāngdāng niánqīng. Búguò èrshíjǐsuì. Jù shuō Zhōngguó Kàngzhàn de shíhòu sǐle bù shǎode rén.

Wáng: Kě bu shì ma. Nèige shíhòu nín qiáo wǒ yíge nǚrén, jiāli yòu qióng yòu méi běnshì. Dàizhe jǐge hái zi. Nín shuō duó bù róngyì ya.

Bái : Zhēnshì bù róngyì.

Wáng: Nèige shíhòu, wǒde hái zi dōu xiǎo. Jiāli zúle rénjiā jímǔ dì, děi gēi rénjiā zūqian. Méi fázi. Cūnzilide rén quàn wǒ dào chéng lǐtòu bāng gōng zhèng yìdiǎr qián.

Bái : Nǐde hái zi shéi guǎn ne? Dì zěnmò zhòng ne?

Wáng: Wǒ yǒu ge qīnqī gēn ta xīfer. Wǒ jiù ràng tāmen dào wǒ jiā lǐtòu lái lián guǎn hái zi dài zhòng dì.

Bái : Wǒ hěn pèifu nǐ. Xiànzài nǐ érnǚ dōu zhǎng dà le kéyì yǎnghuò nǚ le.

Wáng: Nǎr a? Tāmen gè rén gù gè rén de shēnghuó. Miánmianqiángqiǎng dōu gāng gòu chí. Bái Xiānsheng, nín jiā lǐtòu yǒu jǐge yònggrén ne?

Bái : Lián yíge yě méi yǒu.

60 Wáng: Zěnmò? Nín jiā lǐtòu bú yòng yònggrén ne?

Bái : Měiguode gōngqián gāo. Pǔtōngde jiātíng yòngbùqǐ yònggrén.

Wáng: Nín kèqì ne. Nín jiā lǐtòu nǎr néng yòngbùqǐ yònggrén ne?

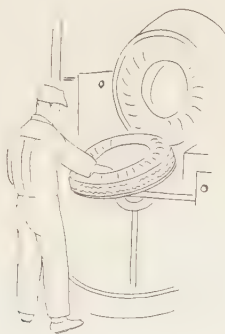
Bái : Shì zhēnde.

Wáng: Gēi rénjiā zuò yònggrén hěn kǔ wa. Měitiān zǎo qǐ wǎn shuì, yì tiān zuòdào wǎn. Dànshì wǒmen zhūrén duì wǒ shì liwài. Tāmen xiànglái bú ràng wǒ wǎn shuì. Chīwǎn wǎnfàn yì shǒushiwǎnle jiù ràng wǒ shuì jiào qu.

Bái : Wǒ tīng péngyou shuōguo Huá Xiānsheng Huá Tàitai tāmen shì zuì hǎode rén. Nǐde gōngzuò tāmen dāngrán yě hěn mǎnyì le, suǒyì tāmen dài nǐ hǎo.

Wáng: Tāmen dài wǒ zhēn hǎo. Nín hái méi qiáojian wǒmen xiānsheng ne? Dāi huǒ xiānsheng huílai nín qiáo tā gēn tàitai yíyàng nènmo héqì.

- Bái : Xiānsheng gēn shàoye wǒ dōu méi jiànzhao.
- 75 Wáng: Dàigài yìhuěr jiù huílai le.
- Bái : Wáng Mā, nǐ qù zuò biéde shì ba. Wǒ zìjǐ shōushi.
- Wáng: Nín zìjǐ shōushi? Na wǒ zuò fàn qu. Wǒ bǎ nín de wūzi yòu dásao le yíci. Nín qiáo wǒ bǎ chuānghu cāde duó gānjīng.
- Bái : Bōli cāde zhēn liàng.
- 80 Wáng: Bái Xiānsheng, nín zǎochen shénmo shíhour qīlai ya?
- Bái : Wǒ qīdiǎn zhōng jiù qīlai.
- Wáng: Bādiǎn zhōng chī záodiǎn chéng ma?
- Bái : Kéyi.
- Wáng: Yīnwei shàoye yě shì qīdiǎn zhōng qīlai chàbuduō bādiǎn chī záodiǎn. Nǐmen liǎngwèi yíkuài chī hǎo bu hǎo?
- 85 Bái : Hǎojíle. Wǒmen jièzhe chī záodiǎn de jīhui kéyi tántan.
- Wáng: Yǒu rén èn mén líng. Duōbàr shì xiānsheng gēn shàoye huílai le.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (3) lái come now, let (Note 1)
- 1.1. Wǒ lái. Tài zhòngle. Nǐ nábuliǎo.
- 1.2. Tàitai, lái, wǒ gěi nín dīlou.
- 2.0. (6) yīshang clothes, clothing (N) (measure: jiàn, tào)
- 2.1. Jīntiān tiānqì tài lěng. Nǐ duō chuān diār yīshang.
- 3.0. (7) chènshān shirt (N) (measure: jiàn)
- 3.1. Zhèijiàn chènshān liǎngkuài liùmáo qián.
- 4.0. (7) shǒujuànr handkerchief (N) (measure: tiáo) [lit. hand silk]
- 4.1. Wǒ wàngle dài shǒujuànr le.
- 4.2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèi liǎngtiáo shǒujuànr gěi wǒ xíxi.
- 5.0. (7) shuāng pair (M)

- 5.1. Wǒde xié huài le. Wǒ děi mǎi yìshuāng xīnde le.
- 6.0. (7) wàzi socks, stocking (measures: zhī, shuāng)
- 6.1. Tā gěi wǒ mǎile liǎngshuāng wàzi.
- 6.2. Nèishuāng wàzi pò le yìzhī. Bù néng zài chuān le.
- 7.0. (11) zhái residence (N)
- Wáng zhái the Wang residence
- 7.1. Wài, zhèr shì Wáng zhái. Nín zhǎo shéi shuō huà?
- 8.0. (20) shěng province (in China), state (in America) (M)
- Dōngsānshěng Manchuria [lit. east three provinces]
- 8.1. Wǒmen nèishěng jīnnian jiù méi xià yǔ.
- 8.2. Dōngsānshěng zài Zhōngguóde dōngběibù.
- 9.0. (20) hé river (N) (measure: tiáo)
- Huáng Hé Yellow River
- Hénán Honan (province)
- Héběi Hopeh (province)
- 9.1. Wǒmen dōngtian zài héshang liú bīng, xiàtiān zài héli yóuyǒng.
- 9.2. Zhōngguó běibù yǒu yìtiáo dà hé jiào Huáng Hé.
- 9.3. Héběi Shěng zài Huáng Héde běibīar. Hénán Shěng zài Huáng Héde nánbīar.
- 10.0. (20) xiàn district, county (M)
- Sānhé Xiàn (lit. Three Rivers District; known for its female servants)
- 10.1. Měi yìshěng lǐtōu qǔxiāole jǐge xiàn.
- 10.2. Sānhé Xiàn shì Zhōngguó běibùde yíge xiǎo xiàn.
- 11.0. (22) liǎ two (Note 2)
- 11.1. Wáng Mā, qǐng nǐ ná liǎ diér lai.
- 11.2. Wǒmen liǎ rén yíkuài qu hǎo bu hǎo?
- 12.0. (22) qǔ marry (of a man) (TV)
- qǔ tàitai marry, take a wife
- 12.1. Tā zènmò dāde suìshu le zènmò hái bu qǔ tàitai?
- 13.0. (22) xífu, xífer daughter-in-law; wife (N)
- 13.1. Tā érzi jīnnian dōngtian qǔ xífer.
- 14.0. (23) jià, chūjià marry (of a woman) (IV)
- jiàgei give in marriage to
- jiàchuqu (leave home to) get married

- 14.1. Wǒ nǚ'er qùnian jiù jiàchuqu le.
 14.2. Wáng jia èr xiáojie jiàgei Zhāng jia sān shàoye le.
 14.3. Xià xīngqī wǒ mèimei chūjià.
- 15.0. (24) zhàngfu husband (N)
 15.1. Zhāng Mā huí jiā le yīnwei ta zhàngfu bìngde hěn lǐhai.
- 16.0. (26) nǚxu son-in-law (N)
 16.1. Tīngshuō Wáng Tàitai gēn ta nǚxu xiāngchùde bù hǎo.
- 17.0. (27) tiělù railroad (N) (measures: tiáo, lǐ) [lit. iron road]
 17.1. Zènmo dà yíge shěng jiù yǒu yìbǎi duō lǐ tiělù.
 17.2. Cóng Shànghǎi dào Nánjīng nèitiáo tiělù shì shénmo shíhou xiū de?
- 18.0. (27) gōng (manual) work (N)
 zuò gōng do work
 bāng gōng work for someone
 gōngrén worker
 gōngqián wages
 gōngchǎng factory
- 18.1. Nǐ shì zuò shénmo gōng de?
 18.2. Wǒ érzi shì gěi rénjia pū zhuān de gōngren.
 18.3. Wǒmende gōngqián shì àn yuè ná.
 18.4. Nèige gōngchǎng lǐtou yǒu yìqiān duō rén zuò gōng.
 18.5. Tā shì gěi Zhāng jia bāng gōng de.
- 19.0. (27) dāng serve as, be (TV)
 19.1. Tā gēgē zài fànguǎr dāng chúzi.
- 20.0. (28) lā pull, tow (TV)
 20.1. Wǒ bú zàncheng rén lā chē.
 20.2. Wǒde chē bù zǒu le. Qǐng bǎ nǐde chē kāilai bāng wǒ lādào chéng lǐtou qu.
- 21.0. (28) V O de one who V O (Note 3)
 lā chē de ricksha puller
 zhòng dì de farmer
- 21.1. Lā chē de hěn xīnkǔ.
 21.2. Wǒmen jiā jǐbèi rén dōu shì zhòng dì de.
- 22.0. (29) dēng press with foot, step on, pedal (TV)
 22.1. Zhèizhāng huàr wǒ dēi dēngzhe yǐzi guà.
- 23.0. (29) sānlúncē pedicab (N) (measure: liàng) [lit. three wheels vehicle]

- 23.1. Dēng sānlúchē méi yǒu lǎ chē nènmo xīnkǔ.
- 24.0. (32) yǎnghuo support, feed (people) (TV) [lit. raise life]
- 24.1. Tā yǎnghuo wǔge rén.
- 24.2. Wǒde qián děi yǎnghuo wǒde fùmǔ.
- 25.0. (33) érnǚ sons and daughters
- 25.1. Tāde érnǚ dōu zhǎng dà le.
- 26.0. (35) nóng rén farmer (N)
- 26.1. Zhōngguó rén shì bu shì sīfēnzhī sān shì nóng rén?
- 27.0. (36) zhàng battle, war (N)
- dǎ zhàng fight, wage war
- 27.1. Zhōngguó gēn Rìběn dǎle bānián zhàng.
- 28.0. (36) bīng soldier (N)
- dāng bīng be a soldier, serve as a soldier
- 28.1. Dǎ zhàng de shíhou qīngniánde nánrén dōu děi qù dāng bīng.
- 29.0. (37) shāng wound, injury (N)
- shòu shāng be wounded, be injured
- pèngshāng injure by running into
- shāng fēng catch cold [lit. wound wind]
- 29.1. Zuótiān yǒu yíliàng qìchē chū shì le. Chē lǐtōu wǔge rén dōu shòu shāng le.
- 29.2. Wǒ dìdi kāi chē bù xiǎoxin pèngshāngle yíge rén.
- 29.3. Nǐ shāng fēng le ma?
- 29.4. Wǒ zhèi liǎngtiān yǒu diār shāng fēng.
- 30.0. (37) dí rén enemy (N) [lit. oppose person]
- 30.1. Dí rén dōu pǎo le.
- 31.0. (37) shā kill (TV)
- 31.1. Kèren hěn duō. Děi duō shā jǐzhī jī.
- 32.0. (38) -zhàn battle, war
- dàzhàn great war
- Shìjiè Dàzhàn World War
- Kàngzhàn War of Resistance (name used by Chinese for 1936-1945 war against Japan) [lit. resist war]
- 32.1. Wǒ zhèi yíběizi jīngguó liǎngcì dàzhàn le.
- 32.2. Dì Yíci Shìjiè Dàzhàn shì yī jiǔ yī sì nián dào yī jiǔ yī bā nián.
- 32.3. Zhōngguó gēn Rìběn dǎ zhàng jiào Kàngzhàn.

33.0. (42) xiāngdāng suitable, suited (SV); rather, fairly (AD) [lit. mutual should]

33.1. Wǒ zuò nège shìqing duì wǒ bù zěnmò xiāngdāng.

33.2. Zhèiběn zìdiǎn xiāngdāng hǎo.

34.0. (42) jù according to (CV)

jù shuō it is said that, they say

34.1. Jù wǒ zhīdao tā shì méi qián.

34.2. Jù shuō Wáng Xiānsheng bìngde hěn lìhai.

35.0. (45) qióng poor, impoverished (SV)

35.1. Wǒ zhèi jǐtiān qióngde bùdéliǎo. Nǎr yǒu qián kàn diànyǐng a?

36.0. (48) mǔ (Chinese) àcre (M) (= 1/6 English acre)

36.1. Wǒmen jiā nèi jímǔ dì dōu zhòng de shì shuǐguǒ

37.0. (49) cūn(zi) village (N)

Wáng Jia Cūn Wang Family Village

37.1. Wǒmen cūnzi lǐtou chàbuduō dōu zhòng cài.

37.2. Wǒ shì Wáng Jia Cūnde rén.

38.0. (50) zhèng earn money by working

38.1. Tā měiyuè zhèng qián bù duō.

39.0. (53) lián A dài B both A and B

39.1. Wǒ lián chī fàn dài zuò chē měiyuè yòng bù shǎode qián.

39.2. Tā xué Zhōngwén xuéde hěn kuài, yīnwei ta měitiān lián tīng lùyīn dài shàng kè.

39.3. Wǒ lián guówén dài lìshǐ dōu kǎode bù hǎo.

40.0. (54) pèifu admire, respect (TV)

40.1. Wǒ zhèi yībèizi jiù pèifu Mǎ Jiàoshòu.

41.0. (56) miánqiǎng reluctant, forced (SV), urge, compel, force (V) [lit. enough force]

41.1. Zuótiān kāi huì tā qùde hěn miánqiǎng.

41.2. Wǒ bù yuànyì zuò. Nǐ bù néng miánqiǎng wǒ ya.

41.3. Wǒ méi qián le. Jīntiān miánmianqiǎngqiǎng ba fángzū jiāo le.

42.0. (57) A gāng gòu (B) V A is just enough (for B) to V

A B gāng gòu V A is just enough for B to V

42.1. Nǐ zuò de fàn bù duō bù shǎo, gāng gòu wǔge rén chī.

42.2. Zhèige fàn wǒmen sāngē rén gāng gòu chī.

42.3. Shíhòu gāng gòu dào huǒchē zhàn.

- 43.0. (61) pǔtōng common, ordinary (SV) [lit. universal general]
 pǔtōng huà general language (i.e. no particular dialect)
- 43.1. Zhèizhǒng diànshì bú shì tèbié hǎo de, shì pǔtōng de.
- 43.2. Nèige pùzide jiāju tài guì le. Bú shì pǔtōng jiātíng kéyì mǎi de.
- 43.3. Pǔtōng huà shì suóyǒude Zhōngguó rén dōu dǒngde yǔyán.
- 44.0. (61) -qǐ (postverb in resultative verbs) (Note 4)
 yòngbuqǐ can't (afford to) use
 mǎibuqǐ can't (afford to) buy
 niànbuqǐ can't (afford to) study
 kànbuqǐ can't (afford to) see; look down upon
- 44.1. Tā kànbuqǐ wǒ. Tā yǐwei wǒ bù zhīdào ne.
- 44.2. Wǒmen jiā kě yòngbuqǐ yòngren.
- 44.3. Wǒ nǎr mǎideqǐ qìchē?
- 44.4. Nèige háizi yīnwei jiā lǐtōu qióng niànbuqǐ shū. Zhōngxué hái méi bìyè ne jiù bú niàn shū le.
- 44.5. Wǒ jīntian méi qián. Kànbuqǐ diànyīngr.
- 45.0. (65) dànshi but, however (MA)
- 45.1. Nǐ qù kéyì, dànshi děi zǎo diār huílai.
- 46.0. (65) zhǔrén master (N)
- 46.1. Nèitiáo gǒu yǒu zhǔrén méi you?
- 47.0. (65) lìwài exception (N) [lit. rule outside]
 lìwài(de) bànfǎ exceptional measure
 A (shì) lìwài A is an exception
- 47.1. Zhèijiàn shì děi yòng lìwàide bànfǎ.
- 47.2. Wǒmende gōngqián dōu yíyàng. Zhí yǒu nǐ shì lìwài.
- 48.0. (66) xiànglái hitherto (AD) [lit. toward come]
 xiànglái bù/méi never
- 48.1. Wǒ xiànglái méi tīngguo xī.
- 49.0. (72) dāi stay (temporarily)
 dāi (yì)huǐr stay awhile, wait a moment; take your time; presently
 dāizhe be unoccupied, be unemployed
- 49.1. Qù niàn shū qu. Bié zài zhèr dāizhe.
- 49.2. Máng shénmo? Zài dāi yìhuǐr.
- 49.3. Rénjia dōu hěn máng. Nǐ bié dāizhe. Zuò shì a.
- 50.0. (78) chuānghu window (N) [window door]

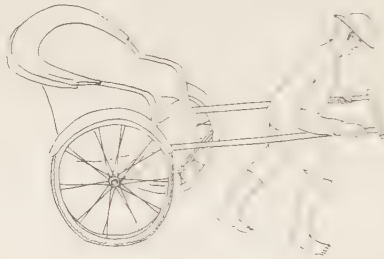
- 50.1. Wǒ nèijiān wūzi yǒu liǎngge dà bōli chuānghu.
 51.0. (78) cā rub, scrape, polish, clean (TV)
 cā gānjīng wipe clean
 51.1. Nǐ qiáo nǐde xié duómo zāng a. Děi cāca le.
 51.2. Chīwánle fàn děi bǎ zhuōzi cā gānjīng.
 52.0. (86) jièzhe by means of, making use of, using, thanks to
 52.1. Wǒ jièzhe fàngjià de jīhuì dào Zhōngguó lǚxíng le yíci.
 52.2. Jièzhe zhèi jǐtiān bù shàng kè yǒu gōngfu. Wǒ děi shōushi wūzi.
 53.0. (87) duōbàn(de), duōbàr(de), yìduōbàr(de), duōyībàr(de) most of, the majority of; most likely, perhaps [lit. most half]
 53.1. Wǒ duōbànde shū dōu shì guānyú yǔyán de shū.
 53.2. Tā měitiān duōyībàrde shíhou dōu shì zài xuéxiào.
 53.3. Tā duōbàr bù lái le.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Lǎo Wáng zài zào dǎzìjī de gōngchǎng lǐtōu zuò gōng.
2. Zài Měiguó de Zhōngguó fànguāng dāng dàshifu zhèng qián hēn duō.
3. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nèibǎ yǐzi lādao zhèibiar lai.
4. Wǒ zhèng de qián děi yǎnghuo wǒde fùmǔ.
5. Wǒ zuì pèifu Zhāng Xiānsheng. Tā zhēn yǒu běnshi.
6. Wǒ shāng fēng yǐjīng hǎoxiē rìzi le. Hái méi hǎo ne.
7. Tāde Zhōngguó huà shuōde xiāngdāng liúli.
8. Jù bàozhǐshang shuō zhèi jǐtiān hēn duō qìchē chū shì.
9. Wǒmen jiāde Wáng Mā měitiān lián xǐ yīshang dài zuò fàn, zènmo duō rén zhēn gòu ta máng de le.
10. Nǐ yàoshi bù xǐhuan chī bié miánqiǎng chī.
11. Wǒ kě chībuqǐ kǎo yāzi.
12. Tā duì shéi dōu bù hǎo. Duì nǐ hǎo shì lǐwài le.

13. Wáng Jiàoshòu zhēn hǎo. Xiànglái bù shuō rén.
14. Lái, wǒ bāng nǐde máng. Fǎnzhèng wǒ dāizhe ne.
15. Wǒ jièzhe zhèige jīhuì gěi tā jiē fēng.
16. Wǒde wúxiàndiàn duōbàr ràng wǒ dìdi gěi náqu le.
17. Xià xīngqīliù Lǎo Wáng yào qǔ tàitai le.
18. Zhèi jǐtiānde xiāoxi bù hǎo. Jù shuō yòu yào dǎ zhàng le.
19. Zuótian Wáng Xiānshengde qìchē chū shì le. Tāde tuǐ shǒu shāng le.
20. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ jīntian kě bù néng qǐng kè. Wǒ zhèi diār qián gāng gòu wǒ yíge rén chī de.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Huá Tàitai tánle yīhuǐr, jiù dào wǒ nèijiān wūzi qù, xiǎng bǎ dōngxi shōushi shōushi. Wǒ bǎ xiāngzi dǎkai le. Zài zhèige shíhou Wáng Mā yě jìnlai le. Tā xiǎng wǒ jìnlai yídìng yào shōushi dōngxi. Tā shì láii bāng wǒde máng, bìngqiě wèn wǒ yǒu gāi xǐ de yīfu méi yǒu. Wǒ
 5 jiù bǎ jīntian zǎochen huànxialai de chènshān, wàzi, hái yǒu jǐtiáo shǒujuàn jiāogei Wáng Mā le. Wǒ xiǎng wàzi shǒujuàn wǒ zìjǐ xǐ, kěshì Wáng Mā tā bú ràng wǒ xǐ.

Wáng Mā shì yíge wúshíjǐsuìde rén. Gèzi bù gāo, hěn shòu, tóufa dōu bái le. Wǒ wènwen tā jiā lǐtòude qíngxìng. Tā gàosu wǒ hěn duō
 10 guānyú tā zhàngfu érnǚ de shìqíng.

Yuánlái tā zhàngfu shì ge nóng rén. Zhōngguó gēn Rìběn dǎ zhàng de shíhou tā zhàngfu qù dāng bīng dǎ zhàng, ràng díren gěi shā le. Tā shuō ta jiāli hěn qióng, dì shì zū rénjiā de, hái zi yòu hěn xiǎo. Méi fázi, zhǐ hǎo dào chéng lǐtòu, gěi rénjiā bāng gōng zhèng diār qián yǎnghuo
 15 jǐge hái zi.

Xiànzài tāde érnǚ yǐjīng zhǎng dà le. Ērzi jiēhūn le, nǚ'er yě chūjià le, érqǐě érzi nǚxù dōu yǒu gōng zuò. Wǒ gēn ta shuō érnǚ dōu néng yǎnghuo tā le. Tā shuō tāmen zhèngde qián bù duō, miánmianqiángqiáng

gè rén gāng gòu chī de. Tā shuōwánle wǒ yì tīng wǒ hěn pèifu tā yíge
 20 xiāngxia nǚrén, méi xuéwen, jiā lǐtou yòu méi qián, gěi rénjia bāng gōng,
 bǎ érnǚ dōu yǎng dà le. Érqiě Zhōngguode gōngrén qián zhèngde hěn
 shǎo. Zhēnshi bù róngyi.

Wáng Mā hái wèn wo jiā lǐtou yǒu jǐge yòngren. Wǒ gàosu ta wǒmen
 jiā lián yíge yòngren yě méi yǒu, tā bú xìn, tā xiǎng wǒ jiā lǐtou yíding
 25 hěn yǒu qián. Qíshí wǒmen bú shì yǒu qián de rén, nǎr yòngdeqǐ rén ne.
 Wáng Mā zhēn yǒu yìsi.

Tā hái tándao guānyu zhǔrén duì gōngren de wèntí. Tā shuō tāde
 zhǔrén duì ta hǎo, nà shì liwài de. Tā yìbiār gēn wǒ shuōzhe yìbiār
 bāngzhe wǒ guà yifu. Wǒ pà ta yīnwei bāngzhe wǒ dānwule biéde shìqing.
 30 Wǒ shuō ràng tā zuò biéde shì qu, bú bì bāngzhe wǒ. Yǐjing dào zuò fàn
 de shíhou le. Tā shuō nènmo tā jiù zuò fàn qu.



Wèntí

1. Bái Xiānsheng dào ta nèijiān wūzi qu le. Wáng Mā yě jìnlai le. Tā gēn Bái Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
2. Wáng Mā wèn Bái Xiānsheng yǒu gāi xǐ de yīshang méi you. Bái Xiānsheng yǒu méi yǒu? Tā dōu yǒu shénmo gāi xǐ de?
3. Wáng Mā shuō shénmo shíhou gěi ta xǐ?
4. Wáng Mā shuō tāmen xiāngxia rén wèi shénmo zhǎngde lǎo?
5. Wáng Mā shuō wèi shénmo Huá Tàitai bǐ ta zhǎngde niánqīng?
6. Wáng Mā shì nǎr de rén?
7. Tā shuō ta érzi gēn ta nǚxù dōu shì zuò shénmo de?
8. Wáng Mā yǒu zhàngfu méi you? Tā zhàngfu shì zuò shénmo de? Zěnmó sǐ de?
9. Wáng Mā wèi shénmo gěi rénjia dāng yòngren?
10. Tā qù gěi rénjia dāng yòngren, jiā lǐtou shéi guǎn hái zi zhòng dì ne?
11. Bái Xiānsheng shuō tāde érnǚ dōu dàle kéyì yǎnghuo tā le. Wáng Mā shuō shénmo?

12. Wáng Mā wèn Bái Xiānsheng jiā lǐtou yǒu jǐge yòngren. Bái Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
13. Wáng Mā wèi shénmo bú xìn Bái Xiānsheng jiāli méi yǒu yòngren?
14. Wáng Mā shuō gěi rénjiā zuò yòngren hěn kǔ, yèli shuǐde hěn wǎn, kěshi tāde zhǔrén duì ta zěnmoyàng ne?
15. Wáng Mā shuō Huá Tàitai shénmo shíhou ràng ta shuǐ jiào?
16. Wáng Mā gào su Bái Xiānsheng tā bǎ nèijiān wūzi zěnmō shōushi le?
17. Wáng Mā wèi shénmo wèn Bái Xiānsheng bādiǎn chī záodiǎn chéng ma?
18. Bái Xiānsheng yuànyì gēn dà shàoye yíkuài chī záodiǎn ma? Wèi shénmo?
19. Huá zháide mén líng xiāng nǐ cāi shéi huí lai le?
20. Yàoshi nǐde péngyou huòzhe fángdōngde yòngren yào bāngzhe nǐ shōushi dōngxī, nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
21. Nǐ gēn péngyoude yòngren tán huà yīnggāi tán shénmo?
22. Yàoshi yǒu rén gào su nǐ tā yǒu érnǚ hái yǒu sūnzi, sūnnüer, shénmode nǐ shuō shénmo?
23. Yàoshi yíge nǚrén gào su nǐ tā jiā lǐtou yǒu háizi kěshi tā děi chūqu zuò shì nǐ yīnggāi gēn ta shuō shénmo?
24. Yàoshi yíge nǚrén jiā lǐtou yòu qióng yòu méi běnshi hái yào yǎnghuo érnǚ, nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo ne?
25. Yàoshi nǐ jiāli méi yǒu yòngren bié rén wèn nǐ yǒu jǐge yòngren, nǐ zěnmō huídá?
26. Yàoshi nǐ zhùzai rénjiā jiā lǐtou yòngren shuō ràng nǐ gēn tāmen jiāli rén yíkuài chī zǎofàn nǐ yuànyì ma?
27. Nǐ shì yíge Měiguó xuésheng. Yàoshi měitiān gēn yíge Zhōngguó xuésheng zài yíkuài chī fàn yǒu shénmo hào chū?
28. Yàoshi fángdōng yòngren gào su nǐ tā bǎ nǐde wūzi shōushi gānjīng le, nǐ shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
29. Yàoshi péngyoude yòngren bāng nǐde máng, nǐ pà ta yǒu biéde shì nǐ gēn ta shuō shénmo?
30. Yàoshi yíge yòngren gēn nǐ shuō zhǔrén dài ta hào, nǐ shuō shénmo?

Dialogue: Mr. White and Wang Ma chat while putting away things.

Wang: Mr. White, come now, hand(your things) to me. Let me put(them) away for you.

White: Thank you. Hereafter I'll be giving you (additional) work every day.

Wang: But you must. If you have something that needs doing, just speak up. Oh, do you have any clothes that need washing?

- White: I have a shirt, a few handkerchiefs, and a couple of pairs of socks. I'll wash the handkerchiefs and socks myself. You just wash the shirt.
- Wang: Why wash them yourself? Give them all to me. In a while after [finishing eating] lunch I'll wash them out for you in the afternoon.
- White: Wang Ma, how long have you been in the Hua family?
- Wang: I've been here over twenty years.
- White: How old are you [this year]?
- Wang: Me? I'm fifty-five. We country people have it hard and so age a lot. You see that I look like sixty or seventy.
- White: You don't look it.
- Wang: I'm about the same age as our lady. You see how young-looking she is.
- White: Where are you from?
- Wang: I'm from Sanhe District in Hopeh Province.
- White: What family have you?
- Wang: I have two sons and a daughter. Both sons are married. My daughter is also married. I also have two grandsons and two granddaughters.
- White: You're very fortunate. What about your husband?
- Wang: My husband died a long time ago.
- White: What do your sons and son-in-law do?
- Wang: My older son works in a factory. The second son is a worker on the railroad; he does repair work [on the railroad]. My son-in-law was originally a ricksha-puller. Now he works a pedicab in this city. My daughter lives not far from here.
- White: Your sons aren't here?
- Wang: No, they're not. My, Mr. White, speaking of raising these children [in the past], it certainly wasn't easy.
- White: What did your husband used to do?
- Wang: My husband was [originally] a farmer [was one who worked the land]. At the time of the fighting with the Japanese he served as soldier [and went to fight]. The first time (in battle) he was wounded. After recovering he went into battle again and was killed by the enemy.
- White: My father also was [lit. went to serve as] a soldier in World War II. Although he fought in quite a few battles he wasn't wounded.
- Wang: At that time your father must have been very young, I suppose.
- White: He was rather young, just twenty-odd. I understand that a lot of people died in China during the War of Resistance.
- Wang: I should say so. At that time, you see, I was alone [lit. I one woman]. Our family was poor and I had no (special) ability. I had several children. You can imagine how difficult it was.

White: It certainly was.

Wang: At that time my children were all small. Our family rented a few acres of land [belonging to other people for which we had to pay rent to others]. There was no help for it. The people in the village urged me to go into the city to work and earn some money.

White: Who took care of your children? How was the land farmed?

Wang: There was a relative and his wife that I had come to my home and look after the children and work the land.

White: I admire you. Now your children are all grown up and can support you.

Wang: Not at all. Each of them is concerned with his own living. With a lot of effort they barely manage to get enough to eat. Mr. White, how many servants do you have in your home?

White: None.

Wang: What, you don't have servants in your home?

White: American wages are high. Ordinary families can't afford to have servants.

Wang: You're being polite. How can your family not afford to have servants?

White: That's the truth.

Wang: Being a servant [for people] is pretty hard. You get up early and go to bed late, working all day long. But our masters are exceptional [lit. are an exception toward me]. They never make me stay up late. After [finishing eating] dinner as soon as everything's done, I'm allowed to go to bed.

White: I hear [friends say] that Mr. and Mrs. Hua are very nice people. And of course they're very satisfied with your work, so they treat you well.

Wang: They treat me very well. You still haven't seen Mr. Hua [lit. our gentleman]? He'll return presently and you'll see he's as agreeable as our lady.

White: I haven't seen either the father [lit. the gentleman] or the son.

Wang: Probably they'll be back in a moment.

White: Wang Ma, you go do your other work. I'll arrange things myself.

Wang: You will? Then I'll go do the cooking. I've swept your room once more. See how clean I've made [lit. rubbed] the windows.

White: The glass [has been cleaned so that it] really shines.

Wang: Mr. White, when do you get up in the morning?

White: [I get up] at seven.

Wang: Will it do to have breakfast at eight?

White: Yes.

Wang: Because the young gentleman also gets up at seven and has breakfast about eight. The two of you can eat together, can't you?

White: Yes. Fine. We can use the opportunity [of having breakfast] to talk.

Wang: There's someone ringing the bell. Most likely it's the master and the young gentleman returning. (She leaves.)

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. Let me. It's too heavy. You can't lift it.
- 1.2. Come, Madame, I'll carry it for you.
- 2.1. The weather's too cold today. Put on some more clothes.
- 3.1. This shirt is \$2.60.
- 4.1. I forgot to bring a handkerchief.
- 4.2. Please wash these two handkerchiefs for me.
- 5.1. My shoes are worn out. I must buy a pair of new ones.
- 6.1. He bought two pairs of socks for me.
- 6.2. One sock [of this pair] is worn out. It can't be worn any more.
- 7.1. Hello, this is the Wang residence. Who do you want to talk to?
- 8.1. It hasn't rained in our province this year.
- 8.2. Manchuria is in the northeastern part of China.
- 9.1. We skate on the river in winter, and swim in the river in summer.
- 9.2. In the northern part of China is a large river called the Yellow River.
- 9.3. The province of Hopeh is north of the Yellow River. The province of Honan is south of the Yellow River.
- 10.1. Several districts have been eliminated in each province.
- 10.2. Sanhe District is a small district in the northern part of China.
- 11.1. Wang Ma, please bring a couple of plates.
- 11.2. How about the two of us going together?
- 12.1. How come he hasn't got married yet despite his age?
- 13.1. His son is getting married this winter.
- 14.1. My daughter was married last year.
- 14.2. The second daughter in the Wang family was married [off] to the third son in the Zhang family.
- 14.3. My younger sister is getting married next week.
- 15.1. Zhang Ma returned home because her husband is seriously ill.
- 16.1. I hear Mrs. Wang doesn't get along well with her son-in-law.
- 17.1. (Although it's) such a large province (it) has only a hundred-odd miles of railroad.
- 17.2. When was the railroad from Shanghai to Nanking built?

- 18.1. What (kind of) work do you do?
- 18.2. My son [is a worker who] lays bricks [for people].
- 18.3. Our wages are [received] by the month.
- 18.4. There are over a thousand workers [working] in that factory.
- 18.5. She works for the Zhang family.
- 19.1. His older brother is a cook in the restaurant.
- 20.1. I don't like to see [lit. I don't approve of] men pulling rickshas.
- 20.2. My car won't go. Please drive your car over and help me tow it into the city.
- 21.1. Ricksha pullers do very exhausting work.
- 21.2. Our family has been farmers for several generations. [lit. Several generations of people in our family have all been farmers.]
- 22.1. I have to step on a chair to hang this picture.
- 23.1. Pedaling a pedicab isn't as exhausting as pulling a ricksha.
- 24.1. He supports five people.
- 24.2. My money is needed to [lit. My money must] support my parents.
- 25.1. His sons and daughters are all grown up.
- 26.1. Is it true that three-fourths of the Chinese are farmers?
- 27.1. China fought [with] Japan for eight years.
- 28.1. When there's war all young men must serve as soldiers.
- 29.1. Yesterday there was an automobile accident. All five people in the car were injured.
- 29.2. My younger brother, in (a moment of) carelessness while driving, ran into a man and injured him.
- 29.3. Have you caught cold?
- 29.4. I've had a bit of a cold these past two days.
- 30.1. The enemy has all fled.
- 31.1. There are a lot of guests. We must kill a few more chickens.
- 32.1. I've been through two world wars in my lifetime
- 32.2. World War I was from 1914 to 1918.
- 32.3. The fighting between China and Japan is called the War of Resistance.
- 33.1. The work I do isn't very well suited to me.
- 33.2. This dictionary is rather good.
- 34.1. So far as I know he doesn't have any money.
- 34.2. They say Mr. Wang is seriously ill.
- 35.1. I'm quite broke these days. How would I have money to see a movie?

- 36.1. Those few acres of ours are all planted in fruit.
- 37.1. In our village almost everyone grows vegetables.
- 37.2. I'm from [lit. I'm a person of] Wang Family Village.
- 38.1. He doesn't earn much [a month].
- 39.1. I spend [lit. use] quite a bit of money each month on both food [lit. eating food] and transportation [lit. sitting a car].
- 39.2. He is learning Chinese very fast because every day he [both] listens to recordings and goes to class.
- 39.3. I did badly in the exams in both Chinese and history.
- 40.1. I've admired Professor Ma all my life.
- 41.1. He went very reluctantly to the meeting that was held yesterday.
- 41.2. I don't want to do it. You can't force me.
- 41.3. I don't have any more money. I barely managed to pay the rent today.
- 42.1. The food you've prepared isn't (too) much or (too) little, just enough for five people [to eat].
- 42.2. The food is just enough for the three of us [to eat].
- 42.3. There's just enough time to get to the station.
- 43.1. This [kind of] television set isn't especially good, it's an ordinary one.
- 43.2. The furniture in that store is too expensive. It's beyond the reach of [lit. It's not purchasable by] ordinary families.
- 43.3. The general language is a language that all Chinese understand.
- 44.1. He looks down on me and thinks I don't know it.
- 44.2. Our family certainly can't afford to have [lit. use] servants.
- 44.3. How can I afford to buy a car?
- 44.4. That child can't afford to study because his family is poor. He stopped studying before graduating from middle school.
- 44.5. I don't have any money. I can't afford to see a movie today.
- 45.1. You can go (out) but you must come back early.
- 46.1. Does that dog have a master?
- 47.1. This matter requires exceptional measures.
- 47.2. Our wages are all the same. You're the only exception.
- 48.1. I've never seen a Chinese opera.
- 49.1. Go study. Don't hang around here.
- 49.2. What's your hurry? Stay a while longer.
- 49.3. Everyone else is very busy. Don't be idle. Do some work.
- 50.1. That room of mine has two big glass windows.

- 51.1. Look how dirty your shoes are. You must polish them.
- 51.2. After you finish eating you must wipe the table [clean].
- 52.1. I'm making use of [the opportunity of] the vacation to make a trip to China.
- 52.2. Thanks to our not having classes these past few days I have some free time. I must put my room in order.
- 53.1. The majority of my books are [books which are] concerned with linguistics.
- 53.2. Most of the time [every day] he's in school.
- 53.3. Most likely he's not coming.

Review Sentences

- 1. Old Wang works in a typewriter factory [lit. a factory making typewriters].
- 2. [Being] a cook in a Chinese restaurant in America earns a lot of money.
- 3. Please drag that chair over [to] here.
- 4. The money I earn is needed to support my parents.
- 5. I admire Mr. Zhang very much. He's really able.
- 6. I've had a cold for quite a few days [already]. I haven't got over it yet.
- 7. His Chinese is rather fluent.
- 8. According to the newspapers, there have been quite a few automobile accidents the past few days.
- 9. Our Wang Ma washes and cooks every day, and with so many people it certainly keeps her busy.
- 10. If you don't like to eat it don't force yourself.
- 11. I certainly can't afford to eat roast duck.
- 12. He is disagreeable toward everyone. His being nice to you is an exception.
- 13. Professor Wang is really nice. He never reprimands people.
- 14. Come, I'll help you. In any case I have nothing to do.
- 15. I'll take this opportunity to give him a welcome party.
- 16. My radio has probably been taken away by my younger brother.
- 17. Next Saturday Old Wang is getting married.
- 18. The news these days is bad. They say there'll be war again.
- 19. Yesterday Mr. Wang's car was in an accident. His leg was injured.
- 20. I'm sorry, I really can't be host today. The little money I have is just enough for me alone to eat.

Notes

1. The verb lái 'come' is used as an offer of help. For example, if someone is about to pick up a suitcase, you might call out one of the following:

Wǒ lái, wǒ lái. '(Let) me come (do it).'

Ràng wǒ lái (ná). 'Let me [come] (carry it).'

Wǒ lái (ná). 'I'll do it.' [lit. I'll come (carry it)].

After a word of direct address, lái means something like 'come now':

Xiānsheng, lái, ràng wǒ zuò. 'Come now, sir, let me do it.'

2. Liǎ 'two' is a colloquial Peking expression equivalent to standard liǎngge.

3. A person who regularly performs a particular activity can be designated by the pattern V O de 'one who V's O':

xǐ yīfu de 'one who washes clothes'

kāi chē de 'one who drives'

zuò fàn de 'one who cooks'

lā chē de 'one who pulls a ricksha [lit. vehicle]'

Some of these phrases have become specific terms for occupations:

lā chē de 'ricksha puller'

For stylistic considerations, this construction may be used in preference to the specific designation for an occupation, as in the following example:

Wǒmen de liǎngge lǎomāzi, yíge shì xǐ yīfu de, yíge shì zuò fàn de.
'Of our two maids, one [is the one who] washes and one [is the one who] cooks.'

Zuò fàn de is used instead of chúzi or dàshifu 'cook' (i.e. 'one who cooks as an occupation') in order to parallel the construction of xǐ yīfu de, 'one who does washing,' for which there is no specific term.

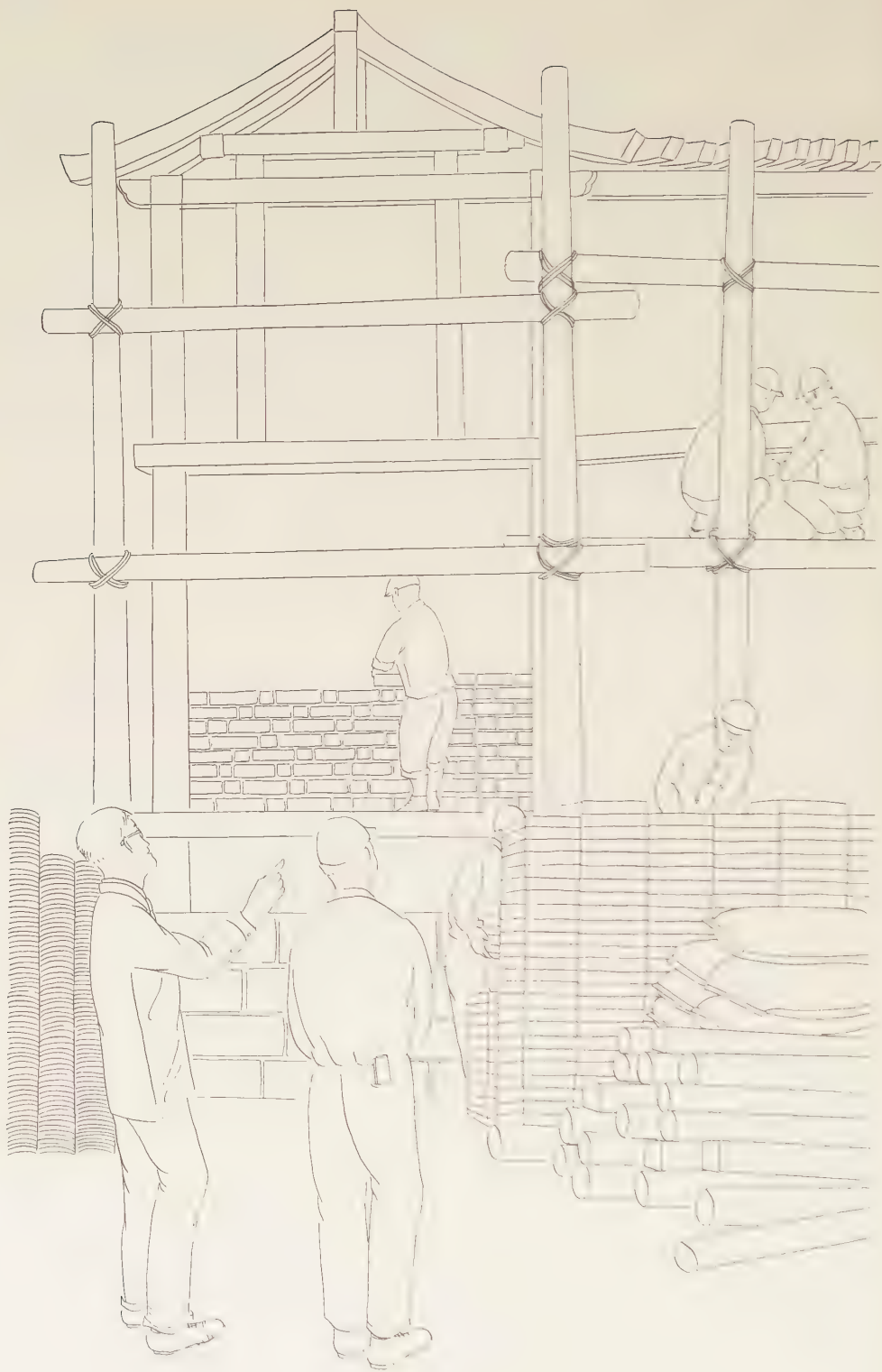
4. The postverb qǐ 'begin' is used to form resultative compounds meaning 'can(not) afford':

chuānbuqǐ 'can't afford to wear'

mǎideqǐ 'can afford to buy'

kànbuqǐ 'can't afford to see'

(Kànbuqǐ has the additional meaning 'look down upon.')



"Wǒ xǐhuan gài lóu."

Dì Shíwǔkè. Gēn Gōngchéngshī Tán Huà

Huìhuà: Huá Xiānsheng gēn Bái Xiānsheng liǎngge rén tán gōngcheng.

Tài: Nǐ huílai le. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshao jièshao. Zhèi shì Bái Wénshān Xiānsheng. Zhèi jiù shì Huá Xiānsheng.

5 Huá: Bái Xiānsheng, duìbuqǐ, shīyíng le, yīnwei wǒ yǒu ge yuēhui bù néng bú qù.

Bái: Huá Xiānsheng, nín kèqì. Wǒ dào fǔshang lái dájiào nín. Jiānglái qǐng nín duō zhījiào.

10 Huá: Zhùzai yíkuàir jiù shì yìjiā rén. Bìngqiě wǒ gēn Lǎo Gāode guānxi, dàgài Lǎo Gāo yě gào sùguo nǐ. Bú shì wàiren.

Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng gēn wǒ tánguo nín.

Huá: Nǐ zhèi shì dì èrcì lái Zhōngguo le, ah.

Bái: Shìde. Wǒ yìqián zài zhèr niàn shū laizhe.

15 Huá: Tīngshuō nǐde Zhōngguo xuéwen hěn hǎo. Lǎo Gāo cháng kuājiǎng nǐ.

Bái: Nǎr a. Gāo Xiānsheng kèqì ne.

Huá: Zěnmoyàng, Zhōngguode shēnghuó xíguān nǐ guòdeguān ma?

Bái: Guòdeguān. Bìngqiě wǒ duì Zhōngguode wénhuà xiāngdāng xǐhuan.

Huá: Bái Xiānsheng, nǐ è le ba?

20 Bái: Wǒ bú è. Nín yǐhòu jiào wo Wénshān ba.

Huá: Hǎo, dàjiā yǐhòu bú kèqì.

Bái: Nín shàoye yě kuài huílai le ba?

Huá: Kuài huílai le. Tā jiào Xuéxīn. Nǐ yǐhòu jiào ta Xuéxīn.

Bái: Huá Xiānsheng, nín měitiān dōu hěn máng ba?

25 Huá: Kě bu shì ma. Měitiān děi qù kàn gōngcheng. Wǒmen hái yǒu ge gōngchéng xuéhuì. Měi lǐbài jùhuì yíci. Zhèrde gōngchéngshì chàbuduō dōu cānjiā zhèige huì.

Bái: Nín yídìng zàole hěn duōde fángzi le ba. Nín duì nǚzhōng gōngcheng zuì yǒu xìngqu?

30 Huá: Wǒ duì gài zhùzhái, gōngyù, xuéxiào, lǚguǎn yǒu xìngqu. Huàn ju huà shuō jiù shì wǒ xǐhuan gài lóu. Duìyu xiū tiělù, xiū gōnglù, zào qiáo zhèi jǐzhōng gōngchéng méi xìngqu.

- Bái: Gāo Xiānsheng shuō nín shì liú Fà de.
- 35 Huá: Shìde, wǒ shì Kàngzhān yīqián cóng Fàguó huílái de. Nèige shíhòu wǒ zài Huáběi yídài zuò shì. Gàile jǐsuǒ Zhōngguó běifāngde sìhé fángzi.
- Bái: Nín dōu dào guo Huáběi shénmo dìfang?
- 40 Huá: Zhōngguó xīběibù wǒ dào guo de dìfang bù shǎo. Nèige shíhòu wǒ gēi zhèngfǔ zuò shì. Wǒ shì xiū gōnglù. Wǒ yě dào guo Ménggǔ, Xīnjiāng, Xīzàng. Zhèixie dìfang gēn Zhōngguó nèibù bù tóng, xiàng Ménggǔ, yǒu shā mò dìdài, shì yíge dà píngyuán.
- Bái: Zhèixie dìfang wǒ dōu méi qù guo.
- Huá: Jiānglái yǒu jīhuì gèchu qu kànkàn qu.
- Bái: Nín yě zài nánfāng zuò guo gōngcheng ma?
- 45 Huá: Wǒ zài Sūzhou Hángzhou gàiguo bù shǎode fángzi. Shànghǎi yě gàiguo jǐchǔ fángzi. Kàngzhānde shíhòu wǒ zài Sìchuān.
- Bái: Cháng Jiāng yídàide jiànzhū gēn Huáběi yídàide bù yíyàng ba?
- Huá: Yǒu diār bù tóng. Bīfang shuō Shànghǎi gài fángzi ba, chàbuduō dōu shì dà lóu. Zhùzhái yě dōu shì Xī shì de. Běifāng chàbuduō dōu shì zào sìhé fángzi.
- 50 Bái: Nín xīhuan shénmo yàngde fángzi?
- Huá: Wǒ xīhuan Zhōng Xī hébì de fángzi. Jiù shì bàn Zhōng bàn Xī de yàngzi. Zài Zhōngguode Xīfāng rén xīhuan zhèizhōng yàngzi de fángzi. Wūdǐng shì Zhōng shì de, mén gēn chuānghu dōu shì Xī shìde. Huáqiáomen yě xīhuan zhèizhōng yàngzide fángzi. Yīqián wǒ gēi Huáqiáo gēn wàiguo rén gàiguo bù shǎo zhèizhōng yàngzide fángzi.
- 55 Bái: Nín zhèisǔ fángzi shèjide duó hǎo a.
- Huá: Zhèige fángzi wǒ shì ná ta zuò shìyan. Méi àn guīju, suǐbiàn zào de.
- 60 Bái: Nín suǐbiàn zàode dōu zènmo hǎo, ba Ōuzhou de chángchū gēn Yǎzhōu de chángchū dōu hézai yíkuài le.
- Huá: Nǐ shuōde hǎo. Wǒ xīhuan Ōuzhou de jiànzhū shì xīhuān tāmen yòng de cáiliao gēn jiànzhū de fāngfǎ. Yóuqíshì dà lóu dōu shì yòng gāng tiě. Xiànzàide jiànzhū bíjiǎo jiēshi. Yīqián cháng fāshēng fángzi tāle de shìqing.
- 65 Bái: Zuì jìn nín gài shénmo yàngde fángzi ne?
- Huá: Zuì jīnde gōngcheng shì gài gōngyù fángzi, yǒu cǎodì, huāyuár, pēnshuǐchí, xiǎo tíngzi shénmode. Wǒ shūfānglǐ yǒu ge móxíng yīhuēr nǐ kànkàn.
- 70 Bái: Nín duì gōngcheng xiāngdāng yǒu jīngyan le.
- Huá: Jīngyan tàn bushàng, búguò díquè gàile bù shǎode fángzi le.
- Bái: Nín zài Fàguó yídìng cānguānle bù shǎode xīn shìde jiànzhū ba?

- 75 Huá: Duìle. Wǒ zài Fàguo biyè de qiánhòu a, cāngūānle bù shǎode dà xiǎo gōngcheng. Bīngqiě yě děi cānjiā gōngzuò—zhè yě shì wǒmen gōngcheng xī gōngkède yībùfen.
- Bái: Nín yě kànguo biéde guójiāde jiànzhū ma?
- 80 Huá: Wǒ biyè yǐhòu, yě dào biéde guójiā qu kànle yīdiǎr, xiàng Yīngguo, Déguo, wǒ dōu qùguo le. Ránhòu jīngguo Èguo cóng Xībóliyǎ tiēlù zuò huǒchē huílai de.
- Bái: Oh, nín shì jīngguo Sūlián nèibiar huílai de. Nín Zhōngguo wàiguó zǒu de dìfang zhēn duō. Wǒ hěn xiànmu nín.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (8) zhǐjiào give me your views, instruct me (IV) [lit. point teach]
 1.1. Yǐhòu qǐng nín chángcháng zhǐjiào.
 1.2. Wǒ xiě de zhèiběn shū nín kànle yǐhòu qǐng nín zhǐjiào.
- 2.0. (10) wàiren outsider, stranger (i.e. not a member of a family)
 2.1. Zhèijiàn shíqíng wàiren shéi yě bù zhīdào wa.
- 3.0. (13) V laizhe V-ing (Note 1)
 3.1. Tā lái de shíhou wǒ chī fàn laizhe.
 3.2. Zuótian wǎnshang nǐ gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà de shíhou, wǒ zhèng gēn jǐge péngyou liáo tiān laizhe.
- 4.0. (14) kuājiǎng praise, flatter [lit. flatter encourage]
 4.1. Jīntian lǎoshī kuājiǎngle ta bàntiān.
- 5.0. (17) V guàn accustomed to V-ing (RV)
 5.1. Xīyáng yīnyuè wǒ xiànzài tīngguàn le, yě bú cuò.
 5.2. Wǒ chīguànle Zhōngguo fàn le. Nín bú bì gěi wǒ tèbié yùbei le.
 5.3. Nǐ zài zhèr zhùdeguàn ma?
 5.4. Máobǐ wǒ lǎo yě yòngbuguàn.
- 6.0. (26) xuéhuì (professional) association, society (N) [lit. study meeting]

huìyuán member of a professional association

- 6.1. Jīntian wǎnshang bādiǎn zhōng lìshǐ xuéhuì kāi huì.
 6.2. Nǐ shì bu shì Zhōngwén Xuéhuìde huìyuán ne?
 7.0. (26) lǐbài week (N) [lit. ceremony worship]
 7.1. Jīntian lǐbàijǐ le?
 7.2. Wǒmen lǐbàisān niàn lìshǐ. Lǐbàisì gànma ne?
 8.0. (26) jù meet together
 jùhui meet together
 jùzai yíkuàr meet together
 8.1. Lǐbàitiān wǒmen dàjiā jùyìjù.
 8.2. Wǒmen guò jǐtiān děi jùhui jùhui.
 8.3. Nǐ kàn hěn duō rén dōu jùzai yíkuàr gànma?
 9.0. (27) cānjiā participate in, attend (TV) [lit. participate add]
 9.1. Zuótiān nèige huì nǐ cānjiā le ma?
 9.2. Wǒmen xià lǐbài qu lǔxíng nǐ cānjiā bu cānjiā?
 10.0. (30) gōngyù, gōngyù fángzi apartment house (N) [lit. public dwelling]
 10.1. Wáng Xiānsheng zhù de shì gōngyù fángzi.
 11.0. (30) huàn ju huà shuō in other words
 11.1. Nèige háizi kǎoshì de chéngji hěn bù hǎo. Huàn jù huà shuō jiù shì tā shǔ niànde tài zāogāo le.
 12.0. (31) gōnglù highway (N) [lit. public road]
 12.1. Měiguode gōnglù xiūde zhēn hǎo.
 13.0. (32) qiáo bridge (N) (measure: zuò)
 13.1. Cóng hé xī dào hé dòng tāmen dǎsuan yào zào yízuò dà qiáo.
 14.0. (33) liú study abroad (V)
 liú Měi study in America
 liúxué study abroad
 liúxuéshēng person who has studied abroad, returned student
 14.1. Zhāng Dàifu shì liú Měi de.
 14.2. Wǒ zài Rìběn liúxué de shíhou jiù rènshi ta le.
 14.3. Cǎi dào wàiguo de liúxuéshēng dōu hěn xiǎng jiā.
 15.0. (33) Fà(guo), Fǎ(guo) France (PW)
 Fàwén, Fǎwén French (language and literature)
 15.1. Wáng Xiǎojie shì yíge Fàguo liúxuéshēng, suǒyì tāde Fàwén hěn hǎo.

- 16.0. (35) Huáběi North China
 Huánán South China
 Huáxī West China
 Huádōng East China
 Huázhōng Central China
- 16.1. Huáběi yídài chángcháng bú xià yǔ.
 16.2. Huánán de shānshuǐ hěn piàoliang.
 16.3. Huáxī Dàxué zài Sìchuān.
 16.4. Huádōng jiùshì Zhōngguó de dōngbù.
 16.5. Huázhōng de tiānqì bù lěng bú rè.
- 17.0. (39) zhèngfǔ government (N)
 17.1. Jù bàozhǐshàng shuō zhèngfǔ yào bǎ zhèige bànfǎ gǎibiàn le.
 17.2. Zhèngfǔ zuì jìn wèi qióng rén gāile bù shǎo de sùshè.
- 18.0. (39) Měng, Ménggǔ Mongolia (PW)
 18.1. Ménggǔ rén chī mǎ nǎi.
- 19.0. (40) Xīnjiāng Sinkiang (PW) [lit. new frontier]
 19.1. Xīnjiāng Shěng zài Zhōngguó de xībēibù.
- 20.0. (40) (Xī)zàng Tibet (PW) [lit. west Tibet]
 (Xī)zàngwén Tibetan (language and literature)
 20.1. Shìjiè zuì gāo de shān zài Xīzàng.
 20.2. Měng-Zàng liǎngge dìfāng gè yǒu gè de yǔyán.
 20.3. Měngwén, Zàngwén, tā dōu yánjiànguó.
- 21.0. (40) (Zhōngguó) nèibù, (Zhōngguó) nèidì China proper, interior of
 China (within the Great Wall)
 21.1. Zhōngguó nèibù de rénkǒu zuì duō.
 21.2. Nèidì rén hěn shǎo dào Xīzàng, Ménggǔ.
- 22.0. (40) tóng same
 bù tóng not the same, different
 tóngxué (be) fellow students (N, V)
 tóngxué huì alumni association
 tóngyàng similar (V)
 tóngxìng have the same surname (V)
 tóngnián the same year (AD)
 tóngxiāng be from the same region (V)
 tóngshì have the same occupation (V)

- tóngsuì be of the same age (V)
- 22.1. Tāmen fūqī liǎngge rénde píqī bù tóng.
 22.2. Wǒmen liǎngge rén cóng xiǎode shíhou jiù tóngxué.
 22.3. Bǐng bú shì suóyǒude xuéxiào dōu shì tóngyàngde zhīdu.
 22.4. Tā yě xìng Wáng. Wǒmen liǎngge rén tóngxìng.
 22.5. Wǒ gēn tā shì tóngnián shēng de.
 22.6. Xià líbàiwǔ xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng wǒmen kāi tóngxiāng huì.
 22.7. Wǒmen dōu zài hángkōng gōngsī zuò shì. Wǒmen shì tóngshì de.
 22.8. Nǐ gēn wǒ tóngsuì.
 22.9. Wǒmen Liú Měi Tóngxué Huì měi yíge yuè kāi yíci huì.
- 23.0. (41) shāmò desert (N) [lit. sand desert]
 23.1. Ménggǔ duōbār shì shāmò.
- 24.0. (41) dìdài district, region, area (N) [lit. earth belt]
 24.1. Nǐmen dào xībēi qu lǚxíng dàoguó shāmò dìdài méi you?
- 25.0. (41) píngyuán plain (N) [lit. level plain]
 25.1. Huáng Hé yídài shì píngyuán.
- 26.0. (43) chù place (M)
 gèchù everywhere
 chùchù everywhere
 dào chù everywhere
- 26.1. Tā zài liǎngchù jiāo shū.
 26.2. Fángzi wǒ kànle jǐchù. Dōu bù héshì.
 26.3. Zhōngguó dōng nán xī běi gèchù chī dōngxī de kǒuwèi dōu bù tóng.
 26.4. Měiguó chùchù yǒu Zhōngguó fànguǎr.
 26.5. Xīzàng dào chù dōu yǒu gāo shān.
- 27.0. (47) jiāng large river (N) (also, a surname)
 Jiāngběi, Jiāngnán (names of areas respectively north and south of lower Yangtze)
 Jiāngxī Kiangsi (province)
 Cháng Jiāng Yangtze River [lit. long river]
- 27.1. Jiāngběi shì yíge dìfāngde míngzi, yě shì jiāngde bèibiār.
 27.2. Jiāngnán shì Shànghǎi fùjìn de dìfāng.
 27.3. Wǒ yǒu ge qīnqī shì Jiāngxī rén.
 27.4. Wǒ gēn Jiāng Xiānsheng shì tóngxué.

- 28.0. (52) hébì side by side [lit. join wall]
 Zhōng Xī hébì a mixture of Chinese and Western
 Zhōng wài hébì part Chinese [and] part foreign
- 28.1. Tāmende fángzi shì Zhōng Xī hébì.
 28.2. Wáng jia kètīngde jiāju shì Zhōng wài hébì de.
- 29.0. (53) Xīfāng Occident, the West (PW)
 Dōngfāng Orient, the East (PW)
- 29.1. Dōngfāngde wénhuà bǐ Xīfāngde wénhuà lǎode duō.
- 30.0. (54) wūdǐng roof (N) [lit. room top]
- 30.1. Nèige lǔguǎn wūdǐngshang jiù shì fànguǎr.
- 31.0. (55) Huáqiáo overseas Chinese (i.e. Chinese living abroad) (N)
- 31.1. Zài Měiguode Huáqiáo duōbàr dōu shì Guǎngdong rén.
- 32.0. (59) shìyan experiment (N) [lit. try examine]
 zuò shìyan do an experiment
 ná/yòng A zuò shìyan use A as an experiment, experiment with A
- 32.1. Měi lǐbài wǒmen zuò liǎngcì shìyan.
 32.2. Ta yòng zhèixie cáiliao zuò shìyan.
- 33.0. (61) Ōu(zhou) Europe (PW)
 Xī-Ōu Western Europe (PW)
- 33.1. Ōuzhou wénhuà zài Zhōngguo lìshǐshang yě hěn zhòngyào.
 33.2. Fàguo shì Xī-Ōude guójiā.
- 34.0. (62) Yǎ, Yǎzhou, Yǎxiyǎ Asia (PW)
 Ōu-Yǎ Eurasia, Europe and Asia
 Dōng-Yǎ East Asia
 Yǎzhou Xuéhuì Association for Asian Studies
- 34.1. Ōu-Yǎ Hángkōng Gōngsī zuì jìn zàole yíge xīn fēijī.
 34.2. Dōng-Yǎ Xuéhuì xià lǐbài kāi sāntiān huì.
 34.3. Yǎzhou Xuéhuì míngnián zài nǎr kāi huì?
 34.4. Nèige zázhi de míngzi shì Xīn Yǎxiyǎ.
- 35.0. (62) hé- (put) together; jointly
 héqilai put together
 hézai yíkuài put together
 hémai buy jointly
 héyòng use jointly
 hézuò work together, cooperate

- 35.1. Bǎ liǎngge zhuōzi héqilai.
 35.2. Bǎ jī gēn làjiāo hézai yíkuàr chǎo.
 35.3. Wǒmen liǎngge rén hézai yíkuàr chī, hǎo bu hǎo?
 35.4. Wǒmen liǎ rén hémǎile yíliàng qìchē.
 35.5. Nǐmen dàjiā kéyì héyòng zhèiběn zìdiǎn.
 35.6. Tāmen liǎngge rén bù néng hézuò, yīnwei tāmen xiāngchùde bù hǎo.
 35.7. Wǒ gēn Jiāng Xiānsheng hézuò xiě yìběn shū.
- 36.0. (64) cáiliao(r) material (N) [lit. material material]
 36.1. Zuò wàiguó nǚrén yīfù bíjiǎo zuò Zhōngguó nǚrén yīfù yòng de cáiliaor duō.
- 37.0. (65) gāng steel (N)
 37.1. Zào dà qiáo duōbàr yòng gāng.
- 38.0. (65) tiě iron (N)
 38.1. Zhèige zhuōzi bù róngyì huài. Shì tiě zuò de.
 38.2. Jiànzhū fángzi, zào chuán, gēn zào qìchē dōu dēi yòng gāng tiě.
 38.3. Zhōngguó méi tiě dōu bù shǎo.
- 39.0. (65) jiēshi solid, strong, well built (SV)
 39.1. Wǒmen bù mǎi zhèige fángzi. Zhèige fángzi gài de bù jiēshi.
 39.2. Nǐ kàn nèige hái zi zhǎng de duó jiēshi.
- 40.0. (65) fāshēng happen, occur, take place, come about (IV) [lit. emerge born]
 40.1. Nǐ tīngtīng wàimiar fāshēng shénmo shìqing le? Zěnmō zěnmō luàngqibāzāo de?
 40.2. Qíguài zěnmō huì fāshēng zhèizhǒng shìqing ne?
 40.3. Jīntian yǒu yíjiàn shìqing fāshēng le.
- 41.0. (66) tā collapse
 tādeliǎo able to collapse
 tābuliǎo unable to collapse
 tāxiaqu, tāxialai collapse
 41.1. Niège fángzi bù jiēshi. Kuài tā le.
 41.2. Zhèige dà lóu zàode hěn jiēshi. Yídìng tābuliǎo.
 41.3. Dàlǐtángde wūdǐng tāxialai le. Sīle bù shǎode rén.
- 42.0. (68) huāyuár, huāyuánzi flower garden (N)
 42.1. Wǒ jiā hòubiar yǒu yíge xiǎo huāyuár.
- 43.0. (68) cǎodì lawn, meadow (N) [lit. grass land]

- 43.1. Měiguó fángzide qiánmiar chàbuduō dōu yǒu cǎodì.
- 44.0. (69) pēnshuǐchí fountain (N) [lit. jet water pool]
- 44.1. Pēnshuǐchí hǎo kàn shì hǎo kàn, kěshì yòng de shuǐ tài duō.
- 45.0. (69) tíngzi pavilion (N)
- 45.1. Hángzhou Xī Hú lǐbiar yǒu jǐge xiǎo tíngzi.
- 46.0. (69) móxíng (three-dimensional scale) model (N)
- 46.1. Gài fángzi yǒude shíhou děi xiān zuò yíge móxíng.
- 46.2. Nèige dà zhuōzishang jiù shì jiānglái wǒmen sùshède móxíng.
- 47.0. (72) -shàng (postverb in resultative verbs) (Note 2)
- tándeshàng able to speak of, worth mentioning
- kànbushàng can't stand the sight of, look down on
- 47.1. Tā tánbushàng yǒu qián. Bú guò chī fàn bù chéng wèntí jiù shì le.
- 47.2. Nǐ jiǎnzhíde xiā shuō. Wǒ nǎr tándeshàng yǒu xuéwen ne?
- 47.3. Hǎode wǒ mǎibuqǐ. Huàide wǒ kànbushàng.
- 48.0. (72) díquè, dìquè really, truly (MA)
- 48.1. Nèige fànguārde cài díquè hǎo.
- 48.2. Wǒ zhīdao. Díquè yǒu zènmō yíjiàn shì.
- 49.0. (73) cānguān visit, observe, inspect, make a tour of inspection [lit. participate inspect]
- 49.1. Míngtiān wǒmen dào yíge xuéxiào qu cānguān.
- 49.2. Wǒ zài Ōuzhou cānguānle bù shǎo zuì xīn shìde jiànzhū.
- 50.0. (74) qiánhòu front and rear, before and after, before or after
- 50.1. Fángzi qiánhòu dōu yǒu cǎodì.
- 50.2. Tā dào Zhōngguó liǎngcì le. Tā qiánhòu zhùle yǒu èrshinián le.
- 51.0. (77) guójiā state, nation, country (N) [lit. country family]
- 51.1. Nǐ shuō Ōuzhou Yǎzhou zuì dà de guójiā dōu shì nēiguó?
- 52.0. (79) Dé(guó) Germany (PW)
- Déwén German (language and literature)
- 52.1. Tā zài Déguó liúxué liùnián.
- 52.2. Déwén xuéqilai bù tài nán.
- 53.0. (79) ránhòu afterward (MA) [lit. thus rear]
- 53.1. Wǒ xiān dào nǐ nèr qu, ránhòu zài dào Zhāng jiā qu.
- 54.0. (79) Ē(guó), Éguó, È(guó) Russia (PW) (Note 3)
- Ēwén, Éwén, Èwén Russian (language and literature)

Zhōng-Ē, Zhōng-É, Zhōng-È Chinese-Russian, Sino-Russian

- 54.1. Qǐng wèn, nǐ dǒng Ēwén ma?
- 54.2. Zhèiběn Zhōng-Ē zìdiǎn xiànzài nǎr yě mǎibuzháo.
- 55.0. (79) Xībóliǎyǎ Siberia (PW)
- 55.1. Xībóliǎyǎ zhèitiáo tiělù shì cóng Ēguo tōngdào Zhōngguo.
- 56.0. (81) Sū(lián) Soviet Union, USSR (Note 3)
- Zhōng-Sū Sino-Soviet
- Sū-Ē, Sū-É, Sū-È Soviet Russia
- 56.1. Sūlián yíbàn zài Ōuzhou yíbàn zài Yǎzhou.
- 56.2. Tā yánjiu Zhōng-Sūde guānxi.
- 56.3. Nǐ qùguo Sū-Ē ma?
- 57.0. (82) xiànmù envy (TV) [lit. envy admire]
- 57.1. Tā rén zhǎngde piàoliang, shū niànde hǎo, suóyì hěn duō rén xiànmù tā.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Wǒ jiàole bàntiānde mén. Nǐ zěnmò bù kāi ya? . . . Wǒ shuì jiào laizhe. Wǒ méi tīngjian.
2. Tā bú shì liú Yīng de, shì liú Měi de.
3. Wǒmen liǎngge rénde píqì wánquán bù tóng.
4. Zhèige xiāngzi suǒdeshàng suǒbushàng?
5. Jiù shì wǒ bānzǒu de qiánhòu ta bānlai de.
6. Nǐ bìděi cānjiā nèige huì.
7. Xiū qiáo shì yìzhǒng zhuānménde gōngcheng.
8. Tā zhēngge lǐbài dōu méi dào xuéxiào qu le.
9. Jù shuō nèige lùkǒurshàng jiānglái yào yǒu liǎngge jǐngchá.
10. Wǒ lián chí fàn dài zhū fángzi yíge yuè dēi yìbǎi wǔshikuài qián.
11. Wǒ měiyuè zhèng de qián gāng gòu wǒ yíge rén yòng.

12. Zhǎngbèi zuò shàngzuòr.
13. Tā zuì jìn kǎoshì de chéngji bù tài hǎo.
14. Yìnián yǒu liǎngge xuéqī—yǒu shàng xuéqī gēn xià xuéqī.
15. Nǐ shuō tā huì shuō Zhōngguó huà? Bújiànde ba?
16. Qíng nǐ ba nèige cài shǎowēi duō fàng yìdiǎr yán.
17. Wǒ děi dīng yìběn Zhōngwén zázhi.
18. Wǒ tíyì zánmen qu chī Guǎngdong fànguǎr.
19. Nǐ chū guó de shǒuxu bànhǎo le mei you?
20. Tāde zhíwu shì gānmá?



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wáng Mā zhèng gēn wǒ shuōzhe huà ne, tīngjian mén líng xiǎng. Wáng Mā shuō dàgài shì xiānsheng huílai le. Zhēnshi Huá Xiānsheng huílai le. Zhèige shíhou wǒ yě dào kètīng qu le.

- Wǒ yí kàn Huá Xiānsheng zhǎng de yàngzi gēn Měiyīng shuō de yídiǎr
- 5 yě bú cuò. Zhèige shíhou Huá Tàitai lái gěi wǒmen jièshao. Huá Xiānsheng hěn kèqi, yě hěn héqi. Tā shuō yīnwei tā gēn Gāo Xiānshengde guānxi, suóyì kàn wǒ shì zìjǐ rén yíyàng. Érqǐě hái wèn wǒ Zhōngguode shēnghuó wǒ guòdegùan ma. Wǒ xīnlǐ xiǎng: “Zhōngguode shēnghuó wǒ tài xīhuan le. Gāncuì nín jiù ba wǒ kànzuò Zhōngguó rén déle.”
 - 10 Wǒ wèn Huá Xiānsheng duì nǚzhōngde jiànzhū yǒu xìngqu. Tā shuō tā xīhuan gài lóu. Tā bù xīhuan xiū qiáo xiū gōnglù. Kěshi tā zài Zhōngguode xīběibù yě xiūguo gōnglù. Nèige shíhou shì gěi zhèngfǔ zuò shì. Huá Xiānsheng quán Zhōngguó qù de dìfang kě zhēn bù shǎo. Tā qùguo Zhōngguode Ménggǔ, Xīnjiāng, Xīnzàng. Sūzhou, Hángzhou, Shànghǎi tā
 - 15 zào de fángzi bù shǎo. Zhèi dōu shì Cháng Jiāng dìdài.

Huá Xiānsheng duì jiànzhū shì xiāngdāng yǒu jīngyan. Tīng tā yì shuō tā díquè gài le bù shǎode fángzi. Tā xiànzài gài de shì yíchù gōngyù

fángzi, yǒu cǎodì, pēnshuǐchǐ, tǐngzi, shénmode. Huá Xiānsheng shuō yǐhuěr ràng wǒ kàn móxíng. Tā yě shuō gěi Huáqiáo zàole bù shǎode

20 Zhōng Xī hébì de fángzi. Ta tèbié xīhuan zhèyàngde fángzi. Guàibude tāde fángzi shì bàn Zhōng bàn Xīde yàngzi ne. Huá Xiānsheng shuō tāde fángzi shì gàizhe wár.

Huá Xiānsheng shì liú Fà de. Fàguode yìshu shì xiāngdāng yǒu míng. Wǒ xiāngxìn tā shèji de fángzi dōu hěn piàoliang de.

25 Tā shuō ta huí guó de shíhou yě dào Yīngguo Déguo qu kànle yikan, ránhòu jīngguo Xībóliǎ tiělù zuò huǒchē huí lái de. Wǒ tīng Huá Xiānsheng shuō ta qùguo hěn duō dìfang, wǒ hěn xiànmu. Bú zhīdào jiānglái néng bu néng wǒ yě yǒu jīhuì dào gèchù lǚxíng.



Wèntí

1. Huá Xiānsheng huí lái yǐhòu Huá Tàitai gěi Bái Wénshān jièshao, Huá Xiānsheng duì Bái Wénshān shuō shénmo?
2. Huá Xiānsheng gēn Bái Xiānsheng shuō kèqì huà Bái Xiānsheng zěnmó huídá de?
3. Huá Xiānsheng zěnmó zhīdao Bái Xiānshengde xuéwen hěn hào?
4. Huá Xiānsheng wèn Bái Xiānsheng duìyú Zhōngguode shēnghuó xíguān zěnmoyàng? Bái Xiānsheng zěnmó huídá?
5. Huá Xiānsheng duì Bái Xiānsheng shuō tā hěn máng. Tā dōu máng shénmo?
6. Huá Xiānsheng shuō ta duì nǚzhōng gōngcheng yǒu xìngqu? Tā shuō ta duì niǚzhōng gōngcheng méi xìngqu?
7. Huá Xiānsheng shì zài nǚguó niàn shū de? Tā huí lái xiān zài nǚ gài fángzi ne?
8. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō xīběibù ta dào guo nǚ a?
9. Nǐ zhīdao nǚ shì shā mò dīdài?
10. Nánfāng Huá Xiānsheng dōu zài nǚ gài guo fángzi?
11. Shànghǎi yídài gài fángzi gēn Huáběi yídài yǒu shénmo bu tóng?

12. Huá Xiānsheng xǐhuan shénmo yàngde fángzi?
13. Shénmo jiào Zhōng-Xī hébì de fángzi?
14. Shénmo rén xǐhuan Zhōng-Xī hébì de fángzi? Nǐ ne?
15. Bái Xiānsheng shuō Huá Xiānsheng de fángzi shèjìde hǎo, Huá Xiānsheng shuō shénmo?
16. Huá Xiānsheng zuì jìn gài shénmo yàngde fángzi ne? Tā shuō tā yìhuèr ràng Bái Xiānsheng kànkàn shénmo?
17. Bái Xiānsheng shuō Huá Xiānsheng duì gōngcheng yǒu jīngyan, Huá Xiānsheng zěnmō huídá ta?
18. Bái Xiānsheng gēn Huá Xiānsheng shuō Huá Xiānsheng ta yídìng zài Fàguó cānguānle bù shǎode xīn shìde jiànzhū, Huá Xiānsheng zěnmō shuō? Tā bìngqiě shuō zài shénmo shíhòu cānguān de?
19. Bái Xiānsheng shuō Huá Xiānsheng gài de fángzi bǎ shénmo hézai yíkuàr le?
20. Gāng tiē shì zuò shénmo yòng de?
21. Yàoshi nǐ dì yí cì kànjian yíwèi zhǎngbèi nǐ yīnggāi gēn tā shuō shénmo huà?
22. Rúguǒ yǒu yíwèi péngyou jièshào yíge rén lái nǐ jiā zhù, tā yàoshi gēn nǐ hěn kèqì nǐ yīnggāi gēn tā shuō shénmo?
23. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐde xuéwen hěn hǎo nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
24. Yàoshi yíge zhǎngbèi jiào nǐ shì xiānsheng nǐ yīnggāi zěnmō shuō?
25. Yàoshi nǐ dì yí cì kànjian yíge gōngchéngshī nǐ yīnggāi wèn ta shénmo?
26. Yàoshi nǐ yùjian yíwèi gōngchéngshī, ta shuō ta zàole bù shǎode fángzi le, nǐ yīnggāi gēn tā shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
27. Yàoshi yǒu rén gàosu nǐ bié rén cháng kuājiāng nǐ, nǐ zěnmō huídá?
28. Yàoshi yǒu rén shuō nǐ duì yíjiàn shì yǒu jīngyan nǐ shuō shénmo?
29. Yàoshi nǐ chūqule nǐ huílai kànjian yǒu péngyou zài zhèr ne, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
30. Yàoshi yǒu rén gēn nǐ shuō ta zài wàiguó xué jiànzhū nǐ yīnggāi wèn ta shénmo?

Dialogue: Mr. Hua and Mr. White discuss building.

Tai : (to Mr. Hua) You're back. Let me introduce you. This is Mr. Vincent White. This is Mr. Hua.

Hua : Mr. White, I beg your pardon for not being here when you came. I had an appointment which I couldn't break.

White: (ceremoniously) Mr. Hua, you're too kind. My coming to your home is an added burden for you. In the future please give me the benefit of your advice.

Hua : (seeking to be informal) Our living together makes us one family. Moreover, no doubt [Old] Gao has told you of my relationship to him. (You and I) aren't strangers.

White: Mr. Gao has spoken to me about you.

Hua : This is your second trip to China, isn't it?

White: Yes. I've studied here before.

Hua : I hear your knowledge of China is very good. [Old] Gao is always praising you.

White: Oh, no. Mr. Gao is being polite.

Hua : Well, have you grown accustomed to Chinese life and ways?

White: Yes, I have. Moreover, I like Chinese culture very much.

Hua : Mr. White, are you hungry?

White: No, I'm not. Hereafter just call me Vincent.

Hua : Good. Hereafter we won't be formal.

White: Your son is coming back soon?

Hua : Yes. His name is Xuexin. Call him Xuexin [from now on].

White: Mr. Hua, I take it you're very busy every day?

Hua : Yes, indeed. Every day I have to go out and watch construction work. Also we have a building association. We get together once every week. Almost all (construction) engineers belong to this association.

White: You must have put up a lot of buildings. What kind of construction are you interested in?

Hua : I'm interested in [building] dwellings, apartments, schools, hotels. In other words I'm just interested in [erecting] buildings. I'm not interested in the construction of railroads, highways, bridges, and so on.

White: Mr. Gao says you studied in France.

Hua : Yes. I returned from France before the War of Resistance. At that time I worked in the North China area. I built several four-unit houses (typical) of the northern part of China.

White: What places have you been to in North China?

Hua : I've been to quite a few places in the northwestern part of China. At that time I was working for the government. I was building highways. I've also been to Mongolia, Sinkiang, and Tibet. These places are different from China proper. Mongolia, for example, has a desert area and is a big plain.

White: I haven't been to any of these places.

Hua : Later if you have a chance (you should) go everywhere [and look].

White: Did you also do construction work in the South?

Hua : I built quite few houses in Soochow and Hangchow. I also put up a few [places of] buildings in Shanghai. During the War of Resistance I spent some time in Szuchuan.

White: Building in the Yangtze region and in the North China region is not the same, I suppose?

Hua : There's some difference. For example, [in building] in Shanghai, it's almost entirely tall buildings. [Residences] also are all in Western style. In the North it's almost entirely a matter of [building] four-unit houses.

White: What kind of buildings do you like?

Hua : I like buildings that are a mixture of Chinese and Western, that are half Chinese and half Western in style. Westerners in China like this style of building. The roofs are Chinese style, the doors and windows are all Western style. Chinese from overseas also like this sort of building. In the past I put up quite a few buildings of this sort for overseas Chinese and foreigners.

White: Your home is very nicely laid out.

Hua : I did this as an experiment. I didn't follow rules, but built it as I pleased.

White: You've done very well [in building as you please], combining the best [lit. the advantages] of Europe and Asia.

Hua : You've put it well. What I like in European construction is the materials they use and the building methods. Especially big buildings, in all of which steel and iron are used. Present-day construction is stronger. In the past it often happened that buildings collapsed.

White: What kind of structures have you been putting up recently?

Hua : My most recent construction has been [the building of] apartment houses with lawns, flower gardens, fountains, little pavilions, and so on. In my study is a small model that you can see in a moment.

White: You've had quite a bit of experience in construction.

Hua : The experience isn't anything to boast about, but I have actually put up quite a few buildings.

White: In France you must have observed a good deal of new-style building.

Hua : You're right. Before and after graduating in France, I observed a good deal of construction, both large and small. Moreover, we [also] had to take part in construction—it was [also] a part of our studies in the department of construction.

White: Did you also see construction in other countries?

Hua : After graduating, I went to other countries for a look around. I went to both England and Germany, for example. Afterward I came back by train via Russia along the trans-Siberian railway.

White: Oh, you came back by way of the Soviet Union. You certainly have been to a lot of places in China and abroad. I envy you.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. Hereafter please advise me often.
- 1.2. After you've read this book that I've written, please give me your views.
- 2.1. No outsiders know about this matter.
- 3.1. When he came I was eating.
- 3.2. When you phoned me yesterday evening I was just having a chat with some friends.
- 4.1. Today the teacher praised him for a long time.
- 5.1. I've grown accustomed to [hearing] Western music, and it's not bad.
- 5.2. I've become used to [eating] Chinese food. You don't need to prepare anything especially for me.
- 5.3. Can you get used to living here?
- 5.4. I'll never be able to get used to a Chinese writing brush.
- 6.1. The history association is having a meeting this evening at eight o'clock.
- 6.2. Are you a member of the Chinese Language Association?
- 7.1. What day of the week is today?
- 7.2. We're having [lit. studying] history on Wednesday. What do we do on Thursday?
- 8.1. Let's all of us get together on Sunday.
- 8.2. We should get together in a few days.
- 8.3. Look, what are all those people doing, gathering together?
- 9.1. Did you attend that meeting yesterday?
- 9.2. We're going on a trip next week. Are you joining (us)?
- 10.1. Mr. Wang lives in an apartment house.
- 11.1. The results of that youngster's examination were very bad. In other words, he made quite a mess of his studies.
- 12.1. American highways are very well built.
- 13.1. They plan to build a big bridge from the west (bank) of the river to the east (bank) [of the river].
- 14.1. Dr. Zhang studied in America.
- 14.2. I became acquainted with him when I was studying [abroad] in Japan.
- 14.3. Students who have just come abroad to study all get quite homesick [lit. all think much of home].
- 15.1. Miss Wang has studied in France [lit. is a returned student from France], so her French is very good.
- 16.1. Droughts are frequent in the North China area.
- 16.2. The scenery in South China is very beautiful.

- 16.3. West China University is in Szechuan.
- 16.4. East China is simply the eastern part of China.
- 16.5. The weather in Central China is neither cold nor hot.
- 17.1. According to the newspapers, the government is going to change this procedure.
- 17.2. Quite recently the government has built a lot of dormitories for poor people.
- 18.1. Mongolians drink mare's milk [lit. eat horse's milk].
- 19.1. Sinkiang Province is in the northwestern part of China.
- 20.1. The world's highest mountains are in Tibet.
- 20.2. [The two regions of] Mongolia and Tibet each have their own language.
- 20.3. He's studied both Mongol and Tibetan.
- 21.1. The population is greatest in China proper.
- 21.2. People from China proper rarely go to Tibet and Mongolia.
- 22.1. The [two of them] husband and wife are different in temperament.
- 22.2. The two of us were schoolmates when we were young.
- 22.3. It isn't true by any means that all schools have the same system.
- 22.4. His surname is also Wang. The two of us have the same surname.
- 22.5. He and I were born in the same year.
- 22.6. Next Friday at 3:00 P.M. we're having a meeting of people from the same district.
- 22.7. We all work in the airplane company. We're fellow workers.
- 22.8. You and I are the same age.
- 22.9. Our American Alumni Association has one meeting each month.
- 23.1. Most of Mongolia is a desert.
- 24.1. When you traveled in the northwest, did you reach the desert area?
- 25.1. The Yellow River region is a plain.
- 26.1. He teaches in two places.
- 26.2. I looked at houses in several places. They were all unsuitable.
- 26.3. Everywhere in China—east, south, west, north—tastes in eating [things] differ.
- 26.4. There are Chinese restaurants everywhere in America.
- 26.5. Everywhere in Tibet there are high mountains.
- 27.1. Jiangbei is the name of a region, and also means 'north of the river.'
- 27.2. Jiangnan is the area near Shanghai.
- 27.3. I have a relative who's a native of Kiangsi.

- 27.4. Mr. Jiang and I are schoolmates.
- 28.1. Their house is a mixture of Chinese and Western styles.
- 28.2. The living room furnishings in the Wang home are partly Chinese and partly foreign.
- 29.1. Oriental civilization is much older than Western civilization.
- 30.1. There's a restaurant on the roof of that hotel.
- 31.1. Most [overseas] Chinese in America are 'Cantonese.
- 32.1. We make two experiments each week.
- 32.2. He's experimenting with these materials.
- 33.1. European civilization is also very important in Chinese history.
- 33.2. France is a country in Western Europe.
- 34.1. Very recently the Eurasian Aircraft Company built a new plane.
- 34.2. The East-Asia Association will hold a three-day meeting next week.
- 34.3. Where is the Association for Asian Studies meeting next year?
- 34.4. The name of that journal is New Asia.
- 35.1. Put the two tables together.
- 35.2. Fry the chicken and peppers together.
- 35.3. How about the two of us putting (our food) together to eat?
- 35.4. The two of us bought a car jointly.
- 35.5. All of you can use this dictionary together.
- 35.6. The two of them aren't able to cooperate, as they don't get along well together.
- 35.7. Mr. Jiang and I are working together in writing a book.
- 36.1. More material is used in making foreign women's clothes than Chinese women's clothes.
- 37.1. Steel is used in building the majority of big bridges.
- 38.1. This table cannot be damaged easily. It's made of iron.
- 38.2. It's necessary to use iron and steel in putting up buildings, building ships, and making automobiles.
- 38.3. China has quite a bit of coal and iron.
- 39.1. We're not buying this house. It isn't strongly built.
- 39.2. See how strong that youngster is [lit. has grown to be].
- 40.1. Listen, what's the noise [happening] outside? How come there's such a disturbance?
- 40.2. Isn't it odd that such a thing could happen?
- 40.3. Something came up today.

- 41.1. That building isn't strong. It's going to collapse soon.
- 41.2. That big building is very strongly built. It certainly can't collapse.
- 41.3. The roof of the auditorium caved in. Quite a few people [were killed].
- 42.1. There's a little flower garden in the rear of my home.
- 43.1. There are lawns in front of almost all American homes.
- 44.1. Fountains are nice-looking, to be sure, but they use too much water.
- 45.1. There are several small pavilions in West Lake, Hangchow.
- 46.1. Sometimes in erecting buildings it's necessary first to make a scale model.
- 46.2. On that big table is the scale model of our future dormitory.
- 47.1. He doesn't have any money to speak of, but there's no problem about eating.
- 47.2. You're simply talking nonsense. I don't have any knowledge to speak of.
- 47.3. Good ones I can't afford to buy. Bad ones I can't stand.
- 48.1. The food in that restaurant is really good.
- 48.2. I know. There actually is such a thing.
- 49.1. Tomorrow we go to visit a school.
- 49.2. In Europe I observed a good deal of building in the latest style.
- 50.1. There are lawns both in front and in back of the house.
- 50.2. He's been to China twice. Altogether [lit. before and after] he's lived (there) twenty years.
- 51.1. Tell me which are the largest countries in Europe and Asia.
- 52.1. He studied in Germany six years.
- 52.2. German isn't too bad [to study].
- 53.1. First I'll go to your place, and afterward I'll go to the Zhangs'.
- 54.1. May I ask, do you understand Russian?
- 54.2. This Chinese-Russian dictionary can't be bought anywhere now.
- 55.1. The trans-Siberian railway goes from Russia to China.
- 56.1. The Soviet Union is half in Europe and half in Asia.
- 56.2. He's doing research on Sino-Soviet relations.
- 56.3. Have you ever been to Soviet Russia?
- 57.1. He's attractive in person, and good in his studies, so a lot of people envy him.

Review Sentences

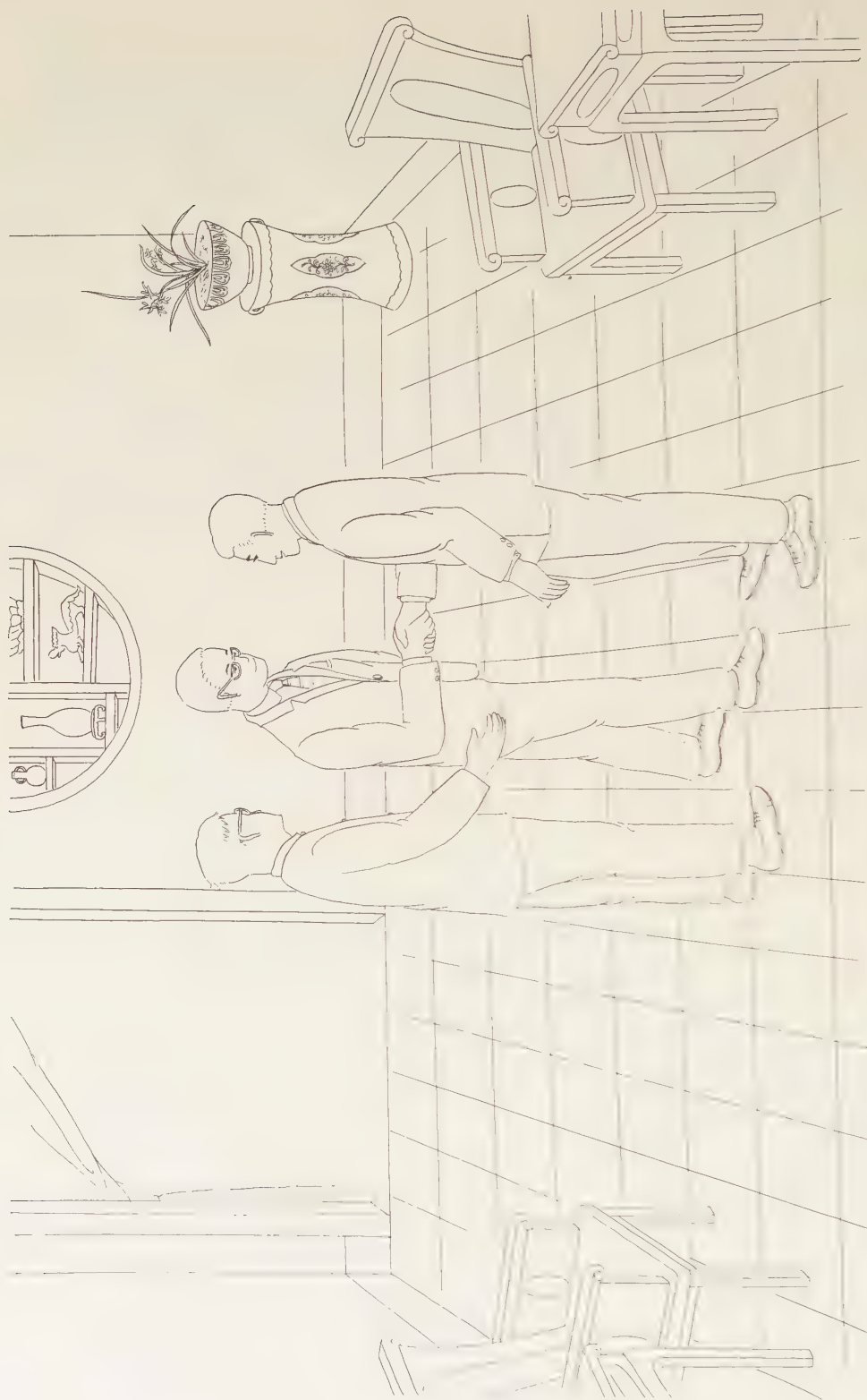
- 1. I knocked [lit. called] at the door for a long time. How come you didn't open it? . . . I was sleeping. I didn't hear (you).

2. He didn't study in England, but in America.
3. The temperaments of the two of us are entirely different.
4. Can this trunk be locked?
5. Just around the time [lit. before or after] I moved away, he moved in.
6. You must attend that meeting.
7. Building bridges is a specialized kind of construction work.
8. He hasn't been to school the whole week.
9. They say in the future there will be two policemen at that intersection.
10. I need \$150 a month for [both] food and lodging.
11. The money I earn each month is just enough for my own use.
12. The older people will sit in the seat of honor.
13. The results of his most recent exams are not too good.
14. A year has two semesters—the first semester and the second semester.
15. You say he can speak Chinese? Not really?
16. Please put a little more salt in that dish.
17. I must subscribe to a Chinese journal.
18. I propose we go eat Cantonese food.
19. Have you taken care of all the formalities for going abroad?
20. What is he responsible for doing?

Notes

1. The two-syllable particle laizhe is used at the end of a sentence. It is usually applied to events of the recent past and adds a somewhat lively effect to the sentence:
 Tā lái de shíhòu nǐ zuò shénmo laizhe? 'What were you up to when he came?'
2. The syllable shàng is used as a postverb in resultative verbs:
 Wǒ chuānbushàng hǎo yīfu. 'I can't afford to wear nice clothes.'
 Zuò yítào yīfu sāntiān zuòbushàng. 'You can't make a suit of clothes in three days.'
 Shuōbushàng tā jīntiān bù lái le ba. 'I can't say (for sure but it seems that) he's not coming today.'

3. The syllable ē or è in the words for 'Russia' (Ēguo, Èguo) represents the first syllable of the Mongol word for 'Russia': the name entered Chinese via Mongolia. In Sūlián 'Soviet Union,' the first syllable sū represents (by sound) the first syllable of Soviet. Lián is short for liánméng, which means 'union.'



“Wǒ jiào Huá Xuéxīn... Wǒ jiào Bái Wénshān.”

Dì Shíliùkè. Tán Xué

Huìhuà: Huá Xuéxīn Bái Wénshān jiàn miàn yǐhòu liǎngge rén tán
bícǐ yánjiū de qíngxíng.

Xué: Bàba.

Huá: Lái, nǐmen liǎngge rén rènshi rènshi.

5 Xué: Wǒ jiào Huá Xuéxīn.

Bái: Wǒ jiào Bái Wénshān.

Huá: Nǐ zěnmò zěnmò wǎn cái huílai ya?

Xué: Zìxíngchēde jiāopǐ lúnzi huài le. Xiūli zìxíngchē qu le.

Huá: Zài nǎr huài de?

10 Xué: Cóng máchǎng chūlai zǒule jǐbù chē lúnzi méi qì le. Fāxiàn
chē lúnzishang yǒu ge dòng.

Huá: Chē lúnzishang zěnmò huì yǒu dòng le ne?

Xué: Bù zhīdào ne. Máchǎng fùjìn yě méi yǒu xiūchēchǎng. Wǒ bǎ chē
yìzhíde tuīdào hěn yuǎn le, cái yǒu yíge xiūchēchǎng.

15 Huá: Guàibude nǐ zěnmò wǎn cái huílai.

Xué: (duì Bái Wénshān) Duìbuqǐ zǎo láile ba?

Bái: Láile yǐhuēr le. Nǐ hěn máng a.

Xué: Jīntian běnlái méi shì. Wǒ xué qí mǎ ne. Yīnwei jiāo qí mǎ de
jiàoshī míngtian yǒu shì, jiào wǒ tíqián yìtiān jīntian qu xué.

20 Bái: Nǐ zài nǎr qí mǎ?

Xué: Jiù zài Yuǎn-Dàde hòutou, lí zhèr yǒu sān sīlǐ lù. Zǒu, qǐng dào
wǒde wūzi qu tán.

Bái: Cānguan cānguan nǐde wūzi.

Xué: Nǐ kànle wǒde wūzi yídìng xiàohua wo. Luànqībāzāo, zāngde hěn.

25 Bái: Bié kèqì. Bícǐ, bícǐ.

Xué: Wǒ xiāngxìn nǐde wūzi yídìng bǐ wǒde gānjīngde duō.

Bái: Jiānglái wǒmen liǎngge rén bǐsài hǎo bu hǎo?

Xué: Bǐsài gānjīng hái shì bǐsài zāng ne?

Bái: Dāngrán bǐsài gānjīng le. . . . Ēi! Nǐde wūzi bìng bú tài zāng me.

- 30 Xué: Mǔqín gàosu wǒ nǚ jīntiān bānlai, zuótian wǎnshang shǎowēide shǒushile yíxià.
- Bái: Xièxie nǐ, yīnwei wǒ lái nǚ hái tèbié shǒushi wūzi.
- Xué: Nǐde Zhōngguó huà shuōde zènmō hǎo. Zài nǎr xué de?
- 35 Bái: Wǒde Zhōngguó huà shì zài Měiguó niàn zhōngxué de shíhou xué de. Yīnwei wǒ xǐài Zhōngguóde wénhuà, suǒyǐ zài dàxué jiù xuǎnle Zhōngguó wénxué gēn yǔyánxué zhèi liǎngmén gōngke le.
- Xué: Nǐ dì yíci lái kěxi wǒmen méi jīhuì jiàn miàn, fǒuzé wǒmen zǎo jiù rènshi le.
- Bái: Kě bu shì ma.
- 40 Xué: Nǐ zhèicì lái hái shì niàn shū ma?
- Bái: Shì. Yīnwei jījīnhuì gěile wǒ yíge jiǎngxuéjīn. Wǒ zhèicì lái jiù shì yòng zhèibǐ jiǎngxuéjīn lái de.
- Xué: Nǐ dédào de jiǎngxuéjīn shì yībùfen hái shì quán bùfen ne?
- Bái: Shì quánbùde. Shēnghuófèi, lǚfèi, xuéfèi dōu bāokuò zài nèi.
- 45 Xué: Zhèige jiǎngxuéjīn shì zěnmō yìzhōng xìngzhì de?
- Bái: Shì ràng xuésheng yánjiū Zhōngguó wénhuà. Kǎoshì zài tóu shímíng yīnèi de yǒu, shímíng yǐwài de méi yǒu.
- Xué: Nǐ hái shì yánjiū wénxué gēn yǔyánxué ma?
- Bái: Wǒ zhèicì hái shì. Bìngqiě wèi zuò bóshi lùnwén zháozhao zīliào.
- 50 Tīng Měiyīng shuō nǚ yě niàn bóshi ne?
- Xué: Qíshí bóshi bu bóshi dào méi duō dà guānxi. Xīwang duō zhīdao yìdiǎr dōngxì.
- Bái: Nǐ shì xué lìshǐ de a?
- Xué: Shì.
- 55 Bái: Nǐ yánjiū gǔdài-shǐ hái shì jìndài-shǐ ne?
- Xué: Wǒ yánjiū jìndài-shǐ. Wǒ yánjiū Qīng Cháo dào Xīnhài Gémìng de lìshǐ.
- Bái: Nǐ shì yíwèi shǐxuéjiā ya.
- Xué: Nǎr gòudeshàng shǐxuéjiā ya.
- 60 Bái: Zuì jìn Yuǎn-Dà shì bu shì chénglǐle yíge Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuàn?
- Xué: Zuì jìn chénglǐle liǎngyuàn—yíge Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuàn, yíge Guówén Yǔyán Yángjiū Yuàn.
- Bái: Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiū Yuànde yuànzhǎng shì shéi ya?
- Xué: Shì Mǎ Jiàoshòu.
- 65 Bái: Mǎ Jiàoshòu hěn hǎo. Gè dìfangde fāngyán tā dōu yǒu yánjiū. Cóngqián wǒ zuì xǐhuan shàng tāde kè le.
- Xué: Nǐ rù xué de shǒuxu dōu bànhǎo le ma?

Bái: Zài Měiguó yǐjīng xiě xìn jiēqiàhǎo le. Zài méi kāi xué yǐqián dǎi dào xuéxiào qù yíci.

70 Xué: Nǐ jīntiān xiàwǔ yǒu shì méi yǒu?

Bái: Wǒ méi shì. Nǐ yǒu shì ma?

Xué: Méi shì. Nǐ duì kàn yùndong huì yǒu xìngqu méi yǒu?

Bái: Wǒ hěn xīhuan kàn.

Xué: Nènmō chīwánle fàn wǒmen qù kàn zúqiú bǐsài qu.

75 Bái: Nǎr a? Shì shéi gēn shéi?

Xué: Jīntiān shì Yuǎn-Dà gēn Lián-Dà zúqiú bǐsài. Yùndong huì zuótian yǐjīng kāile yìtiān le. Jīntiān shì dì èrtiān le.

Bái: Zhè shì qiūjì yùndong huì ma?

80 Xué: Shìde. Yuǎn-Dà měinián zài kāi xué yǐqián zhàolìde kāi qiūjì yùndong huì.

Bái: Nǐ shuō de nèige Lián-Dà shì bu shì Kàngzhànde shíhou nèige Xīnán Liánhé Dàxué ne?

85 Xué: Bú shì dāngchū Kàngzhànde shíhou nèige Xīnán Lián-Dà. Nèige Lián-Dà shì Qīnghuá, Běi-Dà, Yānjīng—bú duì, Yānjīng shì sīlì de. Xīnán Lián-Dà dōu shì guólì dàxué zǔzhi de. Hái yǒu shénmo dàxué, wǒ jìbuqīngchu le. Wǒ shuō de zhèige Lián-Dà zhǐshì yòng lián dà liǎngge zì zuò xuéxiàode míngzi.

Bái: Jīntiānde yùndong huì jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

Xué: Xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng. Wǒmen chīwánle fàn qù zhèng hǎo.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

1.0. (8) jiāopí rubber (N) [lit. gum skin]

jiāopí xié rubbers, galoshes (N)

1.1. Dǎ zhàng de shíhou jiāopí zuò de dōngxī hěn nán mǎi.

1.2. Xià yǔ le. Chūqu de shíhou bié wàngle chuān jiāopí xié.

2.0. (8) lúnzi wheel (N)

(jiāopí) lúnzi tire

- 2.1. Tāmen zào de shì liùge lúnzide huòchē.
 2.2. Yíge zìxíngchēde jiāopí lúnzi duōshao qián?
 2.3. Wǒde qìchē lúnzi huàile yíge. Wǒ děi qù huàn.
- 3.0. (10) máchǎng riding stable (N) [lit. horse arena]
 páomáchǎng racecourse, racetrack [lit. run horse arena]
 3.1. Wǒ měitiān zǎochen dào máchǎng qù xué qí mǎ.
 3.2. Nèige páomáchǎng xiànzài gǎichéng yùndòngchǎng le.
- 4.0. (10) bù step, pace (M)
 yībùyībù(de) step by step
 4.1. Lí zhèr méi duó yuǎn. Yì chū mén kǒu zǒu jǐbù jiù dào le.
 4.2. Jiàoyu shuǐzhǔn yào yībùyībùde tígāo.
- 5.0. (10) qì air, atmosphere, gas (N)
 méiqì (coal) gas
 kōngqì air, atmosphere [lit. empty air]
 5.1. Wǒde zìxíngchēde lúnzi méi yǒu qì le.
 5.2. Wǒmen jiā yòng de shì méiqì lúzi.
 5.3. Zhèijiān wūzide kōngqì tài huài le. Qǐng nǐ bǎ chuānghu kāikāi.
- 6.0. (10) fāxiàn discover (that); appear (V) [lit. emit appear]
 6.1. Wǒ zuótian cái fāxiàn wǒde shū zài tā nàr.
 6.2. Zuì jìn zhè yídài fāxiàn yìzhǒng qíguàide bǐng
- 7.0. (11) dòng hole, cavity, core (N)
 nòng ge dòng make a hole
 shān dòng cave
 7.1. Nǐ kàn nèige qiángshàng yǒu ge dòng. Shì shéi nòng de?
 7.2. Kàngzhànde shíhou tāmen bǎ gōngchǎng bāndào shān dòng lǐtōu qù le.
- 8.0. (13) xiūchēchǎng place for repairing vehicles (e.g. bicycle repair shop, service station) [lit. repair vehicles arena]
 8.1. Nǐ néng bù néng bǎ wǒde chē lādào xiūchēchǎng?
- 9.0. (14) tuī push (TV)
 tuīkāi push open (RV)
 9.1. Nǐ gǎnmá tuī wǒ ya?
 9.2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèige mén tuīkāi.
- 10.1. (19) jiàoshī instructor (N) [lit. teach person]
 10.1. Wáng Xiānsheng shì yóuyóǎng jiàoshī.

- 11.0. (19) tíqián update, advance, move an event to a time earlier than originally scheduled [lit. lift front]
- 11.1. Mǎ Jiàoshòude jiǎnghuà yào tíqián bàngē zhōngtóu.
- 11.2. Yīnwei yào kāi huì le wǒmen tíqián bàndiǎn zhōng xià kè.
- 11.3. Nèige fēijī tíqián qǐ fēi shífēn zhōng.
- 11.4. Jīntiān de wǎnfàn wǒmen tíqián chī hǎo bu hǎo?
- 11.5. Sīdiǎn bànde lìshǐ kè tíqiándào sāndiǎn zhōng.
- 12.0. (24) xiàohua, xiàohuo laugh at (TV) [lit. laugh speech]
- 12.1. Wǒ xiǎde bù hǎo. Qǐng nǐ bié xiàohua wo.
- 13.0. (27) bǐsài compete in (V), competition, game, contest (N) [lit. compare compete]
- bǐsài (kàn) + sentence have a competition to see . . .
- bǐsài V (O), yǒu V (O) bǐsài compete in V-ing, have a competition in V-ing
- 13.1. Wǒmen liǎngge rén bǐsài shéi pǎode zuì kuài.
- 13.2. Míngtiān wǒmen xuéxiào bǐsài dǎ zì.
- 13.3. Běi Hú nèige liúbīngchǎng xià lǐbài yǒu liū bīng bǐsài.
- 13.4. Nǐ dǎsuan cānjiā chàng gēr bǐsài ma?
- 13.5. Zhōngguóde shùxué bǐsài shì zài nǎr kāishǐ de?
- 14.0. (35) xǐài have pleasure in, be fascinated with (TV) [lit. joy love]
- 14.1. Wáng Xiānsheng hěn xǐài wénxué.
- 14.2. Wǒ duìyu yìshu fēicháng xǐài.
- 15.0. (35) xuǎn choose, select, elect, vote for (TV)
- xuǎnshang elect to an office (RV)
- 15.1. Xià xuéqī wǒ dǎsuan niàn sìmén gōngkè. Wǒ xuǎn lìshǐ, shùxué, Yīngwén, Zhōngwén.
- 15.2. Zhèicì nǐ kàn Lǎo Wáng xuǎndeshàng xuǎnbushàng?
- 16.0. (37) fǒuzé(de huà) otherwise, or else (MA) [lit. not then]
- 16.1. Yàoshi nǐmen dōu qù wǒ jiù qù. Fǒuzéde huà wǒ jiù bú qù le.
- 17.0. (41) jījīn grant, gift of money (to an institution) (N) [lit. foundation gold]
- jījīn huì foundation
- jiàoyu jījīn grant for educational purposes
- 17.1. Nèige dàxué zuì jìn dédào de jījīn shì wèile yánjiu yuánzǐ-néng.
- 17.2. Yánjiu Zhōngguó yǔyán de qián shì zhèngfǔ gěi de háishì jījīn huì gěi de?

- 17.3. Zhāng Lǎo Tàिताide qián wánquán zuòle jiàoyu jījīn le.
- 18.0. (41) jiǎng reward (V, N)
 dé jiǎng obtain an award, win a prize
 jiǎngjīn monetary award, prize, grant (to an individual) (measure: bǐ)
 jiǎng xué encourage scholarship (by means of grants)
 jiǎngxuéjīn award, scholarship, fellowship (measure: bǐ)
- 18.1. Nèige háizi měicì kǎoshì dōu dé jiǎng.
- 18.2. Zuì jìn ta yòu dédào jiǎngjīn le.
- 18.3. Tā wèile jiǎng xué bǎ zìjǐde qián dōu sònggei jījīn huì le.
- 18.4. Tā shì dédàole jiǎngxuéjīn cái chū de guó.
- 19.0. (42) bǐ (measure for funds)
 yībǐ qián a fund, an amount of money
 yībǐ shōurù an income, a source of income
- 19.1. Zhèi yībǐ qián shì wèile gài túshūguǎn yòng de.
- 19.2. Tā bǎ chē màile suóyì dédàole yībǐ shōurù.
- 19.3. Nǐ zhèibǐ jiǎngxuéjīn shì něige jījīn huì gěi de?
- 20.0. (43) (A) quánbù the whole (of A), all (of A) [lit. whole section]
 quánbù(de) A the whole (of) A, all (of) A, the total A
 quánbù xuésheng the whole student body
- 20.1. Tāde xuéfèi gēn shēnghuó fèi quánbù shì tā zìjǐ zuò shì zhuànlai de.
- 20.2. Wǒmen xuéxiào jīntian quánbù xuésheng dōu qu lǚxíng.
- 21.0. (44) lǚfèi travel expenses (N)
- 21.1. Cóng Zhōngguo dào Měiguó zhèibǐ lǚfèi ke zhēn bù shǎo.
- 22.0. (44) bāokuò include (V)
 A bāokuò zai (B) lǐtou A is included (in B)
- 22.1. Zhèi yìbǎikuài qián shénmo dōu bāokuòle.
- 22.2. Mǎi shū de qián yě bāokuò zai xuéfèi lǐtou ma?
- 23.0. (44) nèi inside, interior (more literary and abstract than lǐ)
 Nèi Měng, Nèi Ménggǔ inner Mongolia
 Nèi-Wài Ménggǔ Inner and Outer Mongolia
- 23.1. Bāokuò nǐ zài nèi yǒu shíge rén le.
- 23.2. Wǒ zhèicì lǚxíng huāle yìbǎi kuài qián, chī fàn bu zài nèi.
- 23.3. Yǒu Nèi-Wài Ménggǔ. Nèi Ménggǔ shì Zhōngguode yíbùfen.

- 24.0. (45) xìngzhi nature, property, attribute (N) [lit. nature substance]
 24.1. Zhèi liǎngzhǒng cáiliaorde xìngzhi bù tóng.
- 25.0. (46) míng name in a list (M)
 V dì . . . (míng) to rank . . . in an activity
 25.1. Dānzishang dì sǎnmíng shì nǐ.
 25.2. Wǒ dìdi zhèicì kǎo dì yīmíng.
- 26.0. (47) yǐnèi within, inside
 A zài B yǐnèi A is within B
 26.1. Nèiběn shū shíkuài qián yǐnèi wǒ jiù mǎi.
 26.2. Chī fàn zuǒ chē dōu bāokuò zài liùshikuài qián yǐnèi.
- 27.0. (47) yǐwài outside, apart from
 zài B yǐwài be apart from A
 chúle A yǐwài besides A, apart from A
 27.1. Mǎi shū zài xuéfèi yǐwài.
 27.2. Wǒ míngtiān wǎnshang qǐngde kèrén chúle Wáng Xiáojie gēn nǐ yǐwài méi bié rén.
- 28.0. (49) lùnwén essay, article (N) [lit. discuss writing]
 bóshi lùnwén Ph.D. thesis
 28.1. Wǒ zhèi jǐtiān mángzhe xiě lùnwén ne.
 28.2. Wǒde bóshi lùnwén hái méi xiěwán ne.
- 29.0. (49) zīliào (written) materials [lit. resources materials]
 29.1. Wǒ zhǔnbèi xiě yībēn shū. Wǒ zhèng zài zhǎo zīliào ne.
- 30.0. (51) N bù N whether N or not (Note 1)
 30.1. Gōngchéngshī bù gōngchéngshī dào méi guānxi. Wǒ shì duì jiànzhū yǒu xìngqu.
 30.2. Wǒ shì wúsuoǒwèi bóshi bù bóshi. Wǒ jiùshì xīwang duō niàn yìdiǎr shū.
 30.3. Qián bu qián de shìqing dào hěn xiǎo. Tā ba wǒde lùyīnjī nòngkuài le yīngdāng gàosu wo.
- 31.0. (51) méi (yǒu) duó dà N not have much N, there isn't much N
 31.1. Méi yǒu duó dà shíhou ta jiù lái le.
 31.2. Nǐ qù bu qù méi duó dà guānxi.
- 32.0. (55) gǔ ancient (SV)
 gǔrén the ancients, people of antiquity
 gǔ shíhou ancient times
 shànggǔ (high) antiquity, earliest times

zhōnggǔ middle antiquity, the Middle Ages

32.1. Wǒmen yào zhīdao gǔrénde shìqing jiù děi niàn lìshǐ.

32.2. Gǔ shíhou rénmen chuān de yīfu gēn xiànzài bù tóng.

32.3. Zhōngguo shànggǔde shíhou jiù yǐjīng yǒule hěn hǎode wénhuà le.

33.0. (55) dài generation (M)

(shǐ)dài (historical) period; age [lit. time generation]

gǔdài antiquity

jìndài recent times, modern (period)

gǔdài-shǐ ancient history

jìndài-shǐ modern history

shànggǔ shídài antiquity

zhōnggǔ shídài middle antiquity, middle ages

yídàiyídài(de) generation by generation

33.1. Xiànzài shì yuánzǐ shídài.

33.2. Jìndàide jiànzhū gēn gǔdàide bù tóng.

33.3. Wǒ shì yánjiū gǔdài-shǐ de.

33.4. Lìshǐ shì lìshǐjiā yídàiyídàide xiěxiālai de.

33.5. Wǒ kàn shànggǔ shídàide yìshu bǐ zhōnggǔde hǎo.

33.6. Nèige fángzi shì zhōnggǔ shídàide yàngzi.

34.0. (56) cháo dynasty (M)

Hàn Cháo Han Dynasty (B.C. 206-270 A.D.)

Qīng Cháo Ch'ing Dynasty (1644-1911)

34.1. Zhōngguo zuì hòu de nèi yìcháo jiào shénmo míngzi?

34.2. Nǐ zhīdao zài Hàn Cháode shíhou Zhōngguo yǒu duōshao rénkǒu?

34.3. Qīng Cháo yíngòng yǒu èrbǎi duō niánde lìshǐ.

35.0. (56) xīnhài 47th year in a cycle (Note 2)

xīnhài nián 1911

35.1. Wǒ gēge shì xīnhài nián shēng de.

36.0. (56) géming revolt (V), revolution (N) [lit. change fate]

Xīnhài Géming Revolution of 1911

36.1. Nèige dìfang suírán yǐjīng géming le háishi gēn yǐqián yíyàng.

36.2. Géming nèinián tāmen pǎodào wàiguó qu le.

36.3. Xīnhài Géming fāshēng zài yī jiǔ yī yī nián.

37.0. (58) shǐxuéjiā = lìshǐjiā historian (N)

37.1. Zhāng Jiàoshòu shì zuì yǒu míng de shǐxuéjiā.

- 38.0. (59) gòudeshàng (shì) able to qualify (as)
 gòubushàng (shì) unable to qualify (as)
- 38.1. Ta gòubushàng shíxuéjiā.
 38.2. Wǒ nǎr gòudeshàng shì wénxuéjiā ya?
- 39.0. (60) chénglì establish [lit. succeed establish]
 39.1. Zài wǒmen nèige xiàn lǐtōu chénglìle yíge dàxué.
 39.2. Gémìng yǐhòu jiù chénglìle yíge xīn zhèngfǔ.
- 40.0. (60) yuàn (official) body, branch of government, institute (M)
 Wǔ Dà Yuàn five main branches (of the government of the Republic of China) (Note 3)
 Kǎoshì Yuàn examination branch (of the government)
 yánjiū yuàn research institute, graduate school
- 40.1. Liǎngyuàn dōu qǔxiāo le.
 40.2. Kǎoshì Yuàn shì Wǔ Dà Yuàn de yībùfen.
 40.3. Wǒ biyè yǐhòu zài dào yánjiū yuàn qu yánjiū.
- 41.0. (63) zhǎng head, director, leader
 yuànzǎng director of an institute
 xiàozǎng principal (of a school), president (of a university)
 cūnzǎng village head
 xiànzǎng district leader
- 41.1. Bù zhīdào zhèiwèi xīn yuànzǎngde xuéwen zěnmoyàng?
 41.2. Wǒmen xiàozǎng cái cóng Ōuzhou huílai.
 41.3. Cūnzǎng guǎn quán cūnzide shìqīng.
 41.4. Zhèiwèi xiànzǎng bu shì běn dì rén.
- 42.0. (65) fāngyán dialect [lit. region language]
 42.1. Zhōngguó dōngnánbùde fāngyán hěn duō.
- 43.0. (67) rù enter (V) (more literary than jìn)
 rù xué enter school, matriculate
 rùkǒu(chù) entrance
- 43.1. Nèige háizi shíwǔsuì jiù rùle dàxué le.
 43.2. Tā dìdi yǐjīng shíqīsuì le hái méi rù zhōngxué ne.
 43.3. Nèige dà mén jiù shì yùndòng huide rùkǒuchù.
- 44.0. (68) jiēqià(hǎo) negotiate, discuss (and reach agreement) (V)
 A gēn B jiēqià(hǎo) C A negotiates with B on C
 A bǎ C gēn B jiēqià(hǎo) A negotiates with B on C

- 44.1. Wǒ zài diànhuà lǐtōu gēn Zhāng Xiàozhǎng jiēqiàle nèijiàn shìqing.
 44.2. Wǒ yǐjīng bǎ nèijiàn shìqing gēn tā jiēqiàhǎo le.
 44.3. Zhèijiàn shìqing qǐng nǐ gēn tā jiēqià yíxià, hǎo bu hǎo?
- 45.0. (74) zúqiú soccer, football (N) [lit. foot ball]
 zúqiú bǐsài soccer game, play a soccer game
- 45.1. Xià xīngqī wǒmen xuéxiào gēn Dì Yī Zhōngxué zúqiú bǐsài.
- 46.0. (76) liánhé join with, federate with (V) [lit. associate join]
 liánhéqǐlai join with, ally with
 Liánhé Guó United Nations
 Xīnán Liánhé Dàxué Southwest Associated University (Note 3)
 Lián-Dà Southwest Associated University
- 46.1. Tāmen gēn wǒmen liánhé bu liánhé dōu méi guānxi.
 46.2. Wǒmen jǐge rén liánhéqǐlai gēn tā shuō zhèijiàn shìqing.
 46.3. Shìjièshang chàbuduō suǒyǒude guójiā dōu cānjiāle Liánhé Guó.
 46.4. Xīnán Liánhé Dàxué shì Kàngzhànde shíhou chénglì de.
 46.5. Xīnán Liánhé Dàxué jiǎndānde míngzi jiào Lián-Dà.
 46.6. Dàjiā liánhéqǐlai zuò nèijiàn shìqing jiù róngyi.
- 47.0. (78) jì season (M)
 The following forms are somewhat more formal than those with tian:
 chūnjì = chūntian spring
 xiàjì = xiàtian summer
 qiūjì = qiūtian autumn
 dōngjì = dōngtian winter
- 47.1. Wǒmen xuéxiào měinián dōu kāi liǎngcì yùndòng huì—chūnjì yíci, chūnjì yíci.
 47.2. Yí dào le xiàjì rén dōu xīhuan dào hǎibiār qu wár.
 47.3. Yīnián yǒu sìjì—chūnjì, xiàjì, qiūjì, dōngjì.
- 48.0. (79) zhào lì follow tradition, follow (someone's) example (VO) [lit. follow precedent]
 zhàoli(de) according to custom or tradition, traditionally
- 48.1. Nèige shìqing nǐ bù néng zhào tāde lì.
 48.2. Wǒ shì zhàolide měinián huí lǎo jiā yíci.
- 49.0. (83) dāngchū formerly (MA) [lit. at beginning]
 49.1. Wǒ dāngchū yě shì xué shùxué de.

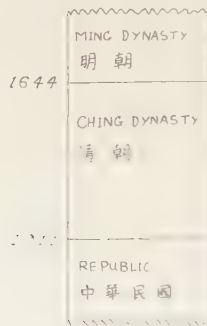
- 50.0. (84) Qīnghuá Tsinghua (University) (Note 5)
50.1. Tā Qīnghuá bìyè de.
- 51.0. (84) Běijīng Dàxué (National) Peking University (Note 5)
Běi-Dà (National) Peking University
51.1. Tā bèi xuǎn dāng Běi-Dàde xiàozhǎng.
- 52.0. (84) Yānjīng, Yànjīng Yenching (University) (Note 5)
Yān-Dà, Yàn-Dà Yenching University
52.1. Tā shì Yānjīng Dàxué Yīngwén xī bìyè de.
52.2. Yān-Dà lí Qīnghuá bù yuǎn.
- 53.0. (84) -lì establish
sīlì(de) privately established, private
gōnglì(de) publicly established, public
guólì(de) state-established, national
shěnglì(de) province-established, provincial
53.1. Gōnglì dàxuéde xuéfèi méi yǒu sīlìde guì.
53.2. Guólì Běijīng Dàxué jiǎndānde míngzi jiào Běi-Dà.
53.3. Wǒ niàn Dì-Sān Gōnglì Xuéxiào.
53.4. Zhèr yǒu shěnglì dàxué, méi yǒu guólìde.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Jīntian wǒ cái fāxiàn wǒmen nèitiáo gǒu bìng le.
2. Wǒ fēicháng xǐài Zhōngguo gǔdàide yìshu.
3. Xuéxiào jīntiān kāi yùndong huì. Wǒmen tíqián chī wǔfàn hǎo bu hǎo?
4. Wǒmen liǎngge rén bǐsài xiě Hànzì, kàn shéi cuòde shǎo.
5. Fēiděi jījīnhuì gěi wǒ jiǎngxuéjīn wǒ cái néng niàn bóshi.
6. Nèige rénde xīn hěn hǎo. Chángcháng bǎ ta zìjǐde qián náchulai jiǎng xué.
7. Bāokuò nǚ gēn wǒ yíngòng jiǔgè rén.

8. Nèitào yīfu wúshíkuài qián yǐnèi wǒ jiù mǎi.
9. Qián bù qián dào méi duó dà guānxi. Wǒ shì xīhuan zhèizhǒng gōngzuò.
10. Měi yíge shídài dōu yǒu gémingde shìqing fāshēng.
11. Xīn zhèngfǔ shì nēinián chénglì de?
12. Zuótian wǒ zài diànhuà lǐtōu yǐjīng gēn tā jiēqiàguo le. Tā shuō nēijiàn shìqing méi wèntí.
13. Wǒmen dàjiā liánhéqīlai fānduì tā.
14. Wǒ shì zhàolìde měitiān zǎochen hē yìbēi niú nǎi.
15. Nèige dìfang fāshēng géming le. Dáqilai le.
16. Tā lái wǒ bù zhīdào yīnwei wǒ shuì jiào laizhe.
17. Tā shì yíge Fàguo liúxuéshēng.
18. Nèi liǎngge nǚ hái zi chuānzhe tóngyàngde yīfu.
19. Wáng Xiáojiède liú bīng jìshù xiāngdāng hǎo a.
20. Wǒ lián chí fàn dài xǐ jiāhuo cái yòngle bàngē zhōngdiǎr.



Dǎndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Huá Xiānsheng tánzhe huà de shíhou hūrán tīngzhe mén kǒu yǒu rén jiào mén. Huá Xiānsheng chūqu kāi mén. Shì Huá Xuéxīn huílai le. Huá Xiānsheng wèn tā wèi shénmo huílaide zènmō wǎn ne? Tā shuō zìxíngchē lúnzi huài le, qù xiūli chē lúnzi.

- 5 Wǒ gēn Huá Xiānsheng yīkuài chūlai de. Huá Xiānsheng ràng wǒmen liǎngge rén rènshi rènshi. Wǒ gēn Xuéxīn bícǐ dōu shuōchulai zìjǐde míngzi. Wǒ juéde Xuéxīn zhèige rén bú cuò.

- 10 Xuéxīn jiào wǒ dào tāde wūzi qu tán. Tā gēn wǒ kèqì, shuō tāde wūzi luànqībāzāo, ràng wǒ bú yào xiàohuà tā. Qíshí tāde wūzi yě bùjiànde zènmō zāng. Wǒ shuō tāde wūzi hěn gānjīng. Tā shuō zuótian wǎnshang yǐjīng shōushi le.

Wǒmen liǎngge rén tándào xué de yìfāngmiàn, tā wèn wǒ zhèicì lái shì bu shì háishi niàn shū? Wǒ gàosu tā wǒ dédào le yíge jiǎngxuéjīn lái Zhōngguó yánjiū bìngqiě zháozhao zuò bóshi lùnwén de zīliào.

15 Xuéxīn shì xué lìshǐ de. Tā yánjiū jìndài shǐ jiùshì yánjiū cóng Qīng Cháo dào Xīnhài Gémìng de lìshǐ. Wǒ shuō tā shì yíwèi shǐxuéjiā, tā shuō tā gòubushàng.

Wǒ zài Měiguó de shíhou jiù zhīdao Yuǎn-Dà zuì jìn chénglì le jǐge yánjiū yuàn. Kěshì díquè chénglì le nǐ jǐyuàn wǒ hái bù zhīdao. Jīntian 20 wǒnle Xuéxīn zhīdao chénglì le Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuàn gēn Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiū Yuàn zhè liǎngyuàn.

Xuéxīn gàosu wǒ Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiū Yuàn de yuànzǎng shì Mǎ Jiàoshòu, wǒ hěn gāoxìng. Wǒ zuì pèifu Mǎ Jiàoshòu le. Wǒ rènwei tā zhēn shì yíwèi zuì hǎo de yǔyánxuéjiā. Tā yánjiū gè dìfāng de fāngyán. 25 Tā xiě le bù shǎo de guānyu yǔyán de shū.

Xuéxīn wèn wǒ duì zúqiú yǒu xìngqu méi yǒu. Tā bù zhīdao wǒ shì hěn xīhuan yùndòng de. Wǒ gàosu tā wǒ hěn xīhuan. Tā shuō chíwán le fàn yíkuài qù kàn Yuǎn-Dà gēn Lián-Dà zúqiú bǐsài. Wǒ yíwéi zhèi shì qīūjì yùndòng huì ne. Xuéxīn shuō shì měinián zhàolì de zài kāi xué yǐqián 30 kāi yíci yùndòng huì.

Xuéxīn shuō Lián-Dà, wǒ yíwei shì Kàngzhànde shíhou jǐge dàxué zài xīnán zǔzhi de nèige Liánhé Dàxué ne. Xuéxīn shuō bú shì. Zhèige dàxué shì yòng lián hé liǎngge zì zuò xuéxiàode míngzi.



Wèntí

1. Huá Xiānsheng gěi Xuéxīn kāikāi mén. Huá Xiānsheng gēn tāde érzi shuō shénmo?
2. Xuéxīn wèi shénmo huílai wǎn le?
3. Xuéxīn zěnmó zhīdao tāde chē lúnzi huài le?

4. Wèi shénmo Xuéxīn bù zài jiā dēngzhe Wénshān?
5. Xuéxīn qǐng Wénshān dào tāde wūzi qu tán, Wénshān shuō shénmo?
6. Xuéxīn shuō tāde wūzi luànqibāzāo, Wénshān shuō shénmo? Nǐ zhīdao tā shuō de nèijù huàde yìsi ma?
7. Xuéxīn wèi shénmo zuótian wǎnshang shōushi wūzi?
8. Wénshān shuō tā wèi shénmo yào xuǎn Zhōngguo wénxué gēn yǔyánxué zhèi liǎngmén gōngke ne?
9. Xuéxīn shuō tāmen yíqián zěnmō méi rènshi ne?
10. Wénshān zhèicì lái Zhōngguo niàn shū shì shéi gěi tā qián?
11. Zhèibǐ qián dōu bāokuò shénmo zài nèi?
12. Bái Wénshān lái niàn shū tā hái lái zuò shénmo?
13. Xuéxīn zuì jìn yánjiū shénmo lìshǐ? Tā cóng nǎr yánjiū dào nǎr a?
14. Yuǎn-Dà zuì jìn chénglìle jǐyuàn? Shì nǎi jǐyuàn?
15. Wénshānde rù xué shǒuxu shì zài nǎr bàn de?
16. Xuéxīn shuō chīwánle fàn gēn Wénshān qu gànma?
17. Zhèicìde zúqiú bǐsài shì shéi gēn shéi?
18. Wèi shénmo yào kāi zhèige yùndòng huì?
19. Yíqiándē Lián-Dà shì nǎi jǐge dàxué zǔzhīde? Wèi shénmo yào zǔzhī nèige Lián-Dà?
20. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zhèige Lián-Dà gēn yíqián de Lián-Dà yǒu shénmo bù tóng?
21. Yàoshi nǐ chūqu le hěn jiǔ cái huí lái nǐ bàba gěi nǐ kāi mén tā yíding shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi yǒu yíge rén zài zhèr biéde rén shuō ràng nǐ gēn tā rènshi rènshi, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
23. Yàoshi péngyou shuō qǐng nǐ dào tāde wūzi qu, nǐ shuō shénmo?
24. Rúguǒ nǐ dào péngyoude wūzi qu nǐ péngyou shuō tāde wūzi tài zāng, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
25. Yàoshi péngyou shuō nǐ méi lái yíqián tā tèbié bǎ wūzi shōushìle yíxià, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
26. Yàoshi yíge péngyou dì yíci lái nǐ méi jiànguò tā, tā dì èrcì lái nǐ gēn tā jiàn miàn le, nǐ yào shuō shénmo?
27. Yíge rén shuō tā shì yánjiū lìshǐ de nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
28. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng yuē yíge péngyou qu kàn yùndòng huì nǐ bù zhīdao tā xǐhuan bù xǐhuan, nǐ yīnggāi zěnmō wèn tā?
29. Yàoshi nǐ yòng jiǎngxuéjīn niàn shū nǐ yào gào su nǐde péngyou, nǐ yīnggāi zěnmō shuō?
30. Yàoshi yíge péngyou shuō qǐng nǐ kàn yùndòng huì, nǐ shuō shénmo?

Dialogue: After Hua Xuexin and Vincent White meet, the two discuss their mutual interests [lit. situations of mutual research].

Xue : (Hi,) Dad.

Hua : Come, you two get acquainted.

Xue : My name is Hua Xuexin.

White: My name is Vincent White.

Hua : How come you're so late in returning?

Xue : The tire on my bicycle went flat [lit. bad]. I had to go fix it [lit. the bicycle].

Hua : Where was this?

Xue : The tire went flat after I'd gone a few steps from the riding stable. I discovered that there was a hole in the tire.

Hua : How could the tire spring a leak?

Xue : I don't know. And there was no repair place near the riding stable. I had to push the bike [straight for] a long distance before I got to a repair place.

Hua : No wonder you got back so late.

Xue : (to Vincent White) I'm sorry. You came some time ago?

White: I came a while ago. I suppose you're very busy?

Xue : Originally I didn't have anything to do today. I'm taking riding lessons [lit. studying riding a horse]. Since my instructor is busy tomorrow, he had me advance it a day and go today.

White: Where do you ride?

Xue : Behind Fa⁴ Eastern, three or four miles from here. Come on, let's go to my room to talk.

White: I'd like to see your room.

Xue : When you see my room you'll be sure to laugh at me. It's a mess, and it's filthy.

White: Don't apologize. Mine is too. [lit. It's mutual.]

Xue : I'm sure your room is [certainly] a lot cleaner than mine.

White: Hereafter let's [us two persons] have a competition, O.K.?

Xue : Shall we compete for cleaner or dirtier?

White: [Compete for cleaner, naturally.] . . . Hey! Your room isn't too dirty.

Xue : Mother told me you were moving over today, so last night I tidied up the room a bit.

White: Thanks for doing the special clean-up job on your room (just) because of my coming.

Xue : You speak Chinese so well. Where did you learn it?

White: I learned it [lit. my Chinese was learned] when I was studying in high school in America. Since I'm fascinated with Chinese culture, in college I elected the two fields of Chinese literature and linguistics.

Xue : It's too bad that the first time you came to China we didn't have a chance to meet, otherwise we would have known each other long ago.

White: That's so.

Xue : Are you here to study this trip too? [lit. Your coming this time is also for (the purpose of) studying?]

White: Yes. (I'm able to come) because a foundation gave me a fellowship. I've come this time on the fellowship. [lit. My coming this time is precisely a matter of coming on this fellowship.]

Xue : Is the fellowship you got partial or complete?

White: It's a full one. Living expenses, travel expenses, and tuition are all included.

Xue : What kind of fellowship is it?

White: It's for students to study Chinese civilization. It's given to those who are in the top ten in an examination [and not to those outside the ten].

Xue : Are you still studying literature and linguistics?

White: Yes. In addition I'm searching for material to do a Ph.D. thesis. I hear from Meiying that you're also studying for the Ph.D. ?

Xue : Actually it doesn't matter much (whether I study for) the Ph.D. or not. I just hope to know more.

White: You're studying history?

Xue : Yes.

White: Are you studying ancient or modern history?

Xue : [I'm studying] modern history. I'm studying history from the Ch'ing Dynasty to the 1911 Revolution.

White: So you're a historian.

Xue : I don't deserve that title.

White: Hasn't Far Eastern recently set up a History Research Institute?

Xue : It's recently set up two institutes—a History Research Institute, and a National Language and Linguistics Research Institute.

White: Who's the head of the National Language and Linguistics Research Institute?

Xue : Professor Ma.

White: Professor Ma's very good. He's done research on dialects everywhere. I used to like attending his classes very much.

Xue : Have you taken care of all the formalities for entering school?

- White: I negotiated everything [already] when I was in America. Before classes start I have to make a visit to the school.
- Xue : Are you busy this afternoon?
- White: No. Are you?
- Xue : No. Are you interested in watching athletic contests?
- White: [I like to watch] very much.
- Xue : Then after we've eaten let's go see a soccer game.
- White: Where? Who's playing?
- Xue : Today it's [a soccer game] between Far Eastern and Associated University. Yesterday was the first day of the athletic contests. Today is the second day.
- White: Is this a fall athletic meet?
- Xue : Yes. Far Eastern traditionally has a fall athletic meet before school opens.
- White: Is the Associated University you spoke of the Southwest Associated University of the time of the War of Resistance?
- Xue : No. That Associated University comprised Tsinghua, Yenching—no, Yenching was a private university. Southwestern Associated University was organized entirely by national universities. There were some other universities that I'm not clear about. The Associated University I'm speaking of simply used the characters lián and dà as the name of the school.
- White: When does the game start today?
- Xue : At three [in the afternoon]. If we go after we eat it'll be just right.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. In wartime things made of rubber are very hard to buy.
- 1.2. It's raining. When you go out don't forget to wear your rubbers.
- 2.1. They manufacture six-wheeled trucks.
- 2.2. How much is a bicycle tire?
- 2.3. One of the tires on my car has gone flat. I must go change it.
- 3.1. Every morning I go to the riding stable to learn riding.
- 3.2. That racetrack has now been converted into an athletic field.
- 4.1. It's not far from here. As soon as you go out the door and walk a few steps you'll be there.
- 4.2. The educational level must be raised step by step.
- 5.1. My bicycle tire has gone flat.

- 5.2. What we use at home is a gas stove.
- 5.3. The air in this room is awful. Please open the window.
- 6.1. I discovered only yesterday that my book was at his place.
- 6.2. A [kind of] strange disease has appeared in this area recently.
- 7.1. Look, there's a hole in that wall. Who made it?
- 7.2. During the War of Resistance they moved the factories into caves.
- 8.1. Can you tow my car to the service station?
- 9.1. What are you pushing me for?
- 9.2. Please push open this door.
- 10.1. Mr. Wang is a swimming instructor.
- 11.1. Professor Ma's lecture will be advanced half an hour.
- 11.2. Because we're having an assembly we've advanced (the time for) leaving class by half an hour.
- 11.3. The time of departure for that plane has been put ten minutes earlier.
- 11.4. How about eating dinner earlier today?
- 11.5. The 4:30 history class has been advanced to 3:00.
- 12.1. I write badly. Please don't laugh at me.
- 13.1. Let's have a race to see who runs faster.
- 13.2. Tomorrow our school is having a typing contest.
- 13.3. The skating rink at North Lake is having a skating contest next week.
- 13.4. Are you planning to enter the singing contest?
- 13.5. Where did the Chinese mathematical competitions originate?
- 14.1. Mr. Wang is fascinated with literature.
- 14.2. I take a great deal of pleasure in art.
- 15.1. Next semester I plan to take four courses. I'm electing history, mathematics, English, and Chinese.
- 15.2. Do you think Wang will be elected this time?
- 16.1. I'll go if you all go. Otherwise I won't [go].
- 17.1. The grant which that university received recently is for research in atomic energy.
- 17.2. Was the money for research in Chinese linguistics given by the government or by a foundation?
- 17.3. Old Mrs. Zhang's wealth has all gone into grants for educational purposes.
- 18.1. That youngster wins a prize on every examination.
- 18.2. He received another grant recently.

- 18.3. In order to encourage scholarship he presented all of his [own] wealth to a foundation.
- 18.4. He went abroad after receiving a fellowship.
- 19.1. This fund is to be used for building a library.
- 19.2. He obtained some money by selling his car.
- 19.3. Which foundation gave you this fellowship?
- 20.1. He himself earns all of his tuition and living expenses by working.
- 20.2. The whole student body in our school is going on a trip today.
- 21.1. [These] travel expenses from China to America certainly aren't small.
- 22.1. This hundred dollars includes everything.
- 22.2. Is the money for buying books also included in the tuition?
- 23.1. Including you there are ten people.
- 23.2. On this trip I spent \$100, not including [eating] food.
- 23.3. There are Inner and Outer Mongolia. Inner Mongolia is part of China.
- 24.1. These two [kinds of] materials have different characteristics.
- 25.1. The third name on the list is yours.
- 25.2. This time my younger brother ranked first on the exam.
- 26.1. If that book is less than \$10 I'll buy it.
- 26.2. Food and transportation are both included in the \$60.
- 27.1. The cost of [lit. buying] books is separate from tuition.
- 27.2. (As for) the guests I'm inviting tomorrow evening, there are no others besides Miss Wang and you.
- 28.1. These (past) few days I've been busy writing an article.
- 28.2. I still haven't finished writing my Ph.D. thesis.
- 29.1. I'm getting ready to write a book. I'm just (in the process of) gathering material.
- 30.1. (Whether I become) an engineer or not actually doesn't matter. It's only that I'm interested in building.
- 30.2. I'm not concerned with (whether I become) a Ph.D. or not. I just hope to study more.
- 30.3. Actually the (matter of whether or not I have to spend) money is quite secondary [lit. quite small]. He should have told me that he damaged my tape recorder.
- 31.1. He will come before long.
- 31.2. Whether you go or not doesn't matter much.
- 32.1. If we want to know about [matters of] people of ancient times we must study history.

- 32.2. The clothes that people wore in antiquity are not the same as (those of) today.
- 32.3. Even [lit. Already] in the earliest times China had a wonderful civilization.
- 33.1. This [lit. now] is the atomic age.
- 33.2. Modern building is different from that of antiquity.
- 33.3. I studied ancient history.
- 33.4. History is written down by historians generation by generation.
- 33.5. I think the art of high antiquity is superior to that of the medieval period.
- 33.6. That building is in the style of the Middle Ages.
- 34.1. What's the name of China's last dynasty?
- 34.2. Do you know what the population of China was during the Han dynasty?
- 34.3. The Ch'ing Dynasty had [altogether] a history of over two hundred years.
- 35.1. My older brother was born in the xīnhài year [i.e. 1911].
- 36.1. Although that place has had a revolution it's still the same as before.
- 36.2. In the year of the revolution they fled abroad.
- 36.3. The xīnhài revolution occurred in 1911.
- 37.1. Professor Zhang is a very famous historian.
- 38.1. He can't qualify as a historian.
- 38.2. How can I qualify as a man of letters?
- 39.1. A university has been established in our county.
- 39.2. After the revolution a new government was established.
- 40.1. The two (government) bodies have been eliminated.
- 40.2. The examination branch is one [lit. part] of the five great branches (of government).
- 40.3. After I graduate I'll go do further research in graduate school.
- 41.1. What's this new head of the institute like as a scholar?
- 41.2. Our principal has just returned from Europe.
- 41.3. The village head manages things in the entire village.
- 41.4. This district leader is not a local man.
- 42.1. There are a lot of dialects in the southeastern part of China.
- 43.1. That youngster entered college at fifteen years of age.
- 43.2. His younger brother is already seventeen but he hasn't entered middle school yet.
- 43.3. That big gate is the entrance to the athletic field.

- 44.1. I reached an agreement with President Zhang on the phone regarding that matter.
- 44.2. I've already reached an agreement with him on that matter.
- 44.3. How about your taking up this matter with him?
- 45.1. Next week our school is playing No. 1 Middle School in soccer.
- 46.1. It doesn't matter whether they join with us or not.
- 46.2. Let's talk to him about this matter together.
- 46.3. Almost all countries of the world have become members of [lit. participated in] the United Nations.
- 46.4. Southwest Associated University was established at the time of the War of Resistance.
- 46.5. The abbreviated name for Southwest Associated University is Lian-Da.
- 46.6. If everyone joins together to handle that matter it'll be easy.
- 47.1. Our school holds athletic meets twice each year—once in the spring and once in the autumn.
- 47.2. As soon as summer comes everyone wants to go have fun at the seashore.
- 47.3. One year has four seasons—spring, summer, autumn, winter.
- 48.1. You cannot follow his example in that matter.
- 48.2. I customarily return to my old home once each year.
- 49.1. I [too] used to study mathematics.
- 50.1. He graduated from Tsinghua.
- 51.1. He was elected president of Peking University.
- 52.1. He graduated from Yenching University in the English department.
- 52.2. Yenching University was not far from Tsinghua.
- 53.1. Tuition in state[-established] universities isn't as much [lit. expensive] as in private ones.
- 53.2. The abbreviated name for National Peking University is Bei-Da.
- 53.3. I'm studying in Public School No. 3.
- 53.4. There's a provincial university here, not a national one.

Review Sentences

1. I discovered just today that that dog of ours is sick.
2. I love ancient Chinese art.
3. (Our) school is holding an athletic meet today. How about having lunch early?

4. Let's [the two of us] have a contest to see who makes fewer mistakes in writing Chinese characters.
5. I can study for the Ph.D. only if a foundation gives me a fellowship.
6. That man is very kind-hearted. He's always giving his own money to encourage education.
7. (There are) nine people altogether including you and me.
8. I'll buy that suit if it's less than fifty dollars.
9. The (amount of) money is of no great concern. It's that I like this sort of work.
10. There are [affairs of] revolutions [occurring] in every historical period.
11. What year was the new government established?
12. I reached an agreement with him [already] yesterday on the phone. He says there's no problem about that matter.
13. Let's all of us join together to oppose him.
14. I customarily drink a glass of milk every morning.
15. A revolution has broken out in that place. Fighting has begun.
16. I wasn't aware that he came, as I was sleeping.
17. He has studied in France.
18. Those two girls are wearing the same clothes.
19. Miss Wang is rather good at skating [lit. Miss Wang's skill in skating is rather good].
20. I took only half an hour to eat and do the dishes.

Notes

1. The pattern N bù N 'N not N' in which the adverb bù 'not' is preceded and followed by the same noun, is alternative to the pattern V N bù V N, where the V's represent a verb whose meaning is determined by the noun:

Bóshi bù bóshi wǒ wúsuǒwèi. or

Dé bóshi bù dé bóshi wǒ wúsuǒwèi.

'Whether or not I get a Ph.D. makes no difference to me.'

Zhèijiàn shì bú shì qián bù qián de wèntí. or

Zhèijiàn shì bú shì gěi qián bù gěi qián de wèntí.

'This [matter] isn't a question of [whether or not to give] money.'

2. There are several systems for naming years in Chinese. One system is based on sixty-year cycles. The years are designated by a set of sixty two-character combinations: for example, xīnhài is No. 47. Applied to the cycle that started in 1864, No. 47 designates 1911 (1864 + 47). The revolution of the xīnhài nián (1911), which was led by Sun Yatsen, toppled the Ch'ing Dynasty and established the Republic of China. The year 1912 is reckoned as the first year of the Republic.

3. The government of the Republic of China consists of five branches: executive, legislative, and judicial (as in the United States), plus the examination and control branches.
4. After Japan invaded China in 1937, several public universities in Japanese-occupied territory joined forces to establish Xīnán Liánhé Dàxué 'Southwest Associated University' as a refugee university in Szuchuan Province. The best known of the group were Tsinghua University and Peking University. (The Lian-Da mentioned by Xuexin in the dialogue is fictitious.)



“Tiě Tóu jiā yóu!”

Dì Shiqīkè. Kàn Zúqiú Bǐsài

Huìhuà: Huá Xuéxīn Bái Wénshān liángge rén zài yùndongchǎng tán huà.

Bái: Yùndongchǎng kě zhēn bù xiǎo wa.

Xué: Qùnian cái gāihǎo de. Néng róng wǔwàn duō rén.

5 Bái: Tīngshuō Yuǎn-Dà zuì jìn hěn zhòngshì tǐyù de.

Xué: Duìle. Cānjiā Quán Guó Yùndong Huì, Yuǎn-Dàde xuánshǒu zuì duō. Qùnian Quán Guó Yùndong Huì, Yuǎn-Dà déle báxiàng guànjūn.

Bái: Zhēn bú cuò.

Xué: Yóuqishi zúqiú duì zhēn yǒu zīge cānjiā Shìjiè Yùndong Huì le.

10 Bái: Wǒ zhīdao Yuǎn-Dà zúqiú cháng gēn biéde xuéxiào bǐsài. Biéde qiúlei yě cháng bǐsài ma?

Xué: Chule zúqiú yǐwài, hái yǒu lánqiú, wǎngqiú, bīngbāngqiú, yě cháng gēn biéde xuéxiào bǐsài.

Bái: Nǐ duì gèzhǒng yùndong dōu néng ba?

15 Xué: Dōu dǒng diar, kěshi wǒ zuì xīhuan zúqiú gēn lánqiú. Wǒ tīngshuō Měiguó shìde zúqiú gēn Zhōngguode tífǎ bù tóng.

Bái: Yǒu hěn dàde fēnbié.

20 Xué: Bàozhǐshàng cháng yǒu guānyú Měiguó zúqiú bǐsài duìyuán shòu shāng de xiǎoxi. Měiguó shì de zúqiú keyi shuō shì yìzhǒng tài jīliède yùndong.

Bái: Wǒ xiǎode shíhou hěn xīhuan zúqiú. Mǔqin bú zàncheng, shuō qiānwàn bié tī zúqiú, wànyī shòule zhòng shāng zěnmò bàn? Suírán mǔqin zěnmò shuō, kěshi yǒude shíhou wǒ hái qù tī.

Xué: Nǐ xīhuan shénmo yùndong?

25 Bái: Wǒ zuì xīhuan sàipǎo, dǎ wǎngqiú gēn dǎ bàng qiú.

Xué: Nǐ pǎo chángtú háishi pǎo duǎntú?

Bái: Wǒ pǎo yì Yínglǐ.

Xué: Pǎo duōshao shíhou?

Bái: Wǒ pǎo sìfēn líng jiúmiǎo.

30 Xué: Chéngjì bú huài ya.

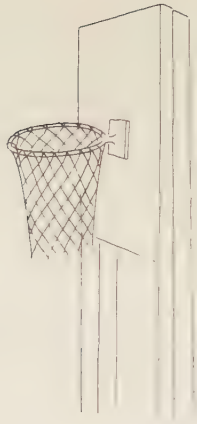
Bái: Wǒ niàn zhōngxué dàxué de shíhou dōu cānjiāguo sàipǎo bǐsài.

- Xué: Wǎngqiú wǒ yǒude shíhou yě dǎ. Něitiān wǒmen liǎngge rén dǎda.
- Bái: Hǎode. Wǒ hǎo jiǔ méi dǎ le. Wǒ yǒu hěn hǎode wǎngqiú pāizi zài xíngli lǐtou ne. Jíge xīngqī cái néng yùndào ne.
- 35 Xué: Wǒ yǒu. Wǒ jiègei nǐ.
- Bái: Kǒngpà wǒ bú shì nǐde duìshǒu. Wǒ dǎbuguò nǐ.
- Xué: Wǒ dǎde bǐng bù hǎo. Péi nǐ wárwar. Shéi shū shéi yíng méi guānxi.
- Bái: Yuǎn-Dà gēn Lián-Dà nēidui tǐde zuì hǎo wa?
- 40 Xué: Dāngrán Yuǎn-Dà tǐde hǎo le. Yuǎn-Dà zúqiú duì lǐtou yǒu liǎngge tǐde zuì hǎo de duìyuán. Yíge jiào Wáng Wénhuá de, wàihào jiào Xiǎo Láohur. Yíge jiào Zhāng Dōngshēng de. Wàihào Tiě Tóu. Qián jǐtiān Xiǎo Láohur liànxi qiú shòu shāng le. Bù zhīdào tā jīntian néng bu néng chū chǎng.
- 45 Bái: Nènmo jīntian méi bǎwo yídìng yíng.
- Xué: Wēixiǎn. Shéi shū shéi yíng bù gǎn shuō.
- Bái: Qiúduìde zhǐfú hěn pàoliang a.
- Xué: Yuǎn-Dà shì hóng yùndong-yī, Lián-Dà shì lǚ yùndong-yī, dōu shì huī duǎnkù.
- 50 Bái: Yuǎn-Dàde duìyuán gèzi dōu bù hěn gāo. Duìzhǎng shì shéi?
- Xué: Xiǎo Láohur.
- Bái: Wèi shénmo jiào Xiǎo Láohur?
- Xué: Tíqilai hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ niàn Yuǎn-Dà sīniánjī de shíhour, Xiǎo Láohur cái jìn dàxué. Tā niánji hěn xiǎo, gèzi hěn ǎi, pǎode hěn kuài, tíqiú lái xiāngdāng xiōngměng, suóyi dàjiā dōu jiào ta Xiǎo Láohur.
- 55 Bái: Nǐ tīng qiúchǎng de guānzhòng dōu shì gěi Yuǎn-Dà zhùwēi, dōu hěn yōnghu Yuǎn-Dà.
- Xué: Guānzhòng dà duōshù shì gēn Yuǎn-Dà yǒu guānxi de.
- 60 Bái: Guàibude dōu gěi Yuǎn-Dà zhùwēi ne.
- Xué: Nǐ kàn kàntáishang rén dōu mǎn le. Yǒu hěn duō rén méi zuòr. Zhànzhe kàn ne.
- Bái: Kě bu shì ma. Xīng'er wǒmen láide zǎo.
- Xué: Xiànzài yào kāishǐ le. Yuǎn-Dà jiā yóur!
- 65 Bái: Yuǎn-Dà tǐde hǎo.
- Xué: Lián-Dà tǐde yě bú cuò.
- Bái: Háishi Yuǎn-Dà tǐde hǎo.
- Xué: Lǎo Zhāng jiā yóur!
- Bái: Nǐ kàn Yuǎn-Dà tǐjīnqu yíge le.

- 70 Xué: Xiànzài yī bǐ líng.
 Bái: Lián-Dàde duìzhǎng tīde fēicháng hǎo.
 Xué: Tā gēn Lǎo Zhāng tīde chàbuduō hǎo.
 Bái: Duìle. Tīde zhēn bú cuò.
 Xué: Zāogāo! Yuǎn-Dà fànguī le.
- 75 Bái: Gěi rēnjia jīhui le.
 Xué: Jīntian Yuǎn-Dà tīde bǐ yǐqián chàde hěn duō.
 Bái: Zāogāo! Lián-Dà tījīnqu yíge le.
 Xué: Xiànzài píngle—yī bǐ yī. Wēixiǎn, wēixiǎn.
 Bái: Nǐ kàn zhèicì shéi shū shéi yíng?
- 80 Xué: Bù gǎn shuō. Xiǎo Láohur méi shàng chǎng.
 Bái: Zuì hǎode xuánshǒu bu shàng chǎng, guānxi hěn dà.
 Xué: Xiànzài zhēn jǐnzhāng. Liǎngduì dōu nènmo mài lìqi. Fēnbuchū shéi hǎo shéi huài.
 Bái: Kuài wán le. Hái méi fēnchu shéi shū shéi yíng.
- 85 Xué: Xiǎo Láohur shàng le! Yǒu xīwang.
 Bái: Bù chéng wèntí le. Yídìng shì Yuǎn-Dà le.
 Xué: Nǐ kàn Xiǎo Láohur gēn Lǎo Zhāng liánluode duó hǎo.
 Bái: Zhēnde.
 Xué: Xiǎo Láohur jiā yóur!
- 90 Bái: Tiě Tóu jiā yóu!
 Xué: Lián-Dà wǔhào dǎo le! Xiǎo Láohur chènzhe jīhui ba qiú tīgei Lǎo Zhāng le.
 Bái: Nǐ kàn Lián-Dà nèige shǒu mén de yě bú ruò ya.
 Xué: Nǐ kàn, Xiǎo Láohur pǎodao Tiě Tóu qiántou qu le. Èi! Tījìn qiúmén qu le! Yuǎn-Dà yíngle!
- 95 Bái: Jīntian zhèichǎng qiú zhēn zhíde kàn.
 Xué, Bái: Zī bēng pā,
 Zī bēng pā.
 Yuǎn-Dà qiúduì
- 100 Rā, rā, rā!

Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (5) zhòngshì esteem, place great store on, give serious consideration to, pay close attention to (TV) [lit. heavy regard]



- 1.1. Wǒmen xuéxiào hěn zhòngshì xuésheng xué wàiguo yǔyán.
- 1.2. Zuótian fāshēng de nèijiàn shìqíng tā hěn zhòngshì.
- 2.0. (5) tǐyù physical culture, athletic sports [lit. body culture]
tǐyù huì athletic club
tǐyùchǎng athletic field, stadium
tǐyùguǎn gym, gymnasium
- 2.1. Wǒ dìdi shì xué tǐyù de.
- 2.2. Zhōnghuá Tǐyùchǎng jīntian yǒu yìchǎng zúqiú bǐsài.
- 2.3. Nán sùshè lí tǐyùguǎn hěn jìn.
- 3.0. (6) shǒu hand, worker
shuǐshǒu sailor [lit. water hand]
háoshǒu a good hand (at something)
xuánshǒu able person selected from a number of others, star, champion [lit. select hand]
- 3.1. Zuò shì tā kě shì ge háoshǒu.
- 3.2. Zhèicìde yùndòng huì wǒmen xuéxiào yǒu shíwǔwèi xuánshǒu cānjiā.
- 3.3. Yóuyǒng bǐsài Wáng Xiáojie nǎr shì Zhāng Xiáojiede duìshǒu a?
- 4.0. (7) xiàng article, item, kind (M)
yíxiàngyíxiàngde item by item
- 4.1. Nǐ cānjiā nǎixiàng yùndòng?
- 4.2. Qǐng ni bǎ nèixie shìqíng yíxiàngyíxiàngde dōu xiěchulai.
- 5.0. (7) guànjūn champion (N) [lit. head army]
dé guànjūn win a championship, get first place
- 5.1. Zuótian Quán Shèng Zúqiú Bǐsài wǒmen xuéxiào déle guànjūn.
- 5.2. Wáng Xiáojie liú bīng dé guànjūn.

- 6.0. (9) duì group, body, team (M)
 yíduì bīng detachment of soldiers
 zúqiú duì football team
 yīnyuè duì band, orchestra
 duìyuán member of a team
 duìzhǎng captain of a team
- 6.1. Nǐ dài nèiduì bīng xiān zǒu.
 6.2. Wǒmen xuéxiào zuìjìn zǔzhīle yíge yīnyuè duì.
 6.3. Tā gēge shì nèige zúqiú duì de duìyuán.
- 7.0. (9) zīge qualifications, standing (N) [lit. property pattern]
 A gòu zīge (V) A is qualified (to V) (V)
- 7.1. Tā yǎn xì de zīge hěn lǎo le. Tā yǎnle èrshí duō nián le.
 7.2. Tā hěn gòu zīge zuò wǒmende lǎoshī.
- 8.0. (9) qiú ball (N)
 wǎr qiú, dǎ qiú play (a game involving a ball)
 qiúchǎng ground for ball game—e.g. football field, tennis court
 qiúmén goal (line), goal posts
 qiúduì team
 yìchǎng qiú a game (of ball)
- 8.1. Wǒ niàn zhōngxué de shíhòu zuì xīhuan wǎr qiú le.
 8.2. Jīntiān qiúchǎng rén yíding hěn duō.
 8.3. Qiúmén huài le. Děi zhǎo rén xiūli.
 8.4. Zhèige xuéxiàode qiúduì xiāngdāng yǒu míng.
- 9.0. (11) lèi kind (of), classification (of) (M)
 rénlèi mankind
 tānglèi soups (on a menu) (Note 1)
- 9.1. Nǐ xīhuan kàn nēilèide diànyǐngr?
 9.2. Yuánzī-néng yīnggāi yòngzai duì rénlèi yǒu háochu zhe yīfāngmiàn.
- 10.0. (12) lán(zi) basket (M)
 lánzi basket (N)
 lánqiú basketball
- 10.1. Zuótian Wáng Tàitai sòng wǒ yì lánzi shuǐguǒ
 10.2. Nǐ xīhuan wǎr lánqiú ma?
- 11.0. (12) wǎng(zi) net (N)

yúwǎng fishnet

wǎngqiú tennis

11.1. Wǒ hěn xīhuan dǎ wǎngqiú. Nǐ ne?

11.2. Nèige dǎ wǎngqiú de wǎngzi shì xīn mǎi de.

12.0. (12) bīngbāng ping-pong; bīng-bang, bang-bang (Note 2)

bīngbāngqiú ping-pong

bīngbīngbāngbāng(de) bīng-bang, bang-bang

12.1. Měiguó rén duì bīngbāngqiú bù zēnmo zhòngshì.

12.2. Nǐ tīngting wàibiar shénmo bīngbīngbāngbāngde xiǎng?

13.0. (16) tī kick, play a game that involves kicking (V)

tī qiú kick a ball, play a game in which a ball is kicked

13.1. Nèige háizi bú niàn shū lǎo tī qiú.

14.0. (17) 'fēnbié distinguish between (V), difference (N) [lit. divide other]

fēnbiédechū(lái) able to distinguish

fēnbiébuchū(lái) unable to distinguish

14.1. Jù wǒ kàn nèi liǎngzhī bǐ méi duó dàde fēnbié.

14.2. Zhèi liǎngge dōngxì zēnmo fēnbié nēige shì nǐde nēige shì wǒde?

14.3. Tāmen liǎngge rén nǐ fēnbiédechū shéi shì gēge shéi shì dìdi ma?

15.0. (20) jīliè violent, fierce (SV)

15.1. Nèicǐde zhàng dǎde hěn jīliè ya.

16.0. (22) qiānwàn by all means, without fail [lit. 1,000 10,000]

qiānwàn bù/bié by no means, absolutely not

16.1. Guò lù qiānwàn yào zhùyì chē.

16.2. Nǐ ke qiānwàn bié wàngle nèijiàn shì a.

17.0. (22) wǎnyī barely likely, if by any chance (MA) [lit. 10,000 one]

17.1. Wǒ xiǎng wǒ yídìng lái. Wǎnyī wǒ bù lái wǒ dǎ diànhuà gào su nǐ.

18.0. (25) sài compete in, have a race (V)

sàiqiú compete in a ball game

sàipǎo race on foot (V, N)

sài (kàn) + V compete (to see) (V)

18.1. Wǒmen liǎngge rén sài kàn shéi zǒude kuài.

18.2. Nǐmen xuéxiào dōu sài shénmo qiú?

18.3. Nǐ xīhuan kàn sàipǎo ma?

19.0. (20) bàng(zi) club, bat, stick; corn, maize (N)

bàngzi miàn corn flour

bàngqiú baseball

19.1. Xiāngxia rén xǐ yīfu háishi yòng bàngzi dǎ.

19.2. Wǒmen jiā yǒu sānmǔ dì, dōu zhòng de shì bàngzi.

19.3. Měiguó rén zuì xǐhuan de yùndong shì dǎ bàngqiú.

20.0. (26) -tú journey, road

chángtú long distance

duǎntú short distance

qiántú future [lit. front road]

zhōngtú midway [lit. middle distance]

20.1. Nèige hái zi yòu cōngmíng yòu yònggōng. Jiānglái yídìng yǒu qiántú.

20.2. Zuótian wǒ kāi chē dào Niǔyue. Zǒudào zhōngtú cái fāxiàn chē lǐtou méi yǒu le.

20.3. Wǎnshang dǎ chángtú diànhuà bǐjiǎo piányi.

21.0. (29) líng zero (Note 3)

21.1. Tā gēge shì yī jiǔ líng jiǔ nián shēng de.

21.2. Zhèiběn shū bú shì sānkuài èr, shì sānkuài líng èr.

21.3. Fēijī wúdiǎn líng bāfēn qǐ fēi.

21.4. Nèige chéng yuánlái zhǐ yǒu yìqiān líng wǔge rén. Xiànzài zēngjiā dào sānqiān líng wǔshí rén le.

22.0. (29) miǎo a second (M)

22.1. Kuài wán le. Zhǐ yǒu bāmiǎo zhōng le.

23.0. (33) pāizi racket, paddle (N)

23.1. Wǒde wǎngqiú pāizi shì Yīngguo huò.

24.0. (36) V-guò surpass in V-ing (RV)

24.1. Wǒ xiǎng jīntian zhèichǎng lánqiú bǐsài gāozhōng-yī yídìng sàibuguò chūzhōng-sān.

24.2. Tā dǎ zì dǎde bǐ wǒ kuài. Wǒ dǎbuguò ta.

25.0. (37) shū lose (a game, money in a bet)

25.1. Zuótian nèichǎng qiú méi shū méi yìng.

25.2. Tā dào páomǎchǎng qu chángcháng shū qián.

26.0. (41) wàihào(r) nickname (N) [lit. outside designation]

qǐ wàihào(r) give a nickname [lit. rise nickname]

26.1. Tā nèige wàihào(r) hěn qíguài. Shì shéi gěi ta qǐ de?

27.0. (44) chǎng field, arena

chū chǎng come on the field, enter a game

shàng chǎng come on the field, enter a game
wǎngqiúchǎng tennis court

27.1. Zhèichǎng qiú Xiǎo Wáng zěnmó méi chū chǎng ne?

27.2. Jīntiān yǒu liǎngge zuì hǎode duìyuán méi shàng chǎng.

27.3. Wǒ cháng dào tāmen xuéxiàode wǎngqiúchǎng qu dǎ wǎngqiú.

28.0. (45) bǎwo security, guarantee [lit. grasp grab]
yǒu bǎwo certain, sure
méi(yǒu) bǎwo uncertain, unsure

28.1. Wǒ duì zhèicìde kǎoshì xiāngdāng yǒu bǎwo.

28.2. Zhèijiàn shìqíng bàndehǎo bànbuhǎo wǒ ke méi bǎwo.

29.0. (46) wēixiǎn dangerous, critical (SV) [lit. dangerous perilous]

29.1. Tā bìngde hěn lìhai. Xiāngdāng wēixiǎn.

30.0. (46) gǎn dare to, venture to (V)

30.1. Zhèige dǎzìjǐ néng yòng jīnián wǒ ke bù gǎn shuō.

31.0. (47) zhífú uniform (N) [lit. make clothes]

31.1. Zhèr xuéxiàode xuésheng yào bu yào chuān zhífú?

32.0. (48) yùndong-yī athletic uniform

32.1. Wǒmende yùndong-yī shì lán yīfú hēi zì.

33.0. (48) lǜ green (SV)

33.1. Xiàtiān jǐngchá chuān lǜ zhífú.

34.0. (49) huī gray (SV); ashes (N)

34.1. Huī màozi shì wǒde.

35.0. (49) kù(zì) trousers, pants (N) (measure: tiáo)
duǎnkù shorts

35.1. Nǐ zhèitiáo kùzi zài nǎr mǎi de? Wǒ yě xiǎng mǎi yìtiáo.

35.2. Xiàtiān tiānqì hěn rè. Rén chàbuduō dōu chuān duǎnkù.

36.0. (55) xiōngměng fierce, savage, cruel (SV)

36.1. Láo hu gēn shīzi yíyàng xiōngměng.

37.0. (57) guānzhòng (a watching) audience, spectators (N) [lit. watch crowd]

37.1. Nèige yǎnyuán hěn shòu guānzhòng huānyíng.

38.0. (57) zhùwēi encourage, cheer on (V)

gěi A zhùwēi cheer A

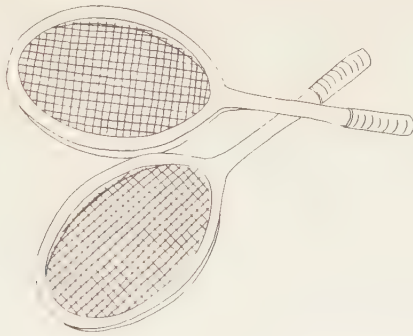
38.1. Wǒmen dàjiā dōu gěi duìzhǎng zhùwēi sāncì.

39.0. (58) yōnghu support, back up (TV) [lit. hug protect]

- 39.1. Suóyǒude xuésheng dōu yōnghu Wáng Xiàozhǎng.
- 40.0. (59) duōshù majority [lit. big number]
- 40.1. Dà duōshùde rén dōu fǎnduì tāde tíyì.
- 41.0. (61) kàntái seats, stands, bleachers (N) [lit. look terrace]
- 41.1. Nèige kàntái néng róng sānbǎi duō rén.
- 42.0. (61) mǎn full (SV)
- A (de) B mǎn le A is full of B
- A mǎn shì B, mǎn A shì B A is full of B, there are B every-
where in A
- V mǎn V to capacity
- 42.1. Dàlǐtángde rén yǐjīng mǎn le.
- 42.2. Nèi yídài mǎn shì pùzi. Méi yǒu zhùzhái.
- 42.3. Qiūtiān yì guā fēng, mǎn dì dōu shì shù yèzi.
- 42.4. Tāde shūfáng shū dōu duīmǎn le.
- 43.0. (62) zhàn stand (TV)
- zhànqilai stand up
- 43.1. Zuótiān wǒ děng gōnggòng qìchē zhànle bàntiān chē yě méi lái.
- 43.2. Nǐ zhànqilai ràng nèiwèi lǎo tàitai zuòxia.
- 44.0. (64) jiā add, increase, raise (V)
- jiā yóu(r) gas up; add effort, put on steam (V) [lit. add oil]
(Note 4)
- 44.1. Èr jiā sān dé wǔ.
- 44.2. Zhèige tāng bú gòu xián. Zài jiā diār yán.
- 44.3. Nǐde qìchē xūyào jiā yóu ma?
- 44.4. Yào kǎoshì le. Wǒ děi jiā yóu yònggōng le.
- 44.5. Wénshān, jiā yóu!
- 45.0. (70) A bǐ B A to B (where A and B are scores in a game)
- jǐ bǐ jǐ what's the score? [lit. how many to how many?]
- A bǐ B X yíng le X won by a score of A to B
- X duì Y A bǐ B the score between X and Y is A to B
- 45.1. Jīntiān wǒ bǐ sān Lián-Dà yíng le.
- 45.2. Lián-Dà duì Yuǎn-Dà jǐ bǐ jǐ?
- 46.0. (74) fànguī break a rule, commit an error (IV) [lit. transgress cus-
tom]
- 46.1. Nèige yùndongyuán dǎ qiú lǎo fànguī.
- 46.2. Tā yīnwei fànguī shòu fá le.

- 47.0. (78) píng even (in a score), tied (SV)
 dǎpíng even (in a hitting game)
 pǎopíng even (in a running match)
 tīpíng even (in a kicking game)
- 47.1. Xiànzài jǐ bǐ jǐ? . . . Píng le.
 47.2. Bǎngqiú dǎdào zuì hòu, yǒude shíhou dǎpíng ma?
- 48.0. (82) lìqì strength (N) [lit. strength air]
 mài lìqì exert much effort [lit. sell strength]
- 48.1. Tāde lìqì kě zhēn dà. Yíge rén kéyǐ bǎ yíliàng dà qìchē tuīzǒu.
 48.2. Wǒ kàn tā duì wǒde shìqing bù zěnmò mài lìqì.
- 49.0. (82) jǐnzhāng nervous, tense, excited, exciting (person or situation) (SV)
- 49.1. Wǒ yì kǎoshì jiù jǐnzhāng.
 49.2. Zhèichāng qiú zhēn hǎo kàn. Dǎde duōmo jǐnzhāng a.
- 50.0. (84) fēn divide, separate, distinguish, share; be divided into (parts), be composed of, include (V)
 fēnchéng divide into
 fēngěi share with
 fēnchulai distinguish, tell [which is which] (RV)
- 50.1. Zhōngxué fēn gāozhōng chūzhōng.
 50.2. Nèige hǎo nèige huài wǒ fēnbuchūlái.
 50.3. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhè wúshí rén fēnchéng liǎngduì.
 50.4. Nǐ bié yíge rén chī a. Yě fēngěi wǒ diār chī a.
 50.5. Zuótian nèichāng zúqiú tīpíng. Bù fēn shū yíng.
- 51.0. (87) liánluo join, connect; be in contact with, be in communication with (V) [lit. join connect]
- 51.1. Wǒ gēn ta hěn jiǔ jiù méi liánluo le.
- 52.0. (91) dǎo turn upside down, fall over (IV)
 V dǎo V upside down, V over (TV)
- 52.1. Nǐ kàn nèige fángzi hěn wēixiǎn. Chàbuduō yào dǎo le.
 52.2. Nèikē shù ràng dà fēng gěi guādǎo le.
- 53.0. (91) chèn(zhe) avail oneself (of the circumstance that) (V)
- 53.1. Wǒmen yīngdāng chèn kèren hái méi lái, xiān shōushi shōushi wūzi.
 53.2. Wǒmen chènzhe Wáng Jiàoshòu zài zhèr qǐng ta gěi wǒmen shuō jǐjù huà.

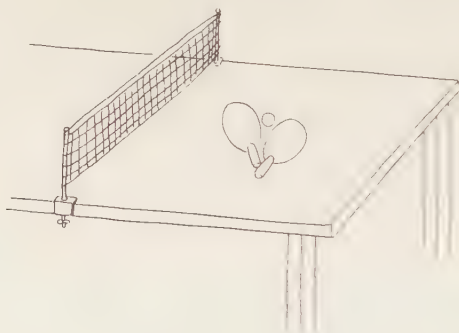
- 53.3. Wǒ chènzhe fàngjià de shíhou dǎsuan qu lǚxíng yíci.
- 54.0. (93) shǒu defend, guard, keep, watch over (TV)
 shǒu mén guard a door, defend a goal
 shǒu mén de gatekeeper, goalie
- 54.1. Tā bìngde hěn lihai. Zuótian wǎnshang wǒ shǒule tā yíyè.
- 54.2. Wǒmen jiā nèige shǒu mén de zài wǒmen jiā èrshi duō nián le.
- 55.0. (93) ruò weak, faint (SV)
- 55.1. Tā cóng bìngle yǐhòu hěn ruò.
- 56.0. (96) zhí worth (the time, money, effort) (SV)
 zhí A qián worth A amount of money
 zhíqián be valuable
 zhí(de) V worth V-ing
- 56.1. Nǐ kàn zhèizhī bǐ zhí bu zhí?
- 56.2. Wǒ kàn nèige qiú pāizi bù zhí wǔkuài qián.
- 56.3. Zuì jìn zhèrde fángzi hěn zhíqián.
- 56.4. Nèibù piānzi méi yìsi. Bù zhíde qù kàn.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Dàjiā dōu hěn zhòngshi nèijiàn shìqing.
2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ cǎidār yíxiàngyíxiàngde gěi wǒ niànchulai.
3. Tā hěn yǒu zīge dāng lǐshǐ jiàoshòu.
4. Zhōngguo huà gēn Rìběn huà yǒu hěn dàde fēnbie.
5. Zhèijiàn shìqing nǐ ke qiǎnwàn bié gàosu ta.
6. Wànyī chū guó de shǒuxu yàoshi bànbuhǎo, wǒ jiu zǒubuliǎo le.
7. Zǒu, wǒmen qu kàn sàipǎo de.
8. Nèijiàn shìqing wǒ ke méi bǎwo. Wǒ gēn tā shuō shìshi kàn.
9. Wǒ bù gǎn chī xiā. Yì chī jiu bìng le.
10. Suóyǒude rén dōu yōnghu ta.

11. Zhèizhāng zhǐ wǒ dōu xiěmǎn le.
12. Zhōngguó rén duōshù shì nóng rén.
13. Gōnggòng qìhēshàng rén dōu mǎn le. Wǒ cóng shàng chē yìzhí de zhàndào xià chē.
14. Tāmen liǎngge rén wǒ fēnbuchūlái shéi shì jiějie shéi shì mèimei.
15. Wǒ xiě xìn gēn ta liánluo.
16. Chènzhè fàngjià de shíhou děi xiǎng fázi zhuàn diār qián.
17. Nèige xī yǎnde hǎo. Bùjǐng yě bú cuò, zhíde kàn.
18. Wǒde zúmǔ duìyu ròulèide dōngxi bù zěnmó chī.
19. Tā yǒu shuō huà de tiāncái. Shéi yě shuōbuguò ta.
20. Yuánlái nǐ méi yùbei gōngke. Guàibude zuótian kǎoshì nǐ jǐnzhāng ne.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Zài Huá jiā chīwánle wǔfàn Xuéxīn yuē wǒ yíkuài qu kàn Yuǎn-Dà gēn Lián-Dà de zúqiú bǐsài. Wǒ xiǎode shíhou duì zúqiú hěn yǒu xìngqù. Kěshì mǔqīn bú ràng wǒ tī, pà wǒ shòu shāng. Nán guài wǒ mǔqīn bú ràng wǒ tī. Měiguó zúqiú zhèzhōng yùndòng, shì yìzhōng tài jīliède

5 yùndòng.

Yīhòu wǒ jiù dǎ wǎngqiú bàngqiú gēn sàipǎo. Wǒ niàn zhōngxué gēn dàxué de shíhou wǒ yě shì xuéxiào lǐtòude wǎngqiú gēn sàipǎo de xuánshǒu ne. Xuéxīn wèn wǒ pǎo yì Yīnglǐ yòng duōshǒu shíhou. Wǒ gàosu ta wǒ pǎo sīfēn líng jiǔmiǎo. Tā shuō wǒ pǎo de chéngji bú huài. Qíshí bǐ

10 shìjiè pǎo dì-yī de hái chàde hěn yuǎn. Shìjiè pǎo dì-yī de pǎo sānfēn wǔshiqīmiǎo zuǒyòu.

Xuéxīn shuō guò jǐtiān gēn wǒ dǎ wǎngqiú. Wǒ hái shì zhēn xīwang gēn tā dǎ yìchǎng, yīnwei wǒ jǐnián dōu méi dǎ le. Zài guòqu de jǐnián lǐtòu, dōu shì gēn yìxiē bú ài yùndòng zhuānmén niàn shū de péngyou zài

15 yíkuàr, suóyi méi jīhui wár qiú. Qíshí qīngnián rén duì tǐyù yīnggāi zhòngshì.

Xuéxīn shì yíwèi xīhuan yùndong de qīngnián. Tā duì tǐyù fēicháng yǒu xìngqū.

Wǒmen dào yùndongchǎng hěn zǎo. Sāndiǎn bǐsài, wǒmen liángdiǎn
20 bàn jiù dào le. Rén chàbuduō dōu mǎn le. Bú dào liǎngdiǎn sānkè de shíhou, quán yùndongchǎng jiù méi zuòr le, yǐhòu láide rén dōu děi zhànzhe kàn le.

Zhèige shíhou liǎng duìde duìyuán dōu chū chǎng le. Tāmende yùndong-yī zhēn piàoliang. Yuǎn-Dà shì hóngde, Lián-Dà shì lǜde.

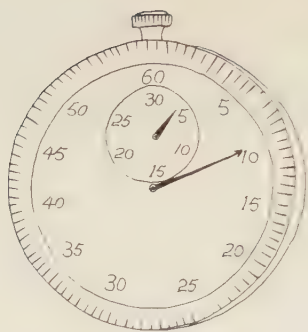
25 Guānzhòng chàbuduō dōu yōnghu Yuǎn-Dà. Dōu gěi Yuǎn-Dà zhùwēi. Zhè liǎngduì zài kāishǐ tīde shíhou bù fēn shū yíng. Yìzhíde tīdao zuì hòu hái shì yī bǐ yī. Zài zhèige shíhou Yuǎn-Dàde duìyuán yǒu xiē jǐnzhāng le. Tóngshí Lián-Dà yě bú ruò. Búdàn qiúchǎngshang tīde jǐnzhāng, lián wǒmen kànde yě jǐnzhāngqilai le. Yīnwei gēn Yuǎn-Dà yǒu
30 guānxi, xīn lǐtou yěshi pà Yuǎn-Dà shū. Jù Xuéxīn shuō hěn wēixiǎn, zhèichǎng qiú hěn yǒu shū de kěnéng, yīnwei Yuǎn-Dà yǒu yíge zuì hǎode xuánshǒu liànxi qiú shòu shāng le, méi shàng chǎng. Kěshi zuì hòu tā chū chǎng le.

Xuéxīn gàosu wǒ Yuǎn-Dà nèi liǎngge duìyuándè wàihào. Yíge jiào
35 Xiǎo Láohu, yíge jiào Tiě Tóu. Xiǎo Láohu zhèige míngzide yìsi dāngrán shì shuō tā yǒu láohu nènmo xīngmǐng. Tiě Tóu yídìng shì shuō tāde tóu xiàng tiě zuò de nènmo jiěshi le.

Yuǎn-Dàde zúqiú duì xiànglái shì yǒu míng de. Kàn zhèichǎng qiú suǐrán yòngle liǎngge zhōngtóude shíhou, zhēn zhíde.

Wèntí

1. Bái Wénshān gēn Xuéxīn shuō tīngshuō Yuǎn-Dà zuì jìn zěnmò le?
2. Xuéxīn shuō cānjiā quán guó yùndong huì nǎrde xuánshǒu zuì duō?
3. Xuéxīn shuō qùnian Quán Guó Yùndong Huì Yuǎn-Dà dédao shénmò le?
4. Xuéxīn shuō Yuǎn-Dàde zúqiú duì kéyì zuò shénmò?
5. Bái Wénshān shuō tā zhīdao Yuǎn-Dàde zúqiú cháng gēn biéde xuéxiào bǐsài, bù zhīdào biéde qiú bǐsàiguó méi you. Xuéxīn zěnmò shuō?
6. Xuéxīn shuō Měiguó de zúqiú shì yìzhǒng shénmò xìngzhīde yùndong? Nǐ rènwei zěnmoyàng ne? Tā shuōde duì ma?



7. Wénshān xiǎode shíhou xīhuan tī zúqiú. Tā mǔqinde yìsi zěnmoyàng?
8. Wénshān zài xuéxiào ta xīhuan shénmo yùndong?
9. Wénshān pǎo yì Yīnglǐ yào duōshao shíhou?
10. Wénshānde wǎngqiú pāizi zài nǎr ne?
11. Xuéxīn shuō gēn Bái Wénshān dǎ wǎngqiú, Wénshān shuō kǒngpà tā zěnmole?
12. Lián-Dà gēn Yuǎn-Dà zúqiú duìde yùndong-yī dōu shì shénmo yánse de?
13. Xuéxīn shuō wèi shénmo Wáng Wénhuá wàihào jiào Xiǎo Láohur ne?
14. Wénshān shuō guānzhòng duì Yuǎn-Dà zěnmoyàng?
15. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Xiǎo Láohur gēn Tiě Tóu zěnmoyàng liánluo?
16. Zhèichǎng zúqiú shéi shū le shéi yíng le?
17. Yàoshi yǒu péngyou wèn nǐ shuō "Nǐ duì gèzhǒng yùndong dōu néng ba?" nǐ zěnmohuǐdá?
18. Yàoshi nǐde xīn péngyou ta néng dǎ qiú nǐ shuō shénmo?
19. Yàoshi péngyou gàoosu nǐ tā sàipǎo yòng duōshao shíhou nǐ shuō shénmo?
20. Yàoshi yíge péngyou tā huì dǎ wǎngqiú nǐ shuō shénmo?
21. Yàoshi yíge péngyou shuō xiǎng péi nǐ dǎ qiú nǐ shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi nǐ gēn péngyou shuō nǐ xiǎng péi ta dǎ qiú, tā shuō tā bú shì nǐde duìshǒu, nǐ shuō shénmo?
23. Yàoshi nǐ zài qiúchǎng gěi qiúduì zhùwēi nǐ yòng shénmo huà?
24. Yàoshi péngyou gēn nǐ shuō tā néng sàipǎo nǐ shuō shénmo ne?
25. Yàoshi nǐ yuē péngyou dǎ wǎngqiú, ta méi yǒu wǎngqiú pāizi, nǐ yīnggāi zuò shénmo?
26. Yàoshi nǐ kàn sàiqiú qu duìyuánmende yùndong-yī hěn piàoliang, nǐ gēn péngyou shuō shénmo?
27. Yàoshi nǐ kàn qiú kànwán le nǐ rènwéi hěn mǎnyì nǐ shuō shénmo?
28. Yàoshi péngyou wèn nǐ nǐde xuéxiào yǒu jǐzhǒng yùndong nǐ zěnmohuǐdá?

29. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Měiguó shìde zúqiú gēn Yīngguó shìde zúqiú dōu yǒu jǐge duìyuán? Nǐ zhīdao lánqiú, bàngqiú, wǎngqiú dǎ de shíhou dōu xūyào jǐge rén?
30. Shénmo qiú yòng bàngzi dǎ? Pāizi ne?

Dialogue: Hua Xuexin and Vincent White talk in the stadium.

White: The stadium is really pretty big.

Xue : It was finished just last year. It can hold over 50,000 people.

White: I hear Far Eastern has been paying a lot of attention to physical culture recently.

Xue : You're right. Far Eastern has the most stars participating in the All-China Athletic Meets. At last year's [All-China Athletic] Meet, Far Eastern got eight firsts.

White: Not bad!

Xue : The soccer team in particular can qualify to participate in the Olympics.

White: I know Far Eastern often competes with other schools in soccer. Does it [often] compete in other kinds of ball (games)?

Xue : [Apart from soccer,] it often competes [with other schools] in basketball, tennis, and ping-pong.

White: I suppose you're good in all kinds of sports?

Xue : I know something about them all, but I like soccer and basketball best. I understand American-style football is different from the Chinese way of playing.

White: There's quite a difference.

Xue : The papers carry frequent news of injuries to players in American football. American-style football [one can say] is too rough a sport.

White: When I was younger I used to like football a lot. Mother didn't approve and said I absolutely mustn't play football, fearing I might suffer a serious injury [lit. if by one chance in 10,000 suffered a serious injury how manage?] Sometimes I went and played just the same, though.

Xue : What kind of sports do you like?

White: I like running and tennis best of all.

Xue : What distance did you run? [lit. Did you run long distance or short distance?]

White: I ran the mile.

Xue : What did you do it in?

White: I ran it in 4:09.

Xue : Not bad [a record].

White: I ran [lit. participated in running competitions] when I was [studying] in both high school and college.

Xue : I also play tennis sometimes. Let's [the two of us] play some day.

White: Fine. I haven't played for a long time. I have an excellent tennis racket in my baggage. It'll be a few weeks before it arrives.

Xue : I have (some rackets). I'll lend you (one).

White: I'm afraid I'm no match for you. I can't beat you.

Xue : I don't play at all well. I'll play with you for the fun of it. It doesn't matter who wins and who loses.

White: Which team is better, Far Eastern or Associated University? [lit. Far Eastern and Associated University which team plays better?]

Xue : Far Eastern [plays better] of course. In the Far Eastern team there are two crack players [lit. team members who play best]. One is (called) Wang Wenhua. His nickname is Little Tiger. (The other) one is [called] Zhang Dongsheng. His nickname is Iron Head. A few days ago Little Tiger was injured while practicing [ball]. I don't know if he'll be able to play [lit. come out onto the field] today.

White: Then there's no certainty of their winning?

Xue : (There's) danger (of their not winning). There's no saying [lit. don't dare say who'll lose and] who'll win.

White: The [team] uniforms are pretty sharp.

Xue : Far Eastern is red [athletic clothes], and Associated is green [athletic clothes]. They both have gray shorts.

White: The Far Eastern players aren't very tall [in size]. Who's the captain?

Xue : Little Tiger.

White: Why is he called Little Tiger?

Xue : [Speaking of that, it's very interesting.] When I was a senior in Far Eastern, Little Tiger had just entered the university. He was quite young and short in stature, ran like a streak, and played ferociously, so everyone called him Little Tiger.

White: Just hear how the whole stadium is cheering Far Eastern. The crowd is giving it a lot of support.

Xue : The majority of the spectators are connected with Far Eastern.

White: No wonder they're all cheering for it.

Xue : [You see that] the seats are all filled [with people]. A lot of people don't have seats. They're [watching] standing up.

White: Yeah. It's lucky that we came early.

Xue : They're going to start now. Come on, Far Eastern! . . .

White: Far Eastern is playing better.

Xue : Associated isn't playing badly either.

White: Far Eastern is playing better, though.

Xue : Come on, Zhang!

White: Look, Far Eastern has kicked one in.

Xue : That makes it 1-0.

White: Associated's captain is playing awfully well.

Xue : He's just about as good as Zhang.

White: Yeah. He's not bad.

Xue : Darn. Far Eastern has fouled.

White: That gives the others a chance.

Xue : Far Eastern is way off its game today.

White: Darn! Associated has kicked one in.

Xue : That makes it a tie—1-1. [Dangerous, dangerous.]

White: Who do you think will win [and who lose] now?

Xue : I daren't say. Little Tiger isn't in the game.

White: It makes a big difference not having the best star.

Xue : It's very tense now. Both teams are pouring it on so. You can't tell which is better [lit. who's good who's bad].

White: It'll soon be over. There's no winner yet. [lit. Still hasn't distinguished who loses who wins.]

Xue : Little Tiger's come into the game! There's hope.

White: There's no longer any question. It's Far Eastern for sure.

Xue : Look at how well meshed Little Tiger and Zhang are.

White: (They) really (are).

Xue : Come on, Little Tiger!

White: Come on, Iron Head!

Xue : Associated's No. 5 is down. Little Tiger is right there [lit. has seized the chance] and has booted the ball to Zhang.

White: That Associated goalie is no slouch.

Xue : Look at Little Tiger sprint ahead of Iron Head. Hey! He's kicked it in! Far Eastern's won!

White: This game today was sure worth seeing.

Xue, White: Siss boom bah,

Siss boom bah,

Far Eastern, Far Eastern,

Rah, rah, rah!

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. Our school sets great store by students studying foreign languages.
- 1.2. He's paying close attention to what happened yesterday.
- 2.1. My younger brother is studying physical culture.
- 2.2. There's a soccer game at the China Stadium today.
- 2.3. The men's dorm is very close to the gym.
- 3.1. He's really a good hand at doing things.
- 3.2. Our school has fifteen stars participating in this athletic meet.
- 3.3. Miss Wang is no match for Miss Zhang in swimming.
- 4.1. What [item of] sport are you taking part in?
- 4.2. Please write out that matter item by item.
- 5.1. Our school won the championship in yesterday's All-State Football Contest.
- 5.2. Miss Wang got first prize in skating.
- 6.1. You take that detachment of troops and go ahead.
- 6.2. Our school has recently organized a band.
- 6.3. His older brother is a member of that football team.
- 7.1. His standing as an actor goes far back [lit. is quite old]. He's acted for over twenty years.
- 7.2. He is quite well qualified to be our teacher.
- 8.1. When I was studying in middle school I liked playing ball games best of all.
- 8.2. There certainly are a lot of people at the ball field today.
- 8.3. The goal posts are broken. We must find someone to fix them.
- 8.4. This school's ball team is quite famous.
- 9.1. What kind of movies do you like [to see]?
- 9.2. Atomic energy should be used in [this aspect of] benefiting mankind
- 10.1. Yesterday Mrs. Wang sent me a basket of fruit.
- 10.2. Do you like to play basketball?
- 11.1. I like to play tennis very much. How about you?
- 11.2. That tennis net is new. [lit. That net for playing tennis is newly bought.]
- 12.1. Americans don't have such a high regard for ping-pong.
- 12.2. Listen, what's making that banging noise outside?
- 13.1. That youngster is always playing ball instead of studying.
- 14.1. How do we tell which of these two things is yours and which is mine?

- 14.2. In my opinion there isn't much difference between those two pens.
- 14.3. Can you make out which of the two men is the older brother and which is the younger brother?
- 15.1. The war was very fiercely fought.
- 16.1. In crossing the road you must be sure to watch out for cars.
- 16.2. By all means don't forget that matter.
- 17.1. I think I'm coming [for sure]. If by any chance I don't come I'll call and tell you.
- 18.1. Let's [the two of us] have a race to see who walks faster.
- 18.2. What ball games does your school compete in?
- 18.3. Do you like to watch foot races?
- 19.1. Country people still wash clothes by beating (them).
- 19.2. Our family has three acres of land, all planted in corn.
- 19.3. The favorite sport of Americans is [playing] baseball.
- 20.1. That youngster is both bright and hard-working. He'll certainly have a future [hereafter].
- 20.2. Yesterday I drove to New York. I got halfway and [then and only then] discovered I was out of gas.
- 20.3. It's cheaper to make long-distance telephone calls in the evening.
- 21.1. His older brother was born in 1909.
- 21.2. This book isn't \$3.20, it's \$3.02.
- 21.3. The plane takes off at 5:08.
- 21.4. That city [originally] had only 1005 persons. Now it has increased to 3050.
- 22.1. (The game) will soon be over. There are only eight seconds left.
- 23.1. My tennis racket is of British make.
- 24.1. I think the sophomores [lit. first year of upper middle school] can't possibly beat the freshmen [lit. third year of lower middle school] in today's basketball game.
- 24.2. She types faster than I do. I can't beat her.
- 25.1. Nobody won that ball game yesterday [lit. That game yesterday didn't win didn't lose].
- 25.2. He's always losing money at the race track.
- 26.1. That nickname of his is pretty odd. Who gave it to him?
- 27.1. How come Little Wang hasn't come into the game [lit. into the field in this game]?
- 27.2. Two of the best members of the team haven't come into the game today.

- 27.3. I often go to the courts at their school to play tennis.
- 28.1. I feel rather confident about this exam.
- 28.2. I have no assurance, however, as to whether this matter can be managed successfully or not.
- 29.1. He's very seriously ill. It's pretty critical.
- 30.1. I don't dare say how many years this typewriter can be used.
- 31.1. Do the students here at school have to wear uniforms?
- 32.1. Our athletic uniforms are blue [clothes] with black letters.
- 33.1. In summer the police wear green uniforms.
- 34.1. The gray hat is mine.
- 35.1. Where did you buy these trousers? I'd like to buy a pair too.
- 35.2. In summer the weather is very hot. Almost everyone wears shorts.
- 36.1. Tigers and lions are equally fierce.
- 37.1. That actor was warmly welcomed by the crowd.
- 38.1. We all gave three cheers for the captain of the team.
- 39.1. All the students are supporting President Wang.
- 40.1. The vast majority of people are opposed to his suggestion.
- 41.1. That stand can accommodate 300-odd people.
- 42.1. The auditorium is already full [of people].
- 42.2. That area is full of stores. There are no residences.
- 42.3. In the fall the wind blows and the ground is covered with leaves from the trees.
- 42.4. His study is piled full of books.
- 43.1. Yesterday I stood for a long time waiting for a bus, but none came.
- 43.2. Stand up and let that old lady sit down.
- 44.1. Two plus three is five.
- 44.2. This soup isn't salty enough. Add a little more salt.
- 44.3. Does your car need [to add] gas?
- 44.4. We're about to have exams. I must put on some steam and work hard.
- 44.5. Come on, Vincent!
- 45.1. Associated University won today by a score of five to three.
- 45.2. What's the score between Associated and Far Eastern Universities?
- 46.1. That player is always breaking the rules [in playing ball].
- 46.2. He was penalized for breaking the rules.
- 47.1. What's the score now? . . . It's tied.

- 47.2. Do baseball games sometimes end in a tie?
- 48.1. He sure has a lot of strength [though]. He can push a big car by himself.
- 48.2. I think he doesn't put [so] much effort into my business.
- 49.1. As soon as I take a test I get tense.
- 49.2. This ball game is a beaut [lit. really good to see]. It's [played so that it's] so exciting.
- 50.1. Middle school is divided into upper middle school and lower middle school.
- 50.2. I can't tell which is good and which is bad.
- 50.3. Please divide these fifty people into two groups.
- 50.4. Don't eat it all by yourself. [Divide and] give me a little to eat too.
- 50.5. Yesterday the football game was played to a draw. [There was no dividing into losing and winning.]
- 51.1. I haven't had any connection with him for quite a long time.
- 52.1. Look at how dangerous that house is. It's [almost] about to topple over.
- 52.2. That tree was blown over by a big wind.
- 53.1. We should take advantage of the fact that the guests haven't arrived yet and put the room in order [first].
- 53.2. We're availing ourselves of Professor Wang's being here to ask him to give us a few words.
- 53.3. I plan to take advantage of vacation time to take a trip.
- 54.1. He was seriously ill. Yesterday evening I watched over him the whole night.
- 54.2. That gatekeeper [at our home] has been at our home for over twenty years.
- 55.1. He's been quite weak since he took sick.
- 56.1. Do you think this pen is worth (the money)?
- 56.2. I don't think that racket is worth five dollars.
- 56.3. Homes here have recently become quite valuable.
- 56.4. That movie is uninteresting. It's not worth going to see.

Review Sentences

1. Everyone is placing a great deal of emphasis on that matter.
2. Please read the menu for me item by item.
3. He has ample [lit. very much has] qualifications to be a history professor.
4. There are great differences between Chinese and Japanese.

5. Don't you by any means tell him about this matter.
6. If by any chance I can't meet the requirements [lit. can't manage the procedures] for going abroad, I won't be able to leave.
7. Let's go. We're going to see a race.
8. I can't guarantee that matter, though. I'll talk to him and see.
9. I don't dare eat shrimp. As soon as I eat it I get sick.
10. Everyone supports him.
11. I've filled [lit. written full] this sheet of paper.
12. The majority of Chinese are farmers.
13. The bus was full [of people]. I had to stand all the way [lit. straight] from (the time I) got on the bus to (when I) got off [the bus].
14. [Of those people] I can't tell which is the older sister and which is the younger sister.
15. I'm in touch with him by letter.
16. I have to think of a way to earn some money during vacation [lit. taking advantage of the time of vacation].
17. That play is well acted, and the scenery is quite good. It's worth seeing.
18. My grandmother doesn't eat much meat [lit. things of the meat category].
19. He has a talent for speaking. Nobody can outtalk him.
20. You didn't [originally] prepare your lessons. No wonder you tensed up on the exam yesterday.

Notes

1. Chinese menus list food by lèi 'categories': tānglèi 'soups,' diǎnxīnlèi 'desserts,' and so on.
2. The syllables bīngbāng represent the loanword 'ping-pong,' and also a banging sound. In the latter usage, the word occurs most often in the reduplicated form bīngbīngbāngbāng. The game of ping-pong or table tennis, which in the United States is hardly considered even a secondary sport, ranks high among the competitive sports in China. The Chinese have produced some of the world's best players.
3. Líng 'zero' is used in the following ways:
 - (a) In numbers in telephone style, like any other digit:
yī jiǔ líng yī 'one nine zero one'
 - (b) In dollar-and-cent expressions, before the expression for cents (but only for amounts of less than ten):
wǔkuài líng èr '\$5.02'

- (c) In time expressions, optionally before the minute expression (if it is under ten):

yìdiǎn (líng) yīfēn '1:01'

- (d) In numbers having a zero (e.g. 103, 1003, 10,003), between the first and last units:

yìbǎi líng sān '103'

yìqiān líng sān '1003'

yíwàn líng sān '10,003'

4. The expression jiā yóu(r), literally 'add oil,' is used colloquially in the same way as the English expressions 'put on steam,' 'step on the gas,' 'step on it.' It is a common exhortation to athletes, equivalent to English 'Come on, [So-and-so]!'

Dì Shíbākè. Wēnxi

Lesson Contents,

A. Substitution Frames

- I. Nǐ wèi shénmo . . . ? (pp. 372-374)
- II. Tā zài nǎr . . . ? (p. 374)
- III. Tāde . . . zài nǎr? (pp. 374-375)
- IV. . . . duōshao qián? (pp. 375-376)
- B. Exercise in Tonal Distinctions (p. 376)
- C. Exercise in Homonyms (pp. 376-377)
- D. Exercise in Extended Meanings (pp. 377-378)
- E. Narratives and Dialogues (pp. 378-381)

A. Substitution Frames

(See Lessons 6 and 12 on techniques for using these exercises.)

I. Nǐ wèi shénmo . . . ?

- | | | |
|------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (13) | 1. jiào mén | 11 bú shìshí kàn |
| | 2. bǎ mén guānshang | 12 nǎ chōu yān zuò xiāoqiǎn |
| | 3. bù xǐhuan zhèngfáng | 13 bú qù zuò shìyàn |
| | 4. tiāntiān méi kòngr | 14 fēi pū dìbǎn bu kě |
| | 5. bù mǎi láihuí piào | 15 bù xǐhuan zhòng dì |
| | 6. tiāntiān shuō ta | 16 sòng ta dào huǒchēzhàn |
| | 7. gēn ta shēng qì | 17 bú qù gēi ta dào xǐ |
| | 8. bù xǐhuan Déwén | 18 bú zhù dōng xiāngfáng |
| | 9. pà láoshu | 19 zhèng nián méi zuò shì |
| | 10. xǐhuan féi mǎo | |
| (14) | 1. pèifu ta | 6 bǎ gǒu gěi shā le |
| | 2. bù duō dāi yìhuěr | 7 duì tā liwài |
| | 3. bǎ chuānghu kāikai | 8 bú huàn yīshang |
| | 4. dào Wáng zhái qu | 9 mǎile nèi jǐmǔ dì |
| | 5. méi shuō shòu shāng le | 10 miánqiǎng ta |

11. bù qǔ xífer

12. yào lā chē

13. kànbuqǐ ta

14. bù xǐhuan dāng bīng

15. bú zhèng diār qián

(15) 1. nènmo kuājiǎng ta

2. bù gēn tā hézuò

3. shuō ta shì wàirén

4. shuō tāmen tóngsuì

5. cānguān xuéxiào

6. zuòzai cǎodìshang

7. bù jīngguo Ménggu

8. shuō ta shì Huáqiáo

9. nènmo xǐhuan shāmo dìdài

10. bú zuò Xībóliǎ tiělùde
huǒchē

11. xiǎng dào Sūlián qu

12. bù gěi zhèngfǔ zuò shì

13. bǎ móxíng ènhuài le

14. xiǎng lǚxíng Xīnjiāng

15. měi lǐbàitiān yě nènmo máng

16. shuō ta shì Jiāngxi rén

17. xǐhuan Dōngfāng wénhuà

18. bu xǐhuan dào Yǎzhōu qu

19. shuō pēnshuǐchí lǐtou méi shuǐ
le

20. nènmo xǐhuan Xīfāng wénhuà

(16) 1. zhǎo xiūchēchǎng

2. xiàohua ta

3. xǐài gǔdài shǐ

4. dōngjì bú niàn shū

5. méi dé jiǎng

6. zhù shān dòng

7. shuō yuànzǎng méi xuéwen

8. bú niàn Běi-Dà

9. dào páomáchǎng qu

10. tuībukāi mén

11. tíqián xià kè yīkè zhōng

12. shuō tā gòubushàng shǐxuéjiā

13. xuǎnle nètào yīfu

14. méi gēn ta jiēqiàhǎo le

15. shuō ta méi duō dà běnshi

16. nènmo xǐhuan zhōnggǔ jiànzhū

17. bú zài Liánhé Guó zuò shì

18. bǎ jiǎngxuéjīn dōu huā le

19. duì Hàn Cháo wénhuà méi xìngqu

20. bù gěi jǐjīn huì xiě xìn

(17) 1. nènmo jǐnzhāng

2. bú chènzhe zhèige jīhui qù

3. yào jiè wǒde zhífú

4. shuō ta bú gòu zīge

5. zhòngshi nèijiàn shìqing

6. bú jiègei ta nǐde pāizi

7. bù xǐhuan wár qiú

8. nènmo mài lìqi

9. zhànzai nèr

10. bú shàng chǎng

11. bù gǎn shuō

12. shuō wǒde yùndong-yī bù zhíqián

13. duì tǐyù méi xìngqu

14. shuō méi bǎwo kǎo dì-yī

15. gěi ta zhùwēi sāncì

16. shuō tāmen méi fēnbié

17. yì dǎ qiú jiù fànguī

18. bǎ shū fēnchéng liǎngduī

19. shuō qiānwàn bié mǎi

20. bù gěi ta qǐ wàihào

21. bú shì tāde duìshǒu

23. pǎodào zhōngtú jiù bù pǎo le

22. yōnghu tā zuò xiàozhǎng

24. dǎ nèige shǒu mén de

II. Tā zài nǎr . . . ?

(13) 1. qí mǎ

4. duī dōngxì

2. zhòng huār

5. pū chuáng

3. zào fángzi

6. mǎide zhèiliàng chē

(14) 1. mǎi chènshān

5. dǎguo zhàng

2. guà yīshang

6. ràng rén gěi shā le

3. zuò gōng

7. yǒu jímǔ dì

4. shòu shāng le

8. qǔ de tài tai

(15) 1. liúguo xué

5. zhù gōngyù

2. xiǎng gài tíngzi

6. xiūli gōnglù

3. jiànguó shāmò

7. mǎide yīfu cáiliaor

4. chīguànlè Zhōngguo fàn

(16) 1. zhǎo lùnwén zīliào

5. kànjianguo zúqiú bǐsài

2. bǐsài dǎ zì

6. yánjiu fāngyán

3. chénglì xuéxiào

7. rù xué

4. fāxiàn zhèijiàn shì

(17) 1. zuò lánqiú jiàoshī

6. gěi qiúduì zhùwēi

2. mǎide zhèitiáo kùzi

7. chīguo bàngzi miàn

3. tī qiú

8. dāng shǒu mén de

4. gēn nǚ dǎ wǎngqiú

9. shūle nènmo duō qián

5. dǎguo bàngqiú

III. Tāde . . . zài nǎr?

(13) 1. mǎ

4. zìxíngchē

2. xiǎo māor

5. shàoye

3. jìngzi

6. wòfáng

(14) 1. shǒujuànr

4. xífer

2. wàzi

5. nǚxu

3. zhàngfu

6. zhǔrén

- (15) 1. Ēwén shū
2. Ōuzhou dìtú
3. Fàguo péngyou
4. tóngxué
5. gōngyù móxíng
6. Yīng-Měng zìdiǎn
7. huāyuár
- (16) 1. shànggǔ lìshǐ shū
2. jiāopí lúnzi
3. qí mǎ jiàoshī
4. méiqì zào
5. fāngyán zìdiǎn
- (17) 1. zhífú
2. yùndong-yī
3. wǎngqiú pāizi
4. shuǐguǒ lánzi
5. kùzi
6. lǚ chènshān
7. huī yīfu

IV. . . . duōshao qián?

- (13) 1. yībàng niú ròu
2. nǐde mǎ
3. wòfángde jiāju
4. yòng zhuān pū dì
5. xiǎo jìngzi
6. yíliàng zìxíngchē
7. láihuí piào
8. nín shàoyede nètào yīfu
9. jiànzhū yìsuǒr xiǎo fángzi
10. yìzhī mǎo
- (14) 1. yíjiàn chènshān
2. yìshuāng wàzi
3. nètào yīshang
4. yìtiáo shǒujuār
5. cā wǒmen suóyǒude chuānghu
6. lián zhuōzi dài yǐzi
7. yǎnghuo érnǚ yìnián
8. yíliàng sānlúnchē
9. zhǔrénde qìchē
10. xiāngdāng hǎode biǎo
- (15) 1. gài fángzi de cáiliaor
2. xiūli wūdǐng
3. zhèběn Hàn-Zàng zìdiǎn
4. xiū yǐlǐ gōnglǚ
5. cānjiā Yǎzhou Xuéhuì
6. bǐjiǎo jiēshide zhuōzi
7. tiě zuò de yǐzi
8. zào zhèige tíngzi
9. nǐde nèiběn Fàwén shū
10. yíge lǐbàide yīyào-fèi
- (16) 1. cǒng zhèr dào Niǔyue de lǚfèi
2. méiqì zào
3. jiāopí lúnzi
4. kàn zúqiú bǐsài
5. sīlì dàxué xuéfèi
6. guólì dàxué xuéfèi

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 7. zhèiběn gǔdài lìshǐ shū | 9. Wáng Xiàozhǎngde xīn qìchē |
| 8. nǚ dédàode jiǎngxuéjīn | |
-
- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| (17) 1. yítào zhǐfú | 6. xiūli qiúmén |
| 2. yìtiáo duǎnkù | 7. bīngbāngqiúde pāizi |
| 3. yībàng bàngzi miàn | 8. wǎngqiúde wǎngzi |
| 4. yíge bàngqiú bàngzi | 9. duìyuándè zhǐfú yítào |
| 5. nǐde yùndong-yī | 10. qiúduìde zhǐfú yígòng |

B. Exercise in Tonal Distinctions

Only pairs belonging to the same part of speech are given below. Numbers in parentheses indicate the lesson in which the term first occurred. BC refers to Beginning Chinese. Make up sentences illustrating the use of each item.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. qí (13), qī (4) | 10. dēng (14), děng (BC) |
| 2. yuànzi (13), yuánzǐ (5) | 11. lā (14), là (1) |
| 3. huār (13), huàr (BC) | 12. tī (17), tí (BC) |
| 4. guān (13), guǎn (5) | 13. pāizi (17), páizi (7) |
| 5. liú (13), liū (7) | 14. mǎn (17), màn (BC) |
| 6. xiǎng (13), xiàng (BC) | 15. dǎo (17), dào (BC) |
| 7. mǎ (13), mā (BC) | 16. shǒu (17), shòu (5) |
| 8. qǔ (14), qù (BC) | 17. zhí (17), zhì (5) |
| 9. dāi (14), dài (11) | |

C. Exercise in Homonyms

Make up sentences illustrating the use of each item in each of its meanings.

- | | | | |
|----------|------------------|----------|---------------------------------|
| 1. xiǎng | (a) resound (13) | 6. zhī | (a) of (13) |
| | (b) think (BC) | | (b) (measure for pens) (BC) |
| 2. méi | (a) coal (13) | 7. zhuān | (a) brick (13) |
| | (b) not (BC) | | (b) special (7) |
| 3. zào | (a) stove (13) | 8. dì | (a) ground (13) |
| | (b) build (13) | | (b) (ordinalizing prefix) (BC) |
| 4. gē | (a) put (13) | 9. liàng | (a) (measure for vehicles) (13) |
| | (b) song (11) | | (b) bright (5) |
| 5. huā | (a) flower (13) | | |
| | (b) spend (11) | | |

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------------------|-----------|-------------------|
| 10. bīng | (a) soldier (14) | 16. bù | (a) step (16) |
| | (b) ice (7) | | (b) section (10) |
| 11. dēng | (a) step on (14) | 17. bǐ | (a) fund (16) |
| | (b) lamp (11) | | (b) compare (BC) |
| 12. hébì | (a) side by side (15) | | (c) pen (BC) |
| | (b) why must? (4) | 18. xiàng | (a) item (17) |
| 13. hé | (a) together (15) | | (b) resemble (BC) |
| | (b) river (14) | 19. duì | (a) group (17) |
| | (c) unit (13) | | (b) toward (BC) |
| 14. qiáo | (a) bridge (15) | | (c) correct (BC) |
| | (b) look (2) | 20. jiā | (a) add (17) |
| 15. gāng | (a) steel (15) | | (b) home (BC) |
| | (b) just now (BC) | 21. shū | (a) lose (17) |
| | | | (b) comb (9) |
| | | | (c) book (BC) |

D. Exercise in Extended Meanings

This exercise lists a number of verbs each with two different objects. The change of object involves a semantic shift which is reflected in a change in the English translation of the verb:

chī Zhōngguó fàn 'eat Chinese food'

chī Zhōngguó fànguǎr 'eat in a Chinese restaurant'

Compose sentences illustrating the use of each verb plus each object.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|--------|
| 13. (a) jiào | mén | (d) zhòng | huār |
| | rén | | dì |
| (b) shuō | huà | (e) shēng | qì |
| | ta | | háizi |
| (c) pū | chuáng | (f) sòng | nǐ |
| | zhuān | | shū |
| 14. (a) bāng | nǐ | (c) cā | xié |
| | gōng | | zhuōzi |
| (b) dēng | sanlúnchē | | |
| | yǐzi | | |

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|-------|
| 15. (a) liú | Měi | 17. (a) dǎ | qiú |
| | ta | | zì |
| | | | pí |
| 16. (a) nóng | dòng | (b) chū | chǎng |
| | xíngli | | guó |
| (b) niàn | Qīnghuá | (c) shàng | chǎng |
| | jìndài-shǐ | | kè |
| | | (d) jiā | yán |
| | | | yóu |

E. Narratives and Dialogues

I

Zuótian wǒ mǎile yìxiē shuǐguǒ, cóng Zhōngshān Lù huí jiā. Zài gōnggòng qìchēzhàn děng chē. Dēngle yǒu bàngē duō zhōngtóu. Yīnwei děng chē de rén tài duō le, yě méi néng shàngqu. Zhèige shíhou duōbār shì xuésheng huí jiā. Méi fázi. Ránhòu yòu dào diànchēzhàn qu děng

5 chē. Rén háishi hěn duō. Zhēn qìsi wǒ le. Nǐ qiáo wǒ dīlouzhe yì lánzi shuǐguǒ. Nǐ shuō gāi duómo zhòng a. Xìng'er wǒ yùjian Lǎo Wáng le. Ta kāizhe chē cóng zhèr zǒu, kànjian wǒ le. Lǎo Wáng shuō: "Lái, wǒ sòng nǐ huíqu." Tā jiù bǎ wǒ sònghuí jiā qu le. Fǒuzéde huà bù zhīdao yào děng duōshuo shíhou ne.

II

Wǒde péngyou Zhāng Xiānsheng suírán tā bú shì ge gōngchéngshī kěshi ta hěn huì shèjì gài fángzi. Tāde fángzi wàibiǎo shì Xī shìde, lǐtōu dà bùfēnde jiāju shì Zhōng shìde. Bùzhīde fēicháng piàoliang. Suóyǒude mén quánbù shì zìdòng de. Xízǎofáng gēn cèsuǒ dōu shì zuì

5 xīn shìde. Nèige fángzi qiánhòu dōu yǒu kòng dì, shì wèile kōngqì hǎo.

III

Wǒ shēngzai Zhōngguode běibù. Xiànglái dōu zhùzai běifāng, suóyi nán fāngde shēnghuó xíguàn wǒ yìdiǎr yě bù xǐhuan. (Huàn ju huà shuō jiù shì wǒ wánquán bù xǐhuan nánfāngde shēnghuó xíguàn.) Kěshi méi fázi. Kàngzhàn fāshēngle yǐhòu—jiù shì gēn Riběn dǎ zhàng de shíhou—

5 chàbudoō rénmen dōu wǎng Zhōngguode xīnánbù Sìchuān pǎo. Wǒmen zài Sìchuān kǔde bùdéliǎo. Zhède fángzi hěn huài, érqǐè nèige dìfang hěn zāng, láoshu hěn duō, kōngqì yòu cháoshī. Kěshi méi fázi. Yàoshi bù zǒu wànyī ràng díren gěi dásì le nǐ shuō zěnmó bàn?

Nèige shíhou yīnwei láoshu tài duō suóyì jiā litou yǎngle yìzhī xiǎo
10 mǎo. Zhèizhī mǎo zhēn hǎo kàn. Tāde máo shì huīde, yǎnjīng hěn dà. Nǐ yí jiào mī mī ta jiù gēn nǐ yào chīde. Bù jiǔ ta hūrán bìng le. Zhǎo dàifu kàn yě méi kànhǎo. Méi jǐtiān jiù sǐle. Wǒmen dàjiā dōu hěn nánguò.

IV

Zuótian wǒ qù kàn sàiqiú de qū le. Shì yìchǎng zúqiú bǐsài. Zhèi liǎngduìde xuánshǒu dōu shì tīde zuì hǎo de. Érqǐè yǒu yíduì shì shàngcǐ Quán Guó Yùndong Huīde zúqiú guànjūn. Suóyì zhèichǎng qiú zài qián yíge xīngqī piào jiù dōu màiguāng le. Wǒ dào le qiúchǎng hái chà bànge
5 zhōngtóu cái kāishǐ bǐsài ne. Kěshi rén jiù dōu zuòmǎn le. Kàntáishang hái yǒu bù shǎode rén zhànzhe.

Méi yǒu duó jiǔ liǎngduìde duìyuán dōu chū chǎng le. Zài kāishǐ bǐsàide shíhou tīde bù zěnmó jǐnzhāng. Bǐsàile yìhuěr kāishǐ shì líng bǐ líng. Bù fēn shū yíng. Hòulái yī bǐ líng le. Zhèige shíhou qiúyuánmen dōu
10 hěn mài lìqì tīde xiāngdāng xiōngměng. Kàntáishang de guānzhòng ye jǐnzhāng qīlai le. Zuì hòu háishi píng le—yī bǐ yī. Zhèi liǎngduì tīde dōu bú ruò, suóyì méi shū yíng.

Zúqiú zhèizhōng yùndong shì yìzhōng tài jīliède yùndong, xiāngdāng wēixiǎn. Chángcháng yǒu rén bèi tī shòu shāng hěn zhòng. Duìyu qiúlei
15 wǒ bù zàncheng wár zúqiú. Wànyī yīnwei yùndong shòule zhòng shāng, nǐ shuō duómo bù zhíde.

V

Yǒu yíci wǒ yǒu yíge zuì dàde lǔxíng bāokuò Huáběi Huázhōng zài nèi. Jiùshi lǔxíng quán Zhōngguo. Bǎ quánguóde dìfang dàochù dōu qùguo le. Wo xiān dào Cháng Jiāng yídài. Cháng Jiāngde shānshuǐ hěn piàoliang. Hángzhou Sūzhou wǒ yě dōu qùguo le. Ránhòu wǒ yòu dào Huázhōng
5 Huáběi yídài. Huázhōng shì Zhōngguode zhōngbù. Tiānqì hěn hǎo, bù

lěng bú rè. Huáběi shì Zhōngguode běibù, zài Huáng Héde běibiār. Dà
bùfen shì píngyuán.

Wǒ ba quán guó nèidì dōu qùguole yǐhòu wǒ yòu dào Ménggǔ, Xīnjiāng,
Xīzàng zhèixiē dìfang qu le. Zhèixiē dìfang rénde shēnghuó xíguān yíqiè
10 gēn nèidì wánquán bù tóng. Nèige shíhou Zhōngguo xīběibùde tiělù gōnglù
dōu hěn shǎo, suóyì yǒude dìfang bìděi qí' mǎ.

VI

Zuótian xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng yǒu yíge fēijī chū shì le. Zài qǐ fēi
de bàngē zhōngtóu yǐnèi hái yǒu diànhuà. Yǐhòu jiù méi liánluo le. Yìzhíde
dào xiàwǔ qīdiǎn zhōng yě méi xiāoxi. Jù shuō shì yīnwei tiānqì bù hǎo
de guānxi suóyì chū shì le.

VII

Wáng: Lǎo Zhāng, jǐtiān bú jiàn le. Nǐ shàng nǎr qu le?

Zhāng: Wǒ nǎr yě méi qù ya. Wǒ jièzhe fàngjià de jīhui zài jiā niàn shū
laizhe.

Wáng: Bùdéliǎo. Nǐ zhèicì yídìng kǎo dì yíming. Bié rén fàngjià de shíhou
dōu jùzai yíkuàr wárwar shénmo de. Nǐ zài jiā lǐtōu yíge rén niàn
shū, zhēn shì hǎo xuéshang.

Zhāng: Tánbushàng hǎo xuésheng bù hǎo xuésheng de. Jīnnian jiù bìyè le.
Yàoshi kǎode bù hǎo nǐ shuō duómo zāogāo?

Wáng: Nǐ díquè shì ge hǎo xuésheng.

Zhāng: Nǐ bié xiǎ shuō le.

Wáng: Yìhuěr wǒmen liǎngge rén yíkuàr qu chí wǎnfàn, ah.

Zhāng: Kěshì shéi ye bié qǐng kè.

Wáng: Wǒ qǐng nǐ. Wǒmen yíge rén yíge chǎo miàn.

Zhāng: Hǎo ba, yīnwei jīntian wǒ méi qián. Xiàcì wǒ zài qǐng nǐ.

VIII

Wáng Xiānsheng:

Zuótian shīyíng. Xièxie nín lái. Yīnwei yǒu diār yàojǐn de shì suóyì
chūqu le.

Nín fēnfu wǒ bǎ wǒde lǎo jiā Sān Hé Xiànde qíngxíng xiěchulai. Wǒ zǎo
yǐjīng bǎ ta xiéhǎo le. Yǐhòu rúguǒ nín ràng wǒ zuò shénmo, fēnfu yìshēngr
jiù shì le. Xiànzài wǒ bǎ wǒ xiě de Sān Hé Xiànde qíngxíng jìgei nín. Qǐng
nín zhǐjiào.

Wǒ shì Héběi Shěng Sānhé Xiàn Zhāng Jiā Cūn de rén. Wǒmende cūnzi shì yíge hěn xiǎo hěn qióng de cūnzi. Rěn dōu kǔ jíle. Yǒu qián de hěn shǎo, yě kéyǐ shuō shì méi yǒu. Niànguó shū de rén yě bù duō. Chàbuduō dōu shì zhòng dì de. Kěshì měi jiā zhòng de dì yě bù duō. Dìli zhòng de dōngxi gāng gòu chī. Nánrén chūqu zuò shì, dōu shì dāng gōngrén gēn lǎ chē de. Nǚrén hěn duō chūqu gěi rénjiā dāng lǎomāzi de. Shuōqilai wǒmen cūnzilide nǚrén chūqu gěi rénjiā dāng lǎomāzi kě zhēn kǔ. Suǐrán tāmen yǒu háizi dànshì wèile shēnghuó yě gùbude háizi le. Háizi cóng xiǎode shíhou méi yǒu fùmǔde jiàoyu, suǒyǐ háizimende qiántú xiāngdāng wēixiǎn. Cóng Kàngzhàn fāshēng wǒ jiù líkai Sānhé Xiàn le. Bù zhīdao zhèixiē nián lǐtōu wǒmen cūnzi lǐtōude qíngxíng zěnmoyàng le.

Xīwang bù jiǔ jiàn miàn. Zhù
Hǎo.

Zhāng Dōngshēng
jiǔyue qīhào

IX

Wáng : Jīntian Jiāng Xiānshengde nǚ'er chūjià. Nǐ qù bu qu dào xǐ?

Zhāng: Wǒ bù xiǎng qù yīnwei wǒ tài máng.

Wáng : Nǐ gàn má nènmo máng a?

Zhāng: Yīnwei wǒ gēn yíge jījīn huì yào yíge jiǎngxuéjīn. Zhàolì yǒu yíge kǎoshì suǒyǐ wǒ bìděi yònggōng.

Wáng : Shì zěnmó yíge bànfa ne?

Zhāng: Kǎoshì wǔmíng yǐnèi yǒu, wǔmíng yǐwèi méi xīwang.

Wáng : Zhèige jiǎngxuéjīn shì shénmo xìngzhi?

Zhāng: Shì gěi yánjiu yuàn de xuésheng.

Wáng : Tīngshuō Lǎo Wàn yě cānjiā zhèige kǎoshì le.

Zhāng: Yàoshi tā cānjiā wǒ jiù méi xīwang le. Tāde niánjì yòu dà tāde xuéwen yòu hǎo.

Wáng : Tā dōu dāngle zǔfù le, hébì cānjiā zhèizhōng kǎoshì ne?

Zhāng: Tā shì Yānjīngde háishi Qīnghuáde wǒ jìbūqīngchu le. Dāngchū wǒ niàn chūzhōng tā jiù dāng jiàoshòu le.

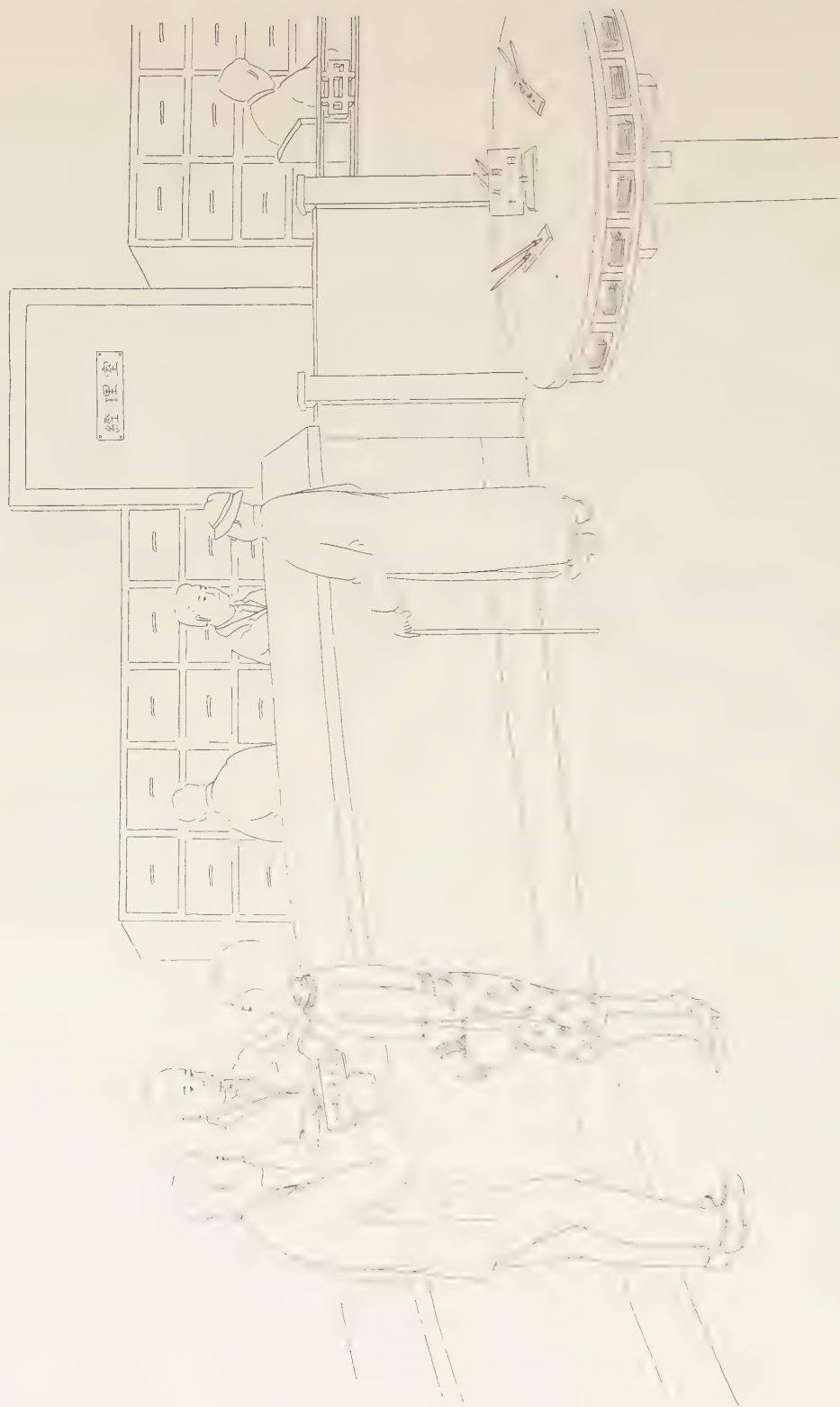
Wáng : Bù zhīdao tāmen nèige shídái yǒu jiǎngxuéjīn méi yǒu?

Zhāng: Na wǒ kě bù zhīdao le.

Wáng : Tā duó dà niánjì le?

Zhāng: Dàgài wǔshí duō le. Hǎoxiàng shì Xīnhài Gémíngde shíhou shēng de.

UNIT IV



“Wǒ shì nǐ bàba.”

Dì Shíjiǔkè. Dào Yínháng

Huīhuà: Bái Wénshān gēn Gāo Měiyīng zǎochen jiūdiǎn zhōng jiàn miàn liǎngge rén xiān dào yínháng ránhòu qù mǎi dōngxī.

Bái : Měiyīng, zǎo.

Měi : Zǎo. Nǐ zǎo jiù lái le ba?

5 Bái : Wǒ chà yíké zhōng jiūdiǎn dào zhèrde. Zěnmózhè, Měiyīng, shì bu shì dào yínháng?

Měi : Suí nǐ le. Wǒ jīntiān shàng bàntiān zǒngshì péi nǐ de.

Bái : Wǒmen xiān dào yínháng hòu qù mǎi dōngxī. Zhèrde yínháng jídiǎn zhōng bàn gōng?

10 Měi : Píngcháng dōu shì jiūdiǎn zhōng bàn gōng. Nǐ xiǎng dào něige yínháng qu cún kuǎn?

Bái : Wǒ zhèng yào wèn nǐ ne. Nǐ shuō něige yínháng hǎo?

15 Měi : Guójì Shāngyè Yínháng gēn Nónggōng Yínháng hái yǒu Zhōngyāng Tǔdì Yínháng bǐjiǎo kě kào, yǒu xīnyong, shì sānjiā dà yínháng. Wǒ fùqīn gēn Guójì Shāngyè Yínháng yǒu láiwǎng.

Bái : Na wǒmen dào Guójì Yínháng qu.

Měi : Hǎo ba. Yínháng pángbiān yǒu yíge bǎi huò gōngsī. Jiàqian bǐjiǎo piányi. Bìngqiě yòu jìn. Wǒmen dào nèr qu mǎi kéyī shēng shíjiān.

20 Bái : Guójì zài nǎr?

Měi : Jiù zài Shìchǎng Jiē me. Nèitiáo jiē dōu shì yínháng gēn dà gōngsī. . . .

Bái : Yǐjīng dào le. Kànjian páizi le. Shàngmian xiězhe Shìchǎng Jiē.

Měi : Dà jiē hěn róngyi zhǎo.

25 Bái : Wǒ yòng lǚxíng zhīpiào qu kāi hù bu zhīdào xíng bu xíng?

Měi : Shuōbudìng tāmen hái ràng nǐ bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào xiān huànchéng xiànkǔǎn cái néng kāi hùr ne.

Bái : Wǒmen dào yínháng shìshì kàn.

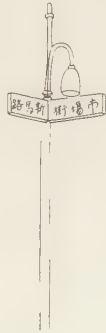
Měi : Yéxǔ tāmen jiù gěi nǐ huànchéngle dāngdìde qián.

30 Bái : Nǐ zhīdao bù zhīdào zhèr yínhángde shǒuxu?

Měi : Wǒ zài yínháng méi bànguó shǒuxu. Wǒ bú dà qīngchu. Dàgai jiùshì tián biǎo shénmode. Wǒmen wènwèn hángyuán jiù zhīdao le.

- Bái : Měiyīng, nǐ shuō nǐ méi dào yínháng bànguo shǒuxu. Nènmō nǐde qián dōu gēzai nǎr le?
- 35 Měi : Xiàohuār. Wǒ bù gōngzuò, méi xīnshuǐ, nǎr lái de qián?
- Bái : Dào le. Zènmō xǔduō rén. Dàgài wǒmen děi děng hěn jiǔ.
- Měi : Méi guānxi.
- Bái : Nǐ zuò yìhuěr hǎo bu hǎo?
- Měi : Wǒ bu lài. Wǒmen zhàn yìhuěr déle. . . .
- 40 Bái : Xiànzài gāi wǒ le. (Duì hángyuán:) Qǐng wèn, kāi hù dōu yǒu shénmo shǒuxu?
- Yuán: Nín xiān tián kāihù shēnqǐng biǎo. Biǎoshang yào tián xìngmíng, zhíyè, zhùzhǐ.
- Bái : Wǒ yòng lǚxíng zhīpiào kāi hù kéyǐ ma?
- 45 Yuán: Kéyǐ shì kéyǐ, kěshì wǒmen děi gěi nín xiān huànchéng dāngdìde xiàukuǎn. Bù néng yòng Měijīn cùn kuǎn.
- Bái : Nèige wǒ míngbai. Fǎnzhèng wǒ zài běndì yòng me.
- Yuán: Nín yígòng shì duōshao qián?
- Bái : Sānbǎi wǔshikuài qiánde lǚxíng zhīpiào.
- 50 Yuán: Hǎode. Qǐng nín xiān tián biǎo. Gěi nín zhèizhāng shēnqǐng biǎo. Qǐng nín xiànzài jiù tiánhǎo. Yàoshì nín yǒu shénmo bù liǎojiě de, qǐng zhèiwèi xiǎojié tī nín tián yē kéyǐ. Kěshì bìxū nín zìjǐ qiān zì.
- Bái : Hǎo ba. Wǒ xiǎng tián biǎo hěn jiǎndān. Méi shénmo wèntí. . . .
- 55 Tiánhǎo le. Gěi nǐ.
- Yuán: Qǐng nín dēngyìdēng. Wǒ děi nàdào jīnglǐ bàngōngshǐ qu qiān zì.
- Měi : Hángyuán bu zhīdao nǐde Zhōngguó xuéwen nènmō hǎo. Tā xiǎng yídìng děi wǒ tī nǐ tián.
- Yuán: Qǐng nín bǎ lǚxíng zhīpiào jiāogei wǒ.
- 60 Bái : Zhèi shì sānbǎi wǔshikuài qián. Qǐng nǐ diǎnyìdiǎn.
- Yuán: Bú cuò. Nín yígòng shì sānbǎi wǔshikuài qiánde Měijīn lǚxíng zhīpiào. Qǐng nín xiànzài bǎ měi yìzhāng dōu qiānshang míng.
- Bái : Hǎode.
- Yuán: Gěi nín, zhèi shì zhīpiào bù. Qǐng nín shōuhǎo. Bié diū le.
- 65 Bái : Wǒ zhòngyàode dōngxì dào shì bú huì diū de.
- Měi : Nǐde hàomǎr hěn róngyì jì.
- Bái : Zènmō róngyì jì?
- Měi : “Wǒ shì nǐ bàba.”
- Bái : Zhèi shì zènmō huíshì a?
- 70 Měi : Nǐ bù míngbai ma? Xiángxíang.

- Bái : Wǒ tài bèn. Wǒ xiǎngbùchūlái.
 Měi : Nǐde hàomǎr bu shì wǔ sì yī bā bā ma?*
- Bái : Oh, yuánlái shì 'zènmò huíshì. (Duì hángyuán:) Wǒ xiànzài qǔ yìdiar qián.
- 75 Yuán: Nín kāi yìzhāng zhīpiào ba.
 Bái : Wǒ qǔ wǔshikuài qián.
 Yuán: Nín yào dà piàor hái shì yào xiǎo piàor?
 Bái : Wǒ yào sānzhāng shíkuàide, èrshízhāng yíkuàide.
 Měi : Nǐ gānmá yào zènmò duō yíkuàide ne?
- 80 Bái : Xiǎo piàor yòngchū duō. (Duì hángyuán:) Zài jiàn.
 Yuán: Xièxie nín. Gǎi tiān jiàn.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (2) yín(zi) silver (N)
 1.1. Zhèixiē shǒushi shì yínzi zuòde.
- 2.0. (2) háng line of business or activity (M)
 yínháng bank
 wàiháng (be) an outsider with respect to job or profession, (be) an amateur
 nèiháng (be) an insider with respect to job or profession, (be) a professional
 hángyuán bank clerk, teller
- 2.1. Wǒmen zhèiháng zhèng qián hěn shǎo.

*Chinese, like other people, delight in play on words, illustrated here by Meiyíng's suggestion for a mnemonic aid to memorizing a number by using the rough similarity in sounds between these sequences:

- Wǒ shì nǐ bàba. 'I am your father.'
 Wǔ sì yī bā bā. '5-4-1-8-8.'

- 2.2. Wǒ xiànzài dào yínháng qù nà qián.
- 2.3. Wǒ duì dǎ wǎngqiú shì wàiháng.
- 2.4. Tā zuò zhèige gōngzuò shì ge nèiháng.
- 2.5. Tā cóngqián zài Zhōngguó Yínháng dāngguo shíniánde hángyuán.
- 3.0. (7) shàng bàntiān forenoon, morning (TW)
 xià bàntiān afternoon
 shàng(ge) xīngqī last week
 shàng shàng(ge) xīngqī week before last
 xià(ge) xīngqī next week
 xià xià(ge) xīngqī week after next
 shàng(ge) yuè last month
 shàng shàng(ge) yuè month before last
 xià(ge) yuè next month
 xià xià(ge) yuè month after next
- 3.1. Wǒ měitiān shàng bàntiān niàn shū, xià bàntiān tīng lùyīn.
- 3.2. Tā xià xīngqī dào Rìběn qù, xià xiàge xīngqī jiù huílái.
- 3.3. Tā shàng yuè zài Yīngguó, shàng shàngge yuè zài Měiguó.
- 4.0. (7) zǒng(shì) always, without exception (AD)
- 4.1. Zhèige zì wǒ zǒng bú huì niàn.
- 4.2. Wǒ zǒngshì zǎochen liùdiǎn zhōng jiù qīlái.
- 5.0. (9) bàn gōng work (in an office) (VO) [lit. manage public]
- 5.1. Tā zuótian bànle shíge zhōngtóude gōng.
- 6.0. (10) píngcháng ordinary, normal (SV), ordinarily (AD) [lit. level constant]
- 6.1. Nǐ shuō Lǎo Wáng hěn yǒu tiāncái. Qíshí tā hěn píngcháng.
- 6.2. Píngcháng wǒ měitiān wǎnshang dōu shì shíyīdiǎn zhōng shuì jiào.
- 7.0. (11) cún deposit (money), store (TV)
- 7.1. Nǐde qián zài nǐge yínháng cúnzhe?
- 7.2. Wǒmende jiājù duōbàr cúnzài yíge qīnqide jiālǐ
- 8.0. (11) kuǎn funds (N) (measure: bǐ)
- cún kuǎn deposit money (in a bank) (VO)
- cúnguǎn a deposit in a bank, funds deposited in a bank
- 8.1. Nèibǐ kuǎn nǐ xiǎng cúnzai nǐge yínháng?
- 8.2. Tīngshuō tā zài wàiguó yínháng yǒu hěn duōde cúnguǎn.
- 9.0. (13) guójì international

- guójì guānxi international relations
- 9.1. Wǒ zhuānmén yánjiū Qīng Cháo shídàide guójì guānxi.
- 10.0. (13) shāng- commerce, trade
 shāngrén businessman, merchant
 shāngkē business course (in school)
- 10.1. Tā jiā jǐdài dōu shì shāngrén.
- 10.2. Wǒ yuánlái shì niàn shāngkē de.
- 11.0. (13) -yè enterprise
 shāngyè commerce, trade
 nóngyè farming, agriculture
 gōngyè industry
- 11.1. Wǒmen xuéxiàode xuésheng sānfēnzhī yī shì niàn nóngyè de. Niàn shāngyè de hěn shǎo.
- 11.2. Měiguó gēn Ēguó shì shìjièshang zuì dàde gōngyè guójiā.
- 12.0. (13) nónggōng farmers and workers; agriculture and industry (Note 1)
- 12.1. Wǒmen xuéxiào hěn zhòngshì nónggōng liǎngxì.
- 13.0. (13) zhōngyāng center, middle part (N) [lit. center middle]
 zhōngyāng zhèngfǔ central government
- 13.1. Zhōngyāng zhèngfǔ shì něinián chénglì de?
- 14.0. (14) tǔdì territory, land (N) [lit. soil land]
- 14.1. Zhèrde tǔdì dà bùfen zhòngde shì shuǐguǒ.
- 15.0. (14) kào(zhe) lean on, depend on, be due to; border on, be located by; veer in a certain direction (V)
 kě kào reliable, dependable
 kàodezhù reliable, dependable
 kàobuzhù unreliable, undependable
- 15.1. Tā bù zěnmó cōngmíng. Tāde chéngjì hǎo quán kào ta yònggōng.
- 15.2. Tā zuò shì xiāngdāng kě kào.
- 15.3. Nǐ gěi wǒ jièshao de nèige yòngren kàodezhù ma?
- 15.4. Wáng Xiānsheng kào hǎibiār zàole yìsuǒ fángzi.
- 15.5. Tā kào jījīnhuìde jiǎngxuéjīn cái néng niàn dàxué.
- 15.6. Zài Zhōngguó qìchē kào něibiār zǒu?
- 16.0. (14) xìnயong trustworthiness (V) [lit. believe use]
 yǒu xìnயong be trustworthy
- 16.1. Nǐ bǎ qián jiāogei Wáng Xiānsheng ba. Tā xiāngdāng yǒu xìnயong.

- 17.0. (14) jiā (measure for households and business establishments) (Note 2)
- 17.1. Tāmen liǎngjiā shì hǎo péngyou.
- 17.2. Wǒmen cūnzili jiù yǒu èrshíjiā rén.
- 17.3. Nǐ kàn nèr yǒu yìjiā dà gōngsī. Wǒmen dào nèr qu mǎi.
- 18.0. (15) láiwǎng social or business relations, coming and going, contacts (N) [lit. come toward]
- 18.1. Wǒ bú rènshi tā. Wǒ gēn tā méi láiwǎng.
- 19.0. (17) páng other, others; side
- páng rén other people
- páng mén side door
- pángbiān vicinity, neighborhood, side
- pángtīng audit (a lecture), sit in on
- pángtīngshēng auditor
- 19.1. Nǐ zìjǐ zuò. Bié lǎo kào páng rén.
- 19.2. Shàng kè de shíhou zuò zài wǒ pángbiān de jiù shì Lǎo Wáng a.
- 19.3. Wǒ xià xīngqī dāsuan pángtīng Zhōngguó jīngjì-shǐ.
- 19.4. Wáng Jiàoshòu jiǎng Hàn Cháo lìshǐ de shíhou yǒu hěn duōde pángtīngshēng.
- 20.0. (17) jià(r), jiàqian price (N) [lit. price money]
- jiǎng jià, jiǎng jiàqian haggle, bargain (VO) [lit. discuss price]
- dìngjià fixed price
- 20.1. Nèiběn dà zìdiǎn hěn hǎo, kěshì jiàqian tài guǐ le.
- 20.2. Zhèr mǎi dōngxì jiǎng jiàqian ma? . . . Bù. Zhèr mǎi dōngxì shì dìngjià.
- 21.0. (18) shěng save (on), economize (on) (V)
- shěng qián save money, economize
- shěngshíhou save time
- 21.1. Wǒ děi shěng qián le. Wǒ měiyuè zhuànde qián bú gòu shēnghuó.
- 21.2. Yǐjīng qīdiǎn le. Wǒmen wèile shěng shíhou zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù ba.
- 22.0. (19) shíjiān (period of) time (N)
- dìng shíjiān fix a time, make an appointment
- shěng shíjiān save time
- 22.1. Guānyu zhèijiān shì wǒmen liǎngge rén dìng ge shíjiān tán yítán.
- 22.2. Wèile shěng shíjiān nǐ hái shì zuò fēijī qù.
- 23.0. (21) shìchǎng market (place) (N) [lit. market area]

- 23.1. Jīntian wǒmen dào nèige xīn shìchǎng mǎi dōngxī qu.
- 24.0. (21) jiē street (N)
jiē kǒu(r) entrance to a street, intersection
- 24.1. Jīntian jiēshang chē hěn duō.
- 24.2. Zhōnghuá Yínháng zài zhèige jiē kǒurde dì yījiā jiù shì.
- 25.0. (25) zhīpiào check (N) [lit. pay ticket]
kāi zhīpiào write a check, make out a check
lǚxíng zhīpiào traveler's check
- 25.1. Wǒ gěi nǐ kāi yìzhāng zhīpiào kéyǐ ma?
- 25.2. Lǚxíng zhīpiào quán shìjiè dōu néng yòng.
- 26.0. (25) hù account in a bank (N)
kāi hù open an account
- 26.1. Qǐng nǐ kànkàn wǒde hùli hái yǒu duōshao qián?
- 26.2. Wǒ děi dào yínháng qu kāi ge hù.
- 27.0. (25) xíng do, be all right, be satisfactory (V)
27.1. Nín kàn zhèige wèntí wǒ zènmó dá xíng ma?
- 28.0. (27) xiàнкуǎn cash (N) [lit. now funds]
28.1. Wǒ méi xiàнкуǎn le. Wǒ děi kāi zhāng zhīpiào dào yínháng qù ná.
- 29.0. (29) dāng at (time or place)
dāngdì (de) of a locality, district; local
dāngzhōng center of, middle of
dāng A de miàn(shang) in the presence of A
dāngshí at that (very) moment, (right) then, then and there
- 29.1. Dāngdìde rén chàbuduō dōu shì nóng rén.
- 29.2. Zhànzai dāngzhōngde nèiwèi shì Wáng Xiǎojie.
- 29.3. Nèijiàn shì wǒ dāngzhe Zhāng Xiānshengde miàn shuō de.
- 29.4. Wǒ gēn ta jiè èrshikuài qián. Tā dāngshí jiù gěi wǒ le.
- 30.0. (32) biǎo form, blank, chart, table
shíjiān biǎo time table
gōngkè biǎo course schedule
chéngjì biǎo report card
- 30.1. Qǐng nǐ kànkàn fēijīde shíjiān biǎo. Dào Niǔyuē de fēijī shénmo shíhou qǐ fēi?
- 30.2. Nǐde gōngkè biǎo jiègei wǒ kànkàn hǎo bu hǎo?

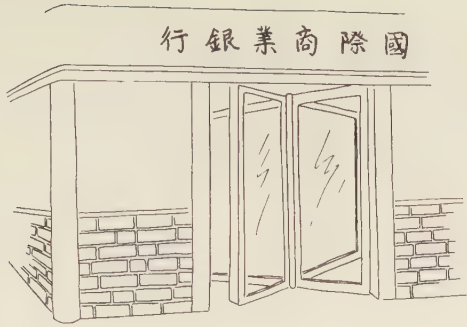
- 30.3. Jīntian wǒ fùqin kànle wǒde chéngji biǎo hěn bu gāoxìng, yīnwei
wǒ kǎo de chéngji bú tài hǎo.
- 31.0. (32) tián fill out (a form) (V)
tiánmǎn fill out (a form) completely
- 31.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèizhāng biǎo tiányitián.
- 31.2. Nèizhāng biǎo dōu tiánmǎn le.
- 32.0. (35) xīnshuǐ salary (N) [lit. firewood water]
- 32.1. Wǒ měige yuède xīnshuǐ bú gòu wǒ yíge rén yòng.
- 33.0. (35) lái A get [lit. come] A (Note 3)
(wǒ) nǎr lái de A? Where would I get any A?
N shì nǎr lái de A? Where did N get A?
- 33.1. Zuótiān wǒ mángde yào sǐ. Wǒ nǎr lái de gōngfu qu kàn diànyǐng
a?
- 33.2. Lǎo Wáng mǎile xīn qìchē le. Qíguài. Tā nǎr lái de qián?
- 34.0. (36) xǔduō(de) N a great many N [lit. very many]
- 34.1. Yìhuěr wǒmen tántan. Wǒ yǒu xǔduōde shìqing yào gàoosu nǐ.
- 35.0. (42) shēnqǐng apply, make a request (to a superior) (V) [lit. report
ask]
shēnqǐng biǎo application blank
kāihù shēnqǐng biǎo application form to open an account at a bank
- 35.1. Wǒ yǐjīng gēn nèige dàxué shēnqǐngle míngnián chūntiān rùxué.
- 35.2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèizhāng kāihù shēnqǐng biǎo tiányitián.
- 36.0. (42) xìngmíng name (N) [lit. surname, given name]
- 36.1. Wúlùn tián shénmo biǎo dōu děi tián xìngmíng.
- 37.0. (43) zhíyè job, occupation, profession (N) [lit. duty enterprise]
- 37.1. Zhèige dìfang hěn bu róngyi zhǎo zhíyè.
- 38.0. (43) zhùzhǐ address (N) [lit. dwell site]
zhùzhǐ shì (or zài) nǎr? What's your address?
- 38.1. Wǒ yǐjīng bān jiā le. Wǒ bǎ xīnde zhùzhǐ xiěgei nǐ.
- 39.0. (46) jīn gold (N), (also, a surname)
jīnzi gold (N)
Jiùjīnshān San Francisco [lit. old gold mountain] (Note 4)
Měijīn American currency
- 39.1. Gāng tiē bǐ jīnzi de yòngchū dà.
- 39.2. Jīn Xiānsheng zuò de chuán wǔyue qīhào dào Jiùjīnshān.
- 39.3. Zhōngguó rén jiào Měiguó qián shì Měijīn.

- 40.0. (51) liáojiě understand (TV) [lit. finish explain]
 40.1. Xiānsheng, zhèige zì wǒ bu liáojiě tāde yìsi.
- 41.0. (52) tì for, on behalf of, as a substitute for (CV)
 41.1. Nǐde shìqing tài duō le. Wǒ tì nǐ qù mǎi shū ba?
- 42.0. (52) bìxū need, require (V) [lit. must need]
 42.1. Jīntian nèige yuēhui wǒ bìxū qù.
- 43.0. (53) qiān sign (V)
 qiān míng sign one's name
 qiān zì sign one's name
 43.1. Shéi zàncheng, shéi qiān míng.
 43.2. Nǐ gěi wo de nèizhāng zhīpiào nǐ wàngle qiān zì le.
- 44.0. (56) jīnglǐ manage (V) [lit. traverse consider]
 jīnglǐ manager (N)
 44.1. Tā nèige fànguǎr jīnglide hěn hǎo.
 44.2. Zuò nèige gōngsīde jīnglǐ bú shì róngyi shì.
- 45.0. (56) -shǐ, -shì room
 bàngōngshǐ, bàngōnggshì office
 yánjiushǐ, yánjiushì research room, seminar room
 kèshǐ, kèshì classroom
 45.1. Xiàozhǎng qǐng nǐ dào bàngōngshǐ qu.
 45.2. Wáng Jiàoshòude jiǎnghuà zài dì bā kèshǐ.
- 46.0. (64) bù(zì) notebook, ledger (N)
 zhīpiào bù checkbook
 diǎn míng bùzì attendance book
 46.1. Zěnmó diǎn míng bùzishang méi yǒu wǒde míngzi?
 46.2. Wǒde zhīpiào bù làzai jiā lǐtou le.
- 47.0. (64) shōu receive, accept, collect (TV)
 shōuxia accept and keep
 shōuhǎo receive and retain carefully, take good care of
 47.1. Mā, nín bǎ wǒde shū shōuzai nǎr le?
 47.2. Jīntian shēngyi bù hǎo. Méi shōu duōshao qián.
 47.3. Zhèi diār xiǎo lǐwu qǐng nín shōuxia.
 47.4. Nǐ bǎ huǒchē piào shōuhǎo le ma?
- 48.0. (64) diū lose (TV)
 48.1. Zhèi shì dà ménde yàoshi. Nǐ qiānwàn bié diū le.

- 48.2. Zuótian wǎnshang wǒmen jiā diū dōngxi le.
- 49.0. (65) zhòngyao important (SV) [lit. heavy important]
- 49.1. Tā búlùn zěnmō zhòngyao de shìqíng yě shì nènmo māmāhūhū de.
- 50.0. (66) hàomǎr (identification) number (N) [lit. number sign]
- diànhuà hàomǎr telephone number
- qìchē hàomǎr license plate
- 50.1. Nǐde diànhuà hàomǎr shì duōshao?
- 51.0. (69) (yì)huí shì a matter [lit. one occasion affair]
- zěnmō (yì)huí shì What sort of matter? What's up?
- zěnmō/nènmo (yì)huí shì such a matter, such a thing
- 51.1. Nǐ xiā shuō. Méi nènmo yìhuí shì.
- 51.2. Zěnmō yìhuí shì? Tā kǔ shénmo?
- 51.3. Yuánlái shì 'zěnmō yìhuí shì.
- 52.0. (73) qǔ take out, withdraw, fetch (TV)
- qǔchu take out
- qǔhuí take back
- 52.1. Wǒ dào huǒchē zhàn qu qǔ xínglǐ.
- 52.2. Nǐde qián qǔchulai le méi yóu?
- 52.3. Lǎo Zhāng ba wǒde shū jièqu hǎo jiǔ le. Wǒ děi bǎ shū qǔhuilai.
- 53.0. (77) piào(r), piàozǐ (money) bill (N) (measure: zhāng)
- 53.1. Zhèizhāng piàozǐ pòde tài lìhai. Bù néng yòng le.
- 53.2. Wǒ ba dà piào huàchéng xiǎo piào.
- 54.0. (80) -chu (noun suffix) (see Beginning Chinese, Lesson 22, Note 5)
- yòngchu use (N)
- huàichu disadvantage, harm
- chángchu advantage, good point
- 54.1. Yuánzǐ-néngde yòngchu hěn duō.
- 54.2. Nǐ zěnmō zuò hǎochu duō huàichu shǎo.
- 54.3. Měi yíge rén gè yǒu gède chángchu.

Wēnxi Jùzi

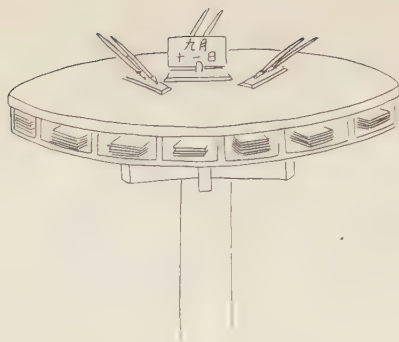
1. Wǒ bù xǐhuan yān wèr kěshi tā zǒng chōu yān.
2. Wǒ kàn bàozhǐ zhuānmén kàn guójì xīnwén.
3. Zhōngyāng Yínháng jiù shì guójiā yínháng.



4. Tā kàozhe xiūli qìchē shēnghuó.
5. Wǒmen liǎngjiā chángcháng láiwǎng.
6. Zhànzai ta pángbiārde jiù shì Bái Xiānsheng.
7. Huǒchēde shíjiān dào le. Wǒ děi zǒu le.
8. Shuōbudìng ta jīntian bù lái le.
9. Lǎo Wáng zhēn shì ge xiūli wúxiàndiàn de zhuānménjiā. Wǒde wúxiàndiàn huài le. Ta dāngshí jiù xiūlihao le.
10. Qǐng nǐ tián rùxué shēnqǐng biǎo.
11. Wǒde zhíyè shì jiāo shū.
12. Zhèijiàn shìqing wǒ bù zěnmó liáojiě. Qǐng nǐ wèn pángren ba.
13. Yíqiè rùxué de shǒuxu wánquan shì tā tì wǒ bàn de.
14. Shǒushi bú shì bìxū mǎi de.
15. Wǒ shàng lǐbài jìgei nǐ yìfēng xìn. Nǐ shōudào le méi you?
16. Zuótian wǒ diǎle yìzhī yuánzǐ bǐ.
17. Zhèicìde kǎoshì hěn zhòngyào. Yàoshi kǎode bù hǎo jiù bù néng bìyè.
18. Zuótian nǐ gēn Lǎo Wáng shì zěnmó yìhuí shì? Qǐng nǐ gào su wo.
19. Wǒ yìhuēr dào yínháng qu qǔ diār qián.
20. Dào wàiguo fànguǎr qu chí zhōngfàn yòu shěng shíjiān yòu shěng qián.

Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Měiyīng yǐjīng zài diànhuà lǐtōu yuēhǎo, qǐng ta jīntian shàng bàntian péi wǒ xiān dào yínháng ránhòu zài qu mǎi dōngxī. Jīntian hěn máng. Xià bàntian gēn Xuéxīn yuēhǎo le, wǒmen liǎngge rén yíkuài qu cānguān xuéxiào. Wǒ chà yíkè jiǔdiǎn zhōng jiù dào le gēn Měiyīng yuēhǎo de dìdiǎn, dēngzhe ta. Zhěng jiǔdiǎn zhōng Měiyīng jiù lái le. Zhèiwei xiáojie zhēn yǒu xīnyong—shuō shénmo shíhou jiù shì shénmo shíhou.



Wǒ wèn Měiyīng nǚjiā yínháng bíjiǎo kě kào. Měiyīng shuōle jǐjiā yínháng. Wǒ juédìng dào Guójì Shāngyè Yínháng qù kāi hù. Wǒde qián shì zài Měiguó mǎide lǚxíng zhīpiào. Wǒ yòng lǚxíng zhīpiào qù kāi hù,
10 bǎ qián cúnzài yínháng. Yòng duōshao qǔ duōshao.

Dàole yínháng wǒ wèn Měiyīng dōu yǒu shénmo shǒuxu? Měiyīng shuō ta bú dà qīngchu, tā méi cúnguó qián. Wǒ wèn ta qián dōu zài nǎr gēzhe? Tā shuō ta nǎr lái de qián ne?

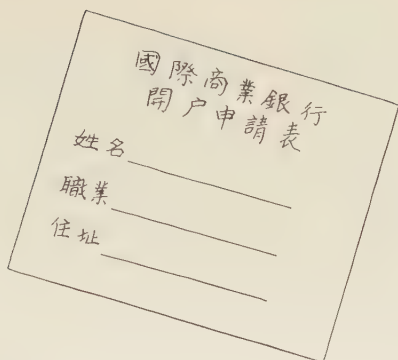
Yínhángde shuǒxu dàoshi bù máfan—zhǐ shì tián yìzhāng kāihù
15 shēnqǐng biǎo jiù kéyì le. Nèizhāng shēnqǐng biǎoshang, jiù tiánshang xìngmíng, zhùzhǐ, zhíyè, shénmode.

Yīnwei wǒ shì Měijīn zhīpiào, suǒyì bìxū huànchéng dāngdìde qián cái néng cún kuǎn. Yínháng tì wǒ huàn le. Shǒuxu bànghǎole yǐhòu, hángyuán gěi wo le yìběn zhīpiào bù. Měiyīng yí kàn wǒde zhīpiào hàomǎr,
20 tā shuō “Wǒ shì nǚ bàba.” Tā yì shuō wǒ méi míngbai shì zěnmó yìhuì shì. Hòulái ta gàosu wǒ wo cái míngbai.

Wǒ ba kāi hù de shǒuxu bànghǎole yǐhòu, tóngshí yòu qǔchūle wǔshikuài qián. Lián mǎi dōngxì dài chī fàn dōu děi yòng qián. Yìhuěr mǎi dōngxì yě děi Měiyīng tì wǒ kàn. Wǒ duì mǎi nǚren dōngxì shì wàiháng. Gěi
25 mǔqīn gēn mèimei mǎi dōngxì wǒ nǎr mǎidehǎo ne?

Wèntí

1. Bái Wénshān jǐdiǎn zhōng jiù dào tā gēn Měiyīng yuēhǎo nèige dìfang qù dēng Měiyīng?
2. Wénshān wèn Měiyīng shì bu shì dào yínháng, Měiyīng shuō shénmo?
3. Wénshān gēn Měiyīng shuō xiān dào nǎr hòu dào nǎr?
4. Wénshān wèn Měiyīng yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng bàn gōng, Měiyīng gàosu ta jǐdiǎn zhōng?



5. Wénshān wèn Měiyīng nǐge yínháng bǐjiǎo kě kào. Měiyīng zěnmō gàosu ta? Tāde qián cúnzai nǎr le?
6. Guójì yínháng zai nēitiáo jiēshang? Nēitiáo jiē dōu shì zuò shénmo de?
7. Wénshān zěnmō zhīdao dào le Shìchǎng Jiē le?
8. Wénshān yòng shénmo qián qu kāi hù?
9. Měiyīng shuō lǚxíng zhīpiào néng kāi hù ma? Wénshān shuō shénmo?
10. Wénshān wèn Měiyīng zhīdao bù zhīdào yínhángde shuōxu. Měiyīng zěnmō huída ta?
11. Měiyīng shuō yíge dà bǎi huò gōngsī zài nǎr? Wèi shénmo yào dào nēijiā dà bǎi huò gōngsī qu mǎi?
12. Bái Xiānsheng dào le yínháng wèn hángyuán cún kuǎn dōu yǒu shénmo shǒuxu, hángyuán zěnmō huída ta?
13. Nǐ zhīdao bù zhīdào kāihù shēnqǐng biǎoshang dōu yào tián shénmo?
14. Wénshān wèn hángyuán yòng lǚxíng zhīpiào kāi hù kéyì bu kéyì, hángyuán zěnmō shuō?
15. Wénshān yígòng yǒu duōshao qiándē lǚxíng zhīpiào?
16. Hángyuán wèi shénmo shuō Wénshān yǒu shénmo bù liáojiě de qǐng Měiyīng gěi ta tián?
17. Bái Wénshān ba lǚxíng zhīpiào jiāogei hángyuán wèi shénmo hái ràng ta diǎnyidiǎn?
18. Měiyīng kànle Wénshānde zhīpiào bù yǐhòu tā duì Wénshān shuō shénmo?
19. Wénshān kāile hù cún kuǎn yǐhòu tā qǔ qián méi you? Tā qǔle duōshao qián?
20. Wénshān wèi shénmo yào nènmo duō xiǎo piào?
21. Yàoshi nǐ gēn yíge péngyou yuēhàole zài yíge dìfang jiàn miàn, tā bǐ nǐ xiān dào de, nǐ jiànle ta nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi yíge wàiguó péngyou qǐng nǐ péi ta qu mǎi dōngxì, nǐ zěnmō bàn? Yīnggāi dào nǎr qu mǎi?
23. Yàoshi nǐ dào yìjiā yínháng nǐ xiǎng kāi hù, nǐ gēn hángyuán shuō shénmo?
24. Bǐrú shuō nǐ shì hángyuán yǒu rén lái kāi hù nǐ yīnggāi zuò shénmo?

25. Yàoshi nǐ dào yíge yínháng qu kěshi nǐde qián shì wàiguo qián hángyuán shuō bixū huànchéng dāngdì qián nǐ zěnmō huídá tā?
26. Yàoshi nǐ bǎ qián jiāogei bié rén nǐ yīnggāi gēn rénjiā shuō shénmō?
27. Rúguǒ nǐ shì yíge hángyuán rénjiā lái qǔ qián nǐ wèn rénjiā shénmō?
28. Yàoshi nǐ qù qǔ kuǎn rénjiā wèn nǐ yào dà piào yào xiǎo piào nǐ zěnmō shuō?
29. Yàoshi nǐ dào yínháng qù qǔ qián nǐ yào xiǎo piào rénjiā wèn nǐ wèi shénmō yào xiǎo piào nǐ zěnmō shuō?
30. Yàoshi yǒu rén wèn nǐ kāi hù dōu yǒu shénmō shǒuxu, nǐ zěnmō huídá?

Dialogue: Vincent White and Gao Meiyang meet at nine o'clock in the morning and the two of them go first to the bank and afterward to shop.

White: Good morning, Meiyang.

Mei: Good morning. I suppose you got here some time ago?

White: I got here at a quarter of nine. Well, Meiyang, shall we go to the bank?

Mei: Whatever you want. This morning is all yours [lit. today forenoon I'm entirely accompanying you].

White: Let's first go to the bank and then go shopping. When do the banks here (start to) do business?

Mei: Ordinarily [they all do business] at nine o'clock. What bank are you thinking of going to [to deposit money]?

White: I was just going to ask you. Which bank do you think is best?

Mei: The Bank for International Trade, the Bank for Agriculture and Industry, and the Central Land Bank are all [comparatively] reliable [and trustworthy]. They're [three] big banks. My father does business with the Bank for International Trade.

White: Then let's go to the International Bank.

Mei: O.K. There's a department store next to the bank. The prices are relatively low [lit. cheap]. Moreover it's close. We can save time if we go there to shop.

White: Where's the International?

Mei: On Market Street. The whole of that street is banks and stores.

White: Here we are. I see the (street) sign. (On it is written) Market Street.

Mei: The main streets are easy to find.

White: I wonder if it will do to open an account with traveler's checks?

Mei: Perhaps they'll let you change the traveler's checks into cash and then you'll be able to open an account.

White : Let's go to the bank and see.

Mei : Perhaps they'll change the traveler's checks into local currency.

White : Do you know how banking is conducted here?

Mei : I've never had anything to do with [procedures at] banks. I'm not very clear about them. Let's ask a teller [and then we'll know].

White : Meiying, you say you haven't done business at a bank. Then where do you put your money?

Mei : Are you kidding? I don't work, and don't have a salary, so where would I get any money?

White : Here we are. There are so many people. Most likely we'll have quite a wait.

Mei : It doesn't matter.

White : Would you like to sit down for a while?

Mei : I'm not tired. We can just stand for a while. . . .

White : It's my turn now. (To the teller:) Could you tell me what the procedure is in opening an account?

Teller: You first fill out an application blank [to open an account]. Fill in your name, occupation, and address [on the application blank].

White : Am I allowed to open an account with traveler's checks?

Teller: You're allowed to, all right, but we first have to convert them into local currency. You can't make a deposit with American currency.

White : I understand that. In any case I'm using (the money) locally.

Teller: How much money do you have [in all]?

White : Three hundred fifty dollars in traveler's checks.

Teller: All right. Fill out the form first, please. Here's an application blank [to open an account]. Please fill it out now. If there's something you don't understand, it will be all right to ask this young lady to fill it out for you. But you have to sign it yourself.

White : O.K. I think it'll be a simple matter to fill out the form. There's no problem. . . . I've finished filling it out. Here it is.

Teller: Please wait (a moment). I must take it to the manager's office to be signed.

Mei : The clerk doesn't know your Chinese [learning] is so good. He thinks I [certainly] had to fill it out for you.

Teller: Please hand me the traveler's checks.

White : Here's [lit. this is] \$350. Please check it.

Teller: Correct. You have [in all] \$350 in American money in traveler's checks. Now please sign your name to each (of the checks).

White : O.K.

- Teller: Here, this is your checkbook. Please take good care of it. Don't lose it.
- White : I'm not likely to lose something that's important.
- Mei : Your (account) number is easy to remember.
- White : How so?
- Mei : "I am your papa."
- White : What's that?
- Mei : Don't you get it? Think.
- White : I'm too stupid. I can't figure it out.
- Mei : Isn't your number 5-4-1-8-8?
- White : Oh, so that's it! (To the teller:) I'd like to take out a little money.
- Teller: Make out a check.
- White : I'd like to have \$50.
- Teller: Do you want large [bills] or small bills?
- White : I'd like three tens and twenty ones.
- Mei : What do you want so many ones for?
- White:: The small bills are more useful. (To the teller:) Good-bye.
- Teller: Thank you. See you again [some other day].

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. These (pieces of) jewelry are made of silver.
- 2.1. We make very little money in our line of business.
- 2.2. I'm going to the bank now to get some money.
- 2.3. I'm an amateur when it comes to tennis.
- 2.4. He's a professional in [doing] this work.
- 2.5. He used to be teller in the Bank of China for ten years.
- 3.1. Every day I study in the morning and listen to recordings in the afternoon.
- 3.2. He's going to Japan next week, and will return the week after next.
- 3.3. Last month he was in England, and the month before that in America.
- 4.1. I can never read this character.
- 4.2. I always get up at six in the morning.
- 5.1. He worked in the office for ten hours yesterday.
- 6.1. You say Wang is very talented. Actually he's quite ordinary.
- 6.2. Ordinarily I go to sleep at 11:00 every night.

- 7.1. In what bank is your money deposited?
- 7.2. Most of our furniture is stored in a relative's home.
- 8.1. In what bank are you thinking of depositing that money?
- 8.2. I hear he has a lot of money [lit. deposits] in foreign banks.
- 9.1. I'm concentrating on the study of the international relations of the Ch'ing Dynasty.
- 10.1. All of his family have been merchants for several generations.
- 10.2. I originally took [lit. studied] a business course.
- 11.1. A third of the students in our school are studying agriculture. Very few are studying business.
- 11.2. America and Russia are the two biggest industrial states in the world.
- 12.1. Our school gives much attention to agriculture and industry.
- 13.1. In what year was the central government established?
- 14.1. The major part of the land here is planted to fruit.
- 15.1. He's not very intelligent. His good record is all due to his working hard.
- 15.2. He's quite reliable in doing things.
- 15.3. Is that servant you introduced to me reliable?
- 15.4. Mr. Wang built a house near the seashore.
- 15.5. He can study at the university only because of the fellowship from the foundation.
- 15.6. What side [of the street] do cars go on in China?
- 16.1. Turn the money over to Mr. Wang. He's quite trustworthy.
- 17.1. The two families are good friends.
- 17.2. There are only twenty families [of people] in our village.
- 17.3. [You see] there's a big store [lit. company]. Let's go there to shop.
- 18.1. I don't know him. I have no dealings with him.
- 19.1. Do it yourself. Don't always depend on others.
- 19.2. The one who sits next to me in class is Wang.
- 19.3. Next semester I plan to audit Chinese economic history.
- 19.4. When Professor Wang lectures on the history of the Han Dynasty there are a lot of auditors.
- 20.1. That big dictionary is very good, but the price is too high [lit. expensive].
- 20.2. Do you bargain here when buying things? . . . No. Prices are fixed [in buying things here].
- 21.1. The money I earn each month isn't enough to live on.
- 21.2. It's already 7:00. In order to save time let's take a bus
- 22.1. Let's [the two of us] fix a time to discuss this matter

- 22.2. In order to save time it would be better for you to take a plane.
- 23.1. Today let's go shopping in that new market.
- 24.1. There are a lot of cars on the streets today.
- 24.2. The Bank of China is [precisely] the first building in this block.
- 25.1. Can I give you a check?
- 25.2. Traveler's checks can be used throughout the world.
- 26.1. Please see how much money is left in my account.
- 26.2. I must go to the bank to open up an account.
- 27.1. Do you think it will do for me to answer this question in this way?
- 28.1. I don't have any cash. I must make out a check and go get some money at the bank.
- 29.1. The people in this locality are almost all farmers.
- 29.2. The one standing in the middle is Miss Wang.
- 29.3. I spoke of that matter in the presence of Mr. Zhang.
- 29.4. I borrowed twenty dollars from him. He gave it to me then and there.
- 30.1. Please look at the plane schedule. When does the plane for New York take off?
- 30.2. Let me have a look at your course schedule, will you?
- 30.3. My father was pretty unhappy today when he saw my report card, as my exam grades weren't too good.
- 31.1. Please fill out this form.
- 31.2. That form is all filled out.
- 32.1. My monthly salary isn't enough for one person [to use].
- 33.1. Yesterday I was terribly busy. When would I have had the time to go see a movie?
- 33.2. Wang has bought a new car. It's strange. Where did he get the money?
- 34.1. We'll talk in a moment. I have a lot of things to tell you
- 35.1. I've already applied to that university to enter next spring.
- 35.2. Please fill out this application form for opening an account.
- 36.1. No matter what forms you fill out you have to fill in your name
- 37.1. It's not at all easy to find a job in this area.
- 38.1. I've [already] moved. I'll give you my new address
- 39.1. Iron and steel have more uses than gold.
- 39.2. Mr. Jin's boat reaches San Francisco on May 7th
- 39.3. Chinese call American money 'American gold.'
- 40.1. Sir, I don't understand the meaning of this character.

- 41.1. You have too many things (to do). How about my going to buy the books for you?
- 42.1. I have to go to that appointment today.
- 43.1. Whoever approves, sign up.
- 43.2. You forgot to sign your name to that check you gave me.
- 44.1. He manages that restaurant well.
- 44.2. Being the manager of that company isn't an easy job.
- 45.1. The principal asks you to go to the office.
- 45.2. Professor Wang's lecture is in Classroom 8.
- 46.1. How come my name isn't on the attendance book?
- 46.2. I left my checkbook at home.
- 47.1. Mom, where did you put [lit. collect] my books?
- 47.2. Business wasn't good today. We didn't take in much money.
- 47.3. Please accept this little gift.
- 47.4. Did you take good care of the railway tickets?
- 48.1. This is the key to the main door. Don't by any means lose it.
- 48.2. Last night our family lost some things (through theft).
- 49.1. No matter how important the matter he's still absent-minded.
- 50.1. What's your phone number?
- 51.1. You're talking nonsense. There's no such thing.
- 51.2. What's up? What's he crying about?
- 51.3. So that's what's up.
- 52.1. I'm going to the railroad station to fetch my baggage.
- 52.2. Did you withdraw your money?
- 52.3. Zhang borrowed my book a good while ago. I must get it back.
- 53.1. This bill is too worn. It can't be used any more.
- 53.2. I changed the big bills into small bills.
- 54.1. Atomic energy has a lot of uses.
- 54.2. If you do it this way there will be many advantages and few disadvantages.
- 54.3. Every person has his good points.

Review Sentences

1. I don't like the smell of tobacco but he's always smoking.
2. When I read the newspapers I look especially at the international news.

3. The Central Bank is the state bank.
4. He makes his living by repairing automobiles.
5. Our two families have frequent contacts.
6. The one standing beside him is Mr. White.
7. It's time for the train (to leave). I must go.
8. Perhaps he won't come today.
9. Wang is certainly a specialist in fixing radios. My radio broke down and he fixed it right then and there.
10. Please fill out the school application blank.
11. My profession is teaching.
12. I don't much understand this business. Please ask someone else.
13. He took care of all the registration [lit. enter school] procedures for me.
14. You don't need to buy jewelry.
15. I sent you a letter last week. Did you receive it?
16. I lost a ball-point pen yesterday.
17. This exam is very important. If you do badly you can't graduate.
18. What was up between you and Wang yesterday? Please tell me.
19. In a little while I'm going to the bank to withdraw some money.
20. It'll save time and money to go eat at a foreign restaurant.

Notes

1. The two-syllable expression nónggōng is an abbreviation for two separate pairs of terms: (a) nóng rén 'farmers' and gōng rén 'workers'; (b) nóng yè 'farming' and gōng yè 'industry.' Whether nónggōng means 'farmers and workers' or 'agriculture and industry' must be determined from the context.
2. Jiā 'home' with or without a following noun is used as a measure for households or families, as well as business establishments:

Sānjiā rén dōu pǎodào chéng lǐtōu qū le. 'The three families [of people] have fled into the city.'

Sānjiā shì hǎo péngyou. 'The three families are good friends.'

Zhèijiā yínháng hěn kě kào. 'This bank is very reliable.'
3. The word lái 'come' in its causative sense of 'cause to come' was encountered in Lesson 21 of Beginning Chinese (p. 377) and in Lesson 5 of the present work (p. 108). It also has the causative meaning in the pattern N shì nǎr lái de A? 'Where did N get A?' and in rhetorical questions with nǎr (Lesson 8, Note 2):

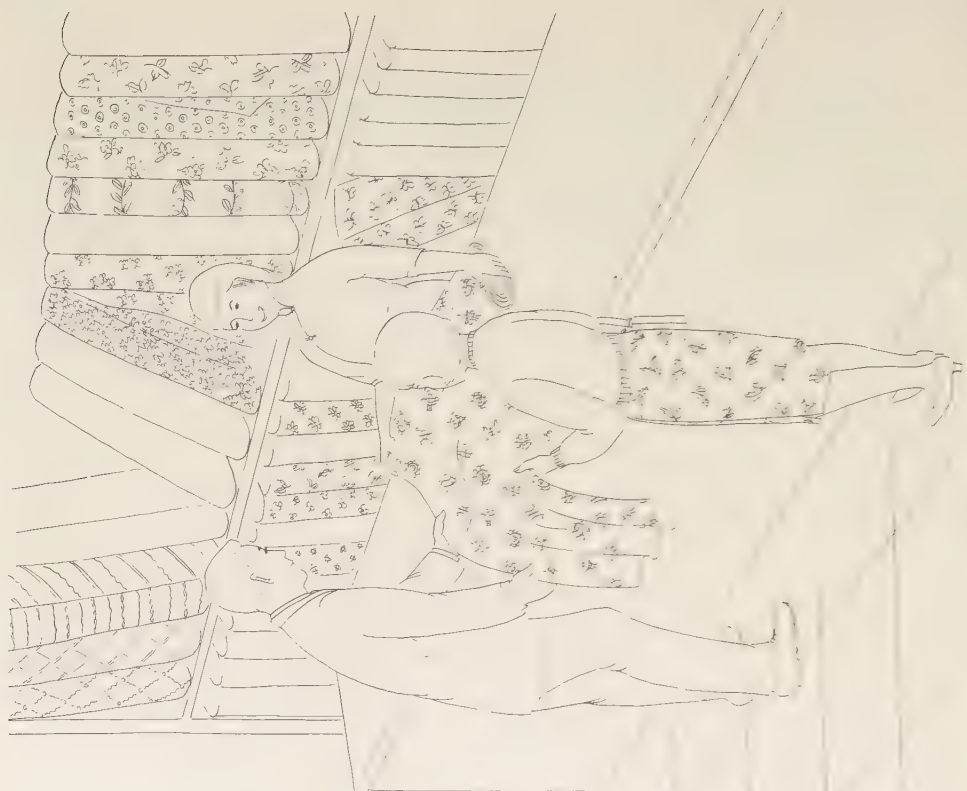
Nǐ shì nǎr lái de zhèiběn shū? 'Where did you get this book?'

(Wǒ) nǎr lái de A. 'Where would I get any A?'

Wǒ nǎr lái de gōngfú lǚxíng? 'Where would I get the time to go on a trip?'

4. San Francisco has two Chinese names. One is an approximation of the sound (Sānfānshì). The other, dating from the Gold Rush days when Chinese were first brought in to work in California, is made up of three syllables meaning Old Gold Mountain (Jiùjīnshān). Originally the name was simply Jīnshān (Gold Mountain), but later jiù 'old' was prefixed to distinguish San Francisco from the Australian City of Melbourne (Xīnjīnshān 'New Gold Mountain').

“Duōshao qián yíma?”



Dì Èrshikè. Mǎi Dōngxì

Huìhuà: Měiyīng péi Wénshān zài bǎi huò gōngsī gěi jiāli rén mǎi dōngxì.

- Bái : Zhèige bǎi huò gōngsī zhēn bù xiǎo a. Jiù shì nèitiān cóng fēijīchāng dào fūshang qù kànjian de nèige?
- 5 Měi : Shìde.
- Bái : Wǒ jìde wǒ zǒu de nèinián zhèr jiù kāishǐ gài fángzi ne.
- Měi : Shì a, dà qiánnian kāi de.
- Bái : Wǒ kàn bàozhǐshang tiāntian yǒu tāmen de guǎnggào.
- Měi : Dāngrán děi dēng guǎnggào le. Yàoburán shéi zhīdao ne?
- 10 Bái : Xuānchuán shì hěn yào jīn de.
- Měi : Zhèi jǐtiān tāmen dà jiǎn jià. Mǎi dōngxì dǎ bāzhé.
- Bái : Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Zhōngguó nèixiē jiù shìde shìchǎng. Wǒ shàngcì zài zhèr de shíhou cháng dào Dōng Chéng Shìchǎng qu.
- Měi : Jiù shìde shìchǎng zěnmó hǎo ne?
- 15 Bái : Zhōngguó jiù shìde shìchǎng yìtiáo jiēshang zhuān mài yìzhǒng dōngxì. Bīfang shuō mài chóuduàn de zhuānmén mài chóuduàn. Mài gúdǒng de zhuānmén mài gúdǒng.
- Měi : Nǐ cháng zài nèr mǎi dōngxì ma?
- 20 Bái : Wǒ xǐhuan qu kànkān. Bǐngqiě zhèxiē pùzi dōu shì suǐsuìbiàn-biànde. Nǐ yí dào nèr qu hǎoxiang dào le péngyou de jiā lǐtōu yíyàng. Nèixiē zuò mǎimai de hěn kèqide zhāodai nǐ. Gēn tāmen tántān hěn yǒu yìsi.
- Měi : Wǒ xǐhuan dào dà gōngsī qu mǎi dōngxì. Bú bì gēn tāmen jiǎng jià. Érqiě yí jìnqu chī, hē, chuān, dài mǎi shénmo dōu yǒu.
- 25 Bái : Wǒ rènwei dà gōngsī méi yìsi, gēn zài Měiguó yíyàng.
- Měi : Cóngqián Dōng Chéng Shìchǎng nǐ cháng qù le?
- Bái : Shìde. Shàngcì zài zhèr de shíhou cháng qu. Yǐhòu yǒu gōngfu hái děi qù kànkān.
- Měi : Xiànzài méi yǐqián nènmo rènào le.
- 30 Bái : Zhèige bǎi huò gōngsī nǐ cháng lái ma?
- Měi : Chàbudō yì liǎngge xīngqī zǒng lái yíci. Péi mǔqīn lái kànkān. Yìhuěr nǐ dōu mǎi shénmo? Shì bu shì gěi fùqīn, mǔqīn, dìdi, mèimei dōu mǎi?

- 35 Bái : Shìde. Nǐ shuō wǒ mǎi shénmo hǎo ne? Duō xiè nǐ bāng wǒ xiāngxiang. Lǎoshi shuō, wǒ duì mǎi dōngxi shì wàiháng.
- Měi : Nǐ mǎi rènhe dōngxi dōu wàiháng ma?
- Bái : Dāngrán le!
- Měi : Nǐ mǎi shū ke bú wàiháng ba!
- Bái : Wǒ duì mǎi nǚrén dōngxi shízài wàiháng.
- 40 Měi : Yǒu hěn duō wàiguo tàitai xǐhuan chuān Zhōngguo qípáor. Bù zhīdào nǐ mǔqin xǐhuan bu xǐhuan?
- Bái : Duìle. Mǔqin kànjian Gāo Tàitai xiàngpiār ta kànjian Gāo Tàitai chuān de qípáor, mǔqin hěn xǐhuan. Gāncuì gěi ta mǎi jiàn qípáor.
- 45 Měi : Wǒ zànchéng Měiguó tàitai chuān qípáor, zuì piàoliang le. Zuì hǎo nǐ gěi ta mǎi jiàn qípáor liàor. Mǎi de qípáor chuānzhe bù yíding héshì. Nǐ mǔqin huì zuò qípáor ma?
- Bái : Tā zuì huì zuò yīfu le. Yàoshi yǒu yàngzi wǒ xiǎng tā huì zuò.
- Měi : Wǒ dào xiǎngqilai nǐ mèimeide lǐwu le. Tā xǐhuan yīnyuè. Gěi ta mǎi ge pǐba hǎo bu hǎo?
- 50 Bái : Hǎojíle. Tā yíding xǐhuan tán.
- Měi : Gěi nǐ fùqin mǎi shénmo ne?
- Bái : Gěi tā mǎi ge suànpan.
- Měi : Měiguó mǎibuzháo suànpan ma?
- Bái : Mǎi shì mǎidezáo búguò méi hǎode.
- 55 Měi : Gěi nǐ dìdi mǎi shénmo?
- Bái : Wǒ xiǎngbuchūlái gěi ta mǎi shénmo. Zhànshí bù mǎi. Guò liǎngtiān zài shuō ba.
- Měi : Wǒmen xiān dào èrlóu mǎi yīliào qu. Nǐ mǎi chóuzi shì mǎi duànzi?
- 60 Bái : Chóuduàn zhèige cǎi wǒ dǒng, yàoshi jiào wo fēnbié shénmo shì chóuzi shénmo shì duànzi, wǒ ke bù zhīdào. Chóuzi hǎo shì duànzi hǎo?
- Měi : Chóuzi báo yìdiǎr. Duànzi bíjiǎo hòu, érqǐě jiàqian guì.
- Bái : Hái yǒu rénào sī shì bu shì?
- 65 Měi : Rénào sī bù jiēshì. Háishi zhēn sī hǎo.
- Bái : Zhēn sīde yīliào duōshao qián yíjiàn?
- Měi : Wǒmen wènwen màihuòyuán.
- Yuán: Liǎngwèi mǎi shénmo?
- Měi : Nǐ ná zuì hǎode duànzi wǒmen kànkàn.
- 70 Yuán: Nín yào shénmo yánshar de?
- Měi : Duìle. Nǐ mǔqin xǐhuan shénmo yánshar de?

- Bái : Suíbiàn nǐzhǒng yánsè dōu kéyì. Wǒ mǔqín bù xǐhuan chuān shēnde. Tā xǐhuan chuān qiǎn de. Tiāo qiǎn diār de jiù shì le. Yào piàoliang yìdiǎrde wèide shì wǎnshang chūqu yìngchou chuān.
- 75 Yuán: Nín kàn zhèi jǐduàn zěnmoyàng?
- Měi : Wénshān nǐ kàn zhèiduàn hěn hǎo kàn. Qiǎn lán de dài xiǎo hóng huār.
- Bái : Zhēn bú cuò. Duōshao qián yíjiàn?
- Yuán: Wǒmen lùn mǎ mài.
- 80 Bái : Duōshao qián yìmǎ?
- Yuán: Èrshikuài qián yìmǎ.
- Bái : Yíjiàn qípáor duōshao mǎ?
- Yuán: Yào sānmǎ.
- Bái : Liáng sānmǎ ba.
- 85 Yuán: Gěi nín zhuāng hézi ma?
- Bái : Bú bì. Wǒ jìchuqu.
- Yuán: Sānmǎ yígòng liùshikuài. Gěi nín dǎ bāzhé. Liù bā sìshíba. Shǒu nǐn wúshikuài, zhǎo nín liǎngkuài qián.*
- 90 Měi : Wǒmen mǎi pǐba gēn suànpan qu ba. Nǐ hái mǎi biéde dōngxī ma?
- Bái : Hái děi mǎi xīnzhǐ, xīnfēng, fēngjǐng míngxīnpià, shénmode.
- Měi : Nǐ shì bu shì bǎ bāoguǒ jīntian jìchuqu?
- Bái : Děng bǎ wǒ dìdìde lǐwu mǎile yǐhòu yíkuài jìchuqu. Kěshì wǒ jīntian yě děi qù jì guàhào xìn. Shùnbìan hái děi mǎi yóupiào yóujiǎn.* Míngtian méi gōngfu jiù děi hòutian mǎi le.
- 95 Měi : Yóuzhèngjù lí zhèr bù yuǎn. Xiànzài diànbàojú yě bāndao yóuzhèngjù pángbiār le.
- Bái : Shì ma?
- Měi : Shì de.
- 100 Bái : Měiyīng, wǒmen mǎiwánli dōngxī chī fàn qu. Chī fàn yǐhòu wǒmen yíkuài qu cānguān xuéxiào, hǎo bu hǎo? Hái yǒu Xuéxīn. Wǒ zuótian gēn ta yuēhǎole jīntian xiàwǔ sìdiǎn zhōng wǒmen yíkuài qù.
- Měi : Duìbuqǐ. Wǒ jīntian xiàwǔ děi dào yīyuàn qu kàn yíwèi péngyou.
- 105 Bái : Yào bu yào wǒ sòng nǐ dào yīyuàn qu?

* 'A discount of 20 per cent' is expressed in Chinese as 'an 80-per-cent price of the original.' The clerk's mental arithmetic can be summarized approximately as follows: 60×80 per cent equals 6×8 , or 48; $50 - 48$ equals 2

- 4.0. (11) jiǎn reduce, decrease, lessen
 jiǎn jià reduce prices, hold a sale
 jiǎnjià Sale! [announcement or placard]
 jiǎnshǎo reduce, decrease, lessen (by so much)
 jiǎnqǔ take away, reduce (by so much)
- 4.1. Xiànzài gè bǎi huò gōngsī dōu jiǎnjià.
 4.2. Nèige pùzi chuānghushang xiězhe DÀ JIǎnjià!
 4.3. Yīnwei dǎ zhàng de guānxi zhèrde rénǎi jiǎnshǎole yībàn.
 4.4. Wǒde xīnshuǐ búdàn méi jiǎ, érqǐ měi yuè gěi wo jiǎnqǔle shíwǔkuài qián.
- 5.0. (11) zhé(kòu) discount (N) [lit. reduce, deduct] (Note 3)
 dǎ zhé(kòu) give a discount, receive a discount
 dǎ $\frac{100-X}{10}$ zhé give a discount of X per cent
- 5.1. Tāmen xuānchuándà jiǎn jià, kěshi zhékòu bú dà.
 5.2. Nǐ mǎi dǎzìjī dǎ zhékòu le ma?
 5.3. Jīntiān wǒmen dà jiǎn jià, quánbùde dōngxi dǎ liùzhé.
- 6.0. (16) chóu(zi) silks, silk goods (N)
 6.1. Tā zuì xīhuan chuān chóuzi yīfu le.
- 7.0. (16) duàn(zi) satin (N)
 chóuduàn silks and satins
 7.1. Duànzi de jiàqián bǐjiǎo guī.
 7.2. Zhōngguóde chóuduàn shìjièshang shì yǒu míng de.
- 8.0. (17) gǔdǒng antique, relic, curio (N) [lit. old curio]
 8.1. Měiguó yǒu hěn duōde gǔdǒng pùzi.
- 9.0. (21) mǎimai trade, business; business establishment [lit. buy, sell]
 zuò mǎimai be in business
 mǎimai rén, zuò mǎimai de merchant
 9.1. Yí dào zhōumò fànguārde mǎimai dōu bú cuò
 9.2. Wǒmen jiā jīdài dōu shì zuò mǎimai de.
- 10.0. (21) zhāodai entertain, be hospitable to (TV) [lit. hail treat]
 zhāodàishǐ, zhāodàishì waiting room, reception room
 10.1. Wáng Xiānsheng yào cóng Riběn lái le. Tā lái yǐhòu wǒ děi zhāodai zhāodai tā.
 10.2. Fēijī hái méi lái le. Wǒmen xiān zài zhāodàishǐ zuò yìhuēr.

- 11.0 (34) duō xiè many thanks
 11.1 Duō xiè nín dào wǒ zhèr lái.
- 12.0 (35) lǎoshi honest, steady, frank
 12.1 Nèige rén yòu lǎoshi yòu kě kào.
 12.2 Lǎoshi shuō tā bù zěnmó cōngmíng. Jiù shì yònggōng.
- 13.0 (40) qípáo Chinese-style gown (measure: jiàn) [lit. banner gown]
 (Note 5)
 13.1 Zhōngguó nǚrén de qípáo yòu piàoliang yòu shèng cáiliao.
- 14.0 (45) (yī)liào(r) dress material
 yíjiàn yīliào material for a gown
 14.1 Wáng Xiǎojie yào jiēhūn le. Wǒ sòng ta yíjiàn yīliào.
 14.2 Zhèijiàn qípáo liào duōshao qián?
- 15.0 (49) pǐba Chinese four-stringed guitar (N)
 15.1 Pǐba de shēngyīn hěn hǎo tīng.
- 16.0 (50) tán play (by plucking or touching with the fingers) (TV)
 16.1 Wǒ mèimei hěn xīhuan tán pǐba.
- 17.0 (52) suànpan abacus (N) [lit. calculate platter]
 17.1 Zhōngguó jiù shì de puzi xiànzài suàn zhàng háishi yòng suànpan.
- 18.0 (56) zhànshí temporary (SV), temporarily, for the time being (AD) [lit. shortly time]
 18.1 Wǒ háishi yào zhǎo fángzi. Wǒ zhànshí zài Wáng zhái zhù jǐtiān.
- 19.0 (56) guò (plus TW) after (CV)
 19.1 Wǒ hǎoxiē rìzi méi kànjian Lǎo Wáng le. Guò jǐtiān wǒ děi qu kànkàn ta qu.
- 20.0 (63) báo thin (of things)
 20.1 Zhèige yīliào tài báo le. Dōngtian chuān yíding bù nuǎnhuo.
- 21.0 (63) hòu thick (of things), close (of relationships) (SV)
 21.1 Zhèizhāng zhǐ tài hòu le. Bié yòng ta xiě hángkōng xìn.
 21.2 Zhèige fángzi gàide zhēn jiēshi. Nǐ kàn qiáng duómo hòu.
- 22.0 (64) rénzào artificial, man-made [lit. man make]
 22.1 Zhèige bīng kēyǐ chī. Shì rénzào de, shì yòng gānjīng shuǐ zào de.
- 23.0 (64) sī (raw) silk
 rénzào sī rayon
 23.1 Jǐqián nián yǐqián Zhōngguó jiù yǒule sī le.
 23.2 Zhèijiàn yīliào shì zhēn sīde, bú shì rénzào sīde.

- 24.0. (67) mǎihuòyuán sales clerk [lit. sell goods person]
 24.1. Tā zài Dà Huá Gōngsī dāng mǎihuòyuán.
- 25.0. (73) shēn deep (water, color), profound (ideas) (SV)
 25.1. Zhèitiáo hé lǐtōude shuǐ hěn shēn.
 25.2. Shēn yánsede qiáng bù róngyi zāng.
- 26.0. (73) qiǎn light (color), shallow (water), simply expressed (ideas) (SV)
 26.1. Tā xiě nèiběn shū xiěde hěn qiǎn, kěshi yìsi hěn shēn.
- 27.0. (73) tiāo pick, select, choose (TV)
 tiāode tài lihai be too choosy
 27.1. Wǒ sòng nǐ yíjiàn yīliàor. Qǐng nǐ zìjǐ qu tiāo.
 27.2. Tā wúlùn mǎi shénmo dōngxī dōu tiāode hěn lihai.
- 28.0. (74) wèide shì because, in order to, so as to
 28.1. Wǒ měitiān zǎochen liùdiǎn zhōng qīlai wèide shì duō zuò yìdiǎr shì.
 28.2. Wǒ zhùzai zhèrde yuányīn wèide shì lí xuéxiào jìn yìdiǎr.
- 29.0. (74) yìngchou socialize, discharge one's social responsibilities (toward someone), undertake a social engagement (V), social engagement (N)
 29.1. Wǒ zuì bù xǐhuan chūqu yìngchou.
 29.2. Tāde yìngchou tài duō le. Měitiān dōu děi chūqu.
- 30.0. (75) duàn, duār segment of, section of, portion of (M)
 30.1. Zhōngshān Lù xītóu zhèi yíduàn lù bù píng.
 30.2. Wǒ zuótian kànle jǐduār Zhōngguó lìshǐ gùshi. Hěn yǒu yìsi.
- 31.0. (79) lùn discuss (TV), by (CV)
 lùndào get to in a discussion
 31.1. Mǎi zhèizhōng cáiliaor lùn chángduǎn shì lùn qīngzhòng?
 31.2. Wǒmen hái méi lùndào nèige wèntí ne.
- 32.0. (79) mǎ yard (M)
 32.1. Zuótian wǒ mǎile jǐmǎ yīliàor, hěn piányi.
- 33.0. (85) zhuāng pack (TV), hold (IV)
 zhuāngmǎn pack full
 zhuāngbuxià unable to hold
 33.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ yīfu dōu zhuāngzai xiāngzili.
 33.2. Wǒde shǒutíbāo zhuāngbuxià le. Dōu zhuāngmǎn le.
- 34.0. (85) hé(r), hézi (small) box (N, M)

- 34.1. Yìhéi táng duōshao qián?
- 34.2. Zhèige hézi lǐtōu yǒu shénmo?
- 35.0. (88) zhǎo give change (V)
- 35.1. Zuótian mǎi dōngxī qù mǎihuòyuán bā qián zhǎocuò le. Wǒ gěi tā wǔkuài qián. Yīnggāi zhǎo wǒ yīkuài jiǔmáo qián, tā zhǎole wǒ yīkuài èrmáo qián.
- 36.0. (91) xìnzhǐ stationery, letter paper (N)
- 36.1. Zhèizhǒng xìnzhǐ yìhéi liǎngkuài sān.
- 37.0. (91) xìnfēng(r) envelope (N)
- 37.1. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ yíge xìnfēng.
- 38.0. (91) fēngjǐng scenery, view (N) [lit. wind view]
- 38.1. Nǐ qiáo zhèrde fēngjǐng duómáo piàoliang.
- 39.0. (91) míngxìnpìar post card (N) [lit. open letter card]
- 39.1. Jì míngxìnpìar bǐ jì xìn piányi.
- 40.0. (92) bāoguǒ parcel, package (N) [lit. wrap wrap]
- 40.1. Zuótian wǒ wǎng jiāli jìle yíge bāoguǒ
- 41.0. (94) guàhào register (V) [lit. hang number]
- guàhào xìn registered letter
- 41.1. Zhèifēng xìn guàhào duōshao qián?
- 41.2. Guàhào xìn bú huì diū.
- 42.0. (94) shùn(zhe) follow (V); with, in accordance with, along (CV)
- shùnbìan at the same time (as some other activity)
- 42.1. Nǐ'shùnzhe zhèitiáo lù yìzhíde wǎng běi zǒu jiù dào le.
- 42.2. Gēn tā hézuò bù róngyi. Wúlùn shénmo shìqing dōu dēi shùnzhe tāde yìsi.
- 42.3. Nǐ dào shūdiàn qù de shíhou qǐng nǐ shùnbìan tì wǒ mǎi běn shū.
- 43.0. (94) yóupiào postage stamp (N) [lit. postal ticket]
- 43.1. Qǐng wèn cóng zhèr jìdào Měiguode xìn yào tiē duōshao yóupiào?
- 44.0. (95) yóujiǎn aerogram, (single-sheet) air letter (N) [lit. postal abridge]
- 44.1. Jì yóujiǎn bǐ jì hángkōng xìn piányide duō.
- 45.0 (95) hòutian day after tomorrow (TW) [lit. rear day]
- hòunian year after next (TW) [lit. rear year]
- dā hòutiān three days from now (Note 2)
- 45.1 Wǒ hòutian dào xiāngxia qù kàn péngyou.

- 45.2. Wǒ hòunián dàxué cái bìyè ne.
- 45.3. Wǒ dà hòutián qū bàifāng Wáng Xiānsheng.
- 46.0. (96) -jú office
jǐngchájú police station
- 46.1. Zhèr lí jǐngchájú méi duó yuǎn.
- 47.0. (96) yóuzhèngjú post office (N) [lit. postal administration office]
- 47.1. Wǒ děi dào yóuzhèngjú qū mǎi yóupiào.
- 48.0. (96) diànbào telegram (N) [lit. electric report]
dǎ diànbào send a telegram
diànbàojú telegraph office
- 48.1. Wǒ děi gěi Wáng Xiānsheng dǎ diànbào, qǐng tā míngtiān xiàwǔ dào fēijīchǎng qū jiē wǒ.
- 48.2. Diànbàojú zài Shìchǎng Jiē.
- 49.0. (107) lǐ put in order (TV)
lǐfǎ cut the hair, get a haircut [lit. arrange hair]
- 49.1. Nǐ bǎ zhèidui shū lǐyǐlǐ.
- 49.2. Wǒde tóufa tài cháng le. Jīntiān bìdēi qū lǐfǎ le.
- 50.0. (107) -guǎn establishment
lǐfǎguǎn barber shop
zhàoxiàngguǎn photographer's shop
- 50.1. Wǒmen zhè fùjìn xīn kāile yíge lǐfǎguǎn.
- 50.2. Wǒ xià bàntiān dào zhàoxiàngguǎn qū zhào xiàng, yīnwei xuéxiào gēn wǒ yào xiàngpiān.
- 51.0. (107) jiǎn cut, clip (with scissors) (TV)
jiǎnzi scissors (measure: bǎ)
jiǎnfǎ cut the hair, get a haircut
jiǎnqu cut off
- 51.1. Wǒ bǎ zhèizhāng xiàngpiānde biān jiǎnqu kéyi ma?
- 51.2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nèibǎ dà jiǎnzi dīgei wǒ.
- 51.3. Wǒ hǎo jiǔ méi jiǎnfǎ le, suǒyì tóufa zènmò cháng.
- 52.0. (108) V O compounds (Note 4)
- 52.1. Wáng Xiānsheng jiēguo hūn méi you?
- 52.2. Nèige guójiā géle jǐcì mìng le.
- 52.3. Wáng Xiānsheng qùnián cái bì de yè

14. Xiànzài nǐmen èrshige rén fēnchéng liǎngduì zhànzai liǎngbiān.
15. Nèijiàn shìqíng nǐ yǒu bǎowo méi yǒu?
16. Jīntian Wáng Jiàoshòu yǒu shì, tíqián xià kè shífēn zhōng.
17. Jīntian wǒ cái fāxiàn wǒde biǎo diū le.
18. Cóng géming fāshēng yǐhòu tāmen jiù líkai nèr le.
19. Wǒ cónglái bù cānjiā nèizhōng méi yìsi de yìngchou.
20. Xiǎo Wàn bǎ wǒde zìxíngchē gěi nònghuài le.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Měiyīng wǒmen liǎngge rén cóng yínháng chūlai jiù dào bǎi huò gōngsī qu mǎi dōngxī. Zhèige bǎi huò gōngsī jiù zài yínháng pángbiān. Zài wǒ zǒude nèinián, jiùshì dà qiánnian le, nèige shíhou tāmen cái gài fángzi. Wǒ kàn zhèizhōng dà gōngsī měiniánde xuānchuán fèi kě zhēn
 5 bùdéliǎo. Tiāntiān bàozhǐshàng dēngzhe dà zìde guǎnggào.

Tàitai xiáojiemen dōu xǐhuan dào bǎi huò gōngsī qu mǎi dōngxī. Kěshi wǒ háishi xǐhuan Zhōngguo nèixiē lǎo shì de pùzi. Yí jìnnu tāmen kèkèqīqīde zhāodai nǐ. Gēn nǐ tántan wèn nǐ zhège wèn nǐ nàge, shénmo dōu nágei nǐ kànkàn. Tāmen yìdiǎr yě bú pà máfan. Nǐ dào bǎi huò
 10 gōngsī, tāmende tàidu jiù bu tóng le.

Jīntian shì xiǎng gěi fùmǔ gēn dìdi mèimeimei mǎi diār dōngxī jìhuiqu. Yīnwei wǒ duì mǎi dōngxī tài wàiháng le, suóyì qǐng Měiyīng lai tì wo tiāo.

Mǔqīn zài xiàngpiārshàng kànjian Gāo Tàitai chuān de qípáo. Tā hěn
 15 xǐhuan suóyì gēn Měiyīng wǒmen liǎngge rén juédìng gěi ta mǎi jiàn qípáo liàor. Duìyu mèimeimei de lǐwu Měiyīng xiǎngde hěn hǎo. Mèimeimei xīn yīnyuè; gěi ta mǎi ge pǐba tā yídìng xǐhuan. Gěi fùqīn mǎile yíge suànpan. Fùqīn shì xué shùxué de, xiànzài yòu jiāo shùxué. Mǎi zhèi yíleide lǐwu shì hěn héshì.

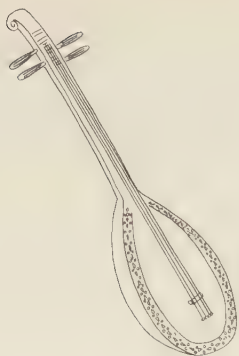
- 20 Dìdìde lǐwù zhēn bù róngyí mǎi. Wǒ xiǎngle bàntiān yě xiǎngbùchūlái.
Dìdì zhèige rén bù xǐhuan chī yòu bù xǐhuan chuān. Měitiān xiàng ge
gōngchǎngde gōngrén. Yì tiān bù shì xiūli zhèige jiù shì xiūli nàge.
Nǐ shuō wǒ gěi ta mǎi shénmo ne? Měiyīng yě xiǎngbùchūlái, suǒyì wǒ
gàosu Měiyīng jīntian zhànshí bù mǎi. Guò jǐtiān zài shuō.
- 25 Měiyīng gěi mǔqīn tiāo de yīliào hěn piàoliang. Shì zhēn sīde
Zhōngguó duànzi de. Bǎi huò gōngsī mài yīliào yěshì lùn mǎ. Yàoshi
dào Dōng Chéng Shìchǎng qu mǎi dàgāi háishi lùn chǐ. Mǔqīn xǐhuan
chuān qiǎn yánse de yīfu. Měiyīng gěi tiāo de shì qiǎn lán duànzi, dài
xiǎo hóng huār. Wǒ xiǎng mǔqīn yídìng hěn xǐhuan zhèijiàn yīliào. Wǒ
30 xiǎng mǔqīn píngcháng bù chuān. Tā yídìng shì wǎnshang yǒu yīngchou
cái chuān ne.

Wǒ yòu mǎile jǐzhāng fēngjǐng míngxìnpìar, jiānglái gěi péngyou xiě
xìn yòng. Yǐhòu dào yóuzhèngjú qu jì guàhào xìn, mǎi yóupiào, yóujiǎn,
shùnbìan hái mǎile xìnfēng, xìnzhi, shénmode.

- 35 Yuánlái wǒ xiǎng mǎiwánle dōngxì yuē Měiyīng yíkuàr qu cānguān
xuéxiào. Kěshì Měiyīng xiàwǔ děi dào yīyuàn qu kàn yíge shēng bìng de
péngyou qu. Wǒ gēn Měiyīng shuō: "Jìrán nǐ bù néng gēn wǒmen yíkuàr
qu cānguān xuéxiào, chīwánle fàn nǐ zǒule yǐhòu wǒ qu lífǎ." Měiyīng
xiàozhe shuō: "Nǐde tóufa yīnggāi qu jiǎn le." Měiyīng nènmo yì shuō
40 wǒ yǒu yìdiǎr bù hǎo yìsi le. Wǒde tóufa díquè tài cháng le. Háishi
zài dòngshēn yǐqián de jǐge xīngqī zài Měiguó jiǎn de ne.

Wèntí

1. Bái Wénshān shuō zhèige bǎi huò gōngsī tā shénmo shíhou kànjianguo?
2. Bái Xiānsheng shuō tā zǒu de nèinián zhèige dà bǎi huò gōngsī kāi le méi you?
3. Wénshān shuō nèige dà gōngsī bàoshang tiāntiān yǒu guǎnggào. Měiyīng shuō shénmo?
4. Měiyīng shuō zhèige dà gōngsī zhèi jǐtiān dà jiǎn jià. Yàoshi mǎi dōngxì tāmen yòng shénmo fázi gěi nǐ jiǎn ne?
5. Wénshān xǐhuan shénmo yàngde shìchǎng? Tā cóngqián zài zhèr cháng dào shénmo shìchǎng qu?
6. Měiyīng wèn Wénshān jiù shì de shìchǎng zěnmó hǎo. Wénshān zěnmó shuō?
7. Nǐ dǒng shénmo jiào gúdǒng ma?



8. Wénshān shuō Zhōngguode jiù shì de shìchǎng tāmen zuò mǎimai de tàiđu zěnmoyàng?
9. Měiyīng wèi shénmo xīhuan dào dà gōngsī qu mǎi dōngxī?
10. Měiyīng shuō Wénshān mǎi shénmo bú wàiháng ne?
11. Wénshān gěi ta mǔqín mǎi de shénmo?
12. Wénshān shuō gěi tā mǔqín mǎi qípáor Měiyīng zěnmō shuō?
13. Měiyīng wèn Wénshān tā mǔqín huì zuò qípáor ma. Wénshān shuō shénmo?
14. Měiyīng shuō gěi Wénshānde mèimei mǎi shénmo?
15. Wénshān gěi ta fùqín mǎi de shénmo? Nǐ zhīdao suànpan shì zuò shénmo yòng de ma?
16. Wénshān gěi ta dìdi mǎi dōngxī méi you? Tā wèi shénmo bù gěi dìdi mǎi ne?
17. Mǎi qípáo liàor de shíhou Měiyīng wèn Wénshān mǎi chóuzi háishi mǎi duànzi. Wénshān zěnmō shuō?
18. Měiyīng shuō chóuzi gēn duànzi yǒu shénmo bù tóng?
19. Nǐ shuō rénzào sī hǎo háishi zhēn sī hǎo ne? Wèi shénmo?
20. Wénshān shuō ta mǔqín xīhuān shénmo yánse de yīfu?
21. Wénshān shuō ta mǔqín zhèijiàn qípáor shénmo shíhou chuān?
22. Yàoshi nǐ shì yíge mǎihuòyuán rénjiā lái mǎi dōngxī nǐ shuō shénmo?
23. Yàoshi nǐ bāngzhe péngyou qu mǎi dōngxī nǐ yīnggāi wèn péngyou shénmo?
24. Yàoshi yíge rén xīhuan yīnyuè, nǐ sòng tā líuwú yīngdǎng sòng tā shénmo?
25. Yàoshi nǐ qu mǎi dōngxī mǎihuòyuán shuō gěi nǐ zhuāng hézi kěshi nǐ bù xiǎng zhuāng nǐ zěnmō shuō?
26. Yàoshi nǐ yuē péngyou péi nǐ qu mǎi dōngxī dào le chī fàn de shíhou nǐ zěnmō bàn?
27. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐde nǚ péngyou gēn nǐ yíkuài qu cānguān nǐ zěnmō shuō?
28. Yàoshi yǒu rén yuē nǐ dào nǎr qù nǐ bú qù nǐ zěnmō huídá tā?

29. Yàoshi nǐ xǐhuan dào dà gōngsī qu mǎi dōngxī nǐ duì péngyou zěnmō shuō?
30. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng mǎi de dōngxī hái méi juédìng ne, nǐ xiànzài bù xiǎng mǎi, nǐ gēn péngyou zěnmō shuō?

Dialogue: Meiying joins Vincent in shopping for his family in a department store.

White: This department store is certainly huge. It's the one we saw that day on the way from the airport to your home, isn't it?

Mei : Yes.

White: I remember that the year I left they had begun to put up a building here.

Mei : Yes, they put it up three years ago.

White: I noticed that its ads are in the newspapers every day.

Mei : Of course it's necessary to advertise. Otherwise who would know about it?

White: Publicity is very important.

Mei : The past few days they've been having a big sale. They're giving a 20-per-cent discount [in selling things].

White: I like those old-style Chinese markets. When I was here last time I frequently went to the East City Market

Mei : What's good about old-style markets?

White: In old-style Chinese markets, on one street, only [lit. especially] one thing is sold. For example, those who sell silk and satin just sell silk and satin. Those who sell antiques just sell antiques.

Mei : Did you often buy things there?

White: I liked to go and look. Moreover these stores are all informal. When you go there it's like going to a friend's home. The merchants entertain you very politely. It's fun talking with them.

Mei : I like to go to the big companies to shop. You don't have to haggle with them. Moreover [as soon as you go in] whatever you want to buy they have—things to eat, to drink, to wear.

White: It seems to me that the big stores are no fun. It's as if you were in America.

Mei : Did you use to go to the East City Market often?

White: Yes. When I was here last time I went often. Later when I have time I must go again and look around.

Mei : It's not as animated now as it used to be.

White: Do you come often to this department store?

Mei : I come [almost invariably] once every week or two. I come along with my mother to look around. What are you going to buy [in a moment]? Aren't you shopping for all (your family)—father, mother, [younger] brother, and [younger] sister?

White: Yes. What do you think I should buy? I'd appreciate very much your helping me think of something. Frankly, when it comes to buying things I'm an amateur.

Mei : Are you an amateur in buying everything?

White: Of course.

Mei : But you're not an amateur when it comes to buying books!

White: I'm certainly no good at buying women's things.

Mei : A lot of foreign ladies like to wear Chinese-style gowns. Would your mother like to?

White: You've got it. When Mother saw a picture of Mrs. Gao, she saw the Chinese gown that Mrs. Gao was wearing and liked it a lot. I couldn't do better than buy her a Chinese gown.

Mei : I'm all for American ladies wearing Chinese gowns. They're very attractive. The best thing would be to buy the material [for a Chinese gown]. A ready-made one might not fit. Could your mother make a Chinese gown?

White: She's very good at making clothes. If she has a pattern I think she can make it.

Mei : I've thought of a present for your [younger] sister. She likes music. How about buying her a Chinese guitar?

White: Excellent. She will certainly like to play it.

Mei : What to buy for your father?

White: I'll buy an abacus for him.

Mei : Can't you buy abacuses in America?

White: You can buy them all right, but there aren't any good ones.

Mei : What are you going to buy for your [younger] brother?

White: I can't think what to buy for him. I won't buy anything for him now [lit. temporarily]. I'll come back to it [lit. talk again] in a couple of days.

Mei : Let's go to the second floor first to buy the material. Will you buy silk or satin?

White: I know the words for silk and satin, but if you ask me to distinguish what's silk and what's satin, I wouldn't know (how to). Which is better, silk or satin?

Mei : Silk is a little thinner. Satin is relatively thick, and the price is higher

White: Then there's rayon, too, isn't that so?

Mei : Rayon isn't strong. Real silk is better.

White: How much would real silk material be for one (gown)?

Mei : Let's ask the clerk.

Clerk: What would you [two] like?

Mei : Let's see your best satin.

Clerk: What color do you want?

Mei : That's right. What color would your mother like?

White: Any color would do. My mother doesn't like to wear deep (colors). She likes pastels. Just pick out a light (color) and that'll do. We want something rather attractive so that she can wear it when she goes out to parties in the evening.

Clerk: What do you think of this color?

Mei : Vincent, [you see that] this piece is very pretty—light blue with little red flowers.

White: Not bad at all. How much for one (gown)?

Clerk: We sell it by the yard.

White: How much per yard?

Clerk: Twenty dollars [a yard].

White: How many yards for a Chinese gown?

Clerk: You need three yards.

White: Let's have [lit. measure] three yards.

Clerk: Shall I put it in a box for you?

White: It's not necessary. I'm sending it out.

Clerk: Three yards are sixty dollars [in all]. We'll give you a 20-per-cent discount. Six eights are forty-eight. You gave me fifty dollars, and I give you two dollars in change.

Mei : Let's go buy the guitar and the abacus. Do you have anything else to buy?

White: I also have to buy some letter paper, envelopes, scenic post cards [and so on].

Mei : Are you sending off the parcels today?

White: I'll wait until after I've bought my brother's present and send them out together. However, I still have to go send a registered letter today. At the same time I have to buy some stamps and some airmail stationery. I don't have time tomorrow (and if I don't buy them today) then I'll have to buy them the day after tomorrow.

Mei : The post office isn't far from here. Now the telegraph office has also moved alongside the post office.

White: Is that so?

Mei : Yes.

White: Meiyong, after we've finished shopping let's go eat. After eating let's go [together] to visit the school, O.K. ? Xuexin, too. I arranged with him yesterday that we would go together.

Mei : I'm sorry. This afternoon I have to go to the hospital to see a friend.

White: Shall I see you to the hospital?

Mei : You don't need to. I'll go by myself [and that's all].

White: In that case I'll go to the barber shop and get a haircut.

Mei : Right. I see you need a haircut.

White: I haven't had a haircut since almost two weeks before starting off. Meiyong, I'm starving. You must be hungry too. Let's go eat now.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. Three days ago I went to the school and took care of the entrance formalities.
- 1.2. I graduated from college three years ago.
- 2.1. Yesterday Wang was in an automobile accident. It was in the papers today.
- 2.2. There was an announcement in the paper that Miss Zhang is getting married.
- 2.3. There's a lot of news about physical culture in the newspaper today.
- 2.4. In what newspaper was that [matter] carried?
- 3.1. That movie wasn't so good, but it was played up terrifically.
- 3.2. To do business you have to advertise.
- 3.3. Wang is always blowing me up, saying I'm very talented.
- 3.4. He's now engaged in foreign propaganda work.
- 4.1. Every department store has reduced its prices now.
- 4.2. That store has the [three] big red characters for GIGANTIC SALE in the window.
- 4.3. The population here declined by half because of the war.
- 4.4. Not only has my salary not been increased, but in addition I've been cut fifteen dollars a month.
- 5.1. They advertise big sales, but (their) discounts aren't large.
- 5.2. Did you get a discount when you bought the typewriter?
- 5.3. We're having a big sale today. We're giving a 40-per-cent discount on everything.
- 6.1. She likes to wear silk [clothes] best.
- 7.1. [The price of] satin is relatively high.
- 7.2. Chinese silks and satins are world-famous.

- 8.1. America has a lot of antique shops.
- 9.1. As soon as it gets to be the week end the restaurants all do a good business.
- 9.2. Our family has been merchants for several generations.
- 10.1. Mr. Wang will be coming from Japan. After he comes I must entertain him.
- 10.2. The plane hasn't arrived yet. Let's go sit a while in the waiting room.
- 11.1. Many thanks for [your] coming here to my place.
- 12.1. That man is steady and trustworthy.
- 12.2. Frankly speaking, he's not so clever. He just works hard.
- 13.1. Chinese women's gowns are attractive and economical in material.
- 14.1. Miss Wang is getting married. I'm presenting her with material for a dress.
- 14.2. How much is the material for this Chinese gown?
- 15.1. A Chinese guitar has a very nice sound.
- 16.1. My younger sister is very fond of playing the Chinese guitar.
- 17.1. Old-style Chinese stores still use the abacus in reckoning accounts.
- 18.1. I still intend to find a house. I'm living at the Wangs' temporarily for a few days.
- 19.1. I haven't seen Wang for a good many days. After a few days I must go see him.
- 20.1. This dress material is too thin. If you wear it in the winter it will certainly not be warm.
- 21.1. This [sheet of] paper is too thick. Don't use it to write airmail letters.
- 21.2. This house is very strongly built. You see how thick the walls are.
- 22.1. This ice can be eaten. It's artificial, made from clean water.
- 23.1. China already had silk several thousand years ago.
- 23.2. This dress material is real silk, not rayon.
- 24.1. He's a sales clerk in the Great China Department Store.
- 25.1. The water in this river is quite deep.
- 25.2. Dark walls don't get dirty easily.
- 26.1. He wrote that book in simple language [lit. very simply], but the ideas are quite profound.
- 27.1. I'm presenting you with material for a dress. Please go pick it out yourself.
- 27.2. No matter what he buys he's awfully choosy.
- 28.1. I get up daily at six in the morning so as to get a little more work done.

- 28.2. The reason I'm living here is to be a little closer to school.
- 29.1. The thing I dislike most is going out and socializing.
- 29.2. He has too many social engagements. He has to go out every day.
- 30.1. The section of Sun Yatsen Avenue at the western end is very rough.
- 30.2. Yesterday I read several Chinese historical tales. They were very entertaining.
- 31.1. Do you sell this material by length or by weight?
- 31.2. We haven't got around to discussing that matter.
- 32.1. Yesterday I bought several yards of dress material. It was very cheap.
- 33.1. Please pack all the clothes in the trunk.
- 33.2. My suitcase is packed full. It can't hold any more.
- 34.1. How much is a box of candy?
- 34.2. What's in this box?
- 35.1. When I bought something yesterday the sales clerk gave me the wrong change. I gave him five dollars. He should have given me \$1.90 in change, (but instead) he gave me \$1.20.
- 36.1. This [kind of] stationery is \$2.30 a box.
- 37.1. Please give me an envelope.
- 38.1. Look at how beautiful the scenery is here.
- 39.1. It's cheaper to send a post card than to send a letter.
- 40.1. Yesterday I sent a package home.
- 41.1. How much does it cost to register this letter?
- 41.2. Registered letters are not likely to be lost.
- 42.1. You follow this road straight north and you'll get there.
- 42.2. It's not easy to cooperate with him. You have to go along with his ideas in everything.
- 42.3. When you go out to the bookstore please [at your convenience] buy a book for me.
- 43.1. [May I ask] how much is the postage [to be put] on a letter from here to America?
- 44.1. Sending an air letter is cheaper than sending an airmail letter.
- 45.1. Day after tomorrow I'm going to the country to see a friend.
- 45.2. I won't graduate from college until year after next.
- 45.3. Three days from now I'm going to visit Mr. Wang.
- 46.1. It's not far from here to the police station.
- 47.1. I have to go to the post office to buy some stamps.

- 48.1. I have to send Mr. Wang a wire asking him to go to the airport to meet me tomorrow afternoon.
- 48.2. The telegraph office is on Market Street.
- 49.1. Put this pile of books in order.
- 49.2. My hair is too long. I have to get a haircut today.
- 50.1. A barber shop has recently opened near us.
- 50.2. In the afternoon I'm going to the photographer's, as the school has asked for my photograph.
- 51.1. May I clip off the edges of this photograph?
- 51.2. Please hand me that big pair of scissors.
- 51.3. My hair is so long because I haven't had a haircut for a long time.
- 52.1. Has Mr. Wang ever been married?
- 52.2. That country has had several revolutions.
- 52.3. Mr. Wang didn't graduate until last year.
- 52.4. I first have to go congratulate Mr. Zhang. It wouldn't do not to extend my congratulations.
- 52.5. You see I'm so busy that I haven't even had my hair cut.
- 53.1. Stand there and don't move. I'll take a picture of you.
- 53.2. I'm dead tired. I can't walk any more.
- 53.3. Come, I'll help you. How can you take so many things by yourself?
- 53.4. But I certainly can't move that big table by myself.
- 54.1. My mother[*'s body*] isn't so strong. She's always getting sick.
- 54.2. He [*lit. his body*] is very healthy.
- 54.3. I don't have any money with me.
- 55.1. When does he start for England?

Review Sentences

1. In my job I'm paid by the month.
2. He put an ad in the paper to buy a house.
3. He's a fine speaker. It would be most suitable for him to do publicity work.
4. The population here has decreased by 30 per cent.
5. The East Asia Department Store is having a big sale today. They're giving a 30-per-cent discount.
6. Dr. Wang has returned from abroad. I must entertain him
7. I'm living temporarily here at Professor Zhang's.

- 8. When you buy the shirt for me please pick out a thin one [for me] so that it won't be too hot [lit. to avoid being hot in wearing it].
- 9. I listen to the radio every evening in order to practice English.
- 10. He spends more time socializing than working. [lit. His daily socializing compared to the time in working is still more.]
- 11. The new highway skirts [lit. was built skirting] the seashore.
- 12. Last semester after exams were over our school had a two-week vacation.
- 13. I got a wire from him week before last.
- 14. You [twenty people now] divide into two groups and stand apart [lit. on two sides].
- 15. Can you guarantee that matter?
- 16. Today Professor Wang again cut short his class by ten minutes.
- 17. I discovered only today that I had lost my watch.
- 18. They left there after the revolution [developed].
- 19. I never go to such dull parties.
- 20. Little Wan has damaged my bike.

Notes

- 1. Substituting X for a time word for 'day,' 'week,' 'month,' or 'year,' the present and past expressions equivalent to 'this X,' 'one X ago,' 'two X's ago,' 'three X's ago' are as follows:

This X		
jīntian	•	'today'
jīnnian		'this year'
zhèi(ge) xīngqī		'this week'
zhèige yuè		'this month'

One X ago		
zuótian		'yesterday'
qùnnian		'last year'
shàng(ge) xīngqī		'last week'
shàngge yuè		'last month'

Two X's ago		
qiántian		'day before yesterday,' 'two days ago'
qiánnian		'year before last,' 'two years ago'

shàng shàng(ge) xīnqī	}	'week before last,' 'two weeks ago'
liǎngge xīngqī yǐqián		
shàng shàngge yuè	}	'month before last,' 'two months ago'
liǎngge yuè yǐqián		

Three X's ago

dà qiántian	}	'three days ago'
sāntiān yǐqián		
dà qiánnian	}	'three years ago'
sānnián yǐqián		
sāngge xīnqī yǐqián		'three weeks ago'
sāngge yuè yǐqián		'three months ago'

2. Future expressions, constructed in a fashion parallel to those listed in Note 1, are as follows:

One X from now

míngtian	'tomorrow'
míngnian	'next year'
xià(ge) xīngqī	'next week'
xià(ge) yuè	'next month'

Two X's from now

hòutian	'day after tomorrow,' 'two days from now'
hòunian	'year after next,' 'two years from now'
xià xià(ge) xīngqī	'week after next,' 'two weeks from now'
liǎngge xīngqī yǐhòu	
xià xià(ge) yuè	'month after next,' 'two months from now'
liǎngge yuè yǐhòu	

Three X's from now

dà hòutian	'three days from now'
dà hòunian	'three years from now'
sāngge xīngqī yǐhòu	'three weeks from now'
sāngge yuè yǐhòu	'three months from now'

3. A discount of X per cent is stated in Chinese in terms of the amount left still to be paid, the formula being:

dǎ $\frac{100-X}{10}$ zhé	'give a discount of X per cent'
---------------------------	---------------------------------

Examples:

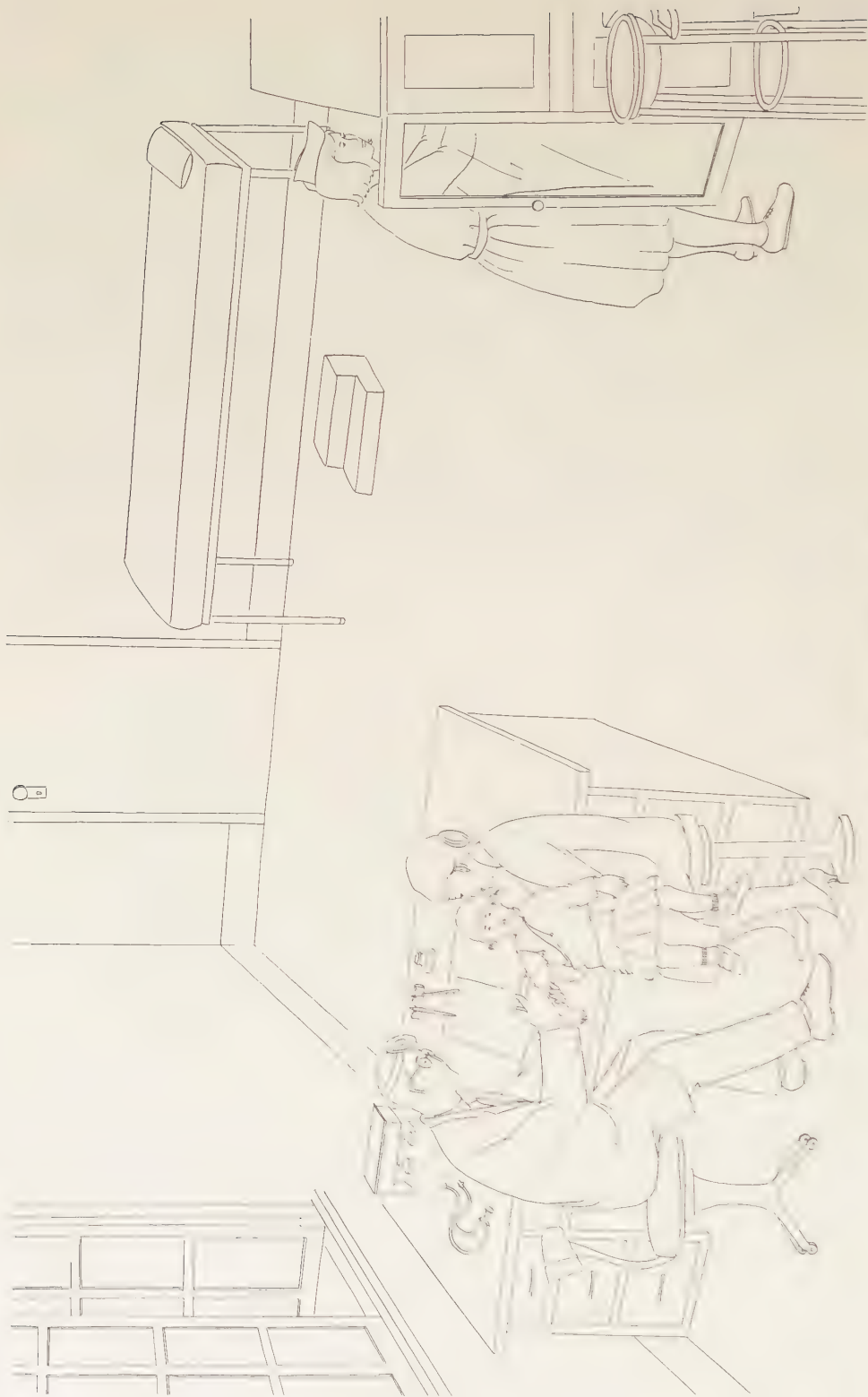
dǎ bāzhé	'give a discount of 20 per cent'
dǎ bāwǔzhé	'give a discount of 15 per cent'

4. The V-O (verb-object) construction is characterized by varying degrees of freedom. Some verbs take many different objects (mǎi shū 'buy books,' mǎi bǐ 'buy pens'), and some objects are used with many different verbs (mǎi shū 'buy books,' xiě shū 'write books'). In contrast to these, some verbs and objects occur only in certain fixed combinations. For example, only two or three nouns occur as objects of the verb bì 'finish,' and only a few verbs take the syllable hūn 'marriage' as object. We write as single words compounds in which the verb and object are limited in these ways.

Listed below are all the V-O compounds that have appeared in the lessons so far. With some of them (not all), the position of verb and object may be transposed, so that the object comes first, forming a topic-comment construction; these are marked with an asterisk. Sentences illustrating the separation of V and O in these compounds and the transposition of the object before the verb are given above in sentences 52.1-5, p. 415.

bàogào	'report'	jiēhūn	'get married'
bìyè	'graduate'	kǎoshì	'examine'
cānguān	'visit'	*lífǎ	'cut hair'
chūjià	'marry'	mǎnyì	'satisfied'
dájiǎo	'trouble'	sàipǎo	'race on foot'
*dàoxǐ	'congratulate'	shīyíng	'miss'
fàngjià	'have vacation'	tǎoyàn	'dislike'
gémìng	'revolt'	tíyì	'suggest'
*guàhào	'register'	tíqián	'update'
*guǎiwān	'turn'	*yònggōng	'studious'
jiǎnchá	'inspect'	yóuyǒng	'swim'
*jiǎnfǎ	'cut hair'	zhùyì	'emphasize'

5. The Manchus, who ruled China from 1644 to 1911, were organized into qí 'banners' and hence were known also as 'banner men.' The qí páo (Dialogue, line 40), literally 'banner gown,' derives its name from the Manchus. It is a long, sheath-like gown slit at the sides.



“Nǐ méi dǎguo yùfang zhēn ma?”

Dì Èrshiyīkè. Tán Shēng Bìng

Huìhuà: Měiyīng gēn Wénshān chīwánle zhōngfàn zài fànguǎr zuòzhe tán huà.

Bái: Měiyīng, nǐ dào yīyuàn kàn de nèiwèi shēng bìng de péngyou wǒ rènshi ma?

5 Měi: Nǐ jiànguo. Jiù shì nèiwèi Huáng Tàitai. Nǐ hái jìde ba?

Bái: Shì bu shì nèiwèi zuòjiā Huáng Xiānshengde tàitai?

Měi: Shìde. Jiù shì tā.

Bái: Jìde, jìde. Huáng Tàitai shì shénmo bìng a?

Měi: Wèi bìng kāidào.

10 Bái: Nà bu shì hěn wēixiǎn de ma?

Měi: Wēixiǎn shì wēixiǎn, kěshì xiànzài yīxué jìnbù.

Bái: Yǐjīng kāidào jǐtiān le?

15 Měi: Yǐjīng sìtiān le. Jīngguò de qíngxíng hěn hǎo. Kāidào nèitiān wǒmen dōu hěn tì ta dānxīn de. Tā dǎ de máyào zhēn shì quán shēn mǎzú de. Kāidào yǐhòu háojǐge zhōngtóu cái xǐngguolai.

Bái: Yǐjīng sìtiān le, guòle wēixiǎn qī le.

Měi: Shuōqǐ Huáng jiā lai, zhēn dǎoméi. Qián jǐge yuè Huáng Xiānsheng chuánrǎnshàng liúxíngxìng gǎnmào. Bingle hěn jiǔ, qǐngle jǐge xīngqíde jià. Xiànzài Huáng Tàitai yòu kāidào.

20 Bái: “Méi bìng jiù shì fú.” Tándào bìng, tīngshuō Yuǎn-Dà zuì jìn chénglǐle yīxué yuàn, shì bu shì?

Měi: Duìle. Chénglǐle hái bu dào yìnián ne.

Bái: Zěnmoyàng?

Měi: Jù tāmen niàn yīkēde rén shuō hái bú cuò.

25 Bái: Shèbei hǎo bu hǎo?

Měi: Cái chénglǐ yìnián dāngrán shèbei bú huì tài wánquan de.

Bái: Wǒ jìde yǐqián wǒ zài zhèr de shíhou yīwushǐ xiǎode kělián.

Měi: Xiànzài yǐjīng kuòchōng le. Yòu tiānle liǎngwèi yīsheng, jǐwèi hùshi.

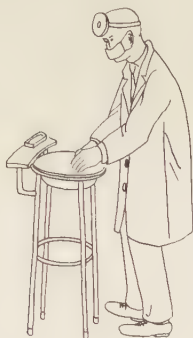
30 Bái: Yǐqiándē yīsheng hái bú cuò.

- Měi: Yīsheng dōu hěn hǎo. Kàn bìng hěn zǐxí. Kànwánle yǐhòu hěn xiángxide jiěshi gěi nǐ tīng.
- 35 Bái: Wǒ jìde cóngqián yǒu yíci wǒ déle hěn lihaide gǎnmào. Fāshāo, késou, tóu téng, sāngzi téng, wèikǒu yě bù hǎo. Fāshāo shāode hěn lìhai. Yí shì wēndù biǎo shāodao yībǎi líng sì dù. Bù xiǎng chī dōngxī, lǎo xiǎng tǎngzhe, shènzhīyǒu wǒ shénmo yě bù xiǎng zuò.
- Měi: Na dàgài shì liúxíngxìng gǎnmào ba? Nǐ méi dǎguo yùfáng zhēn ma?
- 40 Bái: Méi dǎguo.
- Měi: Nèige shíhou yīwushǐ dàgài hái méi kuòchōng ne.
- Bái: Nèige shíhou zhǐ yǒu yíge yīsheng yíge hùshi. Jiéguǒ wǒ dēngle liǎngge zhōngtóu cái líndào wǒ. Nǐ kan tāmen mángdào shénmo chéngdu.
- 45 Měi: Bìngrén běnlái jiù bù shūfu. Dēng yīsheng dēngde shíjiān yì chángjiǔ gèng nánguò le.
- Bái: Kě bu shì ma. Dēngde wǒ hěn zháojí.
- Měi: Xiànzài bǐ yǐqián kuài duō le.
- Bái: Tīng shuō cǐdì yīyuàn bìng rén xiāngdāng yōngjǐ.
- 50 Měi: Shízài shì zhèizhōng qíngxìng. Yīyuàn shǎo bìngrén duō, yīyuàn měitiān dōu yǒu hěn duō rén zài nèr páiduì.
- Bái: Bìngrén páiduì ye tài kělián le.
- Měi: Búdàn shì páiduì, zhèrde yīyuàn zài shǒuxushang yě yǒu hěn duō bù héilǐ de.
- 55 Bái: Zěnmò bù héilǐ ne?
- Měi: Bǐrú shuō guāng dēng yīsheng kàn bìng kāi yàofāng bú suàn, hái dēi dēngzhe ná yào. Yàofáng pèi yào de shíjiān yě shì xiāngdāng cháng. Dēngde cái nǐ ne.
- Bái: Cǐdì zhù yuàn de bìngrén duō ma?
- 60 Měi: Duō, měi yíge yīyuàn bìngfáng dōu shì mǎn de.
- Bái: Yàoshi shēng bìng bìdēi zhù yuàn zěnmò bàn ne?
- Měi: Bìngrén zhù yuàn bìdēi xiān dēngjì. Wǒmen yǒu yíge qīnqī shēng bìng, dēngjìle sāngē xīngqī cái yǒu bìngfáng.
- Bái: Zhèrde yákē yīsheng hǎo ma?
- 65 Měi: Yákē yīsheng yǒu bu cuò de. Wǒmen jiā rènshi yíwèi yá yīsheng hěn hǎo. Zěnmò, nǐ yào zhǎo yá yīsheng ma?
- Bái: Wǒde yá yǒu diār máobìng. Yéxǔ jiānglái zhǎo yīsheng kànkàn.
- Měi: Wǒ huíqu bǎ nèiwèi yá yīshengde dìzhǐ xiěxialai jìgei nǐ.
- Bái: Xièxie nǐ. Aiya, Měiyīng, shíjiān bù zǎo le. Wǒ sòng nǐ dào yīyuàn kàn Huáng Tàitai qu.
- 70

Měi: Nǐ bú bì sòng wo. Nǐ hái děi qu lífǎ, gēn Xuéxīn yòu yǒu yuēhui.
Wǒ gù yíge sānlúnchē jiù qù le.

Bái: Nènmo wǎnshang jiàn le.

Měi: Wǎnshang jiàn.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (6) zuòjiā writer, author (N) [lit. do house]
 1.1. Wǒ bù xǐhuan nèige zuòjiā xiěde shū.
- 2.0. (9) wèi stomach
 wèikǒu appetite [lit. stomach mouth]
 wèi bìng stomach disorder
 2.1. Nǐde wèi bìng hěn róngyi zhì.
 2.2. Zhèi jǐtiān wǒde wèikǒu bù hǎo. Bù xiǎng chī dōngxī.
- 3.0. (9) kāidāo operate (VO), operation (N) [lit. open knife]
 3.1. Tā kāile bù zhīdào jǐcì dāo le.
 3.2. Tāde wèi bìng dàgài bú bì kāidāo.
- 4.0. (11) yīxué medicine (as a subject of study)
 yīxué yuàn medical school, medical institute
 4.1. Tā duì yīxué hěn yǒu yánjiū.
 4.2. Wǒ bièyè yǐhòu dǎsuàn kǎo Yuǎn-Dà yīxué yuàn.
- 5.0. (11) jìnbù advance, make progress (IV); advance, progress (N) [lit. advance step]
 5.1. Tāde Zhōngguo huà yìtiān bǐ yìtiān jìnbù.
 5.2. Tāde jìnbù hěn kuài. Wǒ shízài bǐbushàng ta.
- 6.0. (14) dānxīn worried, concerned (SV) [lit. carry (a burden on) the heart]
 tǐ A dānxīn be worried about A
 6.1. Tāde bìng méi wēixiǎn. Nǐ bié dānxīn.

- 6.2. Tā kāi chē wǒ zhēn tì ta dānxīn.
- 7.0. (14) má numb (SV)
 máyào anesthetic
 shàng máyào give an anesthetic
- 7.1. Wǒ zhèi jǐtiān zuǒ shǒu lǎo má.
- 7.2. Tā shì zhuānmén shàng máyào dé yīsheng.
- 8.0. (14) zhēn needle, pin (N)
 dǎ zhēn give or receive an injection
 dǎ máyào zhēn inject an anesthetic
- 8.1. Wǒ dào Wáng Dàifu nèr qu dǎ zhēn.
- 9.0. (15) zuì intoxicated
 hēzuì drink to intoxication
 mázuì anesthetize, drug, dope
 quán shēn mázuì general anesthesia
- 9.1. Zhèizhōng jiǔ bú lìhai. Hē duōshao yě zuǐbuliǎo.
- 9.2. Wáng Xiānsheng kāidào yǐqián dǎ de shì quán shēn mázuì zhēn.
- 10.0. (17) dǎoméi out of luck, unfortunate (SV)
- 10.1. Nǐ shuō tā duó dǎoméi. Zuótian zài lùshang bǎ xuéfèi gěi diū le.
- 11.0. (18) chuánrǎn infect (with disease or bad habits) [lit. spread infect]
 chuánrǎnshang be infected (RV)
- 11.1. Wǒ yǐjīng dǎle zhēn le. Bú huì chuánrǎn de.
- 11.2. Zhèi jǐtiān tóngxué shāng fēng de hěn duō, suóyì wǒ yě chuánrǎnshang le.
- 12.0. (18) liúxíng prevalent, widespread (SV)
 liúxíng bìng epidemic disease
- 12.1. Qián jǐnián zhèizhōng yīfu hěn liúxíng.
- 12.2. Xiànzài yǒu yìzhōng liúxíng bìng chuánrǎnde hěn kuài.
- 13.0. (18) -xíng nature, quality (Note 1)
 liúxíngxìng epidemicity, epidemic nature
 wēixiǎnxìng dangerousness, dangerous quality
- 13.1. Zhèizhōng bìng shì yìzhōng liúxíngxìng de.
- 13.2. Zuò nèizhōng gōngzuò wēixiǎnxìng hěn dà.
- 14.0. (18) gǎnmào cold, grippe, influenza (N), have a cold, grippe, influenza (V)

- liúxíngxìng gǎnmào epidemic influenza
- 14.1. Wǒ zhèi jǐtiān gǎnmào le. Shēnshang hěn bu shūfu.
- 14.2. Yī jiǔ yī bā nián liúxíngxìng gǎnmào sǐ de rén fēicháng duō.
- 15.0. (19) jià vacation
- qǐngjià ask for leave (VO) [lit. invite vacation]
- gàojià ask for leave (VO) [lit. inform vacation]
- 15.1. Lǎoshī, jīntiān xiàwǔ wǒ qǐngjià, yīnwei wǒ yǒu yàojǐn de shì.
- 15.2. Méi fàngjià yǐqián wǒ jiù gào le liǎngtiān jià le.
- 16.0. (20) fú blessings, happiness, prosperity, good fortune (N) (Note 2)
- 16.1. Zhōngguó rén xiǎng érnǚ duō shì yǒu fú.
- 17.0. (24) -kē branch of medicine
- yīkē medicine (in general), medical science
- nèikē internal medicine
- wàikē surgery [lit. outside medicine]
- xiǎo'érkē pediatrics [lit. small child medicine]
- pífukē dermatology
- yǎnkē ophthalmology
- 17.1. Niàn yīkē hěn xīnkǔ.
- 17.2. Tā shì wǒmen yīyuàn zuì hǎode wàikē dàifu.
- 17.3. Wǒde yǎnjīng bu shūfu. Wǒ děi zhǎo yǎnkē dàifu qu kànkàn.
- 18.0. (25) shèbei equipment, furnishings (N) [lit. establish prepare]
- 18.1. Nèige yóuxichǎngde shèbei zhēn bú cuò.
- 18.2. Kètīng gēn fàntīng de shèbei yígòng yìqiān duō kuài qián.
- 19.0. (27) yīwushǐ infirmary, clinic, doctor's office [lit. medical matter room]
- 19.1. Wǒmen xuéxiàode yīwushǐ jiù néng róng shíjǐge rén.
- 20.0. (27) kělián pitiful, pitiable (SV) [lit. can pity]
- 20.1. Nèige hái zi zhēn kělián. Cái qīsuǐ fùmǔ jiù dōu sǐ le.
- 21.0. (28) kuòchōng extend, enlarge, expand (V) [lit. enlarge fill]
- 21.1. Wǒmen xuéxiào xiànzài kuòchōng le. Xià xuéqī kéyǐ shōu liǎngqiān xuésheng le.
- 22.0. (29) hùshi nurse (N) [lit. protect person]
- 22.1. Wǒ mèimei zhōngxué bìyè yǐhòu dǎsuan xué hùshi.
- 23.0. (31) zǐxì careful, meticulous (SV) [lit. careful fine]

- 23.1. Tā zuò shì zuòde hěn zǐxí.
- 24.0. (32) xiángxì paying attention to minute details (SV) [lit. de-tailed fine]
- 24.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nèijiàn shì xiángxíangxìxìde gàosu wǒ.
- 25.0. (32) jiěshì explain (TV) [lit. unfasten release]
- 25.1. Wǒ juéde Wáng Jiàoshòu jiǎng shùxué jiěshìde bù qīngchu. Nǐ rènwei zěnmóyàng?
- 26.0. (33) (fā)shāo have a fever (VO) [lit. emit burn]
fārè have a fever (VO) [lit. emit hot]
fālěng have chills (VO) [lit. emit cold]
- 26.1. Tā jīntian yǒu diār fāshāo.
- 26.2. Wǒ yìhuěr fālěng yìhuěr fārè.
- 26.3. Wáng Dàifu, wǒ shāode hěn lǐhai. Bù xiǎng chī dōngxī.
- 27.0. (34) késou cough (N, V)
- 27.1. Nǐ késou duó jiǔ le?
- 27.2. Zhèi shì zhì késou de yào. Nǐ měitiān chī sāncì. Fàn qián chī.
- 28.0. (34) téng hurt, ache, be sore (SV) (Note 3)
- 28.1. Wǒ èn nǐ zhèr téng bù téng?
- 28.2. Wǒ tóu bù téng le.
- 28.3. Wǒ jiu késou. Bù tóu téng.
- 29.0. (34) sāngzi throat (N)
- 29.1. Wǒ sāngzi téng. Nǐ kànkàn wǒ sāngzi hóng le méi you.
- 30.0. (35) dù degree (M)
gāodù height
rèdù temperature
- 30.1. Zhèr xiàtian bù hěn rè. Zuì rède shíhou yě bú dào jiǔshìdù
- 30.2. Wǒ xiǎng kǎo hángkōng xuéxiào, kěshì wǒde gāodù bù hé biāozhǔn.
- 30.3. Tāde rèdù xiàwǔ bǐ shàngwǔ zēngjiā yí dù.
- 31.0. (35) wēn warm (SV) (also, a surname)
wēndù temperature
wēndù biǎo thermometer
shì wēndù biǎo take a temperature [lit. try thermometer]
- 31.1. Qǐng nǐ dìgei wǒ yìbēi wēn shuǐ.
- 31.2. Tāde wēndù hěn gāo. Hěn wēixiǎn.
- 31.3. Shíguo wēndù biǎo le ma?

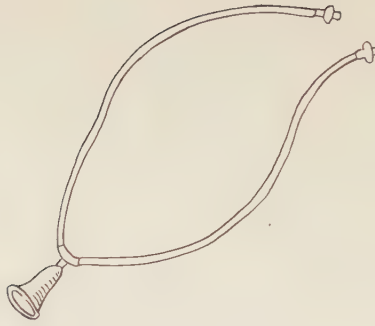
- 32.0. (36) tǎng lie down (SV)
- 32.1. Wǒ měitiān shuì jiǎo yǐqián tǎngzài chuángshang kàn yíge zhōngtóude shū.
- 32.2. Nǐ xiān tǎngzhe xiūxi yìhuěr.
- 33.0. (36) shènzhìyú even to, even so far as, culminating in [lit. extremely to at]
- 33.1. Wǒ zhèi liǎngtiān yùbei kǎoshì. Mángde bùdéliǎo. Shènzhìyú lián jiào dōu bù shuì.
- 34.0. (38) yùfáng take preventive measures against (V) [lit. beforehand protect]
- 34.1. Wǒmen chī de dōngxì yào gānjīng, yùfáng shēng bìng.
- 34.2. Xiànzài nèige dìfang yǒu chuánrǎn bìng. Yàoshi nǐ qu biděi xiān dǎ yùfáng zhēn.
- 35.0. (42) jiéguǒ solution, answer (to a problem), outcome, final move (of a game), result, conclusion (N) [lit. bear fruit]
- 35.1. Zuótian Lǎo Wēn qīng wǒ chī fàn. Yīnwei wǒ tài máng jiéguǒ wǒ méi qù.
- 36.0. (43) lín located near to and facing, approach, be near (TV)
- lín dào N (V) become [someone's] turn (to V)
- lín V yǐqián just before V-ing
- 36.1. Nǐ shénmo shíhou dào Yīngguo qù? . . . Wǒ lín zǒu de shíhou yídìng gàosu nǐ.
- 36.2. Xiānsheng jiào nǐde míngzi le. Lín dào nǐ shuō le.
- 36.3. Tā lín chū guó yǐqián dào wǒ zhèr láiguó le.
- 37.0. (44) chéngdù degree, standard, quality, qualification (N) [lit. pattern degree]
- 37.1. Zhèige gōngzuò tā néng zuò ma? Tā shì shénmo chéngdù?
- 38.0. (45) bìng rén sick person, patient (N)
- 38.1. Wǒmen yīyuàn néng róng sānbǎi wǔshí bìng rén.
- 39.0. (45) běnlái originally, at first, in the first place, to start with (MA) [lit. origin come]
- 39.1. Běnlái wǒ shì xué shùxué de. Yǐhòu wǒ gǎi niàn wénxué le.
- 40.0. (45) chángjiǔ last a long time, be permanent (SV) [lit. long protracted]
- 40.1. Tā nèige gōngzuò bú shì chángjiǔ de, shì zhànshíde
- 41.0. (47) zháojí, zhāojí worried, upset, excited, flustered (VO) [lit. suffer upset]

- 41.1. Nǐ bié zháojí. Mǎnmǎrde zuò.
- 41.2. Zènmo diǎrde xiǎo shì gàn má zháo nènmo dàde jí ya?
- 42.0. (49) cǐ this (somewhat more literary than zhèi or zhèige)
- chú cǐ yǐwài apart from this, in addition to this
- cǐdì this place, hére
- 42.1. Wǒ jiù yǒu zhèi diār qián. Chú cǐ yǐwài jiù méi yǒu le.
- 42.2. Cǐdì mài gúdong de puzi zhēn bu shǎo.
- 43.0. (49) yōngjǐ crowd together, be crowded (SV) [lit. crowd squeeze]
- 43.1. Zhōumò shìchǎngde rén xiāngdāng yōngjǐ.
- 44.0. (51) páiduì queue up, stand in line (VO) [lit. row detachment]
- pái cháng duì form a long line
- 44.1. Kàngzhànde shíhou Zhōngguó rén mǎi mǐ, dōu děi páiduì.
- 44.2. Jīntian diànyīngyuàn mén kǒu mǎi diànyīng pào de rén pái cháng duì le.
- 45.0. (54) héilǐ be fitting, seemly, appropriate, in accord with what is right (SV) [lit. agree etiquette]
- 45.1. Zhèizhōng bànfa tài bu héilǐ le.
- 46.0. (56) guāng only, just
- guāng A bú suàn it's not enough that A
- 46.1. Wǒ měiyuè guāng chī fàn jiù děi liùshikuài qián.
- 46.2. Guāng yíge rén gěi qián bù xíng. Měi yíge rén dōu děi gěi qián.
- 46.3. Nǐ guāng huì shuō Zhōngguó huà bú suàn. Nǐ yě děi rènshi Hànzì.
- 47.0. (56) yàofāng(r) prescription (N) [lit. medicine direction]
- kāi yàofāng(r) write a prescription
- 47.1. Gěi wǒ yàofāng. Wǒ tì nǐ qù mǎi yào.
- 47.2. Dàifu gěi nǐ kāi yàofāng le méi you?
- 48.0. (57) yàofáng pharmacy, drugstore, dispensary [lit. medicine building]
- 48.1. Zhōngguode yàofáng guāng mài yào. Měiguode yàofáng bu guāng mài yào.
- 49.0. (57) pèi match, go with, complement (TV)
- pèi yào compound medicines, make up a prescription
- 49.1. Tā chuān yīfu hěn huì pèi yánse.

- 49.2. Zhāng Xiānsheng shì zài yàofáng pèi yào de.
- 50.0. (58) nì bored (with), fed up (with), tired of; boring, dull (SV)
- V nì tired of V-ing (RV)
- nìsi le bore(d) to death
- 50.1. Wǒ xīhuan chī Zhōngguó fàn. Xiāngxìn tiāntiān chī wǒ yě bú huì nì de.
- 50.2. Wǒ zuòle yíge lǐbàide huǒchē. Zhēn bǎ wǒ gěi zuònì le.
- 50.3. Tā lǎo shuō nèige gùshi. Nìsi rén le.
- 50.4. Wǒ chī kǎo yā yí bèizi yě chībunì.
- 51.0. (59) zhù yuàn stay in a hospital (VO)
- 51.1. Tā zhùle sānge yuède yuàn.
- 52.0. (60) bìngfáng hospital room, ward (N) [lit. sick room]
- 52.1. Zhāng Xiānsheng zhùzài dì shíqīhào bìngfáng.
- 53.0. (62) dēngjì register, check in (VO) [lit. record note]
- 53.1. Nǐ dēngjì le méi you? . . . Wǒ zǎo jiù dēngjì le.
- 53.2. Zhèige lǔguǎn dēngjì de shǒuxu hěn jiǎndān.
- 54.0. (64) yá tooth (N)
- yákē dentistry
- yá(ke) yīsheng } dentist
- yá(ke) dàifu }
- 54.1. Wǒde yá bù hǎo, cháng téng.
- 54.2. Nèige yákē yīshengde yīwushǐ shì zuì xīnde shèbei.
- 55.0. (72) gù employ, hire (TV)
- gùyuán employee
- 55.1. Gù qìchē měi yíge zhōngtóu duōshao qián?
- 55.2. Cǐdì gù rén hěn nán.
- 55.3. Tā zài nèige gōngsī dāng gùyuán.

Wēnxi Jùzi

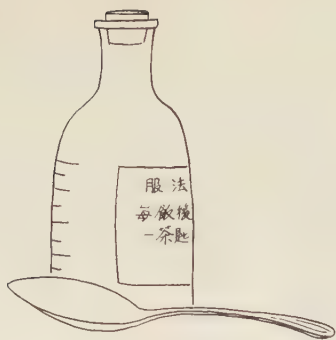
1. Jù yīsheng shuō tāde bìng bìděi kāidào.
2. Tāde gōngke bǐ yīqián jìnbù hēn duō.
3. Tā kāi qìchē kāide tài kuài. Tā yì chūqu wǒ jiù tī ta hēn dānxīn.
4. Tiānqì yīhuěr lěng yīhuěr rè zuì róngyì gǎnmào.
5. Zuótian nǐ méi dào xuéxiào lái. Nǐ qǐngjià le ma?



6. Nèige xiǎo xuéxiào xiànzài kuòchōng le. Néng róng liǎngqiān xuésheng.
7. Zhèige zì nǚ xiěcuò le. Qǐng nǐ zǐxǐ kànyikàn.
8. Zhèi liǎngge lìshǐ wèntí nǐ xiángxide dáyidá.
9. Wáng Jiàoshòu jiāo yǔyánxuē gěi wǒmen jiěshide fēicháng xiángxi.
10. Wǒ zhǐ shì tóu téng. Bìng bù fāshāo.
11. Wǒde yǎnjīng téngde hěn lihai. Wǒ děi zhǎo yǎnkē yīsheng kànkàn qu.
12. Nèige háizi bìng le. Tǎngle yìtiān yě méi qǐlai.
13. Tā yònggōng yòngde shènzhìyú jiào dōu shuǐ bu gòu.
14. Nǐ lín dào xuéxiào yǐqián xiān dào wǒ zhèr lái yíxià.
15. Nǐ xiān bié zháojí. Wǒmen mànman de xiǎng bànfa.
16. Jīntian nèige dà bǎi huò gōngsīde rén xiāngdāng yōngjǐ.
17. Wǒ rènwei nǐ tíyì de nèige bànfa bu héilǐ.
18. Nǐ guāng huì shuō le bù chéng. Děi ba sīshēng nòngzhǔn le.
19. Xià xuéqī wǒ děi huàn yíge xuéxiào. Zhèige xuéxiào wǒ niànnǐ le.
20. Lù tài yuǎn le. Wǒ děi gù chē qu.

Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒmen zài fànguǎr chī fàn de shíhou, wǒ wèn Měiyīng dào yīyuàn qu kàn shéi qu. Měiyīng shuō jiù shì nèiwèi zuòjiā Huáng Xiānshengde tàitai, wèi bìng kāidào. Měiyīng shuō tāmen jiā zhēn dàoméi. Qián jǐge yuè Huáng Xiānsheng bìngle hǎoxiē rìzi, xiànzài tàitai yòu kāidào. Rén
 5 zuì hǎo shì shēntǐ hǎo bù shēng bìng, jiànkāng dī yī. Měiyīng shuō Huáng Tàitai zài kāidào yǐqián dǎ máyào zhēn dǎ de shì quán shēn mázuì. Kǎile dǎo yǐhòu sìge zhōngtóu cái xǐngguolai. Péngyoumen dōu tì Huáng Tàitai dānxīn. Wúlùn shénmo bìng kāidào dōu yǒu yìdiār wēixiǎnxìng.



Wǒ zài Měiguó jiù zhīdao Yuǎn-Dà chénglìle yīxué yuàn. Wǒ wèn
 10 Měiyīng yīxuéyuàn zěnmoyàng. Měiyīng gàosu wǒ jù niàn yīkē de rén shuō
 hái bú cuò.

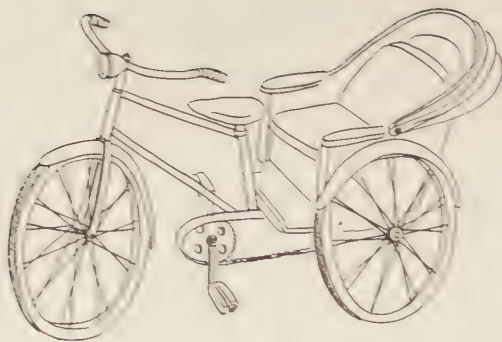
Shuōdào bìng rén gēn yīkē wǒ dào xiāngqilai cóngqián wǒ zài cǐdì shēng
 bìng de yíjiàn shìqing le. Yǐqián wǒ zài Yuǎn-Dà niàn shū de shíhòu,
 Yuǎn-Dàde yīwushǐ fēicháng xiǎo. Wǒ jiù gēn Měiyīng shuō, yǒu yíci wǒ
 15 chuánrǎnshang zhòng gǎnmào le—tóu téng, fāshāo, késou, bìngqiě rèdù
 hěn gāo. Hěn bu shūfu. Wǒ jiù dào yīwushǐ qu le. Yīwushǐ zhǐ yǒu
 yíge yīsheng gēn yíge hùshi, érqǐè nàitiān bìng rén tèbiéde duō, wǒ děngle
 bàntiān yě línbudào wo. Jiéguǒ děngle chàbuduo sānge zhōngtóu cái líndào
 wǒ. Měiyīng shuō xiànzài gēn yīqiándè qíngxíng bù tóng le. Yīsheng
 20 hùshi dōu zēngjiā le.

Wǒ zhīdao cǐdì rén kǒu hěn duō, yīyuàn shǎo, érqǐè yīsheng yě bú gòu.
 Měitiān qu kàn bìng de rén xiāngdāng duō, dōu děi páiduì. Měiyīng
 shuō búdàn yīsheng bú gòu, érqǐè yīyuànde bànfā yě bù hélǐ. Yíge bìng rén
 lián kàn bìng dài ná yào děng de shíjiān tài cháng le.

25 Wǒ yòu wèn Měiyīng cǐdì bìng rén yàoshi zhù yuàn róngyì ma? Měiyīng
 shuō yàoshi bìng rén bìdēi zhù yuàn, dēngjǐle yǐhòu jǐge xīngqī cái néng
 yǒu bìngfáng.

Zhèi liǎngtiān wǒde yá cháng téng, suóyì wǒ wèn Měiyīng cǐdì yǒu
 hǎo yìdiǎr de yá yīsheng méi you. Měiyīng shuō tāmen jiā rènshi yíwèi
 30 yákē yīsheng hěn hǎo.

Wǒ gēn Měiyīng zài fànguǎr zuòzhe tán huà bùzhǐbùjuéde yǐjīng
 liǎngdiǎn zhōng le. Wǒ xiǎng qu sòng Měiyīng dào yīyuàn qu kàn Huáng
 Tàitai, kěshi Měiyīng shuō tā gù sānlúncē zìjǐ qù, bú ràng wǒ sòng ta
 qu. Tā zhīdao wǒ lífā yǐhòu yě méi duōshao shíjiān le. Wǒ děngzhe
 35 Měiyīng zuò chē zǒule yǐhòu, wǒ jiù dào lífágǎn qu lífā.



Wèntí

1. Měiyīng shuō dào yīyuàn qù kàn péngyou. Wénshān wèn Měiyīng shénmo?
2. Nǐ zhīdao nèiwèi Huáng Tàitai tā zhàngfu shì shéi?
3. Měiyīng gàosu Wénshān Huáng Tàitai shēng de shénmo bìng?
4. Bái Wénshān shuō kāidào shì hěn wēixiǎn de, Měiyīng shuō shénmo?
5. Měiyīng shuō Huáng Tàitai kāidào de nèitiān tāmen hěn tì ta dānxīn. Wèi shénmo?
6. Měiyīng wèi shénmo shuō Huáng jiā dǎoméi ne?
7. Nǐ zhīdao Yuǎn-Dà yǒu yīxué yuàn méi you? Chénglǐ duō jiǔ le?
8. Wénshān wèn Měiyīng Yuǎn-Dà de yīxué yuàn zěnmoyàng, Měiyīng shuō shénmo?
9. Měiyīng shuō xiànzài yīwushíde dàifu dōu hěn hǎo. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō zěnmó hǎo?
10. Wénshān tā yīqián zài zhèr déguo shénmo bìng? Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō tā bìng de qíngxíng.
11. Měiyīng shuō tā dàgài shì shénmo bìng?
12. Shénmo jiào yùfáng zhēn? Nǐ dǎguo méi you?
13. Wénshān shuō cóngqián de yīwushí zěnmó máng?
14. Wèi shénmo xiànzài yīwushí bǐ yīqián kuàide duō le?
15. Měiyīng shuō zhèr de yīyuàn yōngjǐ shì shénmo yuányīn?
16. Měiyīng shuō zhèr de yīyuàn zěnmó bù héilǐ ne?
17. Měiyīng shuō xiàng zhù cǐdì yīyuàn de bìngfáng róngyì bù róngyì?
18. Wénshān wèi shénmo wèn cǐdì yákē yīsheng hǎo bù hǎo?
19. Měiyīng bǎ yákē yīshengde dìzhǐ gàosu Wénshān méi you? Tā shuō tā cǐdì gàosu tā?
20. Wénshān sòng Měiyīng dào yīyuàn qù méi you? Wèi shénmo Měiyīng bù ràng Wénshān sòng?
21. Tā shuō yào dān gāosu nǐ yào nǐ yě rènshi de péngyou shēng bìng, nǐ shuō shénmo?

22. Yàoshi yíge péngyou shēng bìng kāidào, nǐ xīn lǐtōu zěnmoyàng?
23. Yàoshi nǐ jièshao gěi péngyou yíwèi yīsheng nǐ shuō nèiwèi yīsheng hǎo nǐ zěnmō shuō?
24. Yàoshi yǒu rén gàosu nǐ bìngrén tài duō zài yīyuàn mén kǒu páiduì nǐ shuō shénmo?
25. Yàoshi yǒu rén cóng biéde dìfang lái tā xīwang nǐ jièshao yíwèi yīsheng gěi tā nǐ zěnmō shuō?
26. Yàoshi nǐ gēn péngyou zài yíkuàr péngyou yào dào biéde dìfang qu nǐ shuō shénmo?
27. Yàoshi nǐ xiǎng dào bié chū qu péngyou shuō sòng nǐ nǐ zěnmō shuō?
28. Qǐng nǐ shuō nǐ yǐqián shēng bìng de qíngxíng.
29. Rén shēng bìng zuì gāode wēndù shì duōshao?
30. Yàoshi zhèige dìfang yǒu liúxíngxìng gǎnmào nǐ zěnmō bàn?

Dialogue: Meiying and Vincent, after finishing lunch, sit and talk in the restaurant.

White: Meiying, do I know that sick person you're going to the hospital to see?

Mei : You've met her. It's [that] Mrs. Huang. Do you [still] remember her?

White: Is she the wife of Mr. Huang, the writer?

Mei : Yes. That's the one.

White: I remember. What's the matter with Mrs. Huang?

Mei : She's had an operation for a stomach disorder.

White: Isn't that a dangerous operation?

Mei : It's dangerous, yes, but medicine has progressed [now].

White: How long has it been since the operation?

Mei : [Already] four days. Everything has gone very well. We were all very much worried about her on the day of the operation. She had a general anesthetic and she didn't come out of it until quite a few hours after the operation.

White: Since four days have gone by [already], the danger period is past.

Mei : Speaking of the Huang family, they certainly have had hard luck. A few months ago Mr. Huang caught the [epidemic] flu. He was sick for a long time and asked for several weeks' leave. And now Mrs. Huang has an operation.

White: "To be well is to be lucky." Speaking of sickness, I hear Far Eastern has recently set up a medical school; is that true?

Mei : That's right. It was established less than a year ago.

White: What's it like?

Mei : According to the people studying medicine, it's not bad at all.

White: Is it well equipped?

Mei : Since it was established just a year ago, the equipment of course can't be too complete.

White: I remember when I was here before, the infirmary was pitifully small.

Mei : It's expanded now [already]. They've added a couple of doctors and several nurses.

White: The doctor who was there before was quite good.

Mei : The doctors are all very good. They examine you very meticulously. After they've finished looking you over, they explain in detail for you [to hear].

White: I remember once [in the past] I caught a terrible cold. I had a fever and a cough along with a headache and sore throat. I didn't have any appetite. The fever was terrific—[When my temperature was taken it had gone to] 104°. I didn't want to eat anything and felt like lying down all the time [to the point where] I didn't want to do anything at all.

Mei : That probably was the [epidemic] flu. You didn't get a [preventive] shot?

White: No.

Mei : At that time the infirmary probably hadn't expanded yet.

White: [At that time] there was only one doctor and a nurse. As a result, I waited a couple of hours before it came my turn to see the doctor. You see how busy they were [lit. busy to what degree].

Mei : Sick people don't feel well to begin with. If [in waiting for a doctor] they have to wait a long time it's even harder to bear.

White: That's so. I got pretty burned up [from] waiting.

Mei : It's a lot faster now than it used to be.

White: I hear the hospitals here are rather crowded.

Mei : [They really are.] There are too few hospitals and too many patients. A lot of people wait in line at the hospitals every day.

White: It's a pity that patients have to wait in line.

Mei : It's not just the standing in line. There are a lot of things that aren't right in the procedures of the hospitals here.

White: How so?

Mei : For example, [in addition to] waiting for a doctor to look at you and give you a prescription, you still have to wait to get the medicine. It takes quite a long time for the dispensary to fill a prescription. You get bored with waiting.

White: Are there a lot of patients in the hospitals here?

Mei : Yes. Every hospital has all its beds [lit. rooms] full.

White: What if you get sick and have to go to the hospital?

- Mei : Before a patient enters a hospital, he has to sign up [first]. We have a relative who took sick, and there was no room until three weeks after he'd signed up.
- White: How are the dentists here?
- Mei : There are some [dentists] that are good. Our family knows a dentist who's very good. Why? Do you want to see a dentist?
- White: There's something wrong with one of my teeth. Perhaps [later] I'll have a dentist take a look at it.
- Mei : When I get back (home) I'll write down the address [of that dentist] and send it to you.
- White: Thanks. Gosh, Meiying, it's getting late. I'll see you to the hospital to visit Mrs. Huang.
- Mei : You don't need to. You still have to get a haircut, and in addition you have an appointment with Xuexin. I'll hire a pedicab [and then go].
- White: Then I'll see you this evening.
- Mei : See you this evening.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. I don't like the books that that author writes.
- 2.1. Your stomach trouble will be very easy to cure.
- 2.2. These past few days my appetite has not been good. I don't feel like eating anything.
- 3.1. He's been operated on I don't know how many times.
- 3.2. His stomach disorder will probably not require an operation.
- 4.1. He's done a lot of research in medicine.
- 4.2. After I graduate I plan to take the exams for the medical school at Far Eastern University.
- 5.1. His Chinese is progressing day by day [lit. day compared to day].
- 5.2. His progress is very fast. I certainly can't compare with him.
- 6.1. His illness isn't dangerous. Don't be worried.
- 6.2. When he drives I certainly worry about him.
- 7.1. These past few days my left hand has been numb all the time.
- 7.2. He [is a doctor who] specializes in giving anesthetics.
- 8.1. I'm going to Dr. Wang's to get an injection.
- 9.1. This wine isn't strong. No matter how much you drink you can't get intoxicated.

- 9.2. Before Mr. Wang was operated on [what] he received [was] a general anesthetic.
- 10.1. [You say] how unlucky he is! Yesterday he lost his tuition money on the street.
- 11.1. I've [already] had an injection. I'm not likely to catch the disease.
- 11.2. These past few days a lot of my schoolmates have caught cold, so I've caught [lit. been infected by] one too.
- 12.1. A few years ago this style of dress was all the rage.
- 12.2. Now there's an epidemic [disease] of some sort that is spreading [lit. infecting] very fast.
- 13.1. This [sort of] disease is [one which is] of an epidemic nature.
- 13.2. There's a great deal of danger[ousness] in doing that sort of work.
- 14.1. I've had a cold these past few days. I don't feel at all well [in my body].
- 14.2. A tremendous number of [lit. unusually many] people died from [epidemic] influenza in 1918.
- 15.1. Teacher, I'd like to have the afternoon off, as I have an important matter to attend to.
- 15.2. Before we went on vacation I asked for two days' leave.
- 16.1. Chinese think that to have lots of children is to have good fortune.
- 17.1. Studying medicine is very arduous.
- 17.2. He's the best surgeon in our hospital.
- 17.3. My eyes are bothering me [lit. are uncomfortable]. I must find an eye specialist to look at them.
- 18.1. The equipment in that playground is not at all bad.
- 18.2. The living-room and dining-room furnishings together are over \$1,000.
- 19.1. Our school infirmary can accommodate only ten people or so.
- 20.1. That child is really to be pitied. When he was only seven both his parents died.
- 21.1. Our school has expanded. It can accept 2,000 students next semester.
- 22.1. After my younger sister graduates from middle school she plans to study nursing [lit. nurse].
- 23.1. He does his work very meticulously.
- 24.1. Please tell me about that matter in detail.
- 25.1. I feel that when Professor Zhang lectures on mathematics he doesn't explain (things) clearly. What do you think?
- 26.1. He's a little feverish today.
- 26.2. One moment I feel feverish, and the next moment I have chills.
- 26.3. Dr. Wang, I'm awfully feverish, and I don't feel like eating.

- 27.1. How long have you been coughing?
- 27.2. This is [cure] cough medicine. Take it three times a day, before meals.
- 28.1. Does it hurt if I press [you] here?
- 28.2. My headache's gone.
- 28.3. I just have a cough. I don't have a headache.
- 29.1. My throat hurts. See if it's red.
- 30.1. It's not very hot here in the summer. At the hottest, it doesn't get up to 90 degrees.
- 30.2. I'd like to take the exams for aviation school, but my height is not up to standard.
- 30.3. His temperature went up one degree between morning and afternoon [lit. morning compared to afternoon].
- 31.1. Please give me a glass of warm water.
- 31.2. His temperature is very high. It's quite serious.
- 31.3. Have you taken your temperature?
- 32.1. Every day before going to sleep I lie in bed and read for an hour.
- 32.2. You lie down first and rest a while.
- 33.1. The past couple of days I've been preparing for exams. I've been terribly busy, so much so that I haven't even slept.
- 34.1. The things we eat should be clean as a precaution against disease.
- 34.2. There's an infectious disease in that area now. If you go (there) you must first have an inoculation.
- 35.1. Yesterday Wen asked me to dinner. Since I was too busy, the upshot was that I didn't go.
- 36.1. When are you going to England? . . . When it comes time for me to leave I'll certainly inform you.
- 36.2. The teacher has called your name. It's your turn to recite.
- 36.3. He came to my place just before going abroad.
- 37.1. Can he do this work? What are his qualifications?
- 38.1. Our hospital can accommodate 350 people.
- 39.1. I originally studied mathematics. Afterward, I changed to [studying] literature.
- 40.1. That job of his isn't permanent. It's temporary.
- 41.1. Don't get excited. Do it slowly.
- 41.2. Why are you getting so upset over such a little matter?
- 42.1. I have only this little money. [Apart from this] I don't have any more.
- 42.2. There are certainly a lot of antique shops in this place.

- 43.1. On week ends the markets are quite crowded.
- 44.1. During the War of Resistance everyone had to stand in line to buy rice.
- 44.2. There's a long line of people buying [theater] tickets at the theater entrance today.
- 45.1. This [sort of] method is quite inappropriate.
- 46.1. Every month I need \$60 just for food [lit. to eat].
- 46.2. It won't do for just one person to pay. Each person should contribute.
- 46.3. It's not enough that you can speak Chinese. You should also know Chinese characters.
- 47.1. Give me the prescription. I'll go buy the medicine for you.
- 47.2. Has the doctor written a prescription for you?
- 48.1. Chinese pharmacies just sell medicine. American drugstores don't sell just medicine.
- 49.1. She's very good at choosing harmonious colors in clothes.
- 49.2. Mr. Zhang makes up prescriptions in a pharmacy.
- 50.1. I like [to eat] Chinese food. I believe I could eat it every day without getting tired of it.
- 50.2. I was on the train for a week. I really got bored with it.
- 50.3. He's always telling that story. It bores people to death.
- 50.4. I couldn't ever [lit. whole lifetime] get tired of eating roast duck.
- 51.1. He was in the hospital for three months.
- 52.1. Mr. Zhang is in [sick] room 17.
- 53.1. Did you register? . . . Yes, a long time ago.
- 53.2. The procedure for registering at this hotel is very simple.
- 54.1. My tooth's bad. It always hurts.
- 54.2. That dentist's office has [lit. is] the latest equipment.
- 55.1. How much per hour to hire a car?
- 55.2. It's very difficult to hire anyone in this place.
- 55.3. He's an employee of that company.

Review Sentences

1. According to (what) the doctor says, he will require an operation.
2. His studies have progressed a great deal [compared to the past.]
3. He drives too fast. When he goes out I worry a lot about him.
4. When the weather is cold one moment and hot the next, it's very easy to catch cold.

5. You didn't come to school yesterday. Did you ask for leave?
6. That little school has expanded now. It can accommodate 2,000 students.
7. You've written this character wrong. Please look at it carefully.
8. Answer these two history questions in detail.
9. In teaching linguistics Professor Wang explains in great detail for us.
10. I just have a headache. I don't [at all] have a temperature.
11. My eyes hurt terribly. I must have an eye doctor look at them.
12. That child has taken ill. He's been lying down all day without getting up.
13. He's studious to the point where he doesn't even sleep enough.
14. Just before you go to school, come to my place [first] for a while.
15. Don't get upset. We'll gradually think of a way to handle it.
16. It's rather crowded at that big department store today.
17. I'm of the opinion that the procedure you suggest is not appropriate.
18. It won't do just to be able to speak. You must make your tones correct.
19. Next semester I must change schools [lit. a school]. I'm bored with studying at this school.
20. It's too far. I must hire a car [and go].

Notes

1. The syllable xìng 'nature, quality' when used as a suffix corresponds to the English noun-forming suffix -ness: wēixiǎn 'danger,' wēixiǎnxìng 'dangerousness, danger.'
2. The syllable fú 'blessings, good fortune' is more restricted than the fuller expression fúqì; it occurs only in such fixed phrases as the popular maxim Méi bìng jiù shì fú 'To be well is to be lucky.'
3. Certain subject-verb phrases function much like a compound verb, which in turn may have its own subject:

Nèige rén xīn hǎo. 'That man has a good heart.' [lit. 'That man heart-good.']

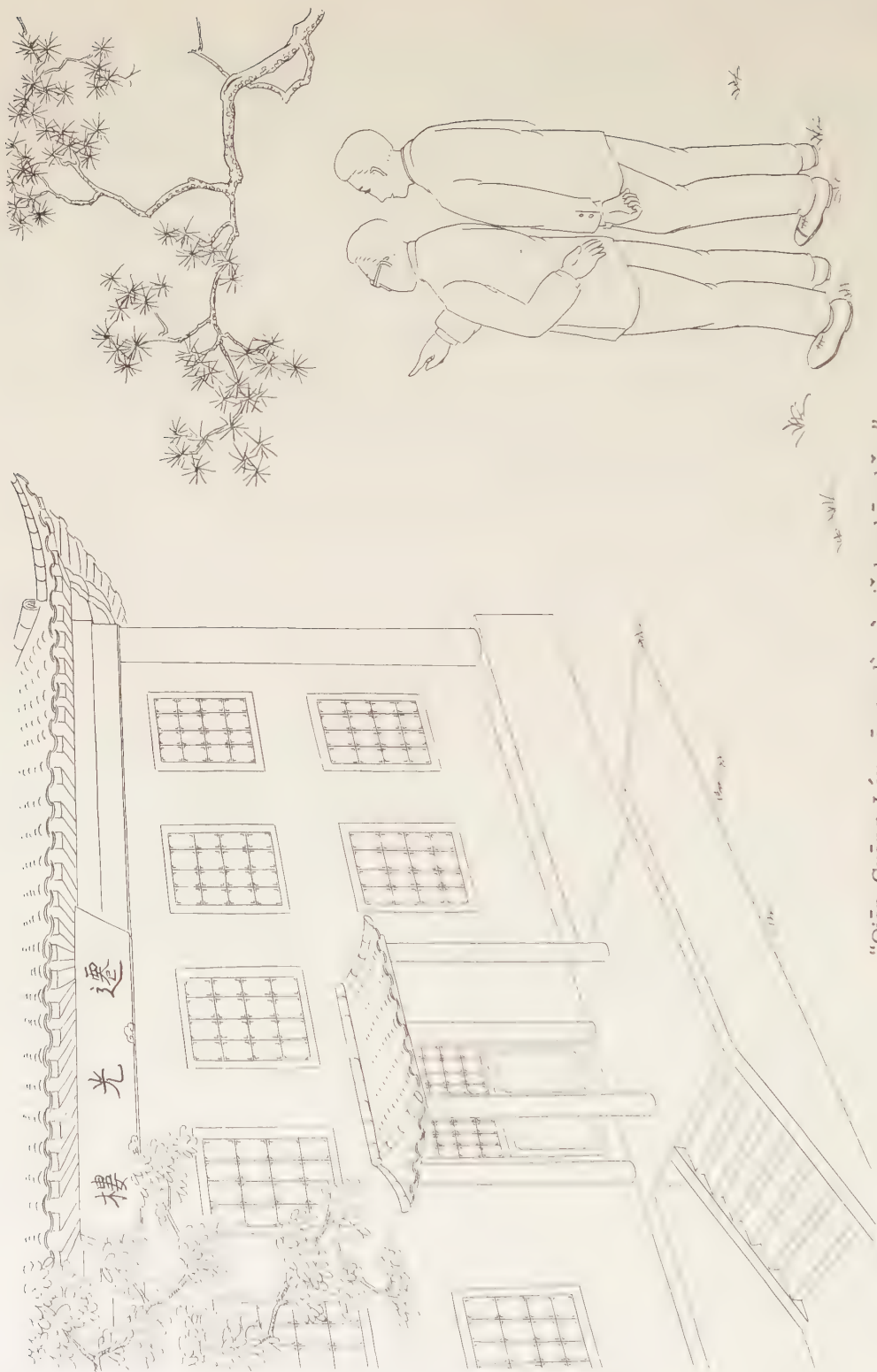
Wǒ tóu téng. 'I have a headache.' [lit. 'I headache.']

A few of these subject-verb compounds admit adverbs before their subject, as an alternative to the usual position before the verb:

Wǒ bú tóu téng le. or Wǒ tóu bù téng le. 'My head doesn't ache anymore.'

However, xīn hào permits adverbs only before hǎo:

Nèige rén xīn bù hǎo. 'That man is evil-hearted.'



“Qiān Guāng Lóu sāngē dà zì xiěde zhēn hǎo.”

Dì Èrshí'èrkè. Cāngguān Dàxué

Huìhuà: Wénshān gēn Xuéxīn cāngguān dàxué de shíhou tán huà.

Bái: Xuéxīn! Nǐ láile hǎo jiǔ le?

Xué: Oh, nǐ lái le. Wǒ dào zhèr cái shífēn zhōng. Dōngxī dōu mǎihǎo le ma?

5 Bái: Mǎihǎo le. Nǐ yìzhíde jiù dào dàxué lái le ma?

Xué: Běnlái xiǎng qù zhǎo lìngwài yíge tóngbānde tóngxué. Hòulái yì xiǎng, méi gēn rénjiā yuēhǎo, yéxǔ tā bú zài jiā. Èrqiè ye méi you zhǎo ta de biyào. Wǒ jiù méi qù. Jiù zài dàxué lǐtou gèchù zhuànzhuan.

10 Bái: Wǒ gāngcái jìn dàxué dà mén de shíhou kànjian qiángshang yǒu xuésheng rénsù tú. Zhèige xuéqī xuésheng rénsù zēngjiāle hěn duō.

Xué: Duìle. Dàxuéde xuésheng yì nián bǐ yì nián duō. . . . Zhèi jiù shì Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn.

15 Bái: Ménshangde héngbiǎn Qiān Guāng Lóu sāngē dà zì xiěde zhēn hǎo.

Xué: Nèi shì yíwèi yǒu míngde xuézhě xiě de. Míngzi yě shì nèiwèi xuézhě qǐde.

Bái: Qiān shì Sī mǎ Qiān. Guāng shì guāngróng de guāng. Qiān Guāng Lóu yìsi shì jìxù Sī mǎ Qiānde guāngróng, shì bu shì?

20 Xué: Duìle. Shì zhèige yìsi.

Bái: Wàibiǎo kànqilai Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn kě zhēn bù xiǎo a.

Xué: Bú suàn xiǎo. Lǐbiānde cānkǎo shū yě bù shǎo. Sōuji de gèzhǒng guānyu yánjiu lìshǐ de zīliào yě xiāngdāng fēngfù. Lóuxià chénliè de gǔwù dōu shì káogǔjiā rènwei hěn yǒu jiàzhí de. Chū cǐ yǐwài hái yǒu cóng Lìshǐ Bówuyuàn jièlai de yǐbùfen gǔwù, wèile gěi xuésheng yánjiu.

25 Bái: Zài Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn yánjiu de rén duō bu duō?

Xué: Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn yánjiu de fànwei hěn dà. Jìnlái yánjiu lìshǐ de rén hěn duō.

30 Bái: Zhèi yě shì shòule shídàide yíngxiǎng. Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuànde cānkǎo shū yǒu duōshao běn?

Xué: Cóng cángshū mùlushang kàn yǒu èrshiwànběn shū.

Bái: Suóyǒude shū dōu shì dàxué mǎi de ma?

- 35 Xué: Dàxué mǎile suóyǒu shū de sīfēnzhī sǎn. Sīfēnzhī yī shì sīrén huòzhe tuántǐ juānlaide. Zài chénglǐ yánjiū yuàn de shíhou wèile mǎi shū xuéxiào quántǐ xuésheng měi rén juān wǔkuài qián.
- Bái: Wǒ zài Měiguó de shíhou jiù zhīdao Yuǎn-Dà Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuànde shū zuì duō.
- Xué: Díquè bù shǎo.
- 40 Bái: Yánjiū Yuàn jiànzhū de zhēn bú cuò.
- Xué: Zhèi shì Zhōngguó jiù shìde jiànzhū.
- Bái: Búdàn jiànzhude hǎo, érqǐ huánjīng yě hǎo. Díquè shì yánjiū xuéwen de hǎo dìfang.
- Xué: Suóyǐ wǒ měitiān zǎochen bādiǎn duō jiù dào dàxué lái ne.
- 45 Bái: Jiānglái wǒ zǎochen gēn nǐ yíkuàr dào dàxué.
- Xué: Wǒmen yíkuàr qí chē lái. Wǒ jiā lǐtou hái yǒu yíliàng zìxíngchē.
- Bái: Huá Tàitai yǐjīng gàosu wǒ le, shì língdì de.
- Xué: Wǒmen xiànzài dào Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiū Yuàn qù kànkan qu.
- Bái: Zài nǐge fāngxiang?
- 50 Xué: Dōngnán jiǎorshang nàisuǒ hóng lóu jiù shì. Kànjian méi you?
- Bái: Kànjian le. Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiū Yuànde shū duō ma?
- Xué: Guānyu wénxué yìfāngmian de shū bǐjiǎo duō. Gúdiǎn wénxué gēn xīn wénxué de shū dōu yǒu.
- Bái: Wàiwén shū yě yǒu ma?
- 55 Xué: Hěn duō. Wénxuéde shū, jiàokēshū, zázhi, bàozhi, huàbào, shénmode dōu yǒu. Xiànzàide xiǎoshuōjiā xiě de xiǎoshuōr yě bù shǎo. hái yǒu hěn duō fānyì de wénxuéde shū.
- Bái: Kèběr dōu shì nǐzhōngde kèběr?
- Xué: Dōu shì xué wàiwénde dúběr.
- 60 Bái: Zhèixie kèběr dōu shì shénmo chéngdu yòng de?
- Xué: Chūjí dào gāojí dōu yǒu. Nǐ shuō shū quán bu quán?
- Bái: Shū hěn quán.
- Xué: Wèile zēngjiā xuéshengmende xìngqū yòu cóng Lìshǐ Bówuyuàn jièlái yíqián yǒu míng de zuòjiā yíliúxiālai de yuángǎor, dōu shì hěn zhēngui de.
- 65 Bái: Guānyu yǔyán yìfāngmiàn de shū duō ma?
- Xué: Bú tài duō.
- Bái: Yánjiū yǔyán zhèizhōng xuéwen de lìshǐ bǐjiǎo duǎn, suóyǐ shū yě bù hěn duō. Zhǎo cānkǎo zīliào xiāngdāng nán.
- 70 Xué: Shìde. Búdàn yánjiū yuàn, jiùlián túshūguǎn yě bù duō.

- Bái: Dàxué jìnlái chūbǎn guānyú xuéshù de kānwu yǒu jǐzhǒng? Nèiróng zěnmoyàng?
- Xué: Jìnlái chūbǎn de kānwu yǒu sì wǔzhǒng ne. Guānyu wénxué, yǔyán, kēxué, lìshǐ de dōu yǒu.
- 75 Bái: Duōshao rìzi chūbǎn yícì?
- Xué: Kēxuéde shì zhōukān huòzhe bànyuèkān, wǒ jì bu qīngchu. Wénxué gen yǔyán de shì yuèkān. Lìshǐde shì jìkān. Nèiróng dōu bú cuò.
- Bái: Wǒ gēn nǐ dǎtīng dǎtīng, Yǔyán Yuèkān shì shéi zhǔbiān de?
- Xué: Shì Mǎ Jiàoshòu zhǔbiān de.
- 80 Bái: Mǎ Jiàoshòu zhǔbiān de yídìng hěn hǎo.
- Xué: Zhèng mén suǒzhe ne. Wǒmen cóng páng mén jìnqu.
- Bái: Lóuxià yídìng shì yánjiushǐ le. Nǐ kàn, hēibǎn shì xīn shìde. Shi lǚde.
- Xué: Duìle. Lóushàng shì cángshūshǐ. Wǒmen dào lóushàng qu.
- 85 Bái: Shū zhēn bù shǎo a. Wǒ xiǎng jiè yībēn shū. Bù zhīdào yǒu méi you?
- Xué: Nǐ xiǎng jiè shénmo shū?
- Bái: Zuì jìn chūbǎn yǒu zhùjiě de gǔ wénfǎ yánjiu. Shì hěn báode yíge xiǎo cèzi, méi you jǐyè.
- 90 Xué: Wǒ xiǎng yídìng yǒu. Wǒmen kànkān shū mùlushang yǒu méi yǒu. Biéde shū nǐ bú jiè ma?
- Bái: Wǒ hái xiǎng jiè liǎngfèr zázhi kànkān.
- Xué: Zázhi duōde hěn. Yìhuěr wǒmen cóng zhèr dào yīxué yuàn qu kànkān.
- 95 Bái: Wǒmen cānguān yīxué yuàn shì wàiháng a.
- Xué: Yàoburán wǒmen dào dàlǐtáng gēn tīyùguǎn qu kànkān?
- Bái: Xiànzài shíhou yǐjīng bù zǎo le. Wǒmen jiù dào tīyùguǎn kànkān déle. Huítóu wǎnshang wǒmen hái děi cānjiā huānyíng xīnshēng wǎn huì ne.
- 100 Xué: Shì a.
- Bái: Nèige shíhou jiù kéyi kànjian dàlǐtáng le.
- Xué: Yě hǎo. Wǒmen tīyuguǎn cānguānwánle huí jiā qu chī wǎnfàn ránhòu zài dào xuéxiào lái.

Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (6) bān class(in school); cast (in a play), troupe (M)
 tóngbān (be of) the same class, (be) classmates
 yánjiubān seminar



- 1.1. Wǒmen xué zhōngwén nèibān yígòng yǒu shíge rén.
 1.2. Wǒ gēn Lǎo Wáng tóngbān.
 1.3. Wǒmen lìshǐ yánjiubān jīntian tíqián yíge zhōngtóu.
- 2.0. (6) hòulái afterward (TW) [lit. rear come]
 2.1. Wǒ xiān dào túshūguǎn. Hòulái yòu dào yánjiu yuàn qu le.
- 3.0. (8) bìyào essential, necessary (SV), necessity (N) [lit. must want]
 yǒu V de bìyào have need to V
 3.1. Wǒ bú dào Wáng jiā qu le yīnwei wǒ méi yǒu qù de bìyào.
 3.2. Xué Zhōngwén rènshi Hànzì yě shì bìyàode.
- 4.0. (9) zhuàn rotate, turn (V)
 zhuànguolai rotate, turn (TV); in turn
 zhuànlái zhuànqù mill around
 4.1. Wǒ niàn shū niànde tài lèi le. Wǒ chūqu zhuànzhuan qu.
 4.2. Bǎ yǐzi zhuànguolai chòngzhe chuānghu.
 4.3. Tāmen gànma zài wūzili zhuànlái zhuànqù de?
- 5.0. (11) shù(r) number, amount
 qiánshù amount of money
 rénshù number of people
 5.1. Nǐ bǎ qiánshù qiānwàn bié xiěcuò le.
 5.2. Kāi huì de shíjiān yǐjīng dào le. Zěnmó láide rénshù zěnmó shǎo ne?
- 6.0. (11) tú illustration, chart, map (N) (measure: zhāng) (Note 1)
 xiàotú map of a school
 chǎngtú map of an airport
 6.1. Zhèiběn shūshangde tú hěn duō
 6.2. Zhèizhāng tú shì wǒmende xiàotú.
- 7.0. (15) héngbiǎn (horizontal) plaque (N) [lit. horizontal tablet]

- 7.1. Zhèige héngbiǎnshang zuì hòude nèige zì niàn shénmo?
- 8.0. (16) -zhě one who, doer (Note 3)
 xuézhě scholar (N)
 zuòzhě writer, author
 xīnwén jìzhě reporter, newspaper correspondent, journalist
- 8.1. Bù gǎndāng. Wǒ nǎr gòudeshàng xuézhě?
- 8.2. Wǒ fùqīn shì xīnwén jìzhě.
- 9.0. (18) Sīmǎ Qiān (name of a historian) (Note 2)
- 9.1. Sīmǎ Qiān shì Hàn Cháode shǐxuéjiā.
- 10.0. (18) guāngróng glorious (SV), glory, splendor (N); be proud (of something) (SV); something to be proud of (N) [lit. light glory]
- 10.1. Nín jīntiān dào wǒ zhèr lái wǒ fēicháng guāngróng.
- 10.2. Zhōngguó yǒu hěn chángde lìshǐ, bìngqiě hái yǒu hěn guāngróngde wénhuà.
- 11.0. (22) cānkǎo consult, refer to (a book) (TV) [lit. participate examine]
 cānkǎo shū reference work, book to be consulted in a particular field.
- 11.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐ nèi jīběn guānyu yǔyánde shū jiègei wǒ cānkǎo cānkǎo.
- 11.2. Zhèizhōng xuéwende cānkǎo shū bù duō.
- 12.0. (22) sōu search out, search for (TV)
 sōuzháo search successfully, find after a search (RV)
- 12.1. Wáng zhái diū dōngxī le. Jǐngchá dàocho qu sōu yé méi sōuzháo.
- 13.0. (22) sōuji search out and collect (TV)
- 13.1. Tā zài Húběi Shěngde jǐge cūnzili sōujile bù shǎode guānyu fāngyán de zīliào.
- 14.0. (23) fēngfù abundant, rich (SV)
- 14.1. Zhōngguó chū de méi hěn fēngfù.
- 14.2. Zuótian Lǎo Wáng qǐng kè. Cài xiāngdāngde fēngfù.
- 15.0. (23) chénliè exhibit, display (TV) [lit. spread arrange]
 chénlièchulai spread out for display
- 15.1. Wǒmen xuéxiào xià xīngqī kāi huì. Bǎ xuésheng de chéngjī dōu chénlièchulai.
- 16.0. (24) gǔwù relic (N) [lit. ancient object]
- 16.1. Yuǎn-Dà chénliè Hàn Cháode gǔwù. Nǐ cānguān le méi you?
- 17.0. (24) káogǔ perform archaeological explorations (V) [lit. examine antiquity]
 káogǔxué archaeology

káogǔjiā archaeologist

káogǔxuéjiā archaeologist

17.1. Tāmen dǎsuan míngnián dào Húnán qu káogǔ.

17.2. Tā yánjiū káogǔxué yǐjīng yǒu sìshíjǐ nián le.

18.0. (24) jiàzhi value (N) [lit. price worth]
yǒu jiàzhi be valuable

18.1. Nèige huàjiā huàde huàr xiànzài hěn yǒu jiàzhi.

18.2. Tā shuōde huà méi jiàzhi.

19.0. (25) bówuyuàn natural history museum [lit. vast object court]

19.1. Cóng wàiguo jièlailè yìxiē gǔwù. Dōu chénliè zài bówuyuàn le.

20.0. (28) fànwéi sphere (of influence or authority), scope, extent, compass (N)
[lit. pattern enclose]

20.1. Nèige lǎoshī kǎoshì cónglái bù gěi wǒmen fànwéi.

20.2. Tā jiǎng dōngfāng wénhuà de fànwéi dōu bāokuò shénmo?

20.3. Zhèixiē tímu dōu zài kǎoshì de fànwéi yǐnèi ma?

21.0. (28) jìnlái recently

21.1. Zěnmoyàng, jìnlái zuò shénmo xiāoqiǎn ne?

22.0. (30) yíngxiǎng influence (N, V) [lit. shadow resound]

22.1. Yàoshi débudào jiǎngxuéjīn yíngxiǎngle wǒde qiántú.

22.2. Háo jiǔ bú xià yǔ le. Nóng rén hěn shòu yíngxiǎng.

23.0. (32) cáng accumulate, hide, store securely

cáng shū accumulate books, store books

cángshūjiā book collector

cángshūshì, cángshūshì rooms holding books, stacks in a library

23.1. Wǒ zài Zhōngguó de shíhou cáng shū hěn duō.

23.2. Wǒmen túshūguǎn cángshūshíde shū dōu mǎn le.

24.0. (32) mùlù table of contents, catalogue

(cáng)shū mùlù catalogue of stored books, card catalogue

24.1. Qǐng nǐ bǎ cángshū mùlù gěi wǒ kànkàn.

24.2. Fàguó shū gēn Ēguó shū mùlù zài hòubian.

25.0. (34) sīrén private individual

25.1. Zhèige gōngyuán yuánlái shì sīrén de huāyuánzi.

26.0. (35) tuántǐ group, organized body, organization (N) [lit. group body]

qīngnián tuántǐ young people's organization

26.1. Wǒmen zhèige tuántǐ yìgòng yǒu liùshíjǐge rén.

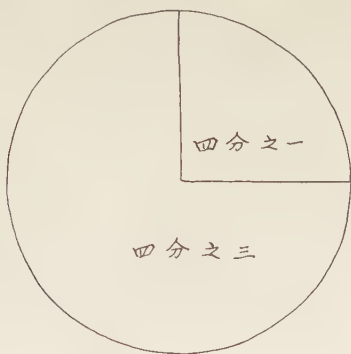
- 26.2. Zhèige qīngnián tuántǐ dōu shì èrshisuì yǐnèide xuésheng.
- 27.0. (35) juān donate, contribute, give, will (TV)
- 27.1. Wǒ juāngeile wǒmen xuéxiào sìshiběn shū.
- 27.2. Nèige xiǎo xuéxiào wèile kuòchōng qǐng wǒmen juān qián
- 28.0. (36) quántǐ whole body, in a body, all together
- 28.1. Xià xīngqī wǒmen xuéxiào quántǐ xuésheng qu lǚxíng.
- 28.2. Tā yì tíyì, quántǐ dōu fǎnduì.
- 29.0. (42) huánjīng environment, circumstances (N) [lit. ring place]
- 29.1. Lǎo Zhāng jìnláide huánjīng hěn bù hǎo.
- 29.2. Zhèi yídàide huánjīng zhēn hǎo. Nǐ kàn duómo ānjīng a.
- 30.0. (47) lǐng- your (formal polite form)
- lǐngxiōng your older brother
- lǐngdì your younger brother
- lǐngmèi your younger sister
- lǐngqīn your relatives
- 30.1. Zhèi diār xiǎo lǐwu shì sònggei lǐngmèi de.
- 30.2. Lǐngqīn shénmo shíhou dào Měiguó láide?
- 31.0. (52) gúdiǎn classical reference (N) [lit. ancient records]
- gúdiǎn wénxué classical literature, classics
- 31.1. Wǒ jiù xīhuan tīng gúdiǎn yīnyuè.
- 31.2. Wǒ xué Zhōngguó yǔyán xuéle sānnián cái kāishǐ xué Zhōngguó gúdiǎn wénxué.
- 32.0. (54) wàiwén foreign language (N)
- 32.1. Wǒ jiějie zài dàxué niàn wàiwén xī.
- 33.0. (55) jiàokēshū textbook (N) [lit. teach course book]
- 33.1. Zhèiběn Zhōngwén jiàokēshūshangde tú huàde hěn hǎo.
- 34.0. (55) -bào periodical publication [lit. newspaper]
- huàbào pictorial magazine
- yuèbào monthly (magazine)
- zhōubào weekly (magazine or newspaper)
- rìbào daily (newspaper)
- wǎnbào evening (or afternoon) newspaper
- 34.1. Nèige shūdiàn gèzhōng huàbào dōu yǒu.
- 34.2. Tā shì Zhōnghuá Rìbàode xīnwén jìzhě.

- 34.3. Zhèige shì yuèbào, bú shì zhōubào.
- 35.0. (56) xiǎoshuō(r) work of fiction, novel (N) [lit. small talk]
xiǎoshuōjiā novelist
- 35.1. Tā xiě de xiǎoshuōr dōu shì qíguàide gùshi.
- 36.0. (57) fān(yi) translate (V) [lit. invert translate]
fān(yi)chéng translate into
zuò fānyi act as translator
gěi A (zuò) fānyi translate for someone (either into or out of his language), be a translator for A
- 36.1. Míngtiān qǐng nèiwèi Fàguó jiàoshòu lái yánjiǎng, tīngshuō shì Lǎo Wáng gěi ta zuò fānyi.
- 36.2. Wǒ bù dòng ta shuōde huà. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ fānyi yíxià.
- 36.3. Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèi jǐge Yīngwén jùzi fānchéng Zhōngwén.
- 37.1. (58) kèběn, kèběr textbook (N)
- 37.1. Nèiběn kèběr xiěde bú cuò.
- 38.0. (59) dú read, study
dú shū read, study
dúběn, dúběr reader
- 38.1. Wǒ děi gōngzuò. Wǒ méi jīhuì dú shū.
- 38.2. Wǒmen xiān xué huìhuà kèběr, ránhòu niàn dúběr.
- 39.0. (61) chū first, for the first time
chūcì first time (more literary than dì yīcì)
zuì chū at (the very) first, at the (very) beginning
- 39.1. Wǒ chūcì dào Zhōngguó lái de shíhòu cái shíwūsù.
- 39.2. Wǒ zuì chū niàn káogǔxué de shíhòu wǒ méi xìngqù.
- 40.0. (61) -jí rank
chūjí beginning, primary (rank)
zhōngjí intermediate (rank)
gāojí advanced (rank)
- 40.1. Zhōngjí kèběn bǐ chūjí kèběn shǎowēi shēn yìdiǎr.
- 41.0. (64) yíliú bequeath, leave, hand down (V)
- 41.1. Tā fùqīn yíliú de qián ta dōu juāngēi jījīn huì le.
- 42.0. (64) gǎo(r), gǎozi, yuángǎo(r) rough draft, manuscript (N) (measure: jiàn)
- 42.1. Wǒ xiān xiě yíge gǎozi. Qǐng nǐ kànkàn chéng bu chéng.

- 42.2. Nǐ qiānwàn bié bǎ yuángǎo diū le.
- 43.0. (65) zhēngūi precious, valuable (SV) [lit. precious expensive]
- 43.1. Jīntian bówuyuàn chénlièle yìxiē hěn zhēngūide gǔwù.
- 44.0. (70) jiùlián even (more emphatic than lián)
- 44.1. Nèige wèntí búdàn xuésheng bù néng huídá, jiùlián jiàoshòu yě bú huì.
- 45.0. (71) chūbǎn publish (TV) [lit. emit printing-block]
- 45.1. Zhōngxué Zhōngwénde gāojí kèběr mǎshàng jiù chūbǎn le.
- 45.2. Nèiběn shū shì yī jiǔ liù sān nián chūbǎn de.
- 46.0. (71) xuéshù erudition, mastery, skill (N) [lit. learn skill]
- yánjiū xuéshù do scholarly research
- 46.1. Zhōngguó Yǔyán Xuéhuì shì yíge yánjiū xuéshù de tuántǐ.
- 47.0. (71) kǎn edition, issue
- kǎnwu periodical publication (N)
- zhōukān weekly (publication) (N)
- bànyuèkān semimonthly (publication) (N)
- yuèkān monthly (publication) (N)
- jìkān quarterly (publication) (N)
- niánkān annual (publication), yearbook (N)
- 47.1. Wǒmen dàxué chūbǎn de kǎnwu zīliào dōu hěn hǎo.
- 47.2. Wǒmen xuéxiào jīnniande niánkān kuài yào chūbǎn le.
- 48.0. (71) nèiróng contents (N) [lit. inside contain]
- 48.1. Zhèiběn zázhi de nèiróng duōbàr shì guānyu jìndài lìshǐ de.
- 49.0. (78) dǎting inquire
- gēn A dǎting inquire of A, ask A
- 49.1. Nǐ tī wǒ dǎting dǎting Wáng Jiàoshòu zhù nǎr.
- 49.2. Wǒ gēn nín dǎting yíxià dào Zhōngshān Lù qu wàng nēibiār zǒu?
- 50.0. (78) biān edit, compile (V)
- zhǔbiān to edit (as chief editor) (V), editor (N) [lit. chief edit]
- 50.1. Nǐmen xuéxiào niǎnde gāojí dúběr shì shéi biān de?
- 50.2. Zhāng Jiàoshòu zhǔbiān Zhōngguó Lìshǐ Jìkān.
- 51.0. (81) zhèng main; due (before compass directions)
- zhèng mén main door, main gate
- zhèng lù main road
- zhèng běi due north

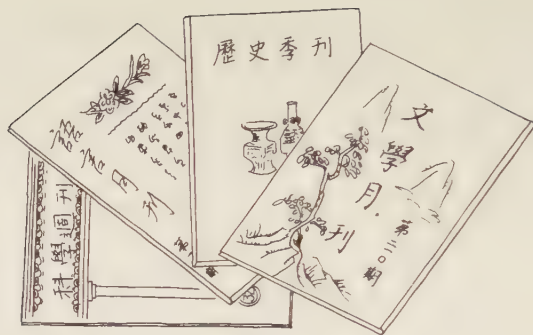
- 51.1. Wǒmen xuéxiàode zhèng mén chòng nán.
 51.2. Dào túshūguǎn qu zǒu zhèng lù bíjiǎo yuǎn, zǒu páng lù bíjiǎo jìn.
 51.3. Wàng zhèitiáo lù de zhèng běi zǒu jiù shì Běi Hú.
- 52.0. (82) hēibǎn blackboard (N) [lit. black board]
 52.1. Lǚ yánse de hēibǎnshang xiě zì xuésheng kànde qīngchū.
- 53.0. (88) zhùjiě note (N, V) [lit. comment explain]
 53.1. Nèiběn shū zhēn hǎo. Zhùjiě de hěn xiángxi.
 53.2. Nǐ kàn zhùjiě dì shíwǔ jiù míngbai zhèige jùzide yìsi le.
- 54.0. (89) cè numbered volume (in a set) (M) (Note 5)
 cèzi pamphlet, booklet, notebook
 shǒucè handbook, student's notebook
 xuésheng shǒucè student handbook
 shàng cè Volume I (of a set of two or three: lit. top volume)
 zhōng cè Volume II (of a set of three: lit. middle volume)
 xià cè Volume II (of a set of two); Volume III (of a set of three: lit. bottom volume)
- 54.1. Zhèibù shū yígòng yǒu jǐcè?
 54.2. Qǐng nín zài wǒde xiǎo cèzishang qiān míng hǎo bu hǎo?
 54.3. Wǒde shǒucèshang dōu xiémǎn le.
 54.4. Nǐ xiángxide kànkàn xuésheng shǒucè jiù zhīdao xuéxiào yíqiède guīju.
 54.5. Shàng cè màiwán le. Zhǐ yǒu zhōng xià liǎngcè.
- 55.0. (89) yè page (M)
 55.1. Qǐng nǐmen bǎ shū dǎkai kàn dì yībǎi shísān yè.
- 56.0. (92) fèn, fèr (measure for publications)
 fèn issue
 56.1. Wǒ yào dìng yí fèn Zhōngguó huàbào.
 56.2. Zhèiběn zázhi wǔyuefènde yǒu méi you?
- 57.0. (98) -shēng (noun suffix) (Note 4)
 xīnshēng new student
 liúxuéshēng returned student
 yánjiùshēng research worker, graduate student
 dàxuéshēng college student
 zhōngxuéshēng middle-school student
- 57.1. Jīntian zhèige huì shì wèile wǒmen xīn tóngxué kāi de huānyíng xīnshēng wǎnhuì.

- 57.2. Nèige xuésheng dàxué yǐjīng bìyè le. Xiànzài shì yánjiū yuànde yánjiùshēng.
- 57.3. Jīnnián wǒmen xuéxiàode xīnshēng hěn duō.
- 57.4. Zhèiběn dúběr zhōngxuésēng dàxuésēng dōu kěyǐ niàn.



Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Tā shì yíge xīnwén jìzhě. Dàochù qu sōuji xīnwén zīliào.
2. Guānyu zhèige wèntí wǒ cānkǎole hěn duō shū.
3. Bówuyuàn cóng Zhōngguó jièlai de gǔwù jīntian yǐjīng chénlièchulai le.
4. Mǎ Jiàoshòu xiě de shū dōu xiāngdāng yǒu jiàzhì.
5. Xiě bóshi lùnwén bú yào xiě de fānwéi tài dà.
6. Yīnwei shòule dǎ zhàng de yíngxiǎng suóyǒude dōngxì dōu hěn guì.
7. Wǒ xiǎng jiè de nèiběn shū mùlushang méi yǒu.
8. Zhāng Xiānsheng juāngei dàxué yìbǎiwànkui qián.
9. Yīnwei wǒ jīnláide huánjīng bù hǎo, suóyǐ wǒ bù néng jìxù niàn shū le.
10. Wǒ dāsuan bǎ nèiběn Yīngwén xiǎoshuōr fānyìchéng Zhōngwén.
11. Wǒ suóyǒude shū dōu shì wǒ fùqīn yíliúxialai de.
12. Nín xiě de nèiběn chūjí kèběr shénmo shíhou chūbǎn?
13. Wǒmen dàxué nèiběn kānwu shì jíkān. Měinián chūbǎn sìcì.
14. Nèiběn shū de nèiróng xiāngdāng hǎo.
15. Qǐng nǐ gěi wo dǎtīng yíxiàr, bówuyuànde dìzhǐ zài nǎr?
16. Mǎ Jiàoshòu zuì jìn biānle yìběn Hànyǔde yúfǎ shū.
17. Xiàotúshang zěnmō méi yǒu yánjiū yuàn?
18. Zhèiběn shū méi yǒu xiě zhùjiě de biyào.
19. Zhāng Jiàoshòude gǔdài-shǐ yánjiubān yǒu jǐge yánjiùshēng?
20. Wǒ sōujile bù shǎode zuò bóshi lùnwén de zīliào le.



Dāndú Tánhuà

Měiyīng zuò chē zǒule yīhòu, wǒ jiù dào lífáguǎn qū lífǎ. Lǐwánle
fǎ yīhòu yǐjīng sāndiǎn sānkè le. Wǒ gùle yíliàng sānlúnchē jiù dào dàxué
qu le. Dào le dàxué mén kǒu zhèng sīdiǎn zhōng.

Yí jìn xiào mén kǒu de qiángshang guàzhe zhèi xuéqī xuésheng rénsù
5 bǐjiǎo tú. Yuǎn-Dàde xuésheng rénsù shì yìnián bǐ yìnián zēngjiā.

Dào le yánjiū yuàn mén kǒu kànjian Xuéxīn zài ner zhànzhe ne. Wǒ
jiào ta, tā cái zhuànguo tóu lai. Wǒ wèn ta shénmo shíhou lái de. Tā
shuō dào Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuàn mén kǒu cái shífēn zhōng.

Wǒ yí kàn Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuàn, ke zhēn bù xiǎo érqǐ jiànzhude yě
10 hǎo. Mén shàngmian yǒu yíkuài dà héngbiǎn xiězhe Qiān Guāng Lóu sānge
dà zì. Zì xiěde zhēn hǎo. Xuéxīn shuō shì yíwèi yǒu míng de xuézhě
xiěde.

Wǒ wèn Xuéxīn Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuànde cānkǎo shū duō bu duō. Xuéxīn
shuō cānkǎo shū bu shǎo, érqǐ hái chénliè hěn duō gǔwù, wèide shì yánjiū
15 lìshǐ zuò cānkǎo de. Zhèxiē gǔwù shíxuéjiā rènwei xiāngdāng yǒu jiàzhì.

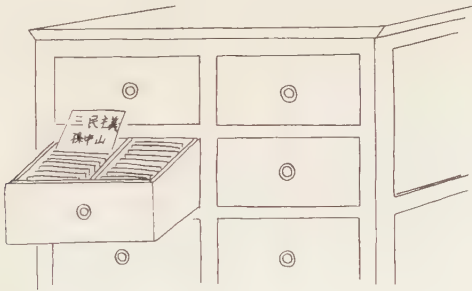
Wǒmen cóng Lìshǐ Yánjiū Yuàn chūlai, jiù dào Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiū
Yuàn qù. Wǒ wèn Xuéxīn guānyu yǔyán gēn wénxué de shū duō bu duō.
Xuéxīn gàosu wǒ hěn duō. Xīn wénxué gúdiǎn wénxué de shū gēn fānyì
de wàiguó yǒu míng de wénxué shū dōu yǒu. Xuéxīn shuō shū tài quán
20 le, shènzhì yuán lián kèběn shénmo dōu yǒu. Bǐngqǐ hái yǒu cōng bówuyuàn
jièlai de yìxiē yǒu míng zuòjiā yīliúxiālai de yuángāor, wèile ràng
yánjiùshēng zēngjiā yánjiū de xìngqù.

Wǒ zài Měiguó de shíhou jiù tīngshuō Yuǎn-Dà chūbǎn de xuéshù zázhi
bu shǎo. Xuéxīn shuō guānyu kēxué, lìshǐ, wénxué, yǔyán de kānwù yǒu
25 sì wǔzhǒng. Yǒu jìkān, yuèkān, bànyuèkān, zhōukān. Xuéxīn shuō Wénxué

Yǔyán Yuèkān shì Mǎ Jiàoshòu zhǔbiān de. Wǒ xiāngxìn nèiróng yídìng hěn hǎo. Mǎ Jiàoshòu shì yíwèi yǒu míng de xuézhě. Wǒ xiànglái jiù pèifu tā.

Wǒmen dàole Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiu Yuàn, zhèng mén suǒzhe ne.
30 Wǒmen shì cóng páng mén jìnqu de. Jiànzhude yě hěn hǎo. Yíòng liǎngcéng lóu. Lóuxià shì yánjiushǐ, lóushàng shì cángshūshǐ. Wǒmen xiān zài yánjiushǐ kànkàn. Wǒmen cānguān wánle yīhòu, yòu dào lóushàng cángshūshǐ qù. Shū zhēn bù shǎo. Zhèngge lóushàng jǐjiān dà wūzi shūjiàzishang dōu shì mǎnde.

35. Chūlai de shíhou Xuéxīn shuō péi wǒ dào yīxué yuàn qu cānguān. Suírán Yuǎn-Dàde yīxué yuàn yě hěn hǎo, kěshi wǒ méi xìngqu, érqǐě wǒ shì wàiháng. Xuéxīn jiù gēn wǒ dào tǐyùguǎn qu kànkàn, ránhòu wǒmen jiù yíkuài huí jiā le.



Wèntí

1. Shì Wénshān xiān dào Yuǎn-Dà háishi Xuéxīn xiān dào Yuǎn-Dà ne? Wèi shénmo?
2. Xuéxīn gàosu Wénshān ta shénmo shíhou lái de? Tā yìzhíde dōu zài zhèr ma?
3. Wénshān zài dàxué mén kǒu kànjian shénmo le, qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō?
4. Wénshān kànjian Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn de ménshang yǒu shénmo?
5. Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuànde ménshang xiě de shénmo zì? Nǐ zhīdao nèi sānge zìde yìsi ma?
6. Sīmǎ Qiān shì shénmo shíhou de rén? Tā shì zuò shénmo de?
7. Yuǎn-Dà Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuànde shū jǐfēnzhī jǐ shì Yuǎn-Dà mǎi de?
8. Yuǎn-Dà Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuànde shū shì nǎr lái de? Dōu shì dàxué mǎi de ma? Yíòng yǒu duōshao běn shū?
9. Yuǎn-Dà Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn chūle shū yǐwài hái yǒu shénmo?

10. Wénshān zài nǎr jiu zhīdao Yuǎn-Dà Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn de shū duō?
11. Wénshān shuō Lìshǐ Yánjiu Yuàn búdàn jiànzhude hǎo, hái yǒu shénmo hǎochu?
12. Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiu Yuàn zài dàxué lǐtōu něige fāngxiàng?
13. Xuéxīn shuō guānyu wénxué yìfāngmiàn dōu yǒu shénmo shū?
14. Dàxué wèile zēngjiā yánjiushēngde xìngqū cóng bówuyuàn jièlai de shénmo?
15. Guānyu yǔyán yìfāngmiàn de shū duō bu duō? Shénmo yuányīn?
16. Yuǎn-Dà chūbǎn de kānwu duō bu duō? Tāmen dōu chūbǎnle něizhǒng kānwu?
17. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiu Yuàn dōu yǒu shénmo shū?
18. Guówén Yǔyán Yánjiu Yuàn yǒu jǐcéng lóu? Yánjiushǐ zài nǎr? Cángshūshǐ zài nǎr?
19. Wénshān yào jiè shénmo shū?
20. Wénshān wèi shénmo bú dào yīxué yuàn qù cānguān?
21. Yàoshi nǐ péngyou zài yíge dìfāng dēngzhe nǐ, nǐ dào le yǐhòu yào gēn ta shuō shénmo?
22. Yàoshi nǐ péi nǐde péngyou cānguān nǐde xuéxiào, nǐ yīngdāng shuō shénmo?
23. Yàoshi nǐ gēn péngyou shuō nǐ xiǎng jiè yìběn shū nǐ zěnmō shuō?
24. Yàoshi péngyou qǐng nǐ qù cānguān nǐ méi xìngqū qù, nǐ zěnmō shuō?
25. Yàoshi yíge xuéxiàode shū hěn duō nǐ gàosu péngyou yīnggāi zěnmō shuō?
26. Shénmo jiào héngbiǎn? Shàngtōu yǒu shénmo?
27. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō yíge dàxué yánjiu yuàn wèile gěi yánjiushēng yánjiu dōu yīnggāi yǒu xiē shénmo?
28. Yàoshi hēibǎn shì lǜde, nǐ shuō duì xuésheng yǒu shénmo hǎochu?
29. Yàoshi nǐ qǐng péngyou qù cānguān yíge dìfāng ta bu xiǎng qù nǐ zěnmō bàn?
30. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐ xuéxiàode qíngxíng shuōyishuō, hǎo bu hǎo?

Dialogue: Vincent and Xuexin talk as they look around the university.

White: Hi, Xuexin! Been here long?

Xue : Oh, there you are. I got here just ten minutes ago. Did you finish your shopping?

White: Yes. Did you come straight to the university?

Xue At first I'd planned to go see another schoolmate [of the same class]. Afterward I got to thinking that I hadn't made an appointment with him,

and maybe he wouldn't be at home. Moreover, there wasn't any need to see him. So I didn't go. I've just been walking around the university [lit. turning about everywhere in the university].

White: When I entered the main gate [of the university] just now I saw [that there was] a chart of the number of students on the wall. This semester the number [of students] has increased tremendously.

Xue : You're right. The students [at the university] are increasing [lit. more] year by year. . . . This is the History Research Institute.

White: The [three big] characters Qiān Guāng Lóu on the [horizontal] plaque are very well written.

Xue : They were written by a famous scholar. The name was also thought up by him [lit. that scholar].

White: Qiān is Sīmǎ Qiān. Guāng is the guāng of guāngróng ('glory'). The idea of Qiān Guāng Lóu is 'to perpetuate the glory of Sīmǎ Qiān,' isn't it?

Xue : That's right. That's the idea.

White: From the outside the (History Research) Institute seems really big.

Xue : It's not [considered] small. And there are also quite a few [reference] books [inside]. It is also quite well supplied with all kinds of materials for the study of history [which have been searched out and collected]. The relics on display downstairs are all considered by archaeologists to be of great value. Besides this there's also a group of relics borrowed from the Museum of History for the students to do research on.

White: Are there many people doing research in the History Research Institute?

Xue : The scope of research in the [History Research] Institute is quite extensive. Recently a considerable number of people have been doing research in history.

White: This is the influence of the times. How many volumes [of reference books] does the [History Research] Institute have?

Xue : It appears from the catalogue [of stored books] that there are 200,000 volumes.

White: Were all the books bought by the university?

Xue : The university bought three-fourths of the books. One-fourth of them were contributed by individuals or organizations. When the Research Institute was established the whole student body [of the school] contributed five dollars each in order to buy books.

White: Even [when I was] in America I had heard [lit. I knew] that there were a very great number of books at Far Eastern's History Research Institute.

Xue : There certainly are

White: The architecture of the [Research] Institute is really nice.

Xue : This is old-style Chinese architecture

- White: Not only is the architecture nice, but so are the surroundings. It certainly is a fine place for scholarly research.
- Xue : So every morning a little after eight I come to the university.
- White: Hereafter I'll come [to the university in the morning] with you.
- Xue : We'll bicycle over together. There's another bike at [my] home.
- White: Mrs. Hua has [already] told me. It's your [younger] brother's.
- Xue : Let's go now and look at the National Language and Linguistics Research Institute.
- White: In what direction is it?
- Xue : It's that red building in the southeast corner. Do you see it?
- White: Yes, I see it. Does the [National Language and Linguistics Research] Institute have many books?
- Xue : It has more in the field of literature. It has [books of] both classical literature and modern [lit. new] literature.
- White: Are there also foreign books?
- Xue : A great many. There are books on literature, textbooks, magazines, newspapers, pictorial magazines, and so on. There's also quite a bit of fiction written by present-day fiction writers. In addition there are many literary works in translation.
- White: What kind of textbooks are there?
- Xue : They're all readers for [studying] foreign languages.
- White: At what level are they to be used?
- Xue : [It has them] from elementary to advanced. Don't you think it's a full selection?
- White: It certainly is.
- Xue : In order to add interest for the students, they've also borrowed manuscripts left by famous writers of the past from the Museum of History. They're all very valuable.
- White: Does the Institute have many books in the linguistics field?
- Xue : Not too many.
- White: The discipline of [research in] linguistics has a comparatively short history, so there aren't very many books in this field. It's rather difficult to find material [to consult].
- Xue : Yes. Not only the [Research] Institute but even the [University] library doesn't have much.
- White: How many [kinds of] scholarly journals has the university been publishing [recently]? What are they [lit. the contents] like?
- Xue : There are four or five [kinds of] journals being published. There are some in literature, linguistics, science, and history.

- White: How often do they come out?
- Xue : The science one is a weekly or biweekly, I'm not sure which. The literature and linguistics ones are monthlies, and the history one is a quarterly. They're all quite good [in content].
- White: [I'd like to ask you], who is the Linguistics Monthly edited by?
- Xue : [It's edited by] Professor Ma.
- White: If it's edited by Professor Ma, it's bound to be very good.
- Xue : The main door is locked. Let's go in the side door.
- White: The downstairs (rooms) must be research rooms. Look, the blackboards are the latest style. They're green.
- Xue : Yes. The stacks are upstairs. Let's go there [lit. upstairs].
- White: There certainly are a lot of books. I'd like to borrow one. I don't know if you have it.
- Xue : What [book] would you like to borrow?
- White: A recently published annotated study of ancient grammar. It's a very thin little pamphlet, with just a few pages.
- Xue : I think they must have it. You don't want to borrow anything else?
- White: I'd also like to borrow a couple of magazines to read.
- Xue : There's a tremendous number of magazines. In a moment we'll go [from here] to have a look at the medical school.
- White: But we're outsiders [when it comes to visiting a medical school].
- Xue : Well then, shall we go see the auditorium and the gymnasium instead?
- White: Time's getting on [now]. Let's just go look at the gym. We still have to attend the welcome party for new students [soon] this evening.
- Xue : That's so.
- White: We can see the auditorium at that time.
- Xue : All right. After we've finished looking at the gym we'll go home for dinner and come to the university again afterward.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. Our Chinese class has ten students [in all].
- 1.2. Wang and I are classmates.
- 1.3. Our history seminar has been advanced an hour today.
- 2.1. I went to the library first. Afterward I [also] went to the research institute.
- 3.1. I'm not going to the Wangs', as I have no need to go.
- 3.2. In studying Chinese it is necessary to know Chinese characters.
- 4.1. I've studied so much that I'm too tired. I'm going out for a few turns.

- 4.2. Turn the chair to face the window.
- 4.3. What are they milling around the room for?
- 5.1. Don't make a slip in writing down the amount of money.
- 5.2. It's [already] time for the meeting. How come so few people showed up?
- 6.1. This book is profusely illustrated.
- 6.2. This illustration is the map of our school.
- 7.1. How is the last character on this [horizontal] plaque read?
- 8.1. [I don't deserve your praise.] How can I qualify as a scholar?
- 8.2. My father is a newspaper correspondent.
- 9.1. Szu-ma Ch'ien is a Han Dynasty historian.
- 10.1. I'm very honored that you've come to my home today.
- 10.2. China has a long history and a glorious culture.
- 11.1. Please lend me those [several] linguistic books [to consult].
- 11.2. The books one can consult in this field [of learning] are not extensive.
- 12.1. The Wangs have lost some things. The police have searched everywhere but haven't found them.
- 13.1. He accumulated a lot of dialect material in several villages in Hupeh Province.
- 14.1. China's coal output is quite large.
- 14.2. Wang had guests yesterday. It was quite a feast [lit. food was rather abundant].
- 15.1. Our school is having a meeting next week. We're putting the students' work [lit. accomplishments] on exhibit.
- 16.1. Far Eastern University has an exhibit of Han Dynasty relics. Did you see it?
- 17.1. Next year they plan to go to Honan to carry out some archaeological work.
- 17.2. He's been doing research in archaeology for forty years.
- 18.1. The paintings done by that artist are very valuable now.
- 18.2. What he says is of no value.
- 19.1. We've borrowed some relics from abroad. They've all been put on display in the museum.
- 20.1. When that teacher gives an exam he never tells us what area is to be covered.
- 20.2. What is included in the scope of his lectures on Oriental civilization?
- 20.3. Are all these questions within the scope of the examination?
- 21.1. Well, how have you been amusing yourself recently?

- 22.1. If I can't get a scholarship, it will affect my future.
- 22.2. It hasn't rained for quite a while. The farmers have been much affected.
- 23.1. I accumulated quite a few books when I was in China.
- 23.2. The stacks in our library are all full [of books].
- 24.1. Please hand me the catalogue [of stored books] to look at.
- 24.2. The table of contents in French and Russian books is at the end.
- 25.1. This park was originally a private individual's flower garden.
- 26.1. This organization of ours has sixty people in all.
- 26.2. The young people's organization consists entirely of students up to twenty years of age.
- 27.1. I contributed forty books to our school.
- 27.2. That little school is asking us to contribute money in order to expand.
- 28.1. Next week the whole student body in our school is going on a trip.
- 28.2. As soon as he made the suggestion the whole body opposed it.
- 29.1. Zhang has been in very bad circumstances recently.
- 29.2. The surroundings in this area are really nice. See how quiet it is.
- 30.1. This little present is for your younger sister.
- 30.2. When did your relatives come to America?
- 31.1. I just like to listen to classical music.
- 31.2. I studied the Chinese language for three years before I began to study Chinese classical literature.
- 32.1. My older sister is studying in the foreign language department at the university.
- 33.1. The illustrations in this textbook are very well drawn.
- 34.1. That bookstore has all sorts of pictorial magazines.
- 34.2. He's a correspondent for the China Daily.
- 34.3. This is a monthly, not a weekly.
- 35.1. The novels he writes are all curious stories.
- 36.1. Tomorrow we're asking that French professor to come and lecture. I hear Wang is going to interpret for him.
- 36.2. I don't understand what he's saying. Please translate for me.
- 36.3. Please translate these [few] English sentences into Chinese.
- 37.1. That textbook is well written.
- 38.1. I have to work. I don't have the opportunity to study.
- 38.2. We first study a conversation textbook, and afterward we study a reader.
- 39.1. When I came to China for the first time, I was just fifteen years old.

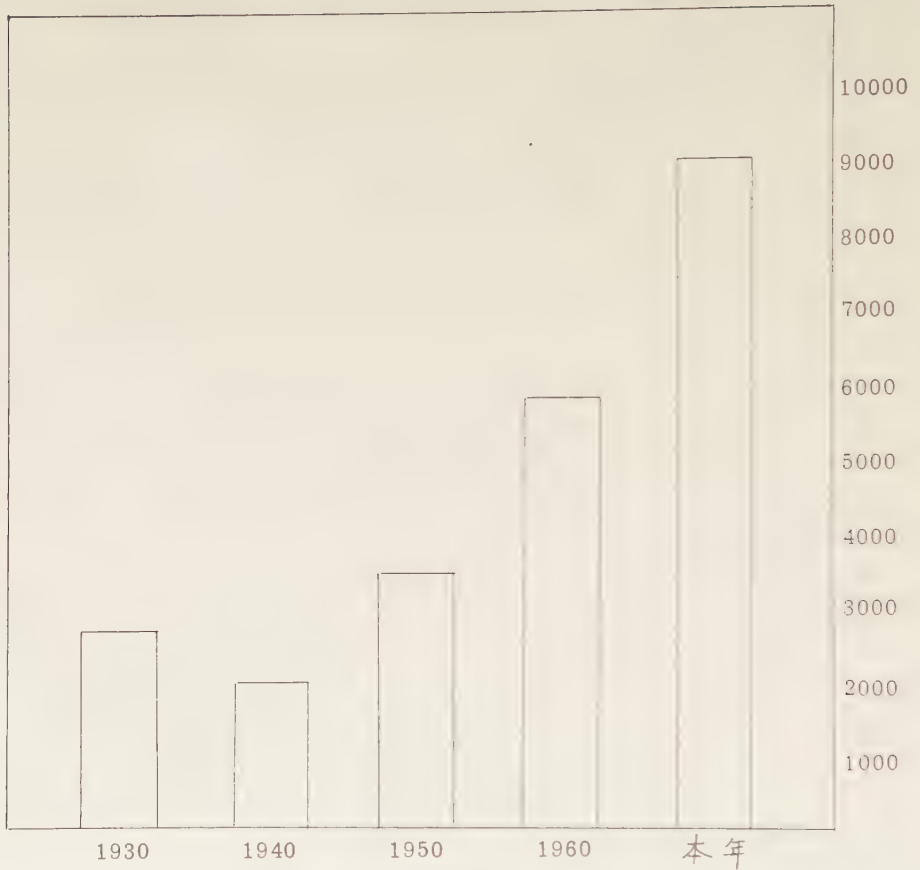
- 39.2. When I first studied archaeology, I wasn't interested (in it).
- 40.1. The intermediate textbook is a little deeper than the beginning text.
- 41.1. He donated all the money his father left him to a foundation.
- 42.1. I've [first] written a rough draft. Please read it and see if it will do.
- 42.2. Don't by any means lose the manuscript.
- 43.1. Today the museum put a number of very valuable relics on exhibit.
- 44.1. It isn't just the students who can't answer that question. Even the professor can't.
- 45.1. The advanced high-school text for Chinese will be published very soon.
- 45.2. That book was published in 1963.
- 46.1. The Chinese Linguistics Association is an organization for scholarly research.
- 47.1. The materials our university publishes in its periodicals are all quite good.
- 47.2. This year's yearbook for our school will soon be published.
- 48.1. The contents of this journal are for the most part concerned with modern history.
- 49.1. Please inquire for me where Professor Wang lives.
- 49.2. I'd like to ask you which way to go to get to Sun Yatsen Avenue.
- 50.1. Who compiled the advanced reader used [lit. studied] in your school?
- 50.2. Professor Zhang edits the Chinese Historical Quarterly.
- 51.1. The main gate of our school faces south.
- 51.2. To get to the library, it's farther [going] by the main road than [going] by a side road.
- 51.3. Go due north on this road and you'll come to North Lake.
- 52.1. If you write [characters] on a green blackboard the students can see (more) clearly.
- 53.1. That book is excellent. It's annotated in great detail.
- 53.2. Look at note 15 and you'll understand what this sentence means.
- 54.1. How many volumes are there [in all] in this set of books?
- 54.2. Would you please sign your name in my little notebook?
- 54.3. My notebook is all filled up.
- 54.4. Read the student handbook carefully and then you'll know all the school regulations.
- 54.5. Volume I is sold out. We have only Volumes II and III.
- 55.1. Please open your books to [lit. look at] page 113.
- 56.1. I want to subscribe to a Chinese pictorial magazine.

- 56.2. Do you have the May issue of this magazine?
- 57.1. This meeting today is a welcome [new students evening] party for our new schoolmates.
- 57.2. That student has already graduated from college. He's now a graduate student [in the graduate school].
- 57.3. This year there are a lot of new students in our school.
- 57.4. This reader can be studied by both middle-school and college students.

Review Sentences

1. He's a newspaper correspondent. He goes everywhere to gather news [material].
2. I've consulted a great many books on that question.
3. Today the museum put on display the antique objects borrowed from China.
4. All the books that Professor Ma writes have considerable value.
5. In writing a Ph.D. thesis, don't let the scope [of writing] be too broad.
6. Because of [the effect of] the war everything is very expensive.
7. That book I want to borrow isn't in the catalogue.
8. Mr. Zhang gave the university a million dollars.
9. I've been in straitened circumstances [lit. my circumstances haven't been good] recently, so I can't continue studying.
10. I'm planning to translate that English novel into Chinese.
11. All my books were left (to me) by my father.
12. When will that beginning textbook you've written be published?
13. That publication of our university is a quarterly. It's published four times a year.
14. [The content of] that book is quite good.
15. Please inquire for me what the address of the museum is.
16. Professor Wang has recently compiled a book on Chinese grammar.
17. How come the research institute isn't on the map of the school?
18. There is no need to write notes for this book.
19. How many graduate students are there in Professor Ma's ancient history seminar?
20. I've collected quite a bit of material for a Ph.D. thesis.

遠東大學學生人數圖



Notes

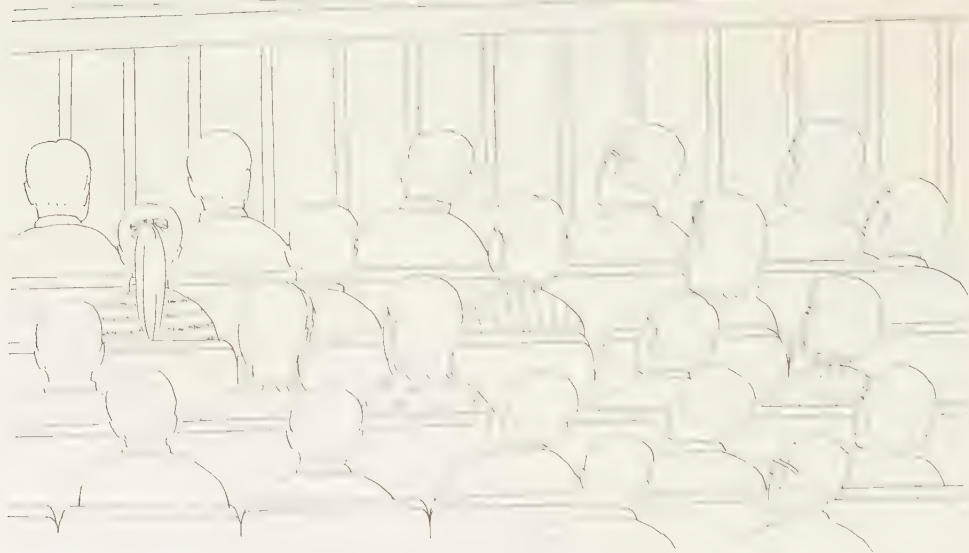
1. The great majority of Chinese compounds consist of two syllables, and the original elements entering into the compound are often reduced to conform to this pattern. Here are some familiar examples:

xuéxiào 'school'	+ tú 'map'	= xiàotú 'map of a school'
fēijīchǎng 'airport'	+ tú 'map'	= chǎngtú 'map of an airport'
wǎnshàng 'evening'	+ huì 'meeting'	= wǎnhuì 'evening meeting, evening party'
xīn 'new'	+ xuésheng 'student'	= xīnshēng 'new student'

2. Sima Qian (or Szu-ma Ch'ien in the Wade-Giles transcription; note the two-syllable surname) was born in the Han Dynasty about 145 B.C. His Shǐ Jì 'Historical Records,' a history of China from the beginnings to his own times, exerted so great an influence on Chinese historical writing that it would be natural to name a Chinese history institute building after him: Qiān Guāng Lóu is literally 'Hall of the Glory of (Sima) Qian.' It is usual Chinese practice to invite a famous scholar to name a building and write the characters for it.

3. The suffix zhě '-er, one who' is attached to certain verbs, forming nouns on the pattern of English 'teach, teacher': xué 'study,' xuézhě '(professional) scholar.'
4. From its use in the honorific title xiānsheng, literally 'first born,' the second syllable has come to be used as a noun suffix, especially in nouns referring to studying, as in xuésheng 'student,' dàxuéshēng 'college student,' and yénjiùshēng 'graduate student.' Note that except in xiānsheng and xuésheng, the syllable shēng occurs with a tone.

歡迎新學生晚會



“Shēn bēizhe huā gǔ zǒu sìfāng.”

Dì Èrshisānkè. Huānyíng Xīnshēng Wǎnhuì

Huìhuà: Měiyīng, Wénshān, Xuéxīn sāngē rén cānjiā Yuǎn-Dàde huānyíng xīnshēng wǎnhuì.

Měi : Xiànzài yào kāishǐ le.

Bái : Zhǔxí shì shéi ya?

5 Xué : Shì sānniánjǐde, jiào Yè Wényīng.

Měi : Tā hěn huì zuò shì. Xuéxiào kāi huì shífēnzhī jiǔ shì tā zuò zhǔxí.

Zhǔ : Zhūwèi láibīn, zhūwèi tóngxué:

10 Jīntian wǒmen zhèige huì dàjiā dōu zhīdao shì wèile shénmo kāide. Zhèige huì shì huānyíng xīnshēng wǎnhuì.

Wǒmen xuéxiào jīnnian cóng gè dìfang láile hěn duō xīn tóngxué, wǒmen shì duómo gāoxíng. Dànshi wǒmen hěn cánguì yīnwei wǒmen yě bú huì shénmo yóuxì. Búguò jiùshì biǎoshì huānyíng xīn tóngxué. Jīntian zhèige huì jiào xiōngdi wǒ** lái zhǔchí. Suírán yǐjīng chóubèile jǐtiān, yídìng hái yǒu hěn duō bu zhōydaode dìfang. Qǐng zhūwèi yuánliàng. Jīntian wǎnshangde yúlè jiému dōu shì jǐwèi xīn jiù tóngxuémen dānrènde. Wǒ xiǎng yídìng hěn yǒu yìsi. Xián huà shǎo shuō. Xiànzài wǒmende jiému jiù kāishǐ. Xiān qǐng Jīn Shūwén tóngxué shuō jǐwèi jiàoshòude kǒutóuyǔ.

20 Jīn : Zhǔxí Xiānsheng dài rén bù gōngping. Biéde tóngxué liǎngge lǐbài yǐqián dōu zhǔnbèi le, bǎ wǒ línshí zhuāshànglai.

* This lesson illustrates several types of Chinese humor and entertainment: (a) nicknames, (b) tongue twisters, (c) guessing characters, (d) songs, (e) comic dialogues, and (f) satire as a spoof of the academic style. See Note 1 at the end of the lesson on Chinese names, and Notes 2-7 for descriptions of each form of entertainment.

** Xiōngdi (wǒ) 'me, (your) younger brother'—a humble reference to oneself.

Wǒ shuōyishuō wǒmen dàxué jǐwèi jiàoshòude kǒutóuyǔer.
 Yǒu yíwèi jiàoshòu yàoshi yǒu xuésheng bǎ gōngke zuòcuò le
 25 huòzhe shénmo shìqing bú duì le, tā yídìng shuō, "Aiya!
 Zāogāo!" Suóyì wǒmen jiù gěi ta qǐ ge wàihào jiào "Aiya!
 Zāogāo!" Xiānsheng. Zhūwèi tóngxué yídìng cāidezǎo ta shì
 shéi.

Bái : Shì bu shì Máo Jiàoshòu?
 30 Měi : Shì ta. Tā duì xuésheng hǎojíle.
 Jīn : Hái yǒu yíwèi "Guǒrán bú cuò" Xiānsheng. Hái yǒu yíwèi
 "Méi yǒu nàge bìyao" Xiānsheng. Tā lǎo xiānsheng* shàng
 yítáng kè dàgài yào shuō jǐshícì "Méi yǒu nàge bìyào." Yǒu
 yícì wǒ gěi ta jìzhe tā yítáng shuōle sānshiliù cì "Méi yǒu
 35 nàge bìyào."

Oh, hái yǒu yíwèi "Hǎojíle" Xiānsheng. Wúlùn shuō
 shénmo dōu dài "Hǎojíle." Jiānglái xiǎng fázi ràng ta yùjian
 yíjiàn huàijíle de shìqing, kàn ta hái shuō bu shuō "Hǎojíle."

Zhèi jǐwèi jiàoshòu nǐmen zhīdao shì shéi ma? Xìng'er
 40 jiàoshòumen dōu bú zài chǎng. Zhūwèi tóngxué ke bié bǎ wǒ
 shuō de huà gào su tāmen. Yàoshi zhèi jǐwèi jiàoshòu zhīdaole
 wǒ xià xuéqī kěnéng bibuliǎo yè!

Bái : Zhèi jǐwèi jiàoshòu wǒ dōu zhīdao shì shéi.
 Zhǔ : Xiànzài shì ràokǒulìngr. Qǐng Máo Shānhé tóngxué gěi wǒmen
 45 shuō ràokǒulìngr.
 Máo : Wǒ hěn jiǔ méi shuō ràokǒulìngr le. Wǒ hái shì niàn chūzhōng
 de shíhou wǒmen xuéxiào wúshízhōu jìniàn wǒ shuō de ne.

Shān qián yǒu ge Cuī Cū-tuǐ.
 Shān hòu yǒu ge Cuī Tuǐ-cū.
 50 Èr rén shān qián lái bǐ tuǐ.
 Bù zhī Cuī Tuǐ-cūde tuǐ bǐ Cuī Cū-tuǐde tuǐ cū,
 Háishi Cuī Cū-tuǐde tuǐ bǐ Cuī Tuǐ-Cūde tuǐ cū.

Zhòng:** Zài lái yíge! Zài lái yíge!

* Tā lǎo xiānsheng 'he the old teacher'—a polite way of referring to some-
 one.

** Zhòng guānzhòng 'audience.'

- Māo : Chī pútáo jiù tǔ pútáo piér. Bù chī pútáo bù tǔ pútáo piér.
- 55 Bái : “Chī pútáo” de wǒ shuōdeshànglái. “Bǐ tuǐ” de wǒ shuōbushànglái.
- Zhǔ : Wǒmen xiànzài cāi zì yóuxì. Xiànzài yǒu liǎngjù wǔyán shī cāi liǎngge zì. Cāizháole de yǒu yìdiǎr jiǎngpǐn. Shéi cāizháole shéi jǔ shǒu. Wǒ xiànzài bǎ zhèi liǎngjù shī niàngei zhūwèi tīng. Dì yījù shī shì:
- 60 “Yán” biān “zhǔ” xià “yuè”
- Dì èrjù shī shì:
- Èr rén tǔshang dūn.
- Měi : Wénshān, nǐ cāidezáo ba?
- 65 Bái : Dì yīge wǒ cāibuzáo. Dì èrge wǒ zhīdao. Měiyīng, nǐ shuō dì yīge shì shénmo zì?
- Měi : Dāngrán wǒ zhīdao, kěshi wǒ bù shuō.
- Zhǔ : Yīhuěr qǐng cāizháole de lǐng jiǎng. Xiàmian shì biáoyǎn míngēr “Fèngyáng Huā Gǔ.” Shì Wén Qīnghuá Wén Qīngwén liǎngwèi tóngxué biáoyǎn.
- 70 [Music] : Dōngdōng qiàng, dōngdōng qiàng.
- Dōngdōng qiàngdōng qiàngdōng qiàng.
- Wén
(singing): Shuō Fèngyáng, dào Fèngyáng.
- Fèngyáng běn shì hǎo dìfang.
- 75 Zìcóng, chūle Zhū Huángdì,
- Shínián dào yǒu jiǔnián huāng.
- [Music] : Dōngdōng qiàng, dōngdōng qiàng
- Dōngdōng qiàngdōng qiàngdōng qiàng.
- Wén
(singing): Dàhù rénjiā mài tiándì.
- 80 Xiǎohù rénjiā mài érláng.
- Wǒ jiā méi yǒu érláng mài.
- Shēn bēizhe huā gǔ zǒu sīfāng.
- [Music] : Dōngdōng qiàng, dōngdōng qiàng
- Dōngdōng qiàngdōng qiàngdōng qiàng.
- 85 Bái : “Fèngyáng Huā Gǔ” biáoyǎnde zhēn hǎo. Yìbiār chàng yìbiār biáoyǎn hěn bù róngyi.
- Měi : Tāmen liǎngge rén shì wo tóngbān tóngxué. Hěn yǒu yǎn xì de tiāncái. Yíge shì gēge yíge shì mèimei.

- 90 Zhǔ : Xiànzài zhèige jiémù shì xiàngsheng. Shì Mǎ Guóyīng Huáng Néng liǎngwèi tóngxué dānrèn de.
- Huáng : Xiànzài wǒ qǐng wèn nǐ, Kóngzǐ yígòng yǒu duōshao xuésheng a?
- Mǎ : Kóngzǐ yígòng yǒu sānqiān xuésheng.
- Huáng : Bú cuò. Nǐ zhīdao zuì hǎode xuésheng yǒu duōshao?
- 95 Mǎ : Kóngzǐ zuì hǎode xuésheng yǒu qīshí'èrge.
- Huáng : Nǐ zhīdao zhèi qīshí'èrge rén lǐtou, yǒu duōshao jiēle hūn yǒu duōshao méi jiēhūn de?
- Mǎ : Nǐ ke wènzhu wǒ le. Shūshang méi yǒu ba.
- 100 Huang : Wǒ ke zhīdao. Yǒu sānshíge jiēle hūn de sìshí'èrge méi jiēhūn de.
- Bái : Nǐ zěnmó zhīdao de?
- Huáng : Lún Yǔ shang yǒu a:
Guànzǎi wǔ liù rén.
Tóngzǐ liù qī rén.
- 105 “Guànzǎi” jiù shì jiēguo hūn de. Wǔ liù sānshí. “Tóngzǐ” jiù shì méi jiēguo hūn de. Liù qī sìshí'èr. Sānshí jiā sìshí'èr zhèi bù zhěng qīshí'èrge rén ma?
- Mǎ : Duìle. Yǒu nǐde, zhēn yǒu nǐde.
- 110 Měi : Wénshān, nǐ zhīdao tāmen shuōde zhèi shì zài Sì Shū néiběn shang de?
- Bái : Shì Lún Yǔ shang de, wǒ wàngle zài shàng Lún shang shì xià Lún shang le.
- Xué : Néng shuō xiàngshengr de rén dōu hěn cōngmíng.
- 115 Huáng : Wǒ zài wèn nǐ yíge wèntí. Nǐ zhīdao Sān Guó shang Zhūgé Liàng Zhōu Yú zhèi liǎngge rén ma?
- Mǎ : Dāngrán zhīdao le.
- Huáng : Nǐ zhīdao tāmen liǎngge rén de mǔqīn xìng shénmo?
- Mǎ : Zhèi wǒ kě bù zhīdao.
- Huáng : Zhūgé Liàngde mǔqīn xìng Hé, Zhōu Yúde mǔqīn xìng Jì.
- 120 Mǎ : Nǐ cóng nǎr zhīdao de?
- Huáng : Zhèi shì Zhōu Yú zìjǐ shuōde. Yǒu yíci Zhōu Yú shēngqīle, tā jiù shuō le: “Jì shēng Yú, Hé shēng Liàng? Na bú shì yìsi jiù shì shuō, xìng Jì de shēng de Zhōu Yú, xìng Hé de shēng Zhūgé Liàng ma?”
- 125 Xué : Xiàngshengr hěn yǒu yìsi. Wǒ fùqīn hěn xǐhuan tīng xiàngshengr.

- Měi : Shuō xiàngshengr hěn nán.
- Zhū : Xiànzai wǒmen de yúlè jiémù yǐjīng wán le. Xiàmian qǐng Wáng Dàwén tóngxué yánjiǎng. Wáng tóngxué shì wǒmen tóngxué lǐtōu xuéwen zuì hǎo de. Měicì kǎoshì ta dōu kǎo dì-yī. Jiùlián zìdiǎn tā dōu bèixialai le, wàihàor jiào Huó Zìdiǎn. Wǒmen tīngle tāde yánjiǎng yǐhòu, duì wǒmen xué de yìfāngmiàn yídìng yǒu hěn dàde bāngzhu.
- 130
- Wáng : Zhūwèi tóngxué. Jīntian wǒ suǒ jiǎngde tímu shì guānyu Chǎo Dòufu. Chǎo Dòufu yě shì yìzhǒng xuéwen. Wǒ jīntian gēn nǐmen shuōyishuō Chǎo Dòufu zhèige tímu.
- 135
- Guānyu Chǎo Dòufu, kéyì cóng jǐfāngmiàn lái jiǎng. Zhūyàode háishi kǒuwèide wèntí. Ànzhe wǒde kànfa, wǒ rènwei Wáng Tàitai chǎode dòufu zuì hǎo. Tā suǒ chǎo de dòufu, yìlái hěn hǎo chī, èrlái kànzhe yě piàoliang, zàizhè wénzhe yě hěn xiāng. Tā suǒ chǎo de dòufu yóngyuǎn méi fāshēngguo shénmo wèntí. Zhèi shì rènhe rén bù néng fǒurèn de. Jīngguo wǒ kǎolǜ de jiéguǒ chǎo dòufu bìxū cānkǎo Wáng Tàitai chǎo dòufu de fāngfǎ. Huàn ju huà shuō, yě yào tīngting tā guānyu chǎo dòufu de lǐlùn. Duìyu zhèi jǐdiǎn nǐmen yào zhùyì.
- 140
- Wáng Tàitai dòufu chǎo de hǎo chī, nà shì hěn míngxiǎn de shìshí. Bú shì yìzhǒng lǐlùn.
- Zōng'eryánzhi yòng jǐjù jiǎndānde huà bǎ chǎo dòufu de yuánzé gàosu nǐmen. Wǒ xiāngxīn dòufu gēn jiàngyóu yǒu xiāngdāngde guānxi. Yìfāngmiàn suǐrán jiàngyóu bù néng suǐsuǐbiànbiàn de fàngde tài duō, kěshi lìng yìfāngmiàn yě bù néng māmāhūhūde fàngde tài shǎo. (Guānyu zhèi yìdiǎn qǐng cānkǎo Wáng Dàshifu suǒ xiě de shù: Chǎo Dòufu Yánjiu dì sīcè, dì wǔbǎi liùshisānyè, zhùjiě dì shíqī.)
- 145
- Wǒ gēn nǐmen tánle bàntian Chǎo Dòufu, kěshi shìshíshang wǒ yě bú huì chǎo dòufu. Wǒ jiùshi ài chī chǎo dòufu.
- Wǒ zhànshí bǎ Chǎo Dòufu de dàyì gàosu nǐmen. Dēng wǒ yǒu jīhuì jiànzhào Wáng Tàitai qǐng ta bǎ Chǎo Dòufu de nèiróng gàosu wǒ yǐhòu, wǒ zài bǎ tāde lǐlùn xiāngxìde jiěshi gěi nǐmen tīng.
- 150
- Rúguǒ nǐmen duì Chǎo Dòufu yǒu shénmo wèntí, qǐng nǐmen míngtiān dōu qu chī chǎo dòufu qu. Dànshi wǒ děi gěi nǐmen jiěshi qīngchu, bìng bú shì wǒ qǐng kè, shì gè chī gè de. Chīwánle yǐhòu yǒu shénmo bù liáojiě de, wǒmen zài tāolùn.
- 155
- Chǎo Dòufu zhèige wèntí yě shì yíge hěn fūzá de wèntí, bùshì jǐfēn zhōng kéyì jiěshiwánle de. Shǐhou dào le. Wǒmen xiàcì zài yánjiu.
- 160
- 170 Měi : Ke xiàosi wǒ le. Wǒ zhēn bù zhīdào Wáng Dàwén yǒu zhèizhǒng běnshi.
- Bái : Zhèiwèi yě shì nǚ tóngbān de ma?
- Měi : Bú shì. Wǒ bǐ ta gāo yìbān. Tāde gōngke hǎo shì zhēnde. Ta bù zēnmo xīhuan shuō huà.

- 175 Zhǔ : Xiànzài wǒmende jiémù dōu wán le. Kěshi wǒmen hái yǒu hěn duō shíjiān. Wǒmen hái yùbeile yìdiǎr chádǎn. Qǐng nǐmen suǐbiàn chī yìdiǎr, suǐbiàn wár. Cóng míngtiān kāishǐ wǒmen jiù zhèngshì shàng kè le. Méi yǒu wár de jīhui le Yīhòu jiù zài kètángli jiàn le.
- 180 Jíntiān xièxiè zhūwèi lái cānjiā wǒmen zhèige huì.



Shēng Zì gēn Xīn Yúfǎ de Jùzi

- 1.0. (4) zhǔ chief, head
 dìzhǔ landowner, landlord
 zuò zhǔ be in charge of something
- 1.1. Zhèige shìqing shéi zuò zhǔ?
- 1.2. Tāmen jiā shì dà dìzhǔ.
- 2.0. (8) zhūwèi (term of address) (Note 8)
- 2.1. Xiànzài zhūwèi yǒu shénmo tíyì méi you?
- 2.2. Xièxiè zhūwèi duì wǒmen zhèijiàn shìqing bāng máng.
- 3.0. (8) láibīn visitors, guests (N) [lit. come guests]
- 3.1. Duō xiè zhūwèi láibīn dào wǒmen xuéxiào cānguān.
- 4.0. (12) cánguì ashamed, mortified, sorry (SV)
- 4.1. Wǒ hěn cánguì zhèijiàn shì méi gěi nín bànhǎo.
- 5.0. (13) biǎoshì show, express, make clear (V)
 biǎoshì A duì B yìdiǎr yìsi show A's regard for B, as a token of A's regard
- 5.1. Zhèi diār xiǎo lǐwù qǐng nín shōuxia biǎoshi wǒ yìdiǎr yìsi.
- 5.2. Tā yǐjīng gēn wǒ biǎoshìguo hěn duō cì zhèige shìqing ta bú yuànyi zuò le.
- 6.0. (15) zhǔchí have charge of, direct, manage (V) [lit. chief control]
- 6.1. Nèige dà huì shì shéi zhǔchí?
- 6.2 Jíntiān xiàwǔ Zhāng Jiàoshòu zhǔchí de jīngjì yánjiubān gǎi xià lǐbàiwǔ le.

- 7.0. (15) chóubèi prepare (for an activity) (V) [lit. plan prepare]
 7.1. Nèige shìqing zhēn bù róngyi. Tāmen yǐjīng chóubèile yìnián le.
- 8.0. (16) zhōudao thorough (SV) [lit. complete reach]
 8.1. Zuótian wǒmen qu cānguān nèige xuéxiào tāmen zhāodàide hěn zhōudao.
- 9.0. (16) yuánliàng forgive, excuse, make allowances for (V) [lit. origin forgive]
 9.1. Nèijiàn shìqing wǒ zuòcuò le. Qǐng nín yuánliàng wǒ.
- 10.0. (17) yúlè amusement, recreation, entertainment (N) [lit. amuse happy]
 yúlèchǎng place of amusement
 10.1. Zhèizhǒng yúlè wǒmen Měiguó méi yǒu.
 10.2. Zhèrde yúlèchǎng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén?
- 11.0. (17) jiémù (items on a) program, schedule (N) [lit. section item]
 jiémudān playbill, program
 11.1. Lǎo Wáng, zhèige zhōumò yǒu shénmo jiémù?
 11.2. Kànkàn jiémudānshang dōu yǒu shénmo?
- 12.0. (17) dānrèn assume, take on, shoulder responsibility for (V) [lit. load duty]
 12.1. Shéi dānrèn zhèige huìde zhǔxí?
- 13.0. (20) kǒutóu oral, verbal, by word of mouth (N) [lit. mouth head]
 kǒutóuyǔ(r) speech mannerism, habit of speech, pet phrase
 13.1. Nèijiàn shìqing tā kǒutóushang yǐjīng shuō kéyì le.
 13.2. Zhāng jiàoshòu de kǒutóuyǔ tài duō le. Tīng le hěn tǎoyàn.
- 14.0. (21) gōngping impartial, fair, just (SV) [lit. public even]
 dài rén bù gōngping treat people unfairly
 14.1. Nèijiàn shìqing nǐ yào bànde gōngping yìdiǎr.
 14.2. Nèige jiàoyuán dài xuésheng bù gōngping.
- 15.0. (22) línshí provisional, temporary, special, on a moment's notice [lit. near time]
 línshí zhèngfǔ provisional government
 15.1. Wǒ qǐng Zhāng Xiānsheng chī fàn. Tā línshí dǎ ge diànhuà shuō bù lái le.
 15.2. Dǎ zhàng de shíhou zài nèr zǔzhīle yíge línshí zhèngfǔ.
- 16.0. (22) zhuā scratch; grab (V)
 16.1. Qǐng nǐmen xiǎoxin. Zhèizhī mǎo zhuā rén.

- 16.2. Zhèige shìqíng zhǎobuzháo rén zuò. Tā línshí bǎ wǒ zhuāláile.
- 17.0. (31) guǒrán certainly, indeed (AD) [lit. certainly is]
- 17.1. Rénjia dōu shuō nèige fànguǎrde cài hǎo chī. Zuótian wǎnshang wǒ chīle yíci. Guǒrán hěn hǎo.
- 18.0. (33) táng hall, room (N) (also, measure for a class at a particular time and place)
- kètáng classroom
- jiǎngtáng lecture hall
- yítáng kè one class
- 18.1. Wǒmen xiàwǔ sāndiǎn zhōng zài wǔhào kètáng jiàn.
- 18.2. Nǐmen zài jiǎngtángshang yào ānjing yìdiǎr.
- 18.3. Wǒ xīngqīliù yě yǒu liǎngtáng kè.
- 19.0. (44) rào circle around, detour around (V)
- ràozuǐ difficult to say [lit. circle mouth]
- ràokǒulǐngr tongue twister
- ràoyuǎn, ràoyuǎr circuitous, roundabout
- 19.1. Qiántou xiū lù ne. Děi ràozhe zǒu.
- 19.2. Zhèige jùzi hěn ràozuǐ. Wǒ zěnmō shuō yě shuō bu liúli.
- 19.3. Qǐng nǐ gàosu wǒ tāmen shuōde zhèige ràokǒulǐngr shì shénmo yìsi?
- 19.4. Cóng zhèitiáo lù zǒu tài ràoyuǎr le.
- 20.0. (47) zhōunian anniversary (year) (M) [lit. cycle year]
- 20.1. Xià yuè shíhào wǒmen xuéxiào yìbǎi zhōunián le.
- 20.2. Lǐbàiliù wǒ gēn wǒ nàiren jiéhūn wǔzhōunián. Wǒ qǐng nǐmen chī wǎnfàn.
- 21.0. (47) jìniàn commemorate, celebrate the memory of (V), commemoration (N) [lit. record ponder]
- jìniànrì memorial day, anniversary day
- zhōunián jìniàn anniversary celebration
- 21.1. Jīntian wǒmen xuéxiào jìniàn chénglìle sānbǎi zhōunián.
- 21.2. Míngtian shì xuéxiàode zhōunián jìniàn suǒyì fàngjià yìtiān.
- 21.3. Jīntian shì shénmo jìniànrì?
- 22.0. (54) pútáo grape (N)
- pútáo pí(er) grape skin
- 22.1. Suǒyǒude shuǐguǒ wǒ zuì xǐhuan chī pútáo.
- 23.0. (54) tǔ spit (out) (V)

- 23.1. Nǐ tǔ de shíhou túzai shǒujuàrshang.
- 24.0. (57) yán word (M)
- 24.1. Qǐng wèn, yán zì zěnmó xiě?
- 25.0. (57) shī poem, poetry (N)
- shīrén poet
- shījiā poet
- 25.1. Tā shī zuòde hěn hǎo.
- 25.2. Tā búdàn shì ge kēxuéjiā, érqǐě yě shì ge shīrén.
- 26.0. (58) jiǎngpǐn reward, prize (N) [lit. reward article]
- dé jiǎngpǐn obtain a prize
- 26.1. Wǒ fùqīn shuō yàoshi wǒ kǎo dì yī ta sòng wǒ jiǎngpǐn.
- 26.2. Shàng cì yùndòng huì wǒmen xuéxiào déle hěn duō jiǎngpǐn.
- 27.0. (59) jǔ raise overhead (V)
- 27.1. Shéi rènshi zhèige zì? Qǐng jǔ shǒu.
- 28.0. (63) tǔ earth, soil, dirt (N)
- 28.1. Zhèrde tǔ hǎo, suóyi qīngcài zhǎngde tèbié dà.
- 29.0. (63) dūn crouch, squat (V)
- dūnzai dìxia squat on the ground
- 29.1. Nèrde xiāngxia rén dōu shì dūnzai dìxia chī fàn.
- 30.0. (68) lǐng receive, get, claim (V)
- 30.1. Nǐde jiǎngpǐn lǐng le méi you?
- 31.0. (68) biáoyǎn act out, perform, demonstrate (V); performance, demonstration (N) [lit. show perform]
- 31.1. Zuótian kāi huì nèi jǐge yúlè jiémù dōu biáoyǎnde hěn hǎo.
- 31.2. Xuéxiào zhōunian jìniàn dà huì yǒu wǒ mèimei biáoyǎn.
- 32.0. (69) mín people
- míngē(r) folk song
- rénmín the people [lit. man people]
- guómín citizen [lit. nation people]
- mínguó republic [lit. people nation]
- Zhōnghuá Mínguó Republic of China (Note 9)
- mínzhǔ democracy [lit. people chief]
- mínzhǔ guó(jiā) democratic country, democracy
- 32.1. Zhèige dìfang de míngēr hěn hǎo tīng.
- 32.2. Quán guóde rénmin dōu yōnghu ta.

- 32.3. Wǒmen dōu shì Měiguode guómín.
 32.4. Zhōnghuá Mínguó jiǔnián jiù shì yī jiǔ èr líng nián.
 32.5. Nèige guójiā shì yíge mínzǔ guó.
 33.0. (69) huā figured, variegated
 33.1. Wáng Xiǎojie chuānle yíjiàn huā qípáo.
 34.0. (69) gǔ drum
 dǎ gǔ play a drum
 34.1. Tā gǔ dǎde hěn hǎo.
 35.0. (75) zìcóng ever since [lit. from from]
 35.1. Zìcóng dǎ zhàng yǐhòu ta jiù méi huí guó.
 36.0. (75) huángdì emperor (N) [lit. emperor ruler]
 36.1. Míng Cháode huángdì xìng Zhū.
 37.0. (76) huāng suffer famine (V), famine (N)
 huāngnián famine year
 huāngdì barren ground
 37.1. Nèige dìfang zhèi jǐnián huāngde lǐhai.
 37.2. Wǒmen nèige dìfang jīnnián shì huāngnián.
 37.3. Nèikuài dà píngyuán wánquán shì huāngdì.
 38.0. (79) -hù household
 dàhù rich [lit. big] family
 xiǎohù poor [lit. small] family
 38.1. Tāmen jiā zài zhèige cūnzili shì ge dàhù. Tāmen xiāngdāng yǒu qián.
 39.0. (79) tiándì farm land, fields (N) [lit. field land]
 39.1. Wǒmen jiā zhǐ yǒu fángzi, méi you tiándì.
 40.0. (82) bēi carry on one's back (TV)
 40.1. Sìchuānde nǚrén bēizhe háizi zuò shì.
 41.0. (89) xiàngsheng(r) comic dialogue (N) [lit. appearance sound]
 41.1. Zuótian wǒ zài wúxiàndiàn tīngzhao xiàngshengr le.
 42.0. (98) wènzhū puzzle, nonplus, stump (V) [lit. ask stop]
 42.1. Zuótian Lǎo Wáng bǎ wǒ gěi wènzhule. Tā wènle wǒ yíge wèntí. Wǒ zěnmó xiǎng yě xiǎngbuqǐlái.
 43.0. (131) bèi memorize, repeat from memory (V)
 bèi shū memorize, repeat from memory [lit. memorize book]
 43.1. Cóngqián Zhōngguó xuésheng niàn shū měikè shū bìděi dōu bèixialai.

- 43.2. Qǐng nǐmen bú yào kàn shū. Xiànzài wǒmen yào bèi shū le.
- 44.0. (134) suǒ that which (Note 10)
- 44.1. Tā suǒ shuō de duì wǒmen hěn yǒu yòng.
- 45.0. (140) yīlái in the first place [lit. one come]
èrlái in the second place [lit. two come]
- 45.1. Wǒ kě bú qù lǚxíng. Yīlái méi gōngfu, èrlái wǒ yě méi qián.
- 46.0. (140) zàizhě furthermore
- 46.1. Wǒ kě bù mǎi chē. Yīlái tài guì, èrlái wǒ bù xūyào, zàizhě wǒ yě bù huì kǎi.
- 47.0. (141) xiāng fragrant (SV)
- 47.1. Yuànzili de méiguì hěn xiāng.
- 48.0. (141) yónguǎn forever, always (AD)
- 48.1. Xiǎode shíhou bèi de shū yónguǎn wàngbuliǎo.
- 49.0. (142) fǒurèn deny (V) [lit. no acknowledge]
- 49.1. Nèijiàn shìqíng 'shì tā shuōde. Wǒ wèn ta, tā méi fǒurèn.
- 50.0. (143) kǎolǚ ponder, consider, weigh thoughtfully (V) [lit. examine plan]
- 50.1. Zhèijian shìqíng wǒ děi kǎolǚ kǎolǚ zài huída nǐ.
- 51.0. (145) lǐlùn theory (N) [lit. reason discuss]
lǐlunshang in theory, theoretically
- 51.1. Tā suǒ shuō de shì yìzhǒng lǐlùn.
- 51.2. Zài lǐlunshang nǐ shuōde hěn duì.
- 52.0. (147) míngxǐǎn obvious, clear (SV) [lit. bright manifest]
- 52.1. Nǐ dài rén bú gōngpíng nà shì hěn míngxǐǎn de shìqíng.
- 53.0. (148) shìshí fact (N) [lit. matter real]
shìshíshang in fact, as a matter of fact
- 53.1. Lǐlun shì lǐlun. Shìshí shì shìshí.
- 53.2. Zài lǐlunshang shì duì de. Kěshì shìshíshang hěn nán zuòdedào.
- 54.0. (149) zǒng'eryánzhi in sum, in a word; after all is said and done, in the last analysis [lit. sum and say it]
- 54.1. Tā jiěshìle bàntiān. Zǒng'eryánzhi wǒ háishi bù dòng.
- 55.0. (150) yuánzé (fundamental) principle (N) [lit. origin principle]
- 55.1. Nǐde shìqíng yuánzéshang méi wèntí le
- 56.0. (158) dàyì general meaning, general idea, tenor (N) [lit. big meaning]
- 56.1. Zhèikè shūde dàyì nǐmen zhīdao ba?
- 57.0. (166) tāolùn discuss formally (V) [lit. ask discuss]

- 57.1. Guānyu zhèige wèntí wǒmen xiànzài tāolùn tāolùn.
 58.0. (167) fùzá complicated, complex, intricate (SV) [lit. complex diverse]
 58.1. Nèijiàn shìqing bù róngyi bàn. Tài fùzá le.
 59.0. (176) chádiǎn refreshments (N)
 59.1. Xuéxiàode zhōunián jìniàn hái yùbeile chádiǎn.

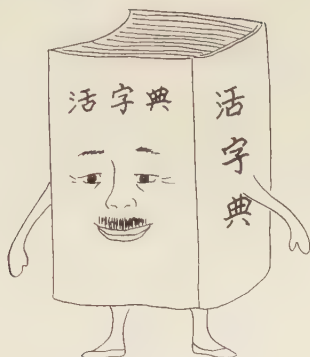


Wēnxi Jùzi

1. Wǒ bú huì shénmo biáoyǎn. Wǒ juéde hěn cánkuì.
2. Zuótian ta gēn wǒ biǎoshì ta hěn bù mǎnyì Lǎo Wáng duì ta de tàidu.
3. Nèige lishǐ yánjiubān shì Wáng Jiàoshòu zhǔchí ma?
4. Zhèr zhèng zai chóubèi kāi Shìjiè Yùndong Huì.
5. Jīntian zhāodaide bù hǎo. Qǐng nín yuánliàng.
6. Wǒ zài nèige xuéxiào dānrèn jiāo Zhōngwén.
7. Wúlùn zuò shénmo shì yīnggāi zuòde gōngping.
8. Xiōngdi wǒ méi zīge dānrèn zhènmò zhòngyàode shìqing.
9. Zhèizhī bǐ shì wǒ biyè de shíhou wǒ fùqin sònggei wǒ de zuò ge biyè jìniàn.
10. Zhèige wèntí huì de jǔ shǒu.
11. Wǒmen gōngsī měiyuè sānshihào líng xīnshuì.
12. Nèige diànyǐng piānzi de yǎnyuán biáoyǎnde zhēn hǎo.
13. Tā měitiān zǎochen bēizhe háizi qu mǎi cài.
14. Qǐng nǐmen míngtiān bǎ hēibǎnshangde jùzi dōu bèixialai.
15. Nèijiàn shìqing bú shì wǒ yíge rén suǒ néng bàndedào de.
16. Nèige gōngzuò duì nǐ hěn héshì. Nǐ bú bì kǎolǚ le.
17. Wǒ xīwang xué liùge yuè de Zhōngguo huà jiù kéyì shuōde bú cuò, dànshi shìshíshang bú nènmo róngyi ba.
18. Nèijiàn shìqing tāmen jǐge rén tāolùnle bàntiān yě méi jiégǔo.

19. Nèiběn shūde dàyì wǒ dōu dǒng le.

20. Tā xiěde shū wénfǎ hěn fǔzá.



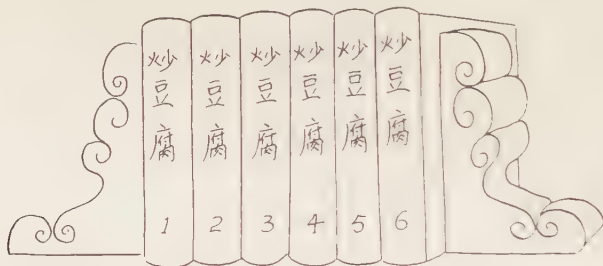
Dāndú Tánhuà

Wǒ gēn Xuéxīn qīdiǎn sānkè jiù dào dàxué mén kǒu dēngzhe Měiyīng. Dēngle bú dào shífēn zhōng, Měiyīng jiù láile. Jīntian cānjiā wǎnhuì de rén hěn duō. Zhèng bādiǎn zhōng huì jiù kāishǐ le. Kāishǐ shì zhǔxí bàogào. Zhèiwèi tóngxué hěn yǒu shuō huà de tiāncái. Měiyīng shuō
5 dàxué kāi huì shífēnzhī jiù dōu shì tā dānrèn zhǔxí. Jīntian wǎnshangde jiémù dōu shì xīn jiù tóngxué dānrèn de. Tóngxué lǐtou zhēn yǒu bù shǎo yǒu biáoyǎn tiāncái de. Jīntian wǎnshangde jiémù chàbuduō dōu shì kě xiào de.

Wǒ hěn xīhuan xiàngshengr. Tāmen yígòng shuōle liǎngge xiàngshengr.
10 Ràokǒulìng yě shuōde hěn hǎo. Wǒ juéde duìyu xué Zhōngguo yǔyán de wàiguó xuésheng hěn yǒu bāngzhu. Duì liànxì fāyīn hěn yǒu yòng. Hái yǒu yíwèi tóngxué xué jiàoshòude kǒutóuyǔ. Zhōngguo jiàoshòu wàiguó jiàoshòu dōu yíyàng. Jiǎng shū de shíhou měige rén dōu yǒu tāmende kǒutóuyǔ. Hái yǒu yíge jiémù shì Fèngyáng Huā Gǔ, shì Wén Qīnghuá
15 Wén Qīngwén xiōng-mèi liǎngge rén biáoyǎn de. Tāmen chuānzhe hěn hǎo kàn de yǎn xì de yīfu. Yìbiār cháng yìbiār dǎzhe gǔ biáoyǎn. Yòu hǎo kàn yòu hǎo tīng. Wǒ hěn xīhuan nège míngē.

Zuì hòu yíge jiémù shì yíge hěn kě xiào de yánjiǎng. Zhēn bǎ rén gěi xiàosi le. Kāishǐ de shíhou zhǔxí hěn zhèngshìde bàogào shuō zuì
20 hòu shì yíge yánjiǎng, shì yíwèi xuéwen zuì hǎo de tóngxué jiǎng, duìyu dàjiā xué de yìfāngmiàn hěn yǒu bāngzhu. Wǒmen tīng de rén yíwei shì zhēnde ne. Dēngdào zhèige tóngxué chūlaile yǐhòu wǒmen hái yíwei shì yíge zhèngshìde yánjiǎng ne. Měiyīng gēn wǒ shuō: “Wèi shénmo yào

yánjiǎng ne?" Měiyīng huà hái méi shuōwán, nèiwèi tóngxuéde tímu
 25 shuōchulai le. "Jīntian wǒ suǒ jiǎng de shì Chǎo Dòufu." Zhèige tímu
 tā yì shuō dàjiā yǐjīng xiàode bùdéliǎo le. Yuè shuō yuè kě xiào. Tā
 wánquan yòng jiàoshòu jiǎng shū shíhou de shuōfa lái shuō Chǎo Dòufu,
 shuōde tài kě xiào le. Zuì hòu zhǔxí yòu bàogào shuō hái yǒu hěn duō
 de shíjiān, dàjiā kéyì suíbiàn wár huòzhe bícǐ liánluo liánluo. Bǐngqiě
 30 yùbeide chádiǎn kéyì suíbiàn chī. Wǒ gēn Xuéxīn Měiyīng sāngē rén dōu
 dào cāntīng qu gēn língwài jǐge tóngxué tántan, chīle yìdiǎr chádiǎn.
 Ránhòu wǒ gēn Xuéxīn sòng Měiyīng huí jiā.



Wèntí

1. Yuǎn-Dàde huì shì wèile shénmo kǎi de?
2. Zhǔxí shuō tā wèi shénmo hěn cǎnkuì?
3. Zhǔxí shuō wèi shénmo yào yuánliàng tā?
4. Jīntian wǎnshang de jiémù dōu shì shénmo rén dānrèn de?
5. Nǐmen de jiàoshòu dōu yǒu shénmo kǒutóuyǔ? Nǐ néng shuō ma? Nǐ xuéguo tāmen ma?
6. Nǐ huì shuō ràokǒulìngr ma? Qǐng nǐ shìshi.
7. Cǎi zì de shíhou Wénshān gēn Měiyīng shuō tā cāizhao něige le?
8. Wénshān wèn Měiyīng zhīdao bu zhīdao, Měiyīng shuō zhīdao, kěshi tā wèi shénmo bù shuōchulai ne?
9. Qǐng nǐ shuōyishuō "Fèngyáng Huā Gǔ" zhèi jǐge zìde yìsì.
10. Nǐ xǐhuan tīng xiàngsheng ma? Zhèige wǎnhuì tāmen shuōle jǐge xiàngsheng? Nǐ zhīdao tāmen shuōde xiàngsheng shì shénmo shūshang de?
11. Nǐ shìshi kàn tāmen shuō de xiàngsheng nǐ néng shuō bù néng shuō?
12. Yúlè jiémù wánle yǐhòu yǒu yíge yánjiǎng, tímu shì shénmo? Nǐ shuō shì bu shì zhèngshìde yánjiǎng?
13. Zhǔxí bàogào shuō yánjiǎng de nèiwèi tóngxué wàihào jiào shénmo? Wèi shénmo jiào zhèige wàihòu ne?
14. Zhǔxí shuō tāde yánjiǎng duì dàjiā yǒu shénmo yíngxiǎng?

15. Wáng Dàwén suǒ jiǎngde tímu shì shénmo? Tāde yánjiǎng nǐ tīngle yǐhòu nǐ xiào le méi you? Yàoshi nǐ xiào le qǐng wèn nǐ, yǒu shénmo kě xiào de?
16. Zhèiwèi tóngxué shuō Wáng Tàitai dòufu chǎode zěnmō hǎo?
17. Tā hái shuō yàoshi duì chǎo dòufu yǒu shénmo wèntí ràng zhūwèi tóngxuéde qu zuò shénmo? Shì shéi qǐng kè ne?
18. Yánjiǎng wánle yǐhòu zhǔxí shuō ràng dàjiā zuò shénmo?
19. Zhǔxí shuō zhèicǐ de huì wánle yǐhòu jiānglái dōu zài nǎr jiàn miàn?
20. Qǐng nǐ bǎ huānyíng xīnshēng wǎnhuì cóng kāishǐ dào zuì hòu jǐge jiémude míngzi shuōchulai.
21. Yàoshi kāi huì nǐ zuò zhǔxí, bàogào wánle yǐhòu yīnggāi gēn láibīn shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
22. Yàoshi nǐ cānjiā yíge huì nǐ hěn xīhuan de jiému wán le nǐ hái xiǎng qǐng ta zài biáoyǎn yíci, nǐ zěnmō shuō?
23. Yàoshi kāi huì, zhǔxí qǐng nǐ línshí cānjiā yíge jiému nǐ xiān shuō shénmo?
24. Yàoshi kāi huì qǐng nǐ zuò zhǔxí nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo kèqì huà?
25. Yàoshi nǐde xuéxiào yǒu yíge huānyíng xīn tóngxué de huì nǐ shì zhǔxí, nǐ yīnggāi gēn xīn tóngxué shuō jǐjù shénmo kèqì huà?
26. Yàoshi nǐ tīngwánle huòzhě kànwanle yíge kě xiào de jiému yǐhòu, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo?
27. Yàoshi nǐ biáoyǎn de shíhou láibīn shuō “Zài lái yíge” nǐ yīngdāng zuò shénmo?
28. Yàoshi nǐ zuò zhǔxí jīntian zhèige huì wárde hěn gāoxìng kěshi míngtian jiù shàng kè le nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénmo huà?
29. Rúguǒ yíge huì kāiwánle yǐhòu nǐ yīnggāi duì láibīn shuō shénmo?
30. Yàoshi kāi huì de shíhou yùbeile chádǎn nǐ qǐng láibīn chī yīnggāi zěnmō shuō?

Dialogue: Meiying, Vincent, and Xuexin attend the welcoming party for new students at Far Eastern University.

Mei : It's about to start [now].

White : Who's the master of ceremonies?

Xue : A junior, Ye Wenying.

Mei : He's very good at managing things. He presides over nine-tenths of the meetings at school.

Zhu : Honored guests, fellow students: You all know the reason why we are having this meeting today. This is a welcoming party for new students. We are [so] delighted that a great many new students have come to our university from all over. However, we are very sorry not to be capable of any entertainment. Nevertheless we do want to

express our welcome. I have been asked to take charge of this meeting today. Although we've been preparing for several days, there [surely] are still a great many rough spots, and I hope you will forgive them. The evening's [entertainment] program has been taken over entirely by a number of our fellow students, new and old. I'm sure it will be very enjoyable. But enough of this chatter. Let's begin now with our program.

Let's first ask [fellow student] Jin Shuwen to tell us about the catch phrases of a few of the professors.

Jin : The [Mr.] master of ceremonies is unfair. Other students have had two weeks to get ready, but he pulled me in at the last minute.

I'll mention the catch phrases of a few of the professors at our university. There's one professor who, if a student does an assignment wrong or if anything goes wrong, is sure to say, "Oh my gosh"; so we've nicknamed him Mr. "Oh my gosh." I'm sure you can guess who he is.

White : Isn't that Professor Mao?

Mei : Yes. He's wonderful toward students.

Jin : Then there's Mr. "Really pretty good." And there's also Mr. "There's no need of that." In a single class he's sure to say "There's no need of that" several dozen times. One time I recorded his saying "There's no need of that" thirty-six times in one session.

Oh, there's also Mr. "Wonderful." No matter what you say he always chimes in with "Wonderful." Some time I'm going to think of a way to have him come up against something awful and see if he still says "Wonderful."

Do you know who these professors are? Fortunately none of the professors is present. But don't any of you [fellow students] tell them what I said. If they knew I might not be able to graduate!

White : I know who all of these professors are.

Zhu : Now for a tongue twister. I'd like Mao Shanhe to say one for us.

Mao : I haven't said a tongue twister for a long time. (The last time) I said one was when I was in lower middle school, at the fiftieth anniversary of our school.

In front of the mountain was Cui Thick-leg.

Behind the mountain was Cui Leg-thick

The two men came to the front of the mountain to compare their legs.

I don't know whether Cui Leg-thick's legs were thicker than Cui Thick-leg's,

Or whether Cui Thick-leg's were thicker than Cui Leg-thick's legs.

Zhong : Encore! Encore!

Mao : If you eat grapes, spit out the skins. If you don't eat grapes, don't spit out the skins.

White : I can say the "eat grapes" one, but not the "compare-legs" one.

Zhu : Now let's play at guessing characters. [Now] there are two five-word poems to guess two characters. Winners will receive a prize. Raise your hand if you guess them. Now I'll read the two poems for you. The first poem is:

"Moon" below "chief" alongside "word."

The second poem is:

Two men sitting on the ground.

Mei : Vincent, can you guess them?

White : I can't guess the first. I know the second. Meiying, do you know [lit. say] what the first is?

Mei : Of course I know, but I won't tell.

Zhu : In a little while the winners can claim the prize. Next is a rendition of "The Flower-Drum of Fengyang," by [our two fellow students] Wen Qinghua and Wen Qingwen.

[Music] : Dōngdōng qiàng, dōngdōng qiàng.
Dōngdōng qiàngdōng qiàngdōng qiàng.

Wen : We speak of Fengyang.
(singing) Fengyang used to be a nice place,
But since the appearance of Emperor Zhu
There has been famine nine years in ten.

[Music] : Dōngdōng qiàng, dōngdōng qiàng.
Dōngdōng qiàngdōng qiàngdōng qiàng.

Wen : Rich families sell land.
(singing) Poor families sell sons.
Our family has no sons to sell.
Carrying a flower drum, we roam the four quarters.

[Music] : Dōngdōng qiàng, dōngdōng qiàng.
Dōngdōng qiàngdōng qiàngdōng qiàng.

White : They did that [lit. presented the "Flower Drum of Fengyang"] awfully well. It's not at all easy to sing and act at the same time.

Mei : They're both classmates of mine. They have a lot of theatrical ability. They're brother and sister.

Zhu : Next on the program is a comic dialogue. This will be presented by two of our schoolmates, Ma Guoying and Huang Neng.

Huang : [Let me ask you now], how many students did Confucius have in all?

Ma : [Confucius had in all] three thousand students.

Huang : Correct. How many of them were the very best students?

Ma : [The very best students of Confucius numbered] seventy-two.

Huang : Do you know, of these seventy-two, how many were married and how many were unmarried?

Ma : Now you've stumped me. I don't think the books say.

- Huang : But I know. Thirty were married, and forty-two were not married.
- Ma : How do you know that?
- Huang : It's in the Analects:
Capped, five-six persons.
Boys, six-seven persons.
"Capped" refers to married persons; five sixes are thirty. "Boys" refers to unmarried persons; six sevens are forty-two. Aren't thirty plus forty-two exactly seventy-two?
- Ma : Right. Score one for you.
- Mei : Vincent, do you know where in the Four Books what they referred to occurs?
- White : It's in the Analects, but I've forgotten whether it's in the first or second part.
- Xue : Anyone who can do a comic dialogue is pretty smart.
- Huang : I have another question for you. Do you know Zhuge Liang and Zhou Yu in the Three Kingdoms?
- Ma : Of course I know them.
- Huang : Do you know what their mothers' (maiden) names were?
- Ma : That I don't know.
- Huang : Zhuge Liang's mother was surnamed He. Zhou Yu's Mother was surnamed Ji.
- Ma : How do you get to know that?
- Huang : It was so stated by Zhou Yu himself. Once when Zhou Yu fell into a rage he said: "Since there's a Yu, why need there be a Liang?" Doesn't this mean that someone by the name of Ji gave birth to Zhou Yu, and someone by the name of He gave birth to Zhuge Liang?
- Xue : Comic dialogues are very amusing. My father loves to listen to them.
- Mei : It's very hard to do comic dialogues.
- Zhu : Now the entertainment (part of the) program is finished. Next we'll ask for a lecture from a fellow student, Wang Dawen. He's the best student among us. On every exam he comes out first. He's even learned the dictionary by heart, so that he's been nicknamed the Living Dictionary. Hearing his lecture is bound to help us enormously in our studies.
- Wang : Fellow students: The subject matter to be lectured upon by me today is concerned with Fried Beancurd. Fried Beancurd is also a field of learning. I shall engage with you today in a discussion of the topic of Fried Beancurd.*

* In the following passage, I have attempted to convey the feeling of the original by using an overpedantic style in the English translation.

With respect to Fried Beancurd, it is possible to approach it from various angles. The most important remains the question of taste. In my considered opinion I hold that the best beancurd is that fried by Mrs. Wang. The beancurd fried by her is, in the first place, tasty; is, in the second place, good to look upon; and is, furthermore, fragrant to the nostrils. There has never arisen any question with respect to the beancurd fried by her. This is something that cannot be denied by anyone. According to the results of my profound thinking, the frying of beancurd must have reference to Mrs. Wang's technique of frying beancurd. To put it in other words, one should give ear to her theories regarding the frying of beancurd. You must pay special attention to these points. That Mrs. Wang's beancurd is fried most appetizingly is an obvious fact. It is not just a theory.

Summarizing, I shall in a few simple sentences inform you of the principles of frying beancurd. I hold to the conviction that there is an intimate relationship between beancurd and soy sauce. Although on the one hand soy sauce cannot be individualistically added to excess, nevertheless on the other hand neither can it be thoughtlessly employed to an insufficiency. (On this point please consult the treatise written by Chef Wang: Studies on Fried Beancurd, Vol. IV, page 563, footnote 17.)

I have discussed Fried Beancurd with you at considerable length, but as a matter of fact I don't know how to fry beancurd. It's just that I love to eat fried beancurd.

For the time being I (shall do no more than) give you a general idea about Fried Beancurd. After I have had an opportunity to seek out Mrs. Wang and requested her to divulge to me the contents of Fried Beancurd, I shall further expound her principles to you in detail.

If you have any questions regarding Fried Beancurd, I invite you all to go have some fried beancurd tomorrow. However, I must explain to you with the utmost clarity that I am not to be host, that this is entirely a matter of Dutch treat. After you have dined, if there is anything you do not understand, we shall carry the discussions further.

The problem of Fried Beancurd is an exceedingly complex one—a problem that cannot be expounded in full in just a few minutes. The hour is now up. We shall carry our researches further next time.

Mei : He slays me. I didn't know that Wang Dawen had this sort of ability.

White : Is he a classmate of yours too?

Mei : No. I'm a class ahead of him. [It's really so that] he's good in his studies, [but] he's not given to talking much.

Zhu : Now our program is really at an end. But we still have a lot of time. We've prepared a little refreshment, and you are invited to help yourselves and join in some informal fun. Tomorrow school begins formally. There won't be any more time for fooling around. From now on we'll just see each other in the classrooms.

Thank you all for joining in our party today.

Sentences for New Words and Grammar

- 1.1. Who's in charge of this matter?
- 1.2. They [lit. their family] are big landowners.
- 2.1. Now do you ladies and gentlemen have any suggestions?
- 2.2. Thank you, ladies and gentlemen, for helping us in this matter [of ours].
- 3.1. Many thanks [to you guests] for coming to visit our school.
- 4.1. I'm very sorry that I didn't succeed in taking care of this matter for you.
- 5.1. Please accept this little gift as a token of my regard.
- 5.2. He has already made clear to me many times that he is unwilling to undertake this matter.
- 6.1. Who's managing that big meeting?
- 6.2. This afternoon's economics seminar conducted by Professor Zhang has been changed to next Friday.
- 7.1. That matter is really very difficult. They've been preparing for it for a year already.
- 8.1. They received us very warmly when we visited that school yesterday.
- 9.1. I did that [matter] wrong. Please forgive me.
- 10.1. We don't have this kind of entertainment in America.
- 10.2. At what time do the places of amusement here close up?
- 11.1. Wang, what's the program for this week end?
- 11.2. Look and see what's on the program.
- 12.1. Who is [assuming the responsibility as] the chairman of this meeting?
- 13.1. (With respect to) that matter he has already said that it is all right.
- 13.2. Professor Zhang has too many pet phrases. It's a bore to listen (to him).
- 14.1. You must handle that matter impartially.
- 14.2. That professor does not treat his students impartially
- 15.1. I invited Mr. Zhang to dinner but he phoned just before dinner time to say that he wasn't coming.
- 15.2. A provisional government was established there during the war.
- 16.1. Please be careful. This cat scratches [people].
- 16.2. It was impossible to find anyone to undertake this matter. He grabbed me at the last moment (to do it).
- 17.1. Everyone else says the food at that restaurant is delicious. Yesterday evening I had a meal there [lit. ate once]. It really was very nice.
- 18.1. We'll meet [lit. see] in Room 5 at three o'clock this afternoon.
- 18.2. Be a bit quieter in the lecture hall.

- 18.3. I also have two classes on Saturday.
- 19.1. The road's being fixed up ahead. You have to detour.
- 19.2. This sentence is a tongue twister. No matter how I try I can't say it fluently.
- 19.3. Please tell me what this tongue twister [that they've said] means.
- 19.4. It's too roundabout if you go by this road.
- 20.1. Next month is our school's 100th anniversary.
- 20.2. Saturday is my wife's and my fifth wedding anniversary. I'd like to ask you to dinner.
- 21.1. Today our school is celebrating the 300th anniversary of its establishment.
- 21.2. Tomorrow is our school's anniversary celebration so we're having a one-day holiday.
- 21.3. What's today the anniversary of?
- 22.1. Grapes are my favorite fruit.
- 23.1. When you spit, spit into your handkerchief.
- 24.1. How do you write the character yán ('word')?
- 25.1. His poems are very well written.
- 25.2. He's not only a scientist but a poet as well.
- 26.1. My father said that if I came out first on the exam he would give me a reward.
- 26.2. At the last athletic meet our school won a lot of prizes.
- 27.1. Who recognizes this character? Please raise your hands.
- 28.1. The soil is good here, so vegetables grow unusually large.
- 29.1. Country people there eat squatting on the ground.
- 30.1. Did you claim your prize?
- 31.1. At the assembly held yesterday the various items on the [entertainment] program were very well presented.
- 31.2. The big assembly for the school's anniversary celebration will include a performance by my sister.
- 32.1. The folk songs in this place are very nice to listen to.
- 32.2. The people of the whole country support him.
- 32.3. We're all United States citizens.
- 32.4. The ninth year of the Republic of China is 1920.
- 32.5. That nation is a democratic country.
- 33.1. Miss Wang wore a flowered Chinese-style dress.
- 34.1. He plays the drum very well.

- 35.1. He hasn't returned to his own country since the war.
- 36.1. The emperors of the Ming Dynasty were surnamed Zhu.
- 37.1. There's been a terrible famine in that place the past few years.
- 37.2. This year is a famine year in our area.
- 37.3. That stretch of plain is completely barren.
- 38.1. They are one of the rich families in our village. They're quite wealthy.
- 39.1. Our family has a house but no land.
- 40.1. The women in Szuchwan work carrying children on their backs.
- 41.1. I heard some comic dialogue on the radio yesterday.
- 42.1. Wang stumped me yesterday. He asked me a question. No matter how I tried I couldn't think (of the answer).
- 43.1. In the past, Chinese students [in studying] had to memorize every lesson.
- 43.2. Don't look at your books. We'll now recite from memory.
- 44.1. Everything he says is very useful for us.
- 45.1. I'm not going on the trip. In the first place, I don't have time, and in the second place, I don't have the money.
- 46.1. I'm not buying a car. In the first place, it's too expensive; in the second place, I don't need it; and furthermore I don't know how to drive.
- 47.1. The roses in the garden are very fragrant.
- 48.1. You can't ever forget the books you memorize when you are young.
- 49.1. That matter was spoken of by him. I asked him, and he didn't deny it.
- 50.1. I'll have to weigh this matter carefully before I answer you.
- 51.1. What he said is a [kind of] theory.
- 51.2. Theoretically, what you say is right.
- 52.1. It's obvious [lit. an obvious thing] that you don't treat people impartially.
- 53.1. Theory is theory. Facts are facts.
- 53.2. In theory that's right. But in fact, it's very difficult to carry out.
- 54.1. He explained it for a long time. The upshot was that I still didn't understand.
- 55.1. In principle there's no problem about that matter of yours.
- 56.1. Do you all get the general idea of this lesson?
- 57.1. Let's now have a discussion regarding this matter.
- 58.1. This matter isn't easy to handle. It's too complicated.
- 59.1. Refreshments have also been prepared for the school's anniversary celebration.

Review Sentences

1. I'm not capable of performing anything. I feel quite mortified.
2. Yesterday he made it clear to me that he is very dissatisfied with Wang's attitude toward him.
3. Is that history research seminar conducted by Professor Wang?
4. They're just preparing to hold the Olympics here.
5. I haven't entertained you well today. Please forgive me.
6. I have the task of teaching Chinese in that school.
7. Regardless of what [matter] you do, you should do it impartially.
8. I [younger brother] lack the capacity to assume responsibility for such an important matter.
9. This pen was presented to me by my father [when I graduated] as a graduation present [lit. commemoration].
10. Those who can (answer) this question raise your hands.
11. (In) our concern (we) receive (our) salary on the thirtieth of each month.
12. The actors in that movie perform very well.
13. Every morning she goes out to buy food carrying the child on her back.
14. Please memorize all the sentences on the blackboard by tomorrow.
15. That matter isn't something that can be managed by me alone.
16. That work is very well suited to you. You don't need to think about it further.
17. I had hoped that after studying Chinese for six months I could speak it pretty well, but in fact I guess it's not that easy.
18. They discussed that matter for a long time but without result.
19. I understand completely the general idea of that book.
20. He writes his books in a very complicated style [lit. grammar].

Notes

1. Chinese surnames generally consist of one syllable, but a few have two syllables. One of these is Sīmǎ, encountered in Lesson 22. Another is Zhūgē, which occurs in the comic dialogue of this lesson. If the surname has two syllables, the given name is likely to consist of one. If the surname has one syllable, the given name most often consists of two, though one-syllable given names are not uncommon. Given names generally have some special significance—often an obscure one. All the given names of student participants in the welcoming party are words that have previously appeared in the lessons. These, with their meanings, are as follows:

Shūwén	'Book Literature'
Shānhé	'Mountains and Rivers'
Qīnghuá	'Clear Splendor'
Qīngwén	'Clear Literature'
Guóyīng	'Nation Brave'
Néng	'Able'
Dàwén	'Great Literature'

Except for Néng 'Able,' all are of two syllables. Note also that the brother and sister who perform the Flower Drum song are named Qīnghuá and Qīngwén, though there is no indication in the names themselves as to which refers to the boy and which to the girl. The common element Qīng in both names shows a family relationship.

2. Nicknames in Chinese, as in English, are generally based on some real or fancied personal quality, physical or mental. We have seen instances of this in the nicknames Xiǎo Láo 'Little Tiger' and Tiě Tóu 'Iron Head.' In this lesson we have had examples of speech mannerisms taken as surnames:

Aiya! Zāogō! Xiānsheng 'Mr. "Oh my gosh"'

3. Tongue twisters in Chinese are much like those in English (e.g. "Stand on the stairs and say statistics"). They generally don't make much sense; the fun lies in the challenge to avoid tripping up on the difficult sounds. (Of course, Chinese tongue twisters cannot be translated into English tongue twisters, nor vice versa.) Note in the first tongue twister (and also in the character guessing game) the use of èr rén where we would in ordinary speech have liǎngge rén 'two persons,' and zhī as short for zhīdao 'know.'
4. Character-guessing games are a perennial favorite with Chinese. The two given here are relatively easy, especially if the English translations or character versions of the 'poems' are used, rather than the transcribed or spoken form. The latter form is more difficult because of the ambiguity in meanings: yán, for example, might be either 'word,' 'salt,' 'along,' or still some other word.
5. The Flower Drum song dates from the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644), the founder of which, surnamed Zhū, came from the city of Fengyang in Anhwei province. The song is the plaint of a refugee couple, husband and wife, who are uprooted by the turmoil attending the founding of the dynasty. The song may be rendered in any of several ways—by one or two persons, with or without accompaniment. The refrain represents the sounds made by the instrumental accompaniment—a drum (played by the woman) and a gong (played by the man). If there is no accompaniment, the refrain is sung. In the refrain, the syllable dōng represents the sound of the drum, and qiàng the sound of the gong. The performers combine singing with stylized motions of the hands and body.

There are several words in the song that are not generally used in contemporary speech:

dào = shuō 'tell'

běn = běnlái 'originally'

ér láng = érzi 'sons'

6. The two examples of comic dialogue presented in this lesson depend for their effect on a knowledge of the persons and episodes referred to, and also on how the Chinese language permits play on words. These present no problem for a Chinese audience, many of whom know their classics by heart, but extended explanations may be needed for the Western student.

The first comic exchange has to do with a passage from the Lún Yǔ (or Lún for short), which is generally translated as Analects and forms part of the Sì Shū (Four Books), one of the earliest classics in Chinese literature. The Lún Yǔ consists of sayings attributed to Confucius and his students. In the name Kǒngzǐ or Kǒngfūzǐ, latinized to Confucius, the syllables zǐ (or fūzǐ) mean 'sage,' 'master.' The quoted passage (from Book XI, Chapter XXV, 7) contains two terms that are not part of ordinary speech: (a) guānzhě, literally 'capped ones,' referring to males who at age 20 were presented with a cap as a token of their reaching manhood; and (b) tóngzǐ 'boys.' It is stretching the meaning of the terms to interpret them as referring to married men and bachelors; it is also stretching the grammar to interpret wǔ liù 'five six' as 'five sixes.' The standard translation of the passage is 'five or six young men who have assumed the cap, and six or seven boys.'

The second comic exchange concerns a passage involving Zhūgē Liàng and Zhōu Yú, two well known figures from the Three Kingdoms period (A.D. 221-265). Sān Guó is used both as the designation of the period and as the title of a historical novel (translated into English as Romance of the Three Kingdoms) about the period. The quoted passage involves a play on the words jì and hé. Jì can be either a surname, or short for jìrán 'since.' Hé can be either a surname, or short for hébi 'why need to?' The two interpretations involve a further change or extension of meaning of shēng, which means 'give birth to' if a subject is specified, and without a subject means 'Heaven produces' or 'there is produced.' The primary meaning of the quoted passage, which is uttered by Zhōu Yú in an angry outburst against his arch rival, Zhūgē Liàng, can be rendered as follows: 'Since there has been produced a Yú, why need there be a Liàng?' Applying the second of the meanings given above for jì and hé, the passage is to be rendered: 'Jì gave birth to Yú, Hé gave birth to Liàng.' Note that the Chinese character versions of the quotations are better adapted to such plays on words than either the transcribed or translated versions, where we have to commit ourselves (by capitalization and voice of the verb) to one interpretation or the other.

7. The spoof of the academic style depends for its humor on the use of expressions more appropriate to lecture style than to the mundane topic of Chinese cookery. These terms include the following:

(a) Suǒ before verbs, which has an effect similar to the excessive use of the passive form in some pedantic styles of English writing.

(b) Yìlái 'in the first place,' èrlái 'in the second place,' zàizhě 'furthermore.'

- (c) Zǒng'eryánzhi 'in brief,' a cliché used to introduce a summary of something stated previously.
- (d) Kǎoliù 'ponder,' lǐlùn 'theory,' míngxiǎn 'obvious,' shìshí 'fact,' yuánzé 'principle,' dàiyì 'general meaning,' tǎolùn 'discuss formally,' fùzá 'complex.' These terms—cherished by the academician—unlike those above, are used in ordinary speech, though sparingly.
8. The term zhūwèi is a general greeting addressed to an audience, having about the same meaning as 'Gentlemen!' or 'Ladies!' or 'Ladies and gentlemen.' It is also combined with terms referring to groups within the audience, as: zhūwèi tóngxué 'Fellow students!'
9. Zhōnghuá Mínguó 'Republic of China' is the name given to the republican government established after the overthrow of the Ch'ing Dynasty in 1911. The whole name, or the abbreviated form Mínguó, is used in the chronological system adopted by the new government, which reckoned 1912 as its first year. Zhōnghuá Mínguó èrnián is 1913, wūshíyínián is 1962.
10. The syllable suǒ, a somewhat literary form, occurs often in the pattern A suǒ V de B 'the B (that was) V'd by A':
- tā suǒ mǎi de shū 'the books that were bought by him.'

Dì Èrshìkè. Wēnxi

Lesson Contents

- A. Exercise in Tonal Distinctions (p. 501)
- B. Review of Initial and Final Elements (pp. 501-504)
- C. Brain Teasers (pp. 504-507)
- D. Narratives and Dialogues (pp. 507-514)

A. Exercise in Tonal Distinctions

The following two-syllable expressions are distinguished in meaning by differences in tone. For each pair construct one or more sentences that will demonstrate clearly the differences in meaning and usage of the expressions.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. chángtú, chǎngtú | 10. shìchǎng, shíchǎng |
| 2. dà gǔ, dǎ gǔ | 11. shìshí, shìshi |
| 3. dàhù, dà hú | 12. tiándì, tiánde |
| 4. héilǐ, héli | 13. xiǎohù, xiǎo hú |
| 5. huángdì, huāngdì | 14. yàofāng, yàofáng |
| 6. jìnian, jǐnián | 15. yìkē, yíkè, yìkē |
| 7. jiěshì, jiěshi | 16. yóupiào, yǒu piào |
| 8. kèshǐ, kěshi | 17. zhūwèi, zhùwēi |
| 9. lǎoshī, lǎoshi | |

B. Review of Initial and Final Elements

Many elements occur repeatedly at the beginning or end of words and phrases in Chinese. Generally (as with rén 'man') they mean the same thing in every occurrence. Occasionally, however (as with dǎ 'hit'), the meanings vary according to the context. Note the common elements in the following expressions and compose sentences using these expressions.

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. <u>dǎ</u> | dǎ yùfáng zhēn |
| dǎ zhé | dǎ gǔ |
| dǎ zhékòu | dǎ pí |
| dǎ diànbào | dǎ líng |
| dǎ zhēn | dǎ máyào zhēn |

- dǎ zì
dǎ zhàng
dǎ qiú
2. kāi
kāi chē
kāi mén
kāi huì
kāi yàofāng(r)
kāi dānzi
kāi dēng
kāi fàn
kāi hùr
kāi wánxiào
kāi zhīpiào
3. fā
fāshāo
fālěng
fārè
fā píqi
4. rán
guǒrán
dāngrán
suírán
jìrán
hūrán
5. lái
hòulái
jiānglái
jìnlái
yìlái
èrlái
běnlái
yuánlái
- xiànglái
cónglái
6. shí
línshí
zhànshí
tóngshí
dāngshí
suíshí
yìshí
7. chu
yòngchu
huàichu
chángchu
duǎnchu
hǎochu
nánchu
8. rén
shāngren
bìngren
sīrén
shīrén
pángren
nǚrén
nánrén
nóngren
zhǔrén
gōngren
wàiren
9. shēng
xīnshēng
xuésheng
xiānsheng
yánjiushēng
liúxuéshēng

- pángtīngshēng
xiǎoxuéshēng
zhōngxuéshēng
dàxuéshēng
10. shǐ
lǎoshǐ
gōngchéngshǐ
jiànzhushǐ
jiàoshǐ
11. shǒu
xuánshǒu
duìshǒu
háoshǒu
shuǐshǒu
12. zhǎng
duìzhǎng
cūnzhǎng
xiàozhǎng
xiànzhǎng
yuànzhǎng
13. yuán
màihuòyuán
duìyuán
gùyuan
jiàoyuan
yùndongyuán
màipiàoyuan
jiǎncháyuán
14. jiā
huàjiā
zuòjiā
shǐjiā
lìshǐjiā
- káogǔjiā
káogǔxuéjiā
shǐxuéjiā
xiǎoshuōjiā
yìshujiā
zhuānménjiā
15. fáng
yàofáng
bìngfáng
wòfáng
chúfáng
shūfáng
xízáofáng
xiāngfáng
zhèngfáng
16. shì, shǐ
bàngōngshǐ
zhāodàishǐ
yīwushǐ
cángshūshǐ
yánjiushǐ
kèshǐ
17. guān, guǎr
fànguǎr
lífaguān
tǐyuguān
túshūguān
zhàoxiàngguān
18. cháng
shìchǎng
qiúchǎng
yùndòngchǎng
tǐyuchǎng

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| yúlèchǎng | xìjùxué |
| wǎngqiúchǎng | jīngjìxué |
| páomáchǎng | 21. <u>bào</u> |
| gōngchǎng | huàbào |
| liúbīngchǎng | rìbào |
| máchǎng | zhōubào |
| yóuxìchǎng | yuèbào |
| tíngchēchǎng | wǎnbào |
| 19. <u>yuàn</u> | 22. <u>kān</u> |
| yīxué yuàn | jìkān |
| bówuyuàn | yuèkān |
| yánjiū yuàn | zhōukān |
| yīyuàn | niánkān |
| diànyǐngyuàn | 23. <u>kē</u> |
| Kǎoshì Yuàn | yīkē |
| 20. <u>xué</u> | wàikē |
| kēxué | pífukē |
| yīxué | nèikē |
| yǔyánxué | yǎnkē |
| káogǔxué | xiǎo'érkē |
| jiànzhuxué | yákē |

C. Brain Teasers

Chinese contains many syllables having a variety of meanings. The following exercise provides practice in distinguishing phrases that contain such syllables. The phrases are presented in pairs; one element is identical in sound in both members of the pair but quite different in meaning. For example:

1. gāng gòu
2. gāng tiě

In the first, gāng 'barely' is an adverb modifying the stative verb gòu 'enough,' and the phrase means 'barely enough.' In the second, which means 'iron and steel,' gāng 'iron' and tiě 'steel' are coordinate nouns.

The expressions below are listed according to the lesson in which one or both items occurred. The meanings of the phrases and their component syllables can be found either in the Glossary and Index, or at the first occurrence in Sentences for New Words and Grammar, or in the index of Beginning Chinese.

Lesson 19

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. jiē kǒur
jiē rén | 10. qǔ qián
xìng Qián |
| 2. tián biǎo
dài biǎo | 11. hángyuán
gōngyuán |
| 3. chángcháng
hěn cháng | 12. bànhǎo
bàntiān |
| 4. shàng 'Shànghǎi
'shàng shàngge yuè | 13. bāng gōng
nónggōng |
| 5. xiànkǎn
cún kǎn | 14. zhīpiào
mǎi piào |
| 6. bìxū
bìyè | 15. píngcháng
píngyuán |
| 7. nóngyè
yíyè | 16. yínháng
wàiháng |
| 8. xìngmíng
xìng Máo | 17. qiān zì
qiānwàn |
| 9. xíngli
xíngle | 18. shāngyè
shāng fēng |

Lesson 20

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. dà hòutian
dà gūniang | 8. tài hòu
yǐhòu |
| 2. dēng bào
zhōubào | 9. qípáor
qíshí |
| 3. xuānchuán
shàng chuán | 10. tán pǐba
tán tiār |
| 4. jiǎn jià
jiǎnchá | 11. lùn mǎ
qí mǎ |
| 5. rénzào
méi zào | 12. xīnfēng
guā fēng |
| 6. sānhé táng
sānhé fángzi | 13. zhǎo qián
zhǎo péngyou |
| 7. Shāndong
shān dòng | 14. yóupiào
yǒu piào |

15. bāoguǒ
shuǐguǒ

16. guójiā
cānjiā

Lesson 21

1. kāidāo
kāi mén
2. wèi bìng
wèi shénmo
3. qǐngjià
jiǎn jià
4. jiéguǒ
shuǐguǒ
5. páiduì
qiúduì
6. pèi yào
zhòngyào
7. chángjiǔ
hē jiǔ

8. máyào
mǎi yào
9. zhù yuàn
zhùzhǐ
10. késou
kéyi
11. jìnbù
běibù
12. gǎnmào
gǎn shuō
13. dǎoméi
mǎi méi
14. hēzuì
hē shuǐ

Lesson 22

1. bìyào
pèi yào
2. xiàotú
xiào rén
3. xuéshù
rénsù
4. chūbǎn
hēibǎn
5. jiùlián
kělián
6. lǐngdì
cǐdì
7. nèiróng
guāngróng
8. Sīmǎ

- qí mǎ
9. dúběn
shùběn
10. yíngxiǎng
nín xiǎng
11. káogǔ
zhōnggǔ
12. xiǎoshuō
yě shuō
13. kèběr
kètīng
14. yíliú
yílù
15. mùlù
xiǎo lù

Lesson 23

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. chádiǎn | 8. lǐlùn |
| gúdiǎn | lǐwu |
| 2. lái chá | 9. dānrèn |
| láibīn | dānxīn |
| 3. xuézhě | 10. zhūwèi |
| zàizhě | kǒuwèi |
| 4. dìzhǔ | 11. tǔ piér |
| dì-jǐ | tǔdì |
| 5. ràozuǐ | 12. míngxiǎn |
| ràoyuǎr | míngxìng |
| 6. tiándì | 13. zìcóng |
| tiánde | zìdiǎn |
| 7. kǎolǔ | 14. huā gǔ |
| kǎo yā | huā qián |

D. Narratives and Dialogues

I

Yǒu yíwèi jiàoshòu tāde liǎngge xuésheng yíge shi yínháng jīnglǐ yíge shi zhōngxué jiàoyuán. Zhèi liǎngge xuésheng duìyu zhèiwèi lǎoshī dōu hěn kèqī. Yǒu yítiān—shi zhèiwèi jiàoshòu gēn tāde tàitai jiēhūn èrshì zhōunián jìniàn—zhèi liǎngge xuésheng wèile yào biǎoshi tāmen yìdiǎr 5 yìsi, dāsuan sòng diār lǐwu. Liǎngge rén jùzài yíkuàr tāolùn sòng diār shénmo hǎo ne?

Zhèige zhōngxué jiàoyuán shuō lǎoshī shi xuézhě, ta dāsuan sòng lǎoshī zuì jìn chūbǎn de yìběn dà zìdiǎn. Yīnwei zhèiběn zìdiǎn nèiróng hěn fēngfù, bāokuò de fànwei hěn dà, shi hěn hòu de yìběn. Nèiběn zìdiǎn 10 shi yíwèi Yīngguo xuézhě biānde. Yíwèi Zhōngguo xuézhě bǎ tā fānyìchéng Zhōngwén. Suóyǒude zhùjiě dōu hěn xiángxì. Zhèiwèi zhōngxué jiàoyuán shuō ta rènwei zhèiběn zìdiǎn shi zuì hǎode le. Suóyì jièzhe lǎoshī jiēhūn zhōunián jìniàn sònggei lǎoshī.

Nèiwèi yínháng jīnglǐ shuō: “Gěi lǎoshī sòng lǐwu hěn nán. Ta shi 15 xuézhě, jīnzi yínzi tā dōu bù xǐhuan. Shū nǐ yǐjīng juédìng sòng le. Wǒ sòng shénmo hǎo ne? Zènmozhe ba: Wǒ jiāli yǒu yíge xiǎo jiǔ bēi yě

suàn shi ge gúdong. Dànshi jiēhūn jìniàn, fūqī liǎngge rén dōu dēi sòng.
Wǒ zài sòng yíjiàn duànzi qípáo liàor."

Nèiwèi zhōngxué jiàoyuán shuō: "Nènmo nǐ sòng wǒ yě dēi sòng a.
20 Kěshi wǒ méi nǐ nènmo yǒu qián. Wǒ sòng yíjiàn chóuzi qípáo liàor hǎo
le."

II

Jīntiān shi sìyue èrshibá hào. Wǒ xiànzài shi zài yīyuàn lǐtōu xiě
zhèige rìjì. Qián liǎngge xīngqī bù zhīdào zěnmō huíshì chuánrǎnshang
liúxíngxíngde chuánrǎn bìng le. Kāishǐ jiùshi yǒu diār fāshāo tóu téng.
Hòulái yuè lái yuè lihai. Zhěnggè shēntǐ bù shūfu. Sǎngzi yě téngqilaile.
5 Shāodào yìbǎi líng sān dù. Shénmo yě bù néng chī le, lián shuǐ yě bù
xiǎng hē. Shènzhìyǒu tǎngzai chuángshang qǐbulái le.

Xīng'ér Lǎo Wáng tā yí kàn wǒde bìng yǐjīng chàbuduo dàole wēixiǎnde
chéngdu le, tā jiù bǎ wǒ sòngdao yīyuàn lái le. Yīsheng gěi wǒ kànwánle
yǐhòu shuō wǒde bìng zhòng, bìdēi zhù yuàn. Kěshi wǒ jiā de jīngjì
10 qíngxíng bù hǎo. Wǒ shi ge qióng xuésheng. Nǎr láide qián zhù yīyuàn?
Lǎo Wáng wèi wǒde bìng dānxīn. Tā tī wǒ gēn péngyou jiè de qián. Lǎo
Wáng gěi wǒ bànhǎole zhù yīyuàn de shǒuxu. Wǒ zhēn xièxie Lǎo Wáng.

Cóng nèitiān kāishǐ wǒ zài yīyuàn yǐjīng zhùle liǎngge xīngqī. Xiànzài
yǐjīng chàbuduo wánquan hǎo le. Wǒ xiǎng liǎng sāntiān yǐnèi wǒ jiù
15 kényī chū yīyuàn le.

Zhèige yīyuànde shèbei bù cuò. Hùshi duì bìngrén de tàidu hěn hǎo,
gěi bìngrén shì wēndù biǎo dǎ zhēn shénmode dòu hěn zīxì, érqǐ duì
wǒmen bìngrén chī dōngxī hē shuǐ dōu zhàoyíngde hěn zhōudào.

Tóng bìngfángde yíwèi qīngnián rén gēn wǒ shuō wǒmen zhù zhèige
20 yīyuàn zhēnshi yǒu fú. Zhè shì zhēn huà. Yǒude yīyuànde hùshi duì
bìngrén de tàidu bù zěnmō hǎo. Kěshi zhèige yīyuàn suóyǒude hùshi dōu
shi nènmo héqì. Jiùlián yīsheng yě shi dōu hěn kèqì de.

Déle. Wǒ bù wǎng xià zài duō xiě le, yīnwei wǒde bìng cái hǎo,
shǒu ná bǐ xiě zì dōu yǒu diār lèi.

III

Wǒ shi yíge měiyuè kào xīnshuǐ shēnghuó de rén. Wǒ měiyuède
xīnshuǐ shì èrbǎikuài qián. Chùle chī fàn zhù fángzi yǐwài shèngbuliǎo

hěn duō qián. Suóyì rénjiā yí dào zhōumò dōu chūqu wár (bú shì lǚxíng
jiùshì kàn diànyǐng), wǒ búdàn zhèixiè xiāoqiǎn bù gǎn qù jiùlián fànguǎr
5 dou bú qù chī.

Wèi shénmo wǒ zènmo shěng qián ne? Yǒu liǎngge yuányīn. Yí lái
wǒ zhèng de qián tài shǎo. Èr lái wǒ bìděi měiyuè shèngxia yìdiǎr qián;
wànyī wǒ bìngde huòzhě yǒu shénmo shìqing fāshēng méi qián nǎ chéng
ne?

10 Xiànzài wǒ yǒu yìbǎi duō kuài qián le. Qián zài jiā lǐtōu gēzhe yàoshi
diū le zěnmō bàn ne? Xiǎng lái xiǎngqù bǎ qián fàngzài yínháng bǐjiǎo
hǎo. Yǒu yìtiān wǒ wèn Lǎo Zhāng shénmo yínháng bǐjiǎo kě kào. Tā
shuō Zhōngyāng Tǔdì Yínháng bǐjiǎo hǎo. Tā gēn Zhōngyāng yǒu lái wǎng.

Yǒu yìtiān wǒ jiù dào yínháng qù le. Wǒ wèn hángyuán cún kuǎn de
15 shǒuxu. Tā gàosu wǒ xiān tián shēnqǐng biǎo; bǎ xìngmíng zhíyè dōu dēi
xiěde qīngqīngchúchǔ de. Wǒ jiù ba wǒde yìbǎi wǔshikuài qián jiāogei
hángyuán. Tā gěile wǒ yíge xiǎo bùzi méi gěi wǒ zhīpiào. Wǒ wèn tā
wèi shénmo bù gěi wǒ zhīpiào bù ne? Tā shuō qián shǎo bù gěi zhīpiào.
Bìxū liǎngqiānkuài qián kāihù cái gěi zhīpiào ne. Yuán lái Zhōngguó gēn
20 Měiguó yínháng cún kuǎn de fāngfǎ bù tóng.

IV

Wǒ zài kàngzhàn de shíhòu pǎodao Sìchuān. Zài Sìchuān yí gòng zhù le
bānián. Nèige shíhòu zhèngfǔ yě bāndào Sìchuān qù le. Nèinián dàgài
shì yī jiǔ sān qī nián, jiù shì Zhōnghuá Mínguó èrshíliù nián. Wǒ shì
zuò chuán qù de. Wǒ zuò de nèitiáo chuán shì yíge yínháng tuántǐ zude.
5 Suǐrán chuán hěn dà kěshì rén bìng bú tài duō, suóyì yǒude shíhòu kéyì
zài kètīng fàntīng qù zuòyizuò. Zài nèige shíhòu dàjiā dōu wǎng Sìchuān
pǎo, suóyì měitiáo chuán dōu yōngjǐde bùdéliǎo. Měitiáo wǎng Sìchuān
qù de chuán dōu shì zhuāngmǎnle rén. Jù chuánshang de péngyou gàosu
wǒ, yǒude chuánshang rén duōde lián zuòzhe de dìfang dōu méi yǒu. Yǒude
10 rén zài chuánshang dūnzhe shuì jiào. Bìngqiě yīnwei chuán xiǎo rén duō
chángcháng chuán chū shì.

Sìchuānde shānshuǐ yǒu míng. Zhōngguó gǔdàide rén shuō Sìchuānde
shānshuǐ dì-yī. Yí lùshangde fēngjǐng zhēn hǎo. Shuǐ zài zhōngjiār.
Shuǐde liǎng pángbiān dōu shì shān. Zài chuánshang wǎng wài yí kàn jiù
15 hǎoxiàng chuán chàbuduō jiù yào pèngde shān yíyàng. Zài wǒ suǒ zuò de

- mèntáo chuán qiánbiān yǒu yítáo chuán zài qiánmian zǒu. Wǒ suǒ zuòde zhèitáo chuán yízhíde dòu zài tā hòutou zǒu. Wǒmen tiāntiān kǎnzhe nèitáo chuán zài qiántou zǒu. Yǒu yítiān hūrán kǎnbujiàn zhèitáo chuán le. Méi yǒu hào duǒ shíjiān kǎnjian shuǐ shàngmiàn yǒu hěn duǒde dǒngxī—
- 20 xiāngzi, hái yǒu luànqībāzāo de dǒngxī. Jù shuō nèitáo chuán chū shì de yuányīn shì chuán tài xiǎo zhuāng de dǒngxī gēn rén tài duǒ le. Nèitáo chuán zhǐ néng róng liùbǎi rén, kěshì zuòle yìqiān sānbǎi duǒ rén. Bìngqiě dòu shì bān jiǎ de xínglǐ yě tài duǒ le. Yìqiān sānbǎi duǒ rén chàbuduǒ dòu sīguāng le.
- 25 Wǒ bènlái dàile liùjiàn xínglǐ, jiéguǒ xià chuán de shíhou diūle yíjiàn, shèngle wújiàn le. Zài xià chuán yìqian wǒde xínglǐ hái yǒu liùjiàn, kěshì lǐndào xià chuán de shíhou zài yí kǎn jiù shèngle wújiàn le. Xíng'er wǒ méi yǒu yǒu jiāzhi de dǒngxī, bǐrú shuō gǔwù shénmode. Zhǐ shì yìdiǎr yīfu.
- 30 Wǒ zài Sìchuān bǐng méi yǒu qīnqī péngyou. Wǒ yǒu shì chūcí dào ner, shéi yě bù rènshi. Xíng'er zài chuánshang rènshile yíwèi péngyou. Tā shì yíge zuò mǎimai de. Tā hěn bāng wǒde máng. Tā bāngzhe wǒ gū chē zhǎo lǚguǎn shénmode. Wǒ zhùde shì yíjiā xiǎo lǚguǎn. Nèrde lǚguǎnde xíguan shì mèitiān gēi kèren yùbei sǎndùn fàn. Mèitiān zàochén
- 35 liúdiàn zhōng jiù chí zàofàn. Sìchuān chí fàn de xíguan shì záodiàn gēn zhōngfàn wǎnfàn yíyàng nènmo duǒ, érqìe duǒshùde cǎi shì làde. Wǒ duì Sìchuān de shēnghuó wǒ guǒbuguǎn, kěshì chí de dǒngxī dào shì hěn piányi. Wǒ shì xiàtiān qù de. Nèr de tiānqì rède bùdélǎo, jiǎnzhide rèsi rén. Wǎnshang rède bù néng shuǐ jiǎo. Hái yǒu Sìchuān de dà jiē
- 40 xiǎo lù dòu hěn zǎng. Nà shì shéi yě bù néng fǒurèn de.

V

Wǒ xiànzài shuō yíge gǔshi. Cóngqián wǒ niǎn chūzhōng-yī de shíhou, yíwèi jiāo guówén de lǎoshī duì xuesheng hěn bù gōngping. Tā xīhuan de xuesheng měicì kǎoshì chéngjī dòu hào. Tā bù xīhuan de xuesheng chéngjī dòu bù hào. Zhēn qíguài:

Yǒu yíci shàng kè de shíhou tā wèn wǒmen yíge tèbiéde wèntí. Tā shuō: "Nimen zhīdao xiān yǒu jī haishi xiān yǒu jīdàn?" Zhèixiār bà

..... gēi wènzhū le. Shéi yě bù zhīdao. Lian yíge jù shǒu de

.....

Tā zài kǎoshì de shíhou tāde tímu dōu shì fēicháng nán dá de, suóyǐ
 10 ta jiāo wǒmen de nèimén gōngke chéngji dōu bù zěnmó hǎo. Wǒmen quán
 bānde tóngxué huānyíng zhèiwèi lǎoshī de hěn shǎo.

VI

Měiwén:

Kǎoshì de shíhou suírán zhǐ yǒu liǎngge xīngqī méi gěi nǐ xiě xìn,
 kěshi hǎoxiàng yǒu hěn duō rìzi le. Zhèicì de kǎoshì wǒ kě tài xīnkǔ
 le. Lǎoshi shuō wèide shì xiǎng dédào yìbǐ jiǎngxuéjīn měitiān guāng
 5 niàn shù shènzhìyǔ lián fǎ dōu bù lǐ. Wǒ zhēnshi lèide yào sǐ. Wǒ bǐ
 yǐqián shòule qī bābàng. Wǒ bǎ zhèi qíngxíng gàosu nǐ, nǐ yídìng néng
 yuánliàng wǒ.

Wǒ měitiān cóng kètáng dào sùshè cóng sùshè dào kètáng. Nǐ kàn
 wǒ duómo jǐnzhāng. Wǒ kǎoshì zǒngshi jǐnzhāng.

10 Zuótiān wǒ kànjian Yè Jiàoshòu le, tā gàosu wǒ wǒde chéngji bú cuò,
 jiǎngxuéjīn hěn yǒu xīwang. Zhèi búguò shì Yè Jiàoshou kǒutóushang
 gàosu wǒ de. Shì bu shì zhēn néng dédào wǒ zìjǐ yìdiǎr bǎowo yě méi
 yǒu, yīnwei xīwang dédào de rén tài duō le.

Wǒ bǎ wǒde qíngxíng dōu gàosu nǐ le. Zài guò yì liǎngge xīngqī
 15 yǐhòu yǒu yíwèi tóngbān tóngxué huí jiā qu. Nèige shíhou wǒ kěnéng gēn
 ta yīkuài dào tā jiā lǐtòu qu. Tā jiā zhùzai fúshang bù yuǎnde yíge cūnzili.
 Nèige shíhou wǒmen kéyǐ jiàn miàn le.

Zài wǒmen dòngshēn yǐqián wǒ xiān xiě xìn gěi nǐ. Oh, shàng cǐ wǒ
 yǒng guàhào xìn jìgei nǐ jǐzhāng fēngjǐng míngxìnpìar dàgài nǐ yǐjīng
 20 shōudào le, kěshi nǐ gěi wǒde xìnshang méi shuō.

Zhèrde tiānqi hěn rè. Zhèi jǐtiān chàbuduō dōu shì yìbǎi dù zuǒyòu.
 Běibùde tiānqi zěnmoyàng?

Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dǎtīng yíjiàn shì. Nǐmen xuéxiào zai fàngjià de
 shíhou gèzhōng kǎnwù bù zhīdào chūbǎn bu chūbǎn? Bìngqiě hái qǐng nǐ
 25 bǎ wǔyue fèn chūbǎn de Guówén Yǔyán Yuèkān xiǎng fázi zhǎo yífèr jìgei
 wo, yīnwei wǒ yào zhǎo yìdiǎr zīliào. Duō xiè.

Zhù

Hǎo

Wàn Wényīng

liùyue shíjiǔ

VII

- Wàn : Zǎo, Zhāng Jiàoshòu.
- Zhāng: Zǎo. Wàn Huáwén nǐ lái yǒu shì ma?
- Wàn : Méi shì. Wǒ lái kànkan nín.
- Zhāng: Xièxie nǐ. Qǐng zuò qǐng zuò. Zhèi jǐtiān tiānqì tǐng rè a.
- 5 Wàn : Kě bu shì ma. Rède bùdéliǎo. Zènmo rè nín hái xiě shū ma?
- Zhāng: Hai. Bié tí le. Yuǎn-Dàde zhōunián jìniàn kān zhuā wo gěi tāmen xiě yíge lùnwén, ràng wǒ sāntiān yǐnèi jiù děi xiěchulai.
- Wàn : Zènmo rède tiān ràng nín xiě lùnwén zhēn gòu kǔde le.
- Zhāng: Méi fāzi. Wǒ néng shuō bù xiě ma? Wàn Huáwén, xià xīngqī
- 10 kāishǐ de nèige lìshǐ yánjiubān nǐ cānjiā le méi you?
- Wàn : Wǒ běnlái dāsuan cānjiā de. Nèitiān wǒ qu dēngjì kěshì dēngjì biǎoshang rénsù dōu mǎn le.
- Zhāng: Zènmo huí shì ne? Mǎn le? Wǒ jìde yǐqián méi duōshao rén cānjiā de. Zènmozhe: dào nèitiān nǐ dào kěshì mén kǒu dēngzhe
- 15 wo, wǒ dài nǐ jìnqu.
- Wàn : Zài nèige kěshǐ?
- Zhāng: Jiù zài dàlǐtáng pángbiān nèige xiǎo kěshǐ.
- Wàn : Xièxie nín.
- Zhāng: Nǐ xiān zuò yìhuěr. Wǒ qu qī diār chá qu.
- 20 Wàn : Zhāng Jiàoshòu nín zuòzhe. Wǒ lái wǒ lái.
- Zhāng: Yě hǎo. Wǒ yě bù gēn nǐ kèqì le.
- Wàn : Xuésheng zuò shì shì yīngdāngde. Zhāng Jiàoshòu qīng hē chá.
- Zhāng: Nǐ zhīdao bù zhīdao lìshǐ bówuyuàn bù zhīdao cóng nǎ sōujile yìxiē gǔwù zài nèr chénlièzhe. Jù shuō shì liǎngqiān duō nián
- 25 yǐqián de.
- Wàn : Wǒ bù zhīdao.
- Zhāng: Nǐ kěyì qu kànkan qu.
- Wàn : Hǎode. Yì liǎngtiān wǒ qù. Oh, Zhāng Jiàoshòu, nín qiángshangde zhèikuài héngbiǎn xiě de zhēn bú huài ya.
- 30 Zhāng: Xiěde bu cuò ba. Xiě zì de shì wǒde yíwèi péngyou. Tā xiě le sònggei wǒ de. Xiě zhèige héngbiǎn de shì ge nǚrén. Tā zhāngfù jiù shì Wáng Jiàoshòu.
- Wàn : Oh, zhèi shì Wáng Jiàoshòu tàitai xiě de?
- Zhāng: Huáwén, nǐ jīntian yǒu shì ma?
- 35 Wàn : Wǒ méi shì. Nín yǒu shénmo shì ràng wo bàn ma?
- Zhāng: Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ gěi wo mǎi diār dōngxi qu.

- Wàn : Nín yào mǎi shénmo?
- Zhāng: Nǐ gěi wo mǎi wǔshige xīnfēng yìbǎizhāng xīnzhǐ. Yào tiāo báo yìdiǎr de. Zài mǎi èrshige yóujiǎn. Hái mǎi yìbǎ jiǎnzi.
- 40 Wàn : Suǐbian dào nǚjiā mǎi dōu kéyǐ ma?
- Zhāng: Zuì hǎo nǐ dào Liánhé Shūdiàn qu mǎi. Tāmende dōngxi bǐjiào hǎo. Yóujiǎn dāngrán dào yóuzhèngjù qu mǎi le.
- Wàn : Liánhé Shūdiàn zai nǎr? Wǒ hái méi qùguo.
- 45 Zhāng: Nǐ chū mén kǒur wàng běi guǎi shì yìtiáo dà lù. Shùnzhè dà lù yìzhíde zǒu jiù shì diànbào jú gēn yóuzhèngjù.
- Wàn : Diànbào jú gēn yóuzhèngjù wo zhīdao.
- Zhāng: Liánhé Shūdiàn jiù zai duìmiàn. Shūdiàn pángbiān jiù shì jǐngchájù.
- Wàn : Wǒ zhīdao le. Wǒ mǎshàng jiù qù.
- Zhāng: Bù máng.

VIII

- Yè : Wáng Xiānsheng láile. Wǒmen hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn le. Zěnmoyàng, zuì jìn máng shénmo ne?
- Wáng: Wǒ zhèi jǐge yuè nǎr dōu méi qù. Wǒ zài jiā xiě shū ne. Jīntian wǒ bǎ yuángāo nálai le, qǐng nín gěi wo gǎiyigǎi.
- 5 Yè : Nǐ xiě de shénmo shū?
- Wáng: Wǒ xiě de shì yìběn guānyu yǔyán de shū. Bǎ wǒ gěi xiěni le. Yǔyán de wénfǎ xiāngdāng fúzǎ, hěn bu róngyì xiě. Bìngqiě cānkǎo zīliào yě hěn shǎo. Dàocho qu sōuji.
- Yè : Wǒ xiāngxìn nǐ yídìng xiěde hěn hǎo.
- 10 Wáng: Hǎo bùgǎn shuō, fǎnzhèng wǒ fèile hěn duō de shíjiān le.
- Yè : Nǐ suǒ xiě de zhèiběn shū shì shénmo xìngzhìde? Shì cānkǎo shū hái shì jiàokēshū?
- Wáng: Wǒ xiě de shì cānkǎo shū. Wǒ suǒ xiěde dōu shì guānyu yǔyán de wèntí. Dànshì wǒ xiě de fànwei hěn xiǎo. Wǒ zhǐ xiě píngcháng yòng de wénfǎ, bù xiě lǐlùn.
- 15 Yè : Zhèiběn shū shì shénmo chéngdù kéyǐ kàndedòng?
- Wáng: Wǒ suǒ xiě de shì wèile yánjiū Zhōngguo yǔyán de wàiguó rén yòngde. Wǒde yuánzé shì màn mǎr yìbùyìbùde cóng qiǎn dào shēn Yǐhòu wǒ hái dāsuan zài xiě yìběn gāojíde.
- 20 Yè : Biān shū shì hěn xīnkūde yíjiàn shì a.
- Wáng: Kě bu shì ma. Bìngqiě wo hái cānkǎole hěn duō wàiwénde shū, sōuji le hěn duō zīliào.
- Yè : Wǒ xiāngxìn yídìng hěn hǎo.

- Wáng: Zǒng'eryánzhi shū wo shì xiě le. Zhèiběn shū lǐmian wǒ hái
 25 fānyile bù shǎo lùnwén.
- Yè : Xiě shū de yuánzé shì zhǐ yào bǎ zīliào zháohǎo zǐxide xiěxiaqu.
 Wǒ xiāngxìn xiěchulai méi shénmo dà wèntí.

IX

- Zhāng: Wai, Lǎo Wáng ma?
- Wáng: Oh, Lǎo Zhāng. Zhèige zhōumò wǒ nǎr yě méi qù. Zài jiā
 dāide nìsi le. Zhèng xiǎng dǎ diànhuà gēn nǐ liáoliao.
- Zhāng: Jīntian xiàwǔ nǐ yǒu shì méi you?
- 5 Wáng: Wǒ méi shì. Yǒu shénmo jiémù ma?
- Zhāng: Jīntian xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn zhōng shì wǒ mèimeide xuéxiào kāi
 shízhōunián jìniàn dà huì. Tāmen yǒu hěn duō jiémù—yǒu
 xiàngsheng, míngē, shénmode. Wǒ mèimei yě dānrèn yíge jiémù.
 Tāmen yǐjīng chóubeile liǎngge yuè le, dàgài hái bú cuò.
- 10 Wáng: Wǒ yídìng qu. Zánmen liǎngge rén shéi zhǎo shéi?
- Zhāng: Wǒ lái zhǎo nǐ. Wǒmen huāyuánzilide pútào yǐjīng shóu le. Wǒ
 shùnbìan gěi nǐ dài diār pútào qu.
- Wáng: Wǒ zhèng xiǎng chī pútào ne.
- Zhāng: Wǒ zhīdao nǐ hěn xīhuan chī pútào. Lǎo Wáng a, jīntian 'wǒ hái
 15 yǒu ge jiémù ne.
- Wáng: Nǐ gànma?
- Zhāng: Wǒ biáoyǎn pǐba.
- Wáng: Yìhuěr nǐde jiémù yídìng shòu huānyíng
- Zhāng: Bù yídìng.
- 20 Wáng: Hǎo, huítóu jiàn.
- Zhāng: Liǎngdiǎn zhōng yǐqián wǒ dào nǐ nér.
- Wáng: Huítóu jiàn.

COMPARATIVE TRANSCRIPTION TABLE

Pinyin—Yale—Wade-Giles

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
a	a	a	ceng	tseng	ts'eng
ai	ai	ai	cha	cha	ch'a
an	an	an	chai	chai	ch'ai
ang	ang	ang	chan	chan	ch'an
aó	au	ao	chang	chang	ch'ang
			chao	chau	ch'ao
ba	ba	pa	che	che	ch'e
bai	bai	pai	chen	chen	ch'en
ban	ban	pan	cheng	cheng	ch'eng
bang	bang	pang	chi	chr	ch'ih
bao	bau	pao	chong	chung	ch'ung
bei	bei	pei	chou	chou	ch'ou
ben	ben	pen	chu	chu	ch'u
beng	beng	peng	chuai	chwai	ch'uai
bi	bi	pi	chuan	chwan	ch'uan
bian	byan	pien	chuang	chwang	ch'uang
biao	byau	piao	chui	chwei	ch'ui
bie	bye	pieh	chun	chwun	ch'un
bin	bin	pin	chuo	chwo	ch'o
bing	bing	ping	ci	tsz	tz'u
bo	bwo	po	cong	tsung	ts'ung
bou	bou	pou	cou	tsou	ts'ou
bu	bu	pu	cu	tsu	ts'u
			cuan	tswan	ts'uan
ca	tsa	ts'a	cui	tswei	ts'ui
cai	tsai	ts'ai	cun	tswun	ts'un
can	tsan	ts'an	cuo	tswo	ts'o
cang	tsang	ts'ang			
cao	tsao	ts'ao	da	da	ta
ce	tse	ts'e	dai	dai	tai
cen	tsen	ts'en	dan	dan	tan

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
dang	dang	tang
dao	dau	tao
de	de	te
dei	dei	tei
deng	deng	teng
di	di	ti
dian	dyan	tien
diao	dyau	tiao
die	dye	tieh
ding	ding	ting
diu	dyou	tiu
dong	dung	tung
dou	dou	tou
du	du	tu
duan	dwan	tuan
dui	dwei	tui
dun	dwun	tun
duo	dwo	to
e	e	e, o
ei	ei	ei
en	en	en
eng	eng	eng
er	er	erh
fa	fa	fa
fan	fan	fan
fang	fang	fang
fei	fei	fei
fen	fen	fen
feng	feng	feng
fo	fwo	fo
fou	fou	fou
fu	fu	fu
ga	ga	ka

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
gai	gai	kai
gan	gan	kan
gang	gang	kang
gao	gau	kao
ge	ge	ke, ko
gei	gei	kei
gen	gen	ken
geng	geng	keng
gong	gung	kung
gou	gou	kou
gu	gu	ku
gua	gwa	kua
guai	gwai	kuai
guan	gwan	kuan
guang	gwang	kuang
gui	gwei	kuei
gun	gwun	kun
guo	gwo	kuo
ha	ha	ha
hai	hai	hai
han	han	han
hang	hang	hang
hao	hau	hao
he	he	he, ho
hei	hei	hei
hen	hen	hen
heng	heng	heng
hong	hung	hung
hou	hou	hou
hu	hu	hu
hua	hwa	hua
huai	hwai	huai
huan	hwan	huan
huang	hwang	huang
hui	hwei	hui

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
hun	hwun	hun	la	la	la
huo	hwo	huo	lai	lai	lai
			lan	lan	lan
ji	ji	chi	lang	lang	lang
jia	jya	chia	lao	lau	lao
jian	jyan	chien	le	le	le
jiang	jyang	chiang	lei	lei	lei
jiao	jyau	chiao	leng	leng	leng
jie	jye	chieh	li	li	li
jin	jin	chin	lia	lya	lia
jing	jing	ching	lian	lyan	lien
jiong	jyong	chiung	liang	lyang	liang
jiu	jyou	chiu	liao	lyau	liao
ju	jyu	chü	lie	lye	lieh
juan	jywan	chüan	lin	lin	lin
jue	jywe	chüeh	ling	ling	ling
jun	jyun	chün	liu	lyou	liu
			long	lung	lung
ka	ka	k'a	lou	lou	lou
kai	kai	k'ai	lu	lu	lu
kan	kan	k'an	luan	lwan	luan
kang	kang	k'ang	lun	lwun	lun
kao	kau	k'ao	luo	lwo	lo
ke	ke	k'e, k'o	lū	lyu	lū
ken	ken	k'en	lūe	lywe	lūeh
keng	keng	k'eng			
kong	kung	k'ung	ma	ma	ma
kou	kou	k'ou	mai	mai	mai
ku	ku	k'u	man	man	man
kua	kwa	k'ua	mang	mang	mang
kuai	kwai	k'uai	mao	mau	mao
kuan	kwan	k'uan	mei	mei	mei
kuang	kwang	k'uang	men	men	men
kui	kwei	k'uei	meng	meng	meng
kun	kwen	k'un	mi	mi	mi
kuo	kwo	k'uo	mian	myan	mien

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
miao	myau	miao
mie	mye	mieh
min	min	min
ming	ming	ming
miu	myou	miu
mo	mwo	mo
mou	mou	mou
mu	mu	mu
na	na	na
nai	nai	nai
nan	nan	nan
nang	nang	nang
nao	nau	nao
ne	ne	ne
nei	nei	nei
nen	nen	nen
neng	neng	neng
nong	nung	nung
nou	nou	nou
ni	ni	ni
nian	nyan	nien
niang	nyang	niang
niao	nyau	niao
nie	nye	nieh
nin	nin	nin
ning	ning	ning
niu	nyou	niu
nu	nu	nu
nuan	nwan	nuan
nuo	nwo	no
nü	nyu	nü
nüe	nywe	nüeh
pa	pa	p'a
pai	pai	p'ai

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
pan	pan	p'an
pang	pang	p'ang
pao	pau	p'ao
pei	pei	p'ei
pen	pen	p'en
peng	peng	p'eng
po	pwo	p'o
pou	pou	p'ou
pi	pi	p'i
pian	pyan	p'ien
piao	pyau	p'iao
pie	pye	p'ieh
pin	pin	p'in
ping	ping	p'ing
pu	pu	p'u
qi	chi	ch'i
qia	chya	ch'ia
qian	chyan	ch'ien
qiang	chyang	ch'iang
qiao	chyau	ch'iao
qie	chye	ch'ieh
qin	chin	ch'in
qing	ching	ch'ing
qiong	chyung	ch'iung
qiu	chyou	ch'iu
qu	chyu	ch'ü
quan	chywan	ch'üan
que	chywe	ch'üeh
qun	chyun	ch'ün
ran	ran	jan
rang	rang	jang
rao	rau	jao
re	re	je
ren	ren	jen

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
reng	reng	jeng	shuo	shwo	shuo
ri	r	jih	si	sz	szu
rong	rung	jung	song	sung	sung
rou	rou	jou	sou	sou	sou
ru	ru	ju	su	su	su
ruan	rwan	juan	suan	swan	suan
rui	rwei	jui	sui	swei	sui
run	rwen	jun	sun	swun	sun
ruo	rwo	jo	suo	swo	so
sa	sa	sa	ta	ta	t'a
sai	sai	sai	tai	tai	t'ai
san	san	san	tan	tan	t'an
sang	sang	sang	tang	tang	t'ang
sao	sau	sao	tao	tau	t'ao
se	se	se	te	te	t'e
sen	sen	sen	teng	teng	t'eng
seng	seng	seng	ti	ti	t'i
sha	sha	sha	tian	tyan	t'ien
shai	shai	shai	tiao	tyau	t'iao
shan	shan	shan	tie	tye	t'ieh
shang	shang	shang	ting	ting	t'ing
shao	shau	shao	tong	tung	t'ung
she	she	she	tou	tou	t'ou
shei	shei	shei	tu	tu	t'u
shen	shen	shen	tuan	twan	t'uan
sheng	sheng	sheng	tui	twei	t'ui
shi	shr	shih	tun	twun	t'un
shou	shou	shou	tuo	two	t'o
shu	shu	shu	wa	wa	wa
shua	shwa	shua	wai	wai	wai
shuai	shwai	shuai	wan	wan	wan
shuan	shwan	shuan	wang	wang	wang
shuang	shwang	shuang	wei	wei	wei
shui	shwei	shui	wen	wen	wen
shun	shwen	shun			

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
weng	weng	weng
wo	wo	wo
wu	wu	wu
xi	syi	hsi
xia	sya	hsia
xian	syán	hsien
xiang	syang	hsiang
xiao	syau	hsiao
xie	sye	hsieh
xin	syin	hsin
xing	syíng	hsing
xiong	syung	hsiung
xiu	syou	hsiu
xu	syu	hsü
xuan	sywan	hsüan
xue	sywe	hsüeh
xun	syun	hsün
ya	ya	ya
yan	yan	yen
yang	yang	yang
yao	yau	yao
ye	ye	yeh
yi	yi	i
yin	yín	yín
ying	yíng	yíng
yong	yung	yung
you	you	yu
yu	yu	yü
yuan	ywan	yüan
yue	ywe	yüeh
yun	yün	yün
za	dza	tza
zai	dzai	tsai

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Yale</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
zan	dzan	tsan
zang	dzang	tsang
zao	dzau	tsao
ze	dze	tse
zei	dzei	tsei
zen	dzen	tsen
zeng	dzeng	tseng
zha	ja	cha
zhai	jai	chai
zhan	jan	chan
zhang	jang	chang
zhao	jau	chao
zhe	je	che
zhei	jei	chei
zhen	jen	chen
zheng	jeng	cheng
zhi	jr	chih
zhong	jung	chung
zhou	jou	chou
zhu	ju	chu
zhua	jwa	chua
zhuai	jwai	chuai
zhuan	jwan	chuan
zhuang	jwang	chuang
zhui	jwei	chui
zhun	jwun	chun
zhuo	jwo	cho
zi	dz	tzu
zong	dzung	tsung
zou	dzou	tsou
zu	dzu	tsu
zuan	dzwan	tsuan
zui	dzwei	tsui
zun	dzwen	tsun
zuo	dzwo	tso

GLOSSARY AND INDEX

All new items appearing in the Sentences for New Words and Grammar and in the Notes are included here. Items that appeared in the Sentences for New Words and Grammar are referred to by lesson number and sentence number: 9.13, for example, means Lesson 9, Sentence 13. Items presented in the Notes are listed by lesson number and note number: 9 N 2 means Lesson 9, Note 2.

This glossary and that in Beginning Chinese are mutually complementary: material appearing there is not repeated here.

The following abbreviations are used:

AD Adverb
AV Auxiliary verb
CV Coverb
IV Intransitive verb
M Measure
MA Movable adverb
N Noun

NU Number
O Object
PW Place word
RV Resultative verb
SV Stative verb
TV Transitive verb
V Verb

a (interjection) 1.19, 1 N 4
abbreviations of names 1 N 12
ah (exclamation) 13.53, 13 N 7
ǎi short (in stature) 9.12
ài love (to), be fond of, like (to) 4.16
aiya Oh my! Goodness! 3.50
aiyou My! Oh dear! 11.30, 11 N 5
ān see bù ān 11.8
àn according to, by (the hour, day, etc.)
9.52
ānjìng quiet, calm, silent, peaceful
11.3
ànzhào according to, by (the hour, day,
etc.) 9.52
ànzhè according to, by (the hour, day,
etc.) 9.52

bǎ take 2.22, 2 N 4
bǎ (measure for chairs, objects with
handles) 4.32
bàba papa, daddy 1.11
bǎowo security, guarantee 17.28
bǎi huò gōngsī department store 3.38
bān class (in school), cast (in a play),
troupe 22.1
bān move, shift 8.20

bàn arrange, manage 5.14
bān jiǎ move, change residence 8.20
bàn gōng work (in an office) 19.5
bàn shì arrange a matter 5.14
bànfǎ way of doing something 7.17
bàngōngshì, bàngōngshì office 19.45
bànǎo finish (a job) 5.14
bàntuǒ manage successfully 11.23
bànyuèkān semimonthly (publication)
22.47
bāng help 3.3, 3 N 1
bàng pound 13.37
bàng club, bat, stick; corn, maize
17.19
bāng gōng work for [someone] 14.18
bāng máng help 3.3
bàngqiú baseball 17.19
bāngzi miàn corn meal 17.19
báo thin 20.20
bào newspaper 2.33
bào periodical publication 22.34
bàogào report (that) 1.30, 20 N 4
bāoguǒ parcel, package 20.40
bāokuò include 16.22
bào zhǐ newspaper 2.33
bāozi stuffed steamed rolls 5.6

- bār companion 5.30
 bēi carry on the back 23.40
 bèi memorize, repeat from memory 23.42
 bèi generation 8.6
 Běi Bīng Yáng Arctic Ocean 9.50
 Běi-Dà (National) Peking University 16.51, 16 N 4
 bèi shū memorize, repeat from memory 23.43
 běibù northern section 10.27
 běifāng the north 10 N 4
 Běijīng Dàxué (National) Peking University 16.51, 16 N 4
 bèizi lifetime 7.55
 běn oneself, one's own 2.47
 běn guó one's own country, domestic 2.47
 běn dì(fang) one's own area, native, local 2.47
 běn rén oneself 2.47
 běnlái originally, at first, in the first place, to begin with 21.39
 běnshi ability, capacity 11.22
 bǐ (measure for financial items) 16.19
 bǐ — to — (used in scores for games) 17.45
 bíchú closet 4.33
 bícǐ mutually, reciprocally, each other 8.15
 bǐrú (shuō) if, even if, for example 11.35
 bǐsài compete in; competition, game, contest 16.13
 bǐsài (kàn) + sentence have a competition to see . . . 16.13
 bǐxū need, require 19.42
 biyào essential, necessary; necessity 22.3
 biyè graduate 20 N 4
 bízi nose 9.49, 9 N 5
 biān edit, compile 22.50
 biǎo form, blank, chart, table 19.30
 biǎoshì show, express, make clear 23.5
 biǎoshì A duì B yìdiǎr yìsi show A's regard for B, as a token of A's regard for B 23.5
 biǎoyǎn act out, perform, demonstrate; performance, demonstration 23.31
 biāozhǔn example, (normal) standard, be standard 9.55
 biāozhǔn yīn standard pronunciation 9.55
 biāozhǔn yǔ standard language 9.55
 bīng soldier 14.28
 bīng ice 7.44
 bīng + negative not at all 5.46
 bīngbāng ping-pong; bīng-bang, bang-bang 17.12, 17 N 2
 bīngbāngqiú ping-pong 17.12
 bīngfáng hospital room, ward 21.52
 bīngkuān ice cube 7.44
 bīngqiě moreover 3.19
 bīng rén sick person, patient 21.38
 bìngsi die of illness 5 N 2
 bīngxīang refrigerator, icebox 11.37
 bóbo uncle, father's older brother 8.50, 8 N 1
 bōli glass (material) 3.32
 bōlibēi (drinking) glass 3.32
 bómǔ aunt, father's older brother's wife 8.4, 8 N 1
 bóshi Ph.D. 5.21
 bówuyuàn natural-history museum 22.19
 bù section 10.28, 10 N 4
 bù notebook, ledger 19.46
 bù step, pace 16.4
 bù (with nouns) 16.30, 16 N 1
 bú guò not exceed 10.43
 bù ān uneasy, restless 11.8, 11 N 1
 bù hǎo yìsi not have nerve to, diffident about, embarrassed to 8.5
 bù tóng not the same, different 15.22
 bù zhīdào (I) don't know 9.4, 9 N 2
 búguò only, it's just that 10.44
 bújiànde by no means certain, not necessarily 10.43
 bùjǐng (stage) scenery 7.33
 búlùn no matter 9.21
 bùzhì arrange, fix up, set up 13.25
 bùzhībùjuéde unconsciously, without realizing it 9.56
 bùzi notebook, ledger 19.46
 cā rub, scrape, polish, clean 14.51
 cā gānjīng wipe clean 14.51
 cái merely, just, just now 1.14
 cái then 2.56, 2 N 7
 cáiliao(r) material 15.36
 cǎisè various colors 7.54
 cānguān visit, observe, inspect, make a tour of inspection 15.49, 20 N 4
 cānjiā participate in, attend 15.9
 cānkǎo consult, refer to 22.11
 cānkǎo shū reference work, book to be consulted in a particular field 22.11
 cánguì ashamed, mortified, sorry 23.4
 cáng accumulate, hide, store securely 22.23
 cáng shū accumulate books, store books 22.23
 cángshū mùlù catalogue of stored books, card catalogue 22.24

- cángshūjiā book collector 22.23
cángshūshǐ, cángshūshì rooms holding books, stacks in a library 22.23
cǎodi lawn, meadow 15.43
cè volume 22.54, 22 N 4
cèsuǒ toilet, rest room 13.15
cèzi pamphlet, booklet, notebook 22.54
céng layer, story 3.27
chā fork 10.3
chádiǎn refreshments 23.59
cháng taste 10.20
chǎng field, arena 17.27
chàng sing 11.43
Cháng Jiāng Yangtze River 15.27
chángcháng often, constantly 1.42
chángduǎn length 10.37
chángjiǔ last for a long time, be permanent 21.40
chángtú long distance 17.20
chǎngtú map of an airport 22.6, 22 N 1
cháo dynasty 16.34
chǎo jīdàn scrambled eggs 8.28
cháoshī damp 13.32
chèn avail oneself 17.53
chénliè exhibit, display 22.15
chénlièchulai spread out for display 22.15
chènshān shirt 14.3
chènzhè avail oneself 17.53
chéng become 5.31
chéng be O.K., all right, satisfactory, (that'll) do 8.36
chéng (postverb) 1.8, 1 N 2
chéngdù degree, standard, quality, qualifications 1.37
chéngjì achievement, record, grade 11.33
chéngjì biǎo report card 19.30
chénglì establish 16.39
chǐ foot 9.13, 9 N 2
chī kǔ suffer 10.9
chīcun (linear) size 9.32
chòng face toward, be oriented toward, facing (a direction) 11.10
chòng N (de miǎnzi) because of N's prestige 11.10
chōu draw out; inhale, smoke 4.17
chóu silks, silk goods 20.6
chóubèi prepare (for an activity) 23.7
chóuduàn silks and satins 20.7
chóuzi silks, silk goods 20.6
chū first, for the first time 22.39
chù get along with (someone) 9.45
chù place 15.26
-chu (noun suffix) 19.54
chū chǎng come on the field, enter a game 17.27
chú cǐ yǐwài apart from this, in addition to this 21.42
chū guó go abroad, leave the country 2.42
chū máobīng develop a defect 9.17
chū shì have an accident 3.46
chùchù everywhere 15.26
chūcì first time 22.39
chúfáng kitchen 4.43
chūjí beginning, primary (rank) 22.40
chūjià marry (of a woman) 14.14, 20 N 4
chūkǒu exit (N) 1.53, 1 N 11
chūkǒuchù exit (N) 1.53, 1 N 11
chūkǒur exit (N) 1.53, 1 N 11
chūzhōng lower middle school (in China), junior high school (in the United States) 11.40
chúzi chef, cook 10.38
chūzū be for rent; rent out 5.32
chuān wear 1.14
chuánrǎn infect (with disease or bad habits) 21.11
chuánrǎnshàng be infected 21.11
chuáng bed 4.29
chuáng dānzi bed sheets 8.13
chuānghu window 14.50
chūnji spring 16.47
chūntiān spring 7.22
cǐ this 21.42
cǐdì this place, here 21.42
cónglái bu never 9.8
cónglái méi never 9.8
cū crude, coarse, rough, roughly built 9.34
cūn village 14.37
cún deposit (money), store 19.7
cún kuǎn deposit money (in a bank) 19.8
cùn inch 9.14, 9 N 2
cúnguǎn a deposit, funds deposited in a bank 19.8
cūnzhǎng village head 16.41
cūnzi village 14.37
dá answer 5.55
dà (with time expressions) 20.1, 20.45, 20 N 1, 20 N 3
dà bùfen greater part, majority 13.27
dǎ diànbào send a telegram 20.48
dǎ gǔ play a drum 23.34
dà hòutian three days from now 20.45, 20 N 3
dǎ líng ring bell (by striking) 8.2
dǎ máyào zhēn inject an anesthetic 21.8
dǎ pí to skin, peel 9.46
dà qiánnian three years ago 20.1, 20 N 1

- dà qiántian three days ago 20.1,
20 N 1
- dǎ qiú play (ball) 17.8
- Dà Xī Yáng Atlantic Ocean 9.50
- dǎ zhàng fight, wage war 14.28
- dǎ zhé(kòu) give (or receive) a discount
20.5, 20 N 2
- dǎ zhēn give (receive) an injection 21.8
- dǎ zì typewrite 2.19
- dàhù rich family 23.38
- dáhuǒjī (cigarette) lighter 4.22
- dàjiā everyone 5.42
- dájiǎo disturb, inconvenience 8.53,
20 N 4
- dàlǐtáng auditorium 7.7
- dǎpíng even score (in a hitting game)
17.47
- dǎsǎo clean up 8.45
- dàshifu chef, cook 10.36
- dǎtīng inquire (about) 22.49
- dǎtōng get through 5.51
- dàxiǎo size 10.36
- dàxuéshēng college student 22.57,
22 N 6
- dàylǐ general meaning, general idea,
tenor 23.56
- dàzhàn great war 13.32
- dǎzìjī typewriter 2.20
- dāi stay (temporarily) 14.49
- dài and 14.39
- dài belt, section (of), region (of) 3.17
- dài treat or deal with people 11.17
- dài generation, period, age 16.33
- dāi (yì)huǒr stay a while, wait a mo-
ment, take your time; presently
14.49
- dàifu physician 5.49
- dàizhe be unoccupied, unemployed
14.49
- dān only, singly, alone 8.31
- dāndú alone, by oneself, by itself, by
themselves 1.59
- dānrèn assume, take on, shoulder re-
sponsibility for 23.12
- dànshi but, however 14.45
- dānwu waste (time); miss (plane, etc.)
7.5
- dānxīn worried, concerned 21.6
- dānzi sheet, list, bill 8.13
- dāng at (time or place) 19.29
- dāng serve as, be 14.19
- dàng (take) as 10.46
- dāng bīng be a soldier, serve as a
soldier 14.29
- dāng A de miàn(shang) in the presence
of A 19.29
- dāngchū former time 16.49
- dāngdì(de) of a locality, district; local
19.29
- dāngshí at that (very) moment, (right)
then, then and there 19.29
- dāngzhōng center, middle 19.29
- dàngzuò as 10.47
- dāo knife 10.2
- dǎo turn upside down, fall over
17.52
- dào on the contrary, contrary to ex-
pectations, yet 1.27
- dǎo chā knife and fork 10.3
- dào dǐ to the end, after all 8.39
- dào qī reach the end of a specified
period of time 8.43
- dàochù everywhere 15.26
- dǎoméi out of luck, unfortunate 21.10
- dāor knife 10.1
- dàoxǐ congratulate 13.54, 20 N 4
- dāozi knife 10.1
- Dé Germany 15.52
- de (adverbial suffix) 7.14
- de (in names of occupations) 14 N 3
- dé guànjūn win a championship, take
first place 17.5
- dé jiǎng obtain an award, win a prize
16.18
- dé jiǎngpǐn obtain a prize 23.26
- Dégúo Germany 15.52
- Déwén German (language and literature)
15.52
- dēng press with foot, step on, pedal
14.22
- dēng light, lamp 11.36
- dēng publish (something in) 20.2
- dēng wait, after 1.31, 1 N 9
- dēng class (of), degree (of), grade (of)
9.11
- dēng bào publish (something) in a news-
paper 20.2
- dēng guǎnggào publish an ad or notice
20.2
- dēngjì register, check in 21.53
- dǐ end 8.39
- dǐ place, locality, ground 2.47
- dì ground, soil, land, floor 13.31
- dìbǎn wooden floor 13.29
- dìdài district, region, area 15.24
- dìdiǎn location, site, place, address
11.2
- dìgei pass to 5.17
- dīlou carry (in the hand, with the arm
hanging down at one's side) 13.4
- díquè, díquè really, truly 15.48
- dírén enemy 14.30
- dǐxia bottom 8.39
- dìxiong brothers 11.20
- dìzhǔ landowner, landlord 23.1
- diǎn ignite, kindle 4.21
- diǎn read or select from a list, count
off 10.6

- diǎn cài select courses from a menu 10.6
- diǎn huǒ light a fire 10.39
- diǎn mǐng call a roll 10.6
- diǎn mǐng bùzì attendance book 19.46
- diànbào telegram 20.48
- diànbàojú telegraph office 20.48
- diǎndào A-de míngzi call A's name 10.6
- diàndēng electric light 11.36
- diànfèi electric bill 11.55
- diànshì television 4.39
- diǎnxīn dessert, appetizer 10 N 1
- diànzào electric stove 13.42
- diér plate, dish 10.14
- diézi plate, dish 10.14
- dǐng very, extremely 9.6
- dìng arrange for, contract for, fix (a time), subscribe to 9.31
- dìng zuò reserve a place, make reservations 10.1
- dìngjià fixed price 19.20
- dìngzuò (arrange to) have made 9.31
- diū lose 19.48
- dòng move 20.53
- dòng hole, cavity, cave 16.7
- Dōng-Yǎ East Asia 15.34
- dōngbēn eastern section 10.27
- Dōngfāng Orient, the East 10 N 4 15.29
- dōngfāng rén an Oriental 10 N 4
- dōnggua winter melon 10.10
- dōngjì winter 16.47
- Dōngsānshěng Manchuria 14.8
- dòngshēn start (on a trip) 20.55
- dōngtiān winter 7.42
- dōu all; already 1.1, 1 N 1
- dú read, study 22.38
- dù degree 21.30
- dú shū read, study 22.38
- dúběn reader 22.38
- dúběr reader 22.38
- duàn segment, section, portion 20.30
- duàn satin 20.7
- duǎnkù shorts 17.35
- duǎntú short distance 17.20
- duànzi satin 20.7
- duàr segment, section, portion 20.30
- duī accumulate, pile up, store; a pile, heap, group 13.45
- duì group, body, team 17.6
- duìmiàn, duìmiār opposite (place) 7.2
- duìshǒu opponent, rival, competitor; one's equal, one's match 17.3
- duìyuán member of a team 17.6
- duìzhǎng captain of a team 17.6
- dūn crouch, squat 23.29
- dùn (measure for meals) 8.26
- dūnzai dīxia squat on the ground 23.29
- duó how (used with nǐ shuō) 7.30, 7 N 3
- duō xiè many thanks 20.11
- duōbàn(de) most of [something], majority of; most likely, perhaps 14.53
- duōbàr(de) most of [something], majority of; most likely, perhaps 14.53
- duómo how (used with nǐ shuō) 7.30, 7 N 3
- duōshù majority 17.40
- duōyibàr(de) most of (something), majority of; most likely, perhaps 14.53
- Ē, É, È Russia 15.54, 15 N 3
- è hungry 4.14
- Ēguo, Eguo, Èguo Russia 15.54, 15 N 3
- èsi die of hunger 5 N 2
- Ēwén, Éwén, Èwén Russian (language and literature) 15.54
- ēi Say! Look! 4.56, 4 N 4
- ěi yeah! uh-huh 3.48, 3 N 5
- èn press (with finger or palm) 8.1
- èn líng ring bell (by pressing) 8.2
- ènhuài break by pressing 8.1
- ěrduo ears 9.16
- èrlái in the second place 23.45
- érnǚ sons and daughters 14.25
- érzi son 5.20
- fá punish, penalize 5.16
- Fǎ, Fà France 15.15
- fá qián fine, money penalty 5.16
- Fǎguo, Fàguo France 15.15
- fālēng have chills 21.26
- fārè have a fever 21.26
- fāshāo have a fever 21.26
- fāshēng happen, occur, take place, come about 15.40
- Fǎwén, Fàwén French (language and literature) 15.15
- fāxiàn discover (that), appear (that) 16.6
- fān translate 22.36
- fānchéng translate into 22.36
- fǎnduì oppose, be opposed to 7.16
- fànguī break a rule, commit an error 17.46
- fàntīng dining room 4.42
- fànwéi sphere, scope, extent, compass 22.20
- fānyì translate 22.36
- fānyìchéng translate into 22.36
- fǎnzhèng anyway, anyhow 8.10
- fàng xīn be unworried, be assured 3.47
- fāngbian convenient 3.40

- fángdōng landlord, landlady 5.43
fángdōng tàitai landlady 5.43
fàngjià have vacation 20 N 4
fāngxiàng direction 1.12
fāngyán dialect 16.42
fángzū rent 5.54
fēi have to, insist on 7.40
fēi fly 1.4
fēi fat (of animals), rich (of soil)
13.35
fèi expend (uselessly), waste 4.13
-fèi expenses, bills 11.55
fēi . . . bù kě absolutely have to 7.40
fēicháng extraordinarily, unusually
3.18
fēiděi have to, insist on 7.40
fēiguoqu fly past 1.4
féizào soap 4.9
fēn divide, separate, distinguish, share,
be divided into parts, be composed of,
include 17.50
fèn issue (also, measure for publica-
tions) 22.56
fēnbié distinguish between, difference
17.14
fēnchéng divide into 17.50
fēnchulai distinguish 17.50
fēnfu give instructions or commands to
8.49
fēngei share with, give a share to
17.50
fēnliang quantity 10.33
fēntān pay as one's share 8.40
fēnzhī parts of 13.14, 13 N 4
fēng wind 4.34
fēngfù abundant, rich 22.14
fēngjǐng scenery, view 20.38
fèr (measure for publications) 22.56
fòurèn deny 23.49
fóuzè(de huà) otherwise, or else
16.16
fú blessings, happiness, prosperity,
good fortune 21.16, 21 N 2
fùmǔ parents 11.46
fūqī man and wife 5.25
fúqī blessings, good fortune, happiness
11.47
fūzá complicated, complex, intricate
23.58

gāi up to, come to one's turn 4.51
gǎi change 3.9
gài build 3.10
gǎi rìzi change the day or date 10.54
gǎi shíhou change the time, some other
time 10.54
gǎi tiān some other day 10.54
gǎi yíge shíhou some other time
10.54

gǎi yìtiān some other day 10.54
gǎibiàn change 3.9
gǎn dare to, venture to 17.30
gāncuì frank, direct, straightforward
3.45
gāncuì . . . déle would be best to . . .
and have done with it 3.45
gǎndāng be worthy, dare to 4.47
gānjīng clean 3.25
gànmá why? what for? do what?
4.44, 4 N 2
gǎnmào cold, grippe, influenza; have a
cold, grippe, influenza 21.14
gāng steel 15.37
gāng gòu just enough 14.42
gāo cake 10.16
gǎo rough draft, manuscript 22.42
gāo'ǎi height 10.36
gāojí advanced (rank) 22.40
gàojià ask for leave 21.15
gǎor rough draft, manuscript 22.42
gǎozi rough draft, manuscript 22.42
gē put, place 13.49
gē song 11.44
gè each, every 10.22, 10 N 3
gē V gède each does its own 10.23,
10 N 3
gè rén each person 10.22
gēbei arm 9.33
gēbo arm 9.33
gèchù everywhere 15.26
gège each, every 10.22, 10 N 3
gège older brother 7.56
gémìng revolt, revolution 16.36,
20 N 4
gèshì gèyàng(de) all sorts of 10.22
gèzhǒng gèyàng(de) all kinds of
9.22
gèzi size (of people), (sized) person
1.18
gēng soup (usually sweet) 10.50
gēr song 11.44
gèr size (of people), sized person
1.18
gōng (manual) work 14.18
gōngchāng factory 14.18
gōngchéng construction job, engineer-
ing enterprise 5.19
gōngchéngshī engineer (also, as title)
5.19
gōngchéngxué engineering 5.19
gōngchǐ meter 9.13, 9 N 2
gōngfēn centimeter 9 N 2
gōngkè course, subject of instruction,
studies 8.16
gōngkè biǎo course schedule 19.31
gōnglǐ(de) publicly established,
public 16.53
gōnglǐ kilometer 9 N 2

- gōnglù highway 15.12
 gōngpíng impartial, fair, just 23.14
 gōngqián wages 14.18
 gōngrén worker 14.18
 gōngsī company, concern, office 2.52
 gōngyè industry 19.11
 gōngyù (fángzi) apartment house 15.10
 gōngzuò work 2.41
 gǒu dog 3.43
 gǒu enough 11.29
 gǒu zīge be qualified 17.7
 gòubushàng unable to qualify as 16.38
 gòudeshàng able to qualify as 16.38
 gǔ ancient 16.32
 gǔ drum 23.33
 gù hire, employ 21.55
 gù think of, consider, be preoccupied with 13.51
 gǔ shíhòu ancient times 16.32
 gùbudé unable to consider, can't manage 13.51
 gǔdài antiquity 16.33
 gǔdài-shǐ ancient history 16.33
 gùde think of, consider, be preoccupied with 13.51
 gúdiǎn classical reference 22.31
 gúdiǎn wénxué classical literature, classics 22.31
 gúdǒng antique, relic, curio 20.8
 gūniang unmarried girl or woman 11.27
 gǔrén the ancients 16.32
 gùyuán employee 21.55
 gǔwù relic 22.16
 gùzhe think of, consider, be preoccupied with 13.51
 guā blow 4.35
 guā melon 10.10
 guàhào register 20.41, 20 N 4
 guàhào xìn registered letter 20.41
 guài blame 10.30
 guàibude no wonder (that) 10.29
 guǎiwān turn a corner 3.53, 20 N 4
 guān close, closed 13.41
 guǎn manage 5.41
 -guǎn establishment 20.50
 guān accustomed to 15.5
 guān dēng turn off a light 13.41
 guànjūn champion 17.5
 guānshang close (up), closed (V) 13.41
 guānxi connection, relationship; relevance, importance 2.8
 guānxīn be concerned 3.55
 guānzhòng p. 476, footnote
 guāng only, just 21.46
 guāng finished, completed 1.51
 guǎnggào advertisement, announcement 7.34
 guāngróng glorious, glory; be proud (of something), something to be proud of 22.10
 Guǎngzhōu Canton 10.21, 10 N 2
 guǐ devil, evil spirit 9.51, 9 N 5
 guì expensive 3.36
 guījū custom, customary rules and regulations; be observant of the rules 8.42
 guǐzi outsider, foreigner 9.51, 9 N 6
 guò surpass 17.24
 guò + TW after 20.19
 guò qī pass the end of a specified period of time 8.43
 guójiè international 19.9
 guójiè guānxi international relations 19.9
 guójiā state, nation, country 15.51
 guóli(de) state-established 16.53
 Guólì Běijīng Dàxué National Peking University 16 N 4
 guómín citizen 23.32
 guǒrán certainly, indeed 23.17
 guǒzi fruit 4.49
 guǒzi jiàng jam, jelly 5.11
 hǎi sea, ocean 7.47
 hái yǒu and 2.18, 2 N 3
 hǎibiān seashore 7.47
 hàipà be afraid 5.44
 háng line of business or activity 19.2
 hángkōng aviation, air 2.51
 hángkōng xiáojié airplane stewardess 2.51
 hángkōng xìn air-mail letter 2.51
 hángyuán bank clerk, teller 19.2
 hǎo yìsi have the nerve (to do something) 8.5
 Hàode O.K., fine 8.52
 háojiǐ a good many 11.51
 hàomǎr (identification) number 19.50
 háoshǒu a good hand (at something) 17.3
 hǎoxiàng resemble, seem (to) 1.25, 1 N 7
 hé to suit 8.22
 hé river 14.9
 hé (small) box 20.34
 hé (put) together, jointly 15.35
 hé (measure for detached parts of a dwelling) 13.18, 13 N 3
 Héběi Hopeh (province) 14.9
 hébi side by side 15.28
 hébi why need to? why must? 4.3
 héli fitting, seemly, appropriate, in accord with what is right 21.45
 hémǎi buy jointly 15.35
 Hénán Honan (province) 14.9

- héqí gemal, easy to get along with 9.7
 héqilai put together 15.35
 hé (small) box 20.34
 hé (measure for detached parts of a dwelling) 13.18, 13 N.3
 heshì fit, fitting, suitable, congenial 8.14
 hēniú drunk to intoxication 21.9
 héyòng use jointly 15.35
 héyòng be suited to one's use 8.9
 hézai yikuài put together 15.35
 hézi (small) box 20.34
 hézú work together, cooperate 15.35
 hēibǎn blackboard 22.52
 hēnbùde hope that, would that 1.44
 héngbiǎn (horizontal) plaque 22.7
 hòu thick, close 20.21
 hòumián year after next 20.45, 20 N.3
 hòutiān day after tomorrow 20.45, 20 N.3
 hù household 28.86
 hù account in a bank 19.26
 hù (ground) pepper 10.18
 hù nurse 21.22
 huā spend 11.54
 huā figured, variegated 28.88
 huā China (also, a surname) 3.15
 huā 28: pay bill, spend money on expenses 11.55
 huā qian spend money 12.54
 huā yóu shuāhuái le on the other end 7.18
 huàbào pictorial magazine 22.34
 Huàběi North China 15.16
 Huádōng East China 15.16
 huāguāng spend all one's money 11.54
 huāguāng flower garden 15.42
 Huāhóng Central China 15.16
 huà change convert 7.1
 huà p. huà shuō in other words
 huàtiān environment, circumstances
 huà suffer famine 28.87
 huà yellow 4.17
 Huáng Hé Yellow River 14.9
 huāngdì barren ground 23.37
 huángdì emperor 23.36
 huāngguā cucumber 10.10
 huāngnián famine year 23.37
 huā flower 13.20
 huī gray; ashes 17.34
 huí time, occasion 1.47
 huì meeting 3.34
 huí shì a matter 19.51
 huídá answer 5.55
 huítóu in a little while, a little later, by and by 1.55
 huǒ fire 10.39
 huò commodity, goods, product 2.37
 huǒchē train 2.53
 huǒchē goods vehicle (i.e. truck or freight train) 2.37
 huòchuán freighter 2.37
 huòshi . . . huòshi either . . . or 8.29
 huótuī ham 10.12
 hù account in a bank 19.26
 jí impatient, nervous, excitable, excited, upset, angry 9.43
 -jí rank 22.40
 jì season 16.47
 jì transmit, send 7.57
 jì xìn mail letters 7.57
 jí xìngzi (person of) impatient disposition 9.44
 jìchū send out 7.57
 jīdàn (chicken) eggs 8.28
 jìde remember 3.16
 jìgěi send to 7.57
 jījīn grant, gift of money 16.17
 jījīn huī foundation 16.17
 jīliè violent, fierce 17.15
 jìmo lonesome 1.39
 jìniàn commemorate, celebrate the memory of; commemoration 23.21
 jìniànrì memorial day, anniversary day 23.21
 jìrán since, because 11.38
 jìshu technique, skill 7.53
 jìxing memory 3.42
 jìzhě reporter 22.10
 jiā (measure for households and business establishments) 19.17, 19 N.1
 jiā add, increase, raise 17.44
 jiā marry (of a woman) 14.14
 jiā yóu(r) gas up, add effort, put on steam 17.44, 17 N.4
 jià vacation 21.15
 jiàchuqu (leave home to) get married 14.14
 jiàgēi give in marriage to 14.14

- jiāhuo tools, implements, utensils, kitchen things (pots, pans, dishes, etc.) 4.50
- jiājū furniture 5.37
- jiàqian price 19.20
- jiāting family 11.13
- jiàzhi value 22.18
- jiàzi frame, rack 5.39
- jiān (measure for rooms in a house) 4.27
- jiān fry (in slightly greased pan) 8.27
- jiǎn cut, clip (with scissor) 20.51
- jiǎn reduce, decrease, lessen 20.4
- jiàn (measure for baggage, single pieces of clothing) 2.14
- jiǎn jià reduce prices, hold a sale 20.4
- jiàn miàn see (each other) 1.45
- jiǎnchá examine, inspect 1.52, 20 N 4
- jiǎncháchù inspection place, customs office 2.2
- jiǎncháyuán customs officer 2.1
- jiǎnfǎ cut hair, get a haircut 20.51, 20 N 4
- jiǎnjià Sale! 20.4
- jiànkāng healthy 9.27
- jiǎnqu take away, lessen (by so much) 20.4
- jiǎnqu cut off 20.51
- jiǎnshǎo reduce, decrease, lessen 20.4
- jiǎnzhí(de) simply, just 3.51
- jiànzhū erect, build, construct 13.26
- jiànzhushī architect 13.26
- jiànzhuxué architecture 13.26
- jiǎnzi scissors 20.51
- jiāng large river 15.27
- jiǎng discuss, explain, talk 11.24
- jiǎng reward 16.18
- jiàng soybean paste, jam 5.11
- jiǎng huà speak, lecture 11.24
- jiǎng jiàqian haggle, bargain 19.20
- jiǎng jiàr haggle, bargain 19.20
- jiǎng xué encourage scholarship 16.18
- Jiāngběi (place name) 15.27
- jiǎngdào reach (a point) in discussion 11.24
- jiǎnghuà a lecture 11.24
- jiǎngjīn monetary award, prize, grant 16.18
- jiǎngjiu particular, meticulous; admirable, elegant; be particular about 3.33
- jiānglái hereafter, in the future 3.39
- Jiāngnán (place name) 15.27
- jiǎngpín reward, prize 23.26
- jiǎngtáng lecture hall 23.18
- jiǎngtuō reach agreement on (by talking) 11.24
- Jiāngxī Kiangsi (province) 15.27
- jiǎngxuéjīn scholarship, fellowship 16.18
- jiāo give, hand over (to), deliver (to) 2.11
- jiǎo corner 3.26
- jiǎo feet 9.30
- jiào (mén) call for a door to be opened 13.1
- jiǎo zhítou toes 9.37
- jiāo zū pay rent 8.44
- jiāogěi give, hand over (to), deliver (to) 2.11
- jiāopí rubber 16.1
- jiāopí lúnzi tire 16.2
- jiāopí xié rubbers, galoshes 16.1
- jiàoshī instructor 16.10
- jiàoyǎng raise and educate 11.48
- jiàoyu education 7.37
- jiàoyu jījīn grant for educational purposes 16.17
- jiǎor corner 3.26
- jiē street 19.24
- jiē fēng welcome 4.45, 4 N 3
- jiē kǒu(r) entrance to a street, intersection 19.34
- jiéguǒ solution, answer, outcome, final score, result, conclusion 21.35
- jiēhūn get married 20 N 4
- jiěmèi sisters 11.21
- jiémù (items on) a program, schedule 23.11
- jiémudān playbill, program 23.11
- jiēqià(hǎo) agree after discussion 16.44
- jiěshi solid, strong, well built 15.39
- jiěshì explain 21.25
- jièzhe by means of, making use of, using, thanks to 14.52
- jīn gold (also, a surname) 19.39
- jìnbù advance (N) 21.5
- jìndài recent times, modern period 16.33
- jìndài-shǐ modern history 16.33
- jìnlái recently 22.21
- jìnshi(yǎn) near-sighted 9.28
- jīnzhāng nervous, tense, excited, exciting 17.49
- jīnzi gold 19.39
- jīngchá policeman 3.20
- jīngchájú police station 20.46
- jīngguò pass through, pass by, via 3.14
- jīngjī economical; economics 5.34
- jīnglǐ manager 19.44

jīnglǐ manage 19.44
 jīngtiē give extra pay or assistance,
 extra pay, assistance, gratuity 8.24
 jìngzi mirror 13.39
 jiǔ long (time) 1.33
 jiù old 2.36
 jiù then 2.56, 2 N 7
 jiù shì le and that'll do, that's all
 there is to it 8.25
 jiù xī old-style drama 7.8
 jiù (yǒu) have only 2.9, 2 N 1
 Jiùjīnshān San Francisco 19.39,
 19 N 4
 jiùlián even 22.44
 -jú office 20.46
 jǔ raise (overhead) 23.27
 jù according to 14.34
 jù meet together 15.8
 jù shuō it is said that, they say that
 14.34
 jùhui meet together 15.8
 jùzai yíkuàr meet together 15.8
 júzi orange, tangerine 10.51
 júzi shuǐ orange juice 10.52
 juān donate, contribute, give, will
 22.27
 juéding decide 5.18
 kāi boiled (in reference to water)
 10.13
 kāfēi coffee 5.9
 kāi dānzi make a list 8.13
 kāi dēng light a light 11.36
 kāi fàn serve up a meal 8.32
 kāi huì hold or open a meeting 3.34
 kāi hù open an account 19.26
 kāi wánxiào crack jokes, play pranks,
 kid 9.39
 kāi yàofāng(r) write a prescription
 21.47
 kāi zhǐpiào write a check, make out a
 check 19.25
 kāidào operate, operation 21.3
 kāihù shēngqǐng biǎo application form
 to open an account in a bank 19.35
 kāishuǐ boiled water 10.13
 kān edition, issue (of a scholarly publi-
 cation) 22.47
 kǎn chop 7.12
 kàn xì attend a play 7.8
 kànǎ view, opinion, way of looking
 9.53
 kàntái seats, stands, bleachers 17.41
 kānwù periodical publication 22.47
 Kàngzhàn War of Resistance 14.32
 kào lean on, depend on; be due to;
 border on, be located by; veer in a
 certain direction 19.15

káogǔ perform archaeological explora-
 tions 22.17
 káogǔjiā archaeologist 22.17
 káogǔxué archaeology 22.17
 káogǔxuéjiā archaeologist 22.17
 kǎolǚ ponder, consider, weigh thought-
 fully 23.50
 kǎoshì examine 20 N 4
 Kǎoshì Yuàn Examination Branch
 16.40
 kē (measure for trees) 7.15
 kē branch of medicine 21.17
 kě indeed, certainly, however 1.2
 kě (with hébì (why must?)) 4.3; (with
 fēi or fěiděi (absolutely have to))
 7.40
 kě but Lesson 4, p. 78, n.
 kě thirsty 4.12
 kě bu shì ma Isn't that so! 1.3
 kě kào reliable, dependable 19.15
 kèběn, kèběr textbook 22.37
 kělián pitiful, pitiable 21.20
 kési die of thirst 5 N 2
 késou cough 21.27
 kètáng classroom 23.18
 kètīng living room 4.52
 kěxī regrettable 5.23
 kōng empty 5.29
 kōngqì air 16.5
 kòngr free time, leisure time 13.21
 kǒutóu oral, verbal, by word of mouth
 23.13
 kǒutóuyǔ(r) speech mannerism, habit
 of speech, pet phrase 23.13
 kǒuwèi taste, preference as to food
 8.21
 kǒuyīn accent 2.46
 kū cry, weep 9.41
 kū bitter, hard 10.9
 kù trousers, pants 17.35
 kǔ wèr bitter taste 10.9
 kǔgōng hard physical labor 10.9
 kūqilai burst into tears 9.41
 kuā praise, flatter 7.52
 kuājiāng praise, flatter; boast 15.4
 kuàimàn speed 10.36
 kuān wide, broad 3.7
 kuān funds 19.8
 kuānzhǎi width 10.36
 kuòchōng extend, enlarge, expand
 21.21
 lā pull, tow 14.20
 là leave (behind) 1.54
 là (peppery) hot 10.26
 làjiāo peppers 10.11
 làxia leave behind, leave out 1.54
 lái get 19.33, 19 N 3

- lái come (for the purpose of) 1.23, 1 N 6
- lái come, cause to come, invite 5 N 3
- lái come now, let 14.1, 14 N 1
- lái péngyou invite friends 5.35
- lái bīn visitors, guests 23.3
- lái bují unable to do [something] within an indicated period 10.38
- lái de jí able to do [something] within an indicated period 10.39
- lái huí going and coming, round trip 13.50
- lái huí piào round-trip ticket 13.50
- lái wǎng social or business relations, coming and going, contacts 19.18
- lái zhe (continuative suffix) 15.3, 15 N 1
- lán basket 17.10
- lán qiú basketball 17.10
- lán zi basket 17.10
- lǎo mā zi married woman servant 8.19
- lǎo shi honest, steady, frank 20.12
- lǎo shu mouse, rat 13.38
- lǎo tóu old man, graybeard 11.19, 11 N 3
- lèi kind (of), classification (of) 17.9
- lèi si dead tired 5 N 2
- lěng cold 4.6
- lěng rè temperature 10.36
- lǐ put in order 20.49
- lí A + time expression It's ... before A 11.7
- lǐ bāi week 15.7
- lǐ fā cut hair, get a haircut 22.49, 20 N 4
- lǐ fā guǎn barber shop 20.50
- lǐ fū porter 2.49
- lǐ hai severe, serious, extreme, powerful 10.29
- lǐ lùn theory 23.51
- lǐ lùn shàng in theory, theoretically 23.51
- lì qì strength 17.48
- lì wài exception 14.47
- lì wài (de) bàn fa exceptional measure 14.47
- lǐ wù present, gift 2.24
- liǎ two 14.11, 14 N 2
- lián union 15 N 3
- liǎn face 4.5
- lián A dài B both A and B 14.39
- Lián-Dà Southeast Associated University 16.46, 16 N 4
- lián hé join with, federate with 16.46
- Lián hé Guó United Nations 16.46
- lián hé qī lai join with, ally with 16.46
- lián luò join, connect 17.51
- lián méng union 15 N 3
- lián zǐ lotus seeds 10.49
- liáng measure (out) 10.34
- liáng (uncomfortably) cool, chilly, cold 11.4
- liàng bright, light 5.4
- liàng (measure for vehicles) 13.46
- liáng kuai (comfortably) cool 11.4
- liáo chat 10.53
- liào (dress) material 20.14
- liáo tiān chat 10.54
- liáo jiě understand 19.40
- liào (dress) material 20.14
- lín located near and facing, approach, be near 21.36
- lín dào N (V) become (someone's) turn (to V) 21.36
- lín shí provisional, temporary, special, on a moment's notice 23.15
- lín shí zhèng fǔ provisional government 23.15
- líng zero 17.21, 17 N 3
- líng bell 8.2
- líng receive, get, claim 23.30
- líng your 22.30
- líng dì your younger brother 22.30
- líng mèi your younger sister 22.30
- líng qīn your relatives 22.30
- líng suǐ miscellaneous, fragmentary 8.46
- líng wài additional(ly), separate(ly) 4.26
- líng r bell 8.2
- líng xiōng your older brother 22.30
- liū slip, slide 7.43
- liú help, reserve, hold on to; detain, keep behind, leave behind 13.55
- liú study abroad 15.14
- liū bīng skate on ice 7.45
- liū bīng chǎng skating rink 7.45
- liū chū lai slip away 7.43
- liū chu qu slip away 7.43
- liū da (take a) stroll 9.3
- liú lì fluent 2.38
- liū xiá qu slide down, coast, slip and fall down 7.43
- liú xíng prevalent, widespread 21.12
- liú xíng bìng epidemic disease 21.12
- liú xíng xìng epidemicity, epidemic nature 21.13
- liú xíng xìng gǎn mào epidemic influenza 21.14
- liú xué study abroad 15.14
- liú xué shēng person who has studied abroad, returned student 15.14, 22.56, 22 N 6
- lóng deaf 9.19
- lóng zi deaf person 9.19
- lóu building of two or more stories, Restaurant (in specific names) 3.28

- lóushàng upstairs 3.28
 lóuxià downstairs 3.28
 lú stove, furnace 5.12
 lúzi stove, furnace 5.12
 luànqibāzāo at sixes and sevens, in a mess, helter-skelter 2.44
 lùn discuss; by 20.31
 lùnwén essay, article 16.28
 lúnzi wheel, tire 16.2
 luò land, drop, fall 1.13
 luòxialai drop down, land 1.13
 lǜ green 17.33
 lǚfèi travel expenses 16.21
 lǚguǎn hotel, inn 2.55
 lǚxíng zhīpiào traveler's checks 19.25
 lǚxíngshè travel bureau 2.12

 Mā (title for married woman servants) 8.3
 má numb 21.7
 mǎ yard 20.32
 mǎ horse (also, a surname) 13.9
 máchǎng riding stable 16.3
 mǎhu, mǎhu careless, absent-minded 9.20
 māmāhūhū, māmāhūhū careless, absent-minded 9.20
 máyào anesthetic 21.7
 mǎzuì anesthetize, drug, dope 21.9
 mǎihuòyuán sales clerk 20.24
 mǎimai trade, business, business establishment 20.9
 mǎimai rén merchant 20.9
 mǎn full 17.42
 mǎn xìngzi (person of) easy-going disposition 9.44
 mǎntou steamed bread rolls 4.38
 mǎnyì be satisfied (with or about) 11.1, 20 N 4
 mángzhe busy, in a hurry 1.22, 1 N 5
 māo cat 13.33
 máo body hair, fur, wool, feathers 9.38
 máobīng defect, trouble 9.17
 máodùn contradictory 7.19
 māor cat 13.33
 máor body hair, fur, wool, feathers 9.38
 màozi hat 1.17
 méi coal 13.44
 méi duó dà N there isn't much N 16.31
 méi le finished 7.11
 méi . . . yǐqián before 7.29, 7 N 2
 méi (yǒu) bǎwò uncertain, unsure 17.28
 méi yǒu duó dà N there isn't much N 16.31

 méi zào coal-burning stove 13.44
 méimao eyebrows 9.26
 méiqì (coal) gas 16.5
 mén (measure for subjects of study) 8.16
 Měng Mongolia 15.18
 Ménggǔ Mongolia 15.18
 mér (measure for subjects of study) 8.16
 mī here, kitty! 13.34, 13 N 6
 mǐ (uncooked) rice, rice (grain) 10.48, 10 N 7
 miǎn avoid 5.28
 miàn face 4.48
 miànbāo bread 5.8
 miǎnbuliǎo unable to avoid 5.28
 miǎnde so as to avoid 5.28
 miǎnqiǎng reluctant, forced; urge, compel, force 14.41
 miànzi prestige, "face" 4.48
 miǎo a second 17.22
 mín people 23.32
 mǐngē(r) folk song 23.32
 mínguó republic 23.32
 mínzhǔ democracy 23.32
 mínzhǔ guó(jiā) democratic country, democracy 23.32
 míngdān, míngdār list of names, roster 2.5
 míng name in a list 16.25
 míngpiār calling card 2.45
 míngxiǎn obvious, clear 23.52
 míngxìnpìār post card 20.39
 míngzi jiào be called 7.3
 móxíng (three-dimensional scale) model 15.46
 mǔ (Chinese) acre 14.36
 mùlù catalogue, table of contents 22.24

 ná take 2.22, 2 N 4
 nǎi milk 4.37
 nǎi tāng báicài cabbage soup with milk 4.37
 Nán Bīng Yáng Antarctic Ocean 9.50
 nán cèsuǒ men's room 13.15
 nán guài hard to blame; no wonder (that) 10.29
 Nán Qīngnián Huì YMCA 8.8
 nánbù southern section 10.27
 nánguò sad, distressed 5.26
 nǎr (used in rhetorical questions) 8.37, 8 N 2
 nèi inside, interior 16.23
 Nèi Měng(gǔ) Inner Mongolia 16.23
 Nèi-Wài Ménggǔ Inner and Outer Mongolia 16.23
 nèibù interior part, China Proper 15.21

nèidì interior land, China Proper 15.21
 nèiháng (be) an insider in respect to
 job or profession 19.2
 nèikē internal medicine 21.17
 nèiróng contents 22.48
 nènmo yīhuí shì such a matter, such a
 thing 19.51
 nì bored (with), fed up (with), tired of;
 boring, dull 21.50
 nǐ shuō you say 7.30, 7 N 3
 niàn bóshì study for the Ph.D. 5.21
 nián dǐ end of the year 8.39
 nián tóu beginning of the year 7.6
 niánjì age (in years) 8.18
 niánkān annual (publication), yearbook
 22.47
 niánqīng young 1.28
 niú nǎi (cow's) milk 4.37
 niú yóu butter 5.10
 nòng handle, arrange, see to 2.43,
 2 N 6
 nòng ge dòng make a hole 16.7
 nónggōng farmers and workers, agri-
 culture and industry 19.12, 19 N 2
 nóng rén farmer (N) 14.26
 nóngyè farming, agriculture 19.11
 nǚlǐ strive hard 7.36
 nǚ cèsuǒ ladies' room 13.15
 Nǚ Qīngnián Huì YWCA 8.8
 nǚ'ér daughter 3.56
 nǚxù son-in-law 14.16
 Ōu Europe 15.33
 ou (particle of warning) 3.41, 3 N 4
 Ōu-Yǎ Eurasia, Europe and Asia
 15.34
 óu'ěr occasionally, once in a while; by
 chance 8.38
 Ōuzhou Europe 15.33
 pái tag, check, label 7.4
 pái cháng duì form a long line 21.44
 páiduì stand or wait in line 21.44
 páigu spareribs 10.15
 pāizi racket, paddle 17.23
 páizi tag, check, label 7.4
 páng other, others; side 19.19
 pàng fat 1.21
 páng mén side door 19.19
 páng rén other people 19.19
 pángbiān vicinity, neighborhood, side
 19.19
 pángtīng audit a lecture, sit in on
 19.19
 pángtīngshēng auditor 19.19
 páomáchǎng racecourse, racetrack
 16.3
 pǎopǐng run neck and neck 17.47
 péi accompany(ing) 5.56

pèi match, go with, complement
 21.49
 pèi yào compound medicines, make up
 a prescription 21.49
 pèifu admire, respect 14.40
 pēnshèijī jet plane 1.35
 pēnshuǐchí fountain 15.44
 pèng hit, run into 3.44
 pèngjiàn encounter 3.44
 pèngshāng injure by running into
 14.29
 pèngsì kill by running into 5 N 2
 permutation 2.15, 2 N 2
 pí skin, leather 9.46
 píba Chinese guitar 20.15
 píbāo suitcase, bag 2.17
 pífu skin 9.46
 pífukē dermatology 21.17
 píqì temper, temperament 9.5
 piányi cheap 3.37
 piào (money) bill 19.53
 piào (money) bill 19.53
 piàozì (money) bill 19.53
 piér skin 23.22
 píng level, even, smooth 3.8
 píng even (in a score) 17.47
 píng be due to 10.35
 píngcháng ordinary, normal; ordinarily
 19.6
 píngyuán plain (noun) 15.25
 pò break, tear; broken, torn 9.23
 pū spread out over (something) 13.28,
 13 N 5
 pū chuáng make a bed 13.28
 pū dì cover a floor 13.31
 pūgai bedding 8.12
 pútáo grape 23.22
 pútáo pí(ér) grape skin 23.22
 pǔtōng common, ordinary 14.43
 pǔtōng huà general language 14.43
 pùzi store 3.12

qī period of time 8.43
 qī brew, steep 4.11
 qí ride (astride) 13.10
 -qǐ (postverb in resultative verbs)
 14.44, 14 N 4
 qì air, atmosphere, gas 16.5
 qì angry; anger, bad temper 13.52
 qǐ fēi take off, leave (of airplanes) 1.5
 qǐ fēi(de) wǎn take off late 1.6
 qǐ wàihào(r) give a nickname 17.26
 qípáo(r) Chinese-style gown 20.13
 qíshí actually 5.45
 qìsì be terribly angry 13.52
 qíyúde the rest, the others 2.10
 qiān to sign 19.43
 Qiān Guāng Lóu Hall of the Glory of
 Sīmǎ Qiān 22 N 2

- qiān míng sign one's name 19.43
 qiān zì sign one's name 19.43
 qiǎn light, shallow, simply expressed 20.26
 qiāncéng gāo thousand-layer cake 10.16, 10 N 1
 qiánhòu front and rear, before and after, before or after 15.50
 qiánshù amount of money 22.5
 qiántú future 17.20
 qiānwàn by all means, without fail 17.16
 qiáng wall (of a building) 3.30
 qiáo bridge 15.13
 qiáo look (at) 2.28
 qīnqi relatives 11.12
 Qīng Cháo Ch'ing Dynasty 16.34
 qīngcài fresh vegetables 10.8
 qīngchu clear 9.18
 Qīnghuá Tsinghua (University) 16.50, 16 N 4
 qǐngjià ask for leave 21.15
 qīngnián youth 8.8
 Qīngnián Huì YMCA 8.8
 qīngnián rén youth, young person 8.8
 qíngtiān clear, clear day 1.32
 qíngxíng situation 7.28
 qīngzhòng weight 10.36
 qióng poor, impoverished 14.35
 qiú ball 17.8
 qiúchǎng ground for ball game—e.g. football field, tennis court 17.8
 qiúduì team 17.8
 qiūjì autumn 16.47
 qiúmén goal, goal posts 17.8
 qiūtiān autumn 7.24
 qǔ take out, withdraw, fetch 19.52
 qǔ marry (of a man) 14.12
 qù go (purpose) 1.23, 1 N 6
 qǔ tàitai marry, take a wife 14.12
 qǔ xifu marry, take a wife 14.13
 qǔchū take out 19.52
 qǔhuí take back 19.52
 qǔxiāo get rid of, cancel, eliminate 3.22
 quàn calm, soothe; urge, (try to) persuade 9.42
 quán shēn mázuì general anesthesia 21.9
 quánbù the whole of [something] 16.20
 quánbù N the whole of N, all of N, the total N 16.20
 quánbù xuésheng the whole student body 16.20
 quántǐ whole body, in a body, all together 22.28
 ránhòu afterward 15.53
 rào circle around, detour around 23.19
 ràokǒulǐng(r) tongue twister 23.19
 ràoyuǎn, ràoyuǎr circuitous, round-about 23.19
 ràozuǐ difficult to say 23.19
 rè hot 4.7
 rèdù temperature 21.30
 rènáo bustling, busy, lively, entertaining, sociable 3.13, 8.35
 rènhe any whatever 11.34
 rénjia (other) people 1.49
 rénkǒu(r) population 7.20
 rénlèi mankind 17.9
 rénmin the people 23.32
 rénshù number of people 22.5
 rènwei be of the opinion that 9.54
 rénzào artificial, man made 20.22
 rìbào daily (newspaper) 22.34
 rìjì diary (i.e. a record) 2.34
 rìjìben diary (i.e. a book) 2.34
 rìjìběr diary (i.e. a book) 2.34
 rìzi day 4.57
 róng hold, contain, accommodate 3.49
 rù enter 16.43
 rù xué enter school, matriculate 16.43
 rùkǒu(chù) entrance 16.43
 ruò weak, faint 17.55
 sài compete in, have a race 17.18
 sài (kàn) + V compete (to see) V 17.18
 sài qiú compete in a ball game 17.18
 sàipǎo race on foot 17.18, 20 N 4
 Sānhé Xiàn (district in Hupeh) 14.10
 sānlúnchē pedicab 14.23
 sāngzi throat 21.29
 shā kill 14.31
 shāmò desert 15.23
 shāng wound, injury 14.29
 shāng- commerce, trade 19.10
 shàng (postverb in resultative verbs) 15.47, 15 N 2
 shàng + TW last 19.3
 shàng bàntiān forenoon, morning 19.3
 shàng cè Volume I 22.54, 22 N 4
 shàng chǎng come on the field, enter a game 17.27
 shāng fēng catch cold 14.29
 shàng máyào give an anesthetic 21.7
 shàng qī beginning of a period 8.43
 shàng shàng(ge) + TW one before last 19.3
 shàngge + TW last 19.3
 shànggǔ antiquity, earliest times 16.32

- Shànghǎi Shanghai 7.47
 shāngkē business course (in school) 19.10
 shāngren business man, merchant 19.10
 shāngyè commerce, trade 19.11
 shàngzuò seat of honor 4.46
 shāo have a fever 21.26
 shāo kāishuǐ boil water 10.13
 shāo méi burn coal 13.44
 shāowēi, shǎowēi slightly 10.41
 shàoye young gentleman, (someone else's) son (polite form) 13.6
 shèbèi equipment, furnishings 21.18
 shèjì design, plan 13.12
 shēn deep 20.25
 shēn body 20.52
 shénmode and so forth, etc. 2.27
 shēnqǐng apply, make a request (to a superior) 19.35
 shēnqǐng biǎo application blank 19.35
 shēnshang on one's body, with one 20.54
 shēntǐ body 20.52
 shènzhiyu even to, even so far as, culminating in 21.33
 shēnzi body 20.54
 shēng new, raw 1.56
 shēng bear (offspring), give rise to, produce, make 11.26
 -shēng (noun suffix) 22.57, 22 N 4
 shěng province (in China), state (in America) 14.8
 shěng save (on), economize (on) 19.21
 shēng bìng get sick 11.26
 shēng cài raw vegetables 1.56
 shēng qì become angry 13.52
 shēng rén stranger 1.56
 shēng zì new words, vocabulary 1.56
 shēnghuó living conditions, existence, life; live 11.56
 shěnglì(de) province-established, provincial 16.53
 shēng(r) occurrence 13.7, 13 N 2
 shēngrì birthday 9 N 4
 shēngyì (commercial) business 10.4
 shī poem, poetry 23.25
 shì is a matter of 1.9, 1 N 3
 shì is 2.35, 2 N 5, 4.36, 4 N 1
 shì try 13.2
 shì style, model, pattern, fashion 3.29
 shì -sighted 9.28
 Shǐ Jì Historical Records 22 N 2
 shì wēndù biǎo take a temperature 21.31
 shìchǎng market (place) 19.23
 shídài (historical) period, age 16.33
 shìde yes, that's so 2.29
 shìde (with hǎoxiàng) 1.25, 1 N 7
 shījia poet 23.25
 shíjiān (period of) time 19.22
 shíjiān biǎo time table 19.30
 shìjiè world 2.54
 Shìjiè Dàzhàn World War 14.32
 Shìjiè Yùndong Huì Olympics 3.34
 shīrén poet 23.25
 shìshí fact 23.53
 shìshì (kàn) try and see 13.2
 shìshíshang in fact, as a matter of fact 23.53
 shìxuéjiā historian 16.37
 shìyan experiment 15.32
 shìyíng be out when someone calls 13.8, 20 N 4
 shízài real, genuine, sure enough 2.40
 shǒu receive, accept, collect 19.47
 shóu ripe; well done; well acquainted 5.51
 shǒu hand 9.36; person 17.3
 shǒu defend, guard, keep, watch over 17.54
 shòu thin 1.26
 shòu receive, suffer, endure 5.15
 shòu long life, span of life; birthday 9.40, 9 N 4
 shòu fá be punished 5.16
 shǒu zhítou fingers 9.37
 shǒu mén guard a door, defend a goal 17.54
 shǒu mén de gatekeeper, goalie 17.54
 shòu shāng be wounded, injured 14.29
 shǒucè handbook, student's notebook 22.54
 shǒuhǎo receive and retain carefully, take good care of 19.47
 shǒujīn towel 4.8
 shǒujīn jiàzi towel rack 5.39
 shǒujuànr handkerchief 14.4
 shǒurù take in income, income 11.57
 shǒushi ornament 2.26
 shǒutíbāo brief case 2.16
 shǒutíxiāng suitcase 3.5
 shǒuxia accept and keep 19.47
 shǒuxu (formal) procedure, process, method 8.41
 shū to comb 9.25
 shū lose (a game, money in a bet) 17.25
 shú ripe; well done; well acquainted 5.51
 shù tree 7.9

- shù number, amount 22.5
 shū jiàzi bookcase 5.39
 shū mùlù catalogue of stored books, card catalogue 22.24
 shú rén acquaintance 5.51
 shūfáng study (room) 4.28
 shūfu comfortable 5.3
 shùlínzi forest, woods 7.10
 shùr number, amount 22.5
 shūzhuō desk 4.30
 shūzi comb 9.25
 shuāng pair 14.5
 shuì sleep 4.54
 shuì jiào sleep 4.54
 shuǐguǒ fruit 4.49
 shuǐshǒu sailor 17.3
 shuǐzhǔn level 7.38
 shùn follow, with, in accordance with, along 20.42
 shùnbìan at the same time (as some other activity) 20.42
 shuō admonish, scold 13.22
 shuōtuō reach agreement by talking 11.23
 sī (raw) silk 20.23
 sī shred 4.25
 sǐ die 5.24, 5 N 2
 Sìchuān Szuchwan (Province) 10.27, 10 N 2
 sīlǐ(de) privately established, private 16.53
 Sīmǎ Qiān Szu-ma Ch'ien 22.9, 22 N 2
 sīrén private individual 22.25
 sòng see (someone) off 13.56
 sōu search (out), search for 22.12
 sōuji search out and collect 22.13
 sōuzháo find after a search 22.12
 Sū Soviet Union, USSR 15.56
 Sū-Ē, Sū-É, Sū-È Soviet Russia 15.56
 Sūlián Soviet Union, USSR 15.56
 sùshè dormitory 5.33
 súyǔ proverb 10.24
 suàn reckon 21.46
 suànpan abacus 20.17
 suí follow 8.33
 suǐshí at any time desired 10.19
 suǐshu(r) age 9.10
 sūn- grandchild 11.18
 sūnnüer granddaughter 11.18
 sūnzi grandson 11.18
 suǒ that which 23.44, 23 N 11
 suǒ lock 2.31
 suǒshang lock 2.31
 suǒzhe be locked 2.31
 tā collapse 15.41
 tāxiālai collapse 15.41
 tāxiāqu collapse 15.41
 tàidu manner, bearing, attitude 9.9
 tán play (by plucking or touching with the fingers) 20.16
 tán tiār chat 10.53
 táng hall, room (also, measure for a class at a particular place and time) 23.18
 tāng - lie down 21.32
 tānglèi soups (on a menu) 17.9
 tāolùn discuss formally 23.57
 tàò (measure for suits, sets of books) 2.30
 tāoyàn annoying, boring, distasteful; be annoyed (with), be bored (with) 10.45, 20 N 4
 téng hurt, ache, be sore 21.28, 21 N 3
 tī kick 17.13
 tì for, on behalf of, as a substitute for 19.41
 tí qiú kick a ball, play a game that involves kicking a ball 17.13
 tígāo raise, uplift 7.39
 típíng even score (in a kicking game) 17.47
 tíqi speaking of, if one mentions 11.31
 tíqián update, advance, move an event to a time earlier than originally scheduled 16.11, 20 N 4
 tíyì suggest, make a motion; suggestion, motion 9.2, 20 N 4
 tíyì (shuō) suggest, make a motion 9.2, 20 N 4
 tǐyù physical culture, physical education 17.2
 tǐyù huì athletic club 17.2
 tǐyùchǎng athletic field, stadium 17.2
 tǐyùguǎn gym, gymnasium 17.2
 tiān add, increase 8.48
 tián fill out a form 19.31
 tián diǎnxīn (sweet) dessert 10 N 1
 tiān qián increase the money 8.48
 tiāncái talent, genius 11.45
 tiándì farm land, fields 23.39
 tiānshang add 8.48
 tiāo pick, select, choose 20.27
 tiār weather 10.52
 tiē paste 7.58
 tiě iron 15.38
 tiě lù railroad 14.17
 tǐng very, extremely 9.6
 tǐng stop 3.2
 tǐng chē stop or park a car 3.2
 tǐng xì attend Chinese opera 7.8
 tǐngchēchǎng parking lot 3.2
 tíngzi pavilion 15.45
 tōng pass through 5.52
 tóng same 15.22

- tōng diànhuà put through a phone call 5.52
- tóngbān (be of) the same class, (be) classmates 22.1
- tóngkuai happy, content, delighted 1.41
- tóngnián the same year 15.22
- tóngshí at the same time 15.22
- tóngshì have the same occupation 15.22
- tóngsuì be of the same age 15.22
- tóngxiāng of the same district 11.11, 11 N 2, 15.22
- tōngxīn to correspond 1.46
- tóngxìng have the same surname 15.22
- tóngxué (be) fellow students 15.22
- tóngxué huì alumni association 15.22
- tóngyàng similar 15.22
- tóu head, first 7.6
- tóu téng have a headache 21 N 3
- tóufa hair on the head 9.24
- tóur head, front end 7.6
- tú illustration, chart, map 22.6
- tú journey, road 17.20
- tǔ spit (out) 23.23
- tǔ earth, soil, dirt 23.28
- tǔdì territory, land 19.14
- tuántǐ group, organized body, organization 22.26
- tuī push 16.9
- tuǐ leg 9.35
- tuīkāi push open 16.9
- tuō satisfactory, successful 11.23
- verb-object compounds 20.52, 20 N 4
- wā (interjection) 1.19, 1 N 4
- wàizi socks, stockings 14.6
- wàizǔfù mother's father 11.16
- wàizǔfùmǔ mother's parents 11.16
- wàizǔmǔ mother's mother 11.16
- wàibiāo surface, outside; on the surface, superficially 13.13
- wàibiāoshang on the surface, superficially 13.13
- wàiháng (be) an outsider in respect to job or profession, (be) an amateur 19.2
- wàihào(r) nickname 17.26
- wàikē surgery 21.17
- wàirén outsider, stranger 15.2
- wàiwén foreign language 22.32
- wàn shòu long life 9.40, 9 N 4
- wǎnbào evening (or afternoon) newspaper 22.34
- wǎnbèi younger generation 8.6
- wǎnhuì evening meeting, evening party 22 N 5
- wánquán complete 3.31
- wánxiào joke, prank 9.39
- wànyī barely likely, if by any chance 17.17
- wǎng net 17.11
- wàng forget (to) 2.39
- wǎngqiú tennis 17.11
- wǎngqiúchǎng tennis court 17.27
- wǎngzi net 17.11
- wár qiú play (ball) 17.8
- wèi for (the sake of), for (the purpose of) 7.27
- wèi stomach 21.2
- wèi bìng stomach disorder 21.2
- wèide shì because, in order to, so as to 20.28
- wèikǒu appetite 21.2
- wèile for (the sake of), for (the purpose of) 7.27
- wēixiǎn dangerous, critical 17.29
- wēixiǎnxìng dangerousness 21.13, 21 N 1
- wèizhe for (the sake of), for (the purpose of) 7.27
- wēn warm (also, a surname) 21.31
- wén smell, sniff (at) 4.23
- wěn smooth, steady, stable 1.36
- wēndù temperature 21.31
- wēndù biǎo thermometer 21.31
- wénjian smell 4.23
- wēnxi review 1.58
- wēnxi jùzi review sentences 1.58
- wènzhu puzzle, nonplus, stump 23.42
- wèr smell, odor, fragrance 4.24
- wòfáng bedroom 13.24
- Wǔ Dà Yuán Five Main Branches (of the Nationalist Government) 16.40
- Wǔ Sì Yùndòng May 4th Movement 3.4, 3 N 2
- wūdǐng roof 15.30
- wúlùn no matter 9.21
- wúsuǒwèi make no difference, not matter 8.34
- wúxiàndiàn radio 2.25
- wūzi room (in a house) 1.37
- xǐ wash 4.4
- xì fine, thin, delicate; detailed, minute 9.47
- xì department of instruction 7.32
- xì drama, play 7.8
- Xī-Ōu Western Europe 15.33
- Xī shì Western style 3.29
- xǐ zǎo take a bath 4.4
- xīlài have pleasure in, be fascinated with 16.14
- xībù western section 9.27
- xīfàn porridge, gruel 5.7
- Xīfāng Occident, West 10 N 4, 15.29
- Xīfāng rén Westerner 10 N 4
- xífer daughter-in-law 14.13

- xīfù daughter-in-law 14.13
 xīguā watermelon 10.10
 xíguān custom, habit 4.55
 xījù drama, play 7.8
 xījùxué dramatics 7.8
 Xīnán Liánhé Dàxué Southwest Associated University 16.46, 16 N 4
 Xīzàng Tibet 15.20
 Xīzàngwén Tibetan (language and literature) 15.20
 xízǎofáng bathroom 4.4
 Xīyáng Occident 9.50
 xiǎ falsely, incorrectly, haphazardly 1.24
 xià time, times 10.41, 10 N 6
 xià bǎntiān afternoon 19.3
 xià cè Volume II (of two), Volume III (of three) 22.54, 22 N 4
 xià qī end of a period 8.43
 xià + TW next 19.3
 xià xià(ge) one after next 19.3
 xià yǔ be raining 1.29, 1 N 8
 xiàgè + TW next 19.3
 xiàjì summer 16.47
 xiàtiān summer 7.46
 xián salty 9.25
 xián idle, unoccupied 3.1
 xiàn district, county 14.10
 xián tán carry on chitchat 3.1
 xiànkǔǎn cash 19.28
 xiànmù envy 15.57
 xiānsheng gentleman, Mr. 22 N 6
 xiànzhǎng district leader 16.41
 xiāng (large) box, trunk, suitcase 3.5
 xiāng fragrant 23.47
 xiǎng sound, make a noise 13.3
 xiàng article, item, kind 17.4
 xiàng likeness 7.48
 xiāngchù get along with [someone] 9.45
 xiāngdāng suitable, suited; rather, fairly 14.33
 xiāngfǎn be opposites 11.32
 xiāngfáng side unit of a house 13.11, 13 N 3
 xiànglái hitherto 14.48
 xiànglái bu/méi never 14.48
 xiǎngniàn think of (someone) 1.43
 xiàngpiān photograph 7.50
 xiàngsheng(r) comic dialogue 23.40
 xiángxi minute details 21.24
 xiāngxiā country (vs. city) 11.28
 xiāngxìn believe that, be convinced that 11.9
 xiāngzi (large) box, trunk, suitcase 3.5
 xiǎo māo(r) cat 13.33
 xiǎo'érkē pediatrics 21.17
 xiǎohù poor family 23.38
 xiàohuā, xiàohuā laugh at 16.12
 xiāoqiǎn pastime, hobby, pleasurable activity 13.23
 xiǎoshuō(r) fiction, novel 22.35
 xiǎoshuōjiā novelist 22.35
 xiàotú map of a school 22.6, 22 N 1
 xiāoxi information 4.15
 xiǎoxin be careful (of), watch out (for) 3.54
 xiàozhǎng principal (of a school), president (of a university) 16.41
 xià time, times 10.42, 10 N 6
 xié shoes 9.22
 xièxi please 13.5, 13 N 1
 xiězítái writing desk 8.11
 xiězizhuō writing table 4.30
 xīn new, newly, recently 1.57
 xīn heart, mind 1.40
 xìn believe 5.13
 xīn xī new-style drama 7.8
 xīnfēng envelope 20.37
 xīnhāi eighth year in a cycle 16.35, 16 N 2
 Xīnhài Gémìng Revolution of 1911 16.36, 16 N 2
 xīnhài nián 1911 16.35, 16 N 2
 Xīnjiāng Sinkiang 15.19
 xīnkǔ wearying, toilsome, wearied from hard toil 11.49
 xīnshēng new student 22.57, 22 N 1, 22 N 6
 xīnshuǐ salary 19.32
 xīnwén news 4.41
 xīnwén jìzhě reporter, newspaper correspondent, journalist 22.8
 xīnyong trustworthiness 19.16
 xīnzhǐ stationery, letter paper 20.36
 xíng be O.K., be satisfactory, do 19.27
 xǐng wake up 5.1
 xìng nature, quality 21.13, 21 N 1
 xìng'er fortunately 7.31
 xìngmíng name 19.36
 xìng disposition, character, nature 9.44
 xìngzhi nature, property, attribute 16.24
 xìngzi disposition, character, nature 9.44
 xiōngdì (older and younger) brothers 11.20
 xiōngdì younger brother 11.20; I, me (p. 259, n.)
 xiōngměng fierce, savage, cruel 17.36
 xiū fix, repair, build 3.6
 xiūchēchǎng service station, repair shop 16.8
 xiūli fix, repair, build 3.6

- xiūli-fèi repair bill 11.55
 xiūxi to rest 1.50
 xǔduō(de) N a great many N 19.34
 xūyào need (to) 7.21
 xuǎn choose, select, elect, vote for 16.15
 xuānchuán spread information, advertise, propagandize; advertising, propaganda 20.3
 xuǎnshàng elect to an office 16.15
 xuánshǒu star, champion, able person selected from a number of others 17.3
 xuéshù erudition, mastery, skill 22.46
 xuéfèi tuition 11.55
 xuéhuì (professional) association 15.6
 xuéqī semester 11.41
 xuésheng student 22 N 6
 xuésheng shǒucè student handbook 22.54
 xuézhě scholar 22.8, 22 N 3
 yá tooth 21.54
 Yǎ Asia 15.34
 ya (interjection) 1.19, 1 N 4
 yá dàifu dentist 21.54
 yá yīsheng dentist 21.54
 yákē dentistry 21.54
 yákē dàifu dentist 21.54
 yákē yīsheng dentist 21.54
 Yǎxiyǎ Asia 15.34
 Yǎzhou Asia 15.34
 Yǎzhou Xuéhuì Association for Asian Studies 15.34
 yān smoke; cigarette 4.18
 yán word 23.24
 yán salt 10.17
 Yān-Dà, Yàn-Dà Yenching University 16.52, 16 N 4
 yǎnjīng eyes 1.20
 Yǎnjīng, Yànjing Yenching (University) 16.52, 16 N 4
 yǎnjìng eyeglasses 9.29
 yánjiū xuéshù do scholarly research 22.46
 yánjiū yuàn graduate school, research institute 16.40
 yánjiūbān seminar 22.1
 yánjiūshēng research worker, graduate student 22.57, 22 N 6
 yǎnkē ophthalmology 21.17
 yáng ocean; foreign 9.50
 yǎng raise (family, animals, flowers) 11.48
 yáng guǐzi foreign devil 9.51, 9 N 6
 yǎng jiā support a family 11.48
 yángchē ricksha 9.50
 yánghuǒ matches 4.20
 yǎnghuò support, feed (people) 14.24
 yàngzi appearance; type, kind, model, pattern 4.1
 yào medicine 11.53
 yào sǐ extremely 5 N 2
 yàofáng pharmacy, drugstore, dispensary 21.48
 yàofāng(r) prescription 21.47
 yàoshi if 2.50
 yàoshi key 2.21
 -yè enterprise 19.11
 yè page 22.55
 yè night 5.2
 yéxǔ perhaps, probably 1.10
 yèzi leaf 7.23
 Yenching 16 N 4
 yī-jiàzi clothes rack 5.39
 yì rén yì . . . one . . . per person 13.48
 yībèi one generation, same generation 8.6
 yìbiān on the one hand 2.4
 yìbù(yìbù)(de) step by step 16.4
 yìduōbàr(de) most of [something], majority of; most likely, perhaps 14.53
 yīfu clothes, clothing 1.16
 yíge rén yì . . . one . . . per person 13.48
 yīguì wardrobe (closet), cabinet 5.38
 yìhuí shì a matter 19.51
 yīkē medicine (in general), medical science 21.17
 yíkùài dì plot of land 13.31
 yílái in the first place 23.45
 yīliào(r) dress material 20.14
 yíliú bequeath, leave, hand down 22.41
 yímiàn on the one hand 2.4
 yǐnèi within, inside 16.26
 yíqiè(de) all 5.36
 yīshàng clothes, clothing 14.2
 yīsheng physician, doctor, Dr., M.D. 11.52
 yìshēng(r) once 13.7, 13 N 2
 yìshí a moment 7.35
 yìshu art 10.31
 yìshujiā artist 9.30
 yìsì see hǎo yìsì 8.5
 yítáng kè one class 23.18
 yìwài outside, apart from 16.27
 yǐwei think (incorrectly), suppose 2.7
 yīwùshǐ infirmary, clinic, doctor's office 21.19
 yíxiàngyíxiàngde item by item 17.4
 yíxiār once; a moment 10.42
 yīxué medicine (as a subject of study) 21.4

- yīyào-fèi medical expenses 11.55
 yīyuàn hospital 5.47
 yīyuè kān January issue 22.47
 yǐzi chair 4.31
 yínháng bank 19.2
 yīnyuè music 11.42
 yīnyuè duì band, orchestra 17.6
 yínzi silver 19.1
 Yīngchǐ English foot 9.13, 9 N 2
 yīngchou socialize, undertake a social engagement; social engagement 20.29
 Yīngcùn English foot 9 N 2
 Yīnglǐ English mile 9 N 2
 yíngxiǎng influence 22.22
 yòng use 2.22, 2 N 4
 yònggōng studios 20 N 4
 yōnghu support, back up 17.39
 yōngjǐ crowd together; crowded 21.43
 yòngren servant 5.40
 yónguǎn forever, always 23.48
 yóu oil 5.10, 17.44, 17 N 4
 yǒu bǎo certain, sure 17.28
 yǒu jiàzhi be valuable 22.18
 yóupiào postage stamp 20.43
 yóujiǎn aerogram, (single-sheet) air letter 20.44
 yóu oil 17.44, 17 N 4
 yóuxì recreation, amusement 7.25
 yóuxiǎng playground, place of amusement 7.25
 yóuyǒng swim 7.48, 20 N 4
 yóuyǒng-yī bathing suit 7.48
 yóuzhèngjú post office 20.47
 yǔ rain 1.29, 1 N 8
 yùbei prepare 8.7
 yùfáng take preventive measures against 21.34
 yúlè amusement, recreation, entertainment 23.10
 yúlèchǎng place of amusement 23.10
 yúwǎng fish net 17.11
 yuàn (official) body, branch of government, institute 16.40, 16 N 3
 yuǎngāo(r) rough draft, manuscript 22.42
 yuǎnjìn distance 10.36
 yuánlái after all, as a matter of fact 2.6
 yuánliang forgive, excuse, make allowances for 23.9
 yuǎnshì(yǎn) far-sighted 9.28
 yuànyì be willing (that), like to 11.5
 yuányīn reason 5.27
 yuánzé (fundamental) principle 23.55
 yuànzhǎng director of an institute 16.41
 yuànzi courtyard 13.16
 yuánzǐ atom 5.22, 5 N 1
 yuánzǐ bǐ ball-point pen 5.22, 5 N 1
 yuánzǐ-néng atomic energy 5.22, 5 N 1
 yuē invite, make an appointment 5.53
 yuè dǐ end of the month 8.39
 yuè tóu beginning of the month 7.6
 yuèbào monthly (magazine) 22.34
 yuēhǎo agree on 5.53
 yuēhuì appointment 5.53
 yuèkān monthly (publication) 22.47
 yùn transport 2.13
 yùndong exercise 3.4
 yùndong huì athletic meet, athletic contest 3.34
 yùndong-yī athletic uniform 17.32
 yùndongchǎng athletic field 3.4
 yùndongyuán athlete 3.4
 yùnlù luck (good or bad), lucky 11.25
 zázhi magazine, periodical 2.32
 zàiburán otherwise 1.7
 zàizhě furthermore 23.46
 zànchéng approve of, be for, accept 7.13
 zánmen we, us 1.48, 1 N 10
 zāng dirty 3.24
 Zàng Tibet 15.20
 Zàngwén Tibetan (language and literature) 15.20
 zǎo morning 9.1
 zào stove 13.42
 zào make, build, construct 13.43
 záodiǎn breakfast 5.5
 zǎozhe early 11.7
 zěnmò bàn? how manage? 5.14
 zěnmò (yì)huí shì what sort of matter? what's up? 19.51
 zěnmò (yì)huí shì such a matter, such a thing 19.51
 zěnmòzhe what? how (about it)? 1.38
 zěnmòzhe this way 1.38
 zēngjiā increase, be increased, add 3.11
 zhá fry (usually in deep fat) 10.7
 zhái residence 14.7
 zhǎi narrow 3.23
 zhàn stand 17.43
 -zhàn battle, war 14.32
 zhànqilai stand up 17.43
 zhànshí temporary; temporarily, for the time being 20.18
 zhǎng head, director, leader 16.41
 zhàng battle, war 14.27
 zhǎngbèi older generation 8.6
 zhàngfu husband 14.15
 zhǎo give change 20.35
 zhào take a picture 7.49
 zhào lǐ follow tradition, follow (someone's) example 16.48

- zhào xiàng take a picture 7.49
 zhāodai entertain, be hospitable to 20.10
 zhāojí, zhāojí worried, upset, excited, flustered 21.41
 zhàoli(de) according to custom or tradition, traditionally 16.48
 zhàoxialai to photograph 7.49
 zhàoxiàng běnzi picture album 7.49
 zhàoxiàngguǎn photographer's shop 20.50
 zhàoxiǎngjī camera 7.49
 zhàoying take care of, look after 8.17
 zhé discount 20.5, 20 N 2
 -zhě one who 22.8, 22 N.3
 -zhe wár do [something] for the fun of it 4.19
 zhékòu discount 20.5, 20 N 2
 zhēn needle, pin 21.8
 zhēnguǐ precious, valuable 22.43
 zhěng all, whole, entire; precisely, exactly 13.36
 zhèng earn money 14.38
 zhèng main; due (before compass directions) 22.51
 zhèng běi due north 22.51
 zhèng lù main road 22.51
 zhèngfáng main unit in a house 13.17, 13 N 3
 zhèngfǔ government 15.17
 zhèngshì formal, official, proper 10.47
 zhī of 13.14, 13 N 4
 zhí worth (the time, money, effort) 17.56
 zhì treat 5.50
 zhì bìng treat illness 5.49
 zhībāo(r) package, parcel 2.23
 zhīdao know 9.4, 9 N 2
 zhíde worth (doing something) 17.56
 zhìdu system 11.14
 zhífú uniform 17.31
 zhíguǎn just 8.23
 zhìhào cure 5.49
 zhǐjiào give me your views, instruct me 15.1
 zhǐpiào check 19.25
 zhǐpiào bù checkbook 19.46
 zhíqián be valuable 17.56
 zhǐtou finger 9.37
 zhíwu duty, function, business, job 2.48
 zhíyè job, occupation, profession 19.37
 zhòng plant, grow, raise 13.19
 zhòng cài raise vegetables 13 N 19
 zhòng cè Volume II 22.54, 22 N 4
 zhòng dì till the soil, farm 13.31
 Zhōng-Ē, Zhōng-Ē, Zhōng-Ē Chinese-Russian, Sino-Russian 15.54
 Zhōng shì Chinese style 3.29
 Zhōng-Sū Sino-Soviet 15.56
 zhōngbù central section 10.27
 zhōngdiǎr hour, time, timing 1.34
 zhōngfàn lunch 8.30
 zhōnggǔ middle antiquity, middle ages 16.32
 Zhōngguo nèibù China Proper 15.21
 Zhōngguo nèidì China Proper 15.21
 Zhōngguochǐ Chinese foot 9.13, 9 N 2
 Zhōngguocùn Chinese inch 9 N 2
 Zhōngguolǐ Chinese mile 9 N 2
 Zhōnghuá China 3.15
 Zhōnghuá Mínguó Republic of China 23.32
 zhōngjí intermediate (rank) 22.40
 zhòngshì esteem, place great store on, give serious consideration to, pay close attention to 17.1
 zhōngtú midway 17.20
 zhōngxuéshēng middle-school student 22.57, 22 N 6
 zhōngyāng center, middle part 19.13
 zhōngyāng zhèngfǔ central government 19.13
 zhōngyào important 19.49
 zhōubào weekly (magazine or newspaper) 22.34
 zhōudao thorough 23.8
 zhōukān weekly (publication) 22.47
 zhōumò week end 10.5
 zhōunián anniversary (year) 23.20
 zhōunián jìniàn anniversary celebration 23.21
 zhǔ chief, head 23.1
 zhù yuàn stay in a hospital 21.51
 zhǔbiān edit (as chief editor), editor 22.50
 zhǔchí have charge of, direct, manage 23.6
 zhùjiě note 22.53
 zhǔrén master 14.46
 zhūwèi (term of address) 23.2, 23 N 9
 zhùwēi encourage, cheer on 17.38
 zhǔyào main, essential 4.40
 zhǔyào(de) shì the main thing is (that), chiefly 4.40
 zhùyì emphasize 20 N 4
 zhùzhái dwelling, residence 3.52
 zhùzhǐ (residence) address 19.38
 zhuā scratch, grab 23.16
 zhuān specially 7.26
 zhuān brick 13.30
 zhuàn rotate, turn 22.4
 zhuàn earn (money) 7.41
 zhuānkē special course of study 11.39

- zhuānkē xuéxiào specialized or technical school 11.39
 zhuànlái zhuànqù mill around 22.4
 zhuānmén specially 7.26
 zhuānménjiā specialist 7.26
 zhuānwān turn a corner 22.4
 zhuāng pack, hold 20.33
 zhuāngbuxià unable to hold 20.33
 zhuāngmǎn pack full 20.33
 zhǔnbèi prepare (to), get ready (to), intend to 11.6
 zhuō(zì) table 4.30
 zì self 7.51
 zì kuā boast 7.52
 zì lái shuǐ running water 7.51
 zìcóng ever since 23.35
 zìdòng automatic 13.40
 zīge qualifications, standing 17.7
 zìhuà(r) scroll with characters 4.53
 zìjǐ rén (one's) own people 4.2
 zìláishuǐ bǐ fountain pen 7.51
 zìliào (written) materials 16.29
 zǐxì careful, meticulous 21.23
 zìxíngchē(r) bicycle 13.47
 zǒng always, without exception 19.4
 zǒng'eryánzhi in sum, in a word; after all is said and done, in the last analysis 23.54
 zǒngshi always, without exception 19.4
 zū rent 5.32
 zū- grandparent 11.16
 zǔfù father's father 11.16
 zǔfùmǔ father's parents 11.16
 zūgěi rent to 5.32
 zúmǔ father's mother 11.16
 zúqiú soccer, football 16.45
 zúqiú duì football team 17.6
 zūtuō succeed in renting 11.23
 zǔzhi organize, organization 11.15
 zuǐ mouth 9.48
 zuǐ mouth 9.48
 zuì intoxicated 21.9
 zuì chū at (the very) first, at the (very) beginning 22.39
 zuì duō (at) most 2.3
 zuì hǎo best (of all), it would be best to 2.3
 zuì hòu last (of all) 2.3
 zuì jìn closest, most recently, very soon 2.3
 zuì shǎo (at) least 2.3
 zuì xiān first (of all) 2.3
 zuò (measure for buildings, cities, mountains) 3.35
 zuò as 10.47
 zuò be (in the role of) 11.50
 zuò bàr be a companion 5.30
 zuò biāozhǔn be a standard 9.55
 zuò fānyì act as translator 22.36
 zuò gōng do work 14.18
 zuò kǔgōng do hard physical labor 10.9
 zuò mǎimai be in business 20.9
 zuò mǎimai de merchant 20.9
 zuò shòu celebrate a birthday 9.40, 9 N 4
 zuò zhǔ be in charge of something 23.1
 zuòjiā writer, author 21.1
 zuòtuō finish doing 11.23
 zuóliào(r) ingredients, spices 10.32
 zuòr place (i.e. seat, table, etc.) 10.1
 zuòzhě , writer, author 22.8

LANGUAGE

Volumes by John DeFrancis in the Yale Linguistic Series

Beginning Chinese, *Second revised edition*

Character Text for Beginning Chinese, *Second edition*

Beginning Chinese Reader (Parts I and II), *Second edition*

Intermediate Chinese

Character Text for Intermediate Chinese

Intermediate Chinese Reader (Parts I and II)

Advanced Chinese

Character Text for Advanced Chinese

Advanced Chinese Reader

Index Volume

Annotated Quotations from Chairman Mao

A series of special memorization exercises with accompanying tapes is available through the Institute of Far Eastern Studies, Seton Hall University, South Orange, New Jersey 07079. A wide variety of supplementary readers and study aids are available from the University Press of Hawaii (535 Ward Avenue, Honolulu, Hawaii 96814) and Far Eastern Publications (28 Hillhouse Avenue, New Haven, Connecticut 06520). For complete lists, write directly to these publishers.

YALE UNIVERSITY PRESS
NEW HAVEN AND LONDON



ISBN 0-300-00064-2